



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 06924422 0

M. 111
2111

Mon 12

Clarendon Press Series

SPECIMENS
OF
EARLY ENGLISH
MORRIS.

Mo

London

MACMILLAN AND CO.



PUBLISHERS TO THE UNIVERSITY OF

Oxford.

Clarendon Press Series

SPECIMENS
OF
EARLY ENGLISH

SELECTED FROM THE CHIEF ENGLISH AUTHORS

A.D. 1250—A.D. 1400

WITH

Grammatical Introduction, Notes, and Glossary

BY

R. MORRIS, ESQ.

Editor of

'Hampole's Pricke of Conscience,' 'The Story of Genesis and Exodus,' &c.

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

MDCCCLXVII
1867

London

MACMILLAN AND CO.



PUBLISHERS TO THE UNIVERSITY OF

Oxford.

Clarendon Press Series

SPECIMENS
OF
EARLY ENGLISH

SELECTED FROM THE CHIEF ENGLISH AUTHORS

A.D. 1250—A.D. 1400

WITH

Grammatical Introduction, Notes, and Glossary

BY

R. MORRIS, Esq.

Editor of

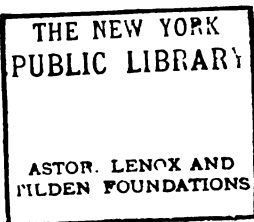
'Hampele's Pricke of Conscience,' 'The Story of Genesis and Exodus,' &c.

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

MDCCCLXVII

1867



NEW YORK
PUBLIC
LIBRARY

P R E F A C E.

AN intimate and thorough acquaintance with a language is only to be acquired by an attentive study of its literature. Grammars and histories of literature are, at best, but guides, and are far from being wholly trustworthy and reliable ; the statements and principles they contain need verification as well as illustration, and this necessitates a certain amount of familiarity with the literature itself.

In studying the later periods of the English language there is no lack of material, and the student has it in his power to correct, by his own reading and observation, any errors of fact that may occur in the text-books he uses.

With the literature of the earlier stages it is far different ; the printed editions of old authors are, on account of their rarity or price, inaccessible to ordinary readers, who are thus placed *completely at the mercy* of their guides.

The necessarily scanty extracts which occur, even in the best manuals of English literature, are quite inadequate to convey any clear notion of the dialect, grammar, and vocabulary of the writers of the early English period, and hence it is that most students find their information upon the subject limited to a list of names of persons, places, and dates, and some few uninteresting details, which, even in these days of competitive examinations, are accepted as a knowledge of English literature.

The aim of the present work is to supplement the ordinary text-books, and furnish students with abundant material for making themselves familiar with the older forms of English, and by this means enabling them to obtain a sounder knowledge of the language as spoken and written at the present day.

The 'Specimens,' which are chronologically arranged, may be considered as *types* of the English spoken within a century and a half of a most important period in its history. The year 1250 has been chosen as the starting-point, because about this date the language having undergone many changes owing to the loss of grammatical inflexions and a simplification of syntactical structure, was entering upon a new phase in its history, in which we may trace a gradual approximation to its modern representative, the English of *the present day*.

The extracts (in nearly every instance collated with the original MS.) present continuous narratives of considerable length, and embrace a variety of topics, among which may be mentioned Biblical translations, religious teaching, proverbs, history, and romance.

The extracts from Chaucer's Canterbury Tales are limited to two short narratives, because a more extended selection, by the present editor, is now in the press.

No knowledge of the oldest English or Anglo-Saxon is required before commencing the following pages, as the Grammatical Introduction, Notes, and Glossary contain all that is necessary to enable the student to read the most difficult specimens with pleasure and profit.

CONTRACTIONS.

A. S.	...	Anglo Saxon.
D.	...	Danish.
Du.	...	Dutch.
E. E.	...	Early English.
Ger.	...	German.
O. Du.	...	Old Dutch.
O. E.	...	Old English.
O. H. Ger.	...	Old High German.
O. N.	...	Old Norse.
O. S.	...	Old Saxon.
Prov. E.	...	Provincial English.
Sw.	...	Swedish.
W.	...	Welsh.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Grammatical Introduction	xi
English Version of Genesis and Exodus	1
The Owl and the Nightingale	19
The Story of Havelok the Dane	39
The Romance of King Alexander	52
The Reign of William the Conqueror (Robert of Gloucester)	62
The Life of St. Dunstan	79
Metrical English Psalter	82
Psalms from Hereford's Version	93
The Proverbs of Hendyng	96
Specimens of Lyric Poetry	102
Handlyng Synne (Robert Mannyng of Brunne)	109
De Baptismo (Shoreham)	121
Cursor Mundi	127
Sunday Sermons in Verse	146
Sermon on Matthew xxiv. 43 (Dan Michael of Northgate)	159
The Pricke of Conscience (Richard Rolle)	167
Political Songs (Lawrence Minot)	184
Travels of Sir John Mandeville	196
Alliterative Poems	207

	PAGE
Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight	220
The Romance of William and the Werwolf	237
The Vision of Piers Ploughman	249
The Gospel of St. Mark (Wycliffe)	291
Trevisa's translation of Higden's Polychronicon	333
Selections from Chaucer's Canterbury Tales	345
Selections from Gower's Confessio Amantis	367
Notes	379
Glossary	440
Corrections	492

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

EARLY ENGLISH DIALECTS

ADDITIONAL CORRECTIONS.

Grammatical Introduction.

- Page xvi. line 19, *for* gender *read* genders.
„ xxiv. „ 23, *dele* qualifying nouns.
„ xxxix. „ 3 from bottom, *for* healden *read* healde.
„ liv. lines 13, 14, *for* -es, -ert, -er *read* es, ert, er.

Text.

- Page 255, line 196, *for* go we, gou we, *read* gowe, gouwe.
„ 274, „ 837, *for* persons *read* prisons (i. e. prisoners).
„ 278, „ 959, *for* gustus *read* gultus (i. e. guilts, crimes).
„ 283, „ 1143, *for* weyebondes *read* webebondes (i. e. woodbine's).

us to understand that admixture of grammatical forms which
is to be found in some of our early English manuscripts.

¹ See Higden's account of these dialects, p. 338.

	PAGE
Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight	220
The Romance of William and the Werwolf	237
The Vision of Piers Ploughman	249
The Gospel of St. Mark (Wycliffe)	291
Trevisa's translation of Higden's Polychronicon	333
Selections from Chaucer's Canterbury Tales	345
Selections from Gower's Confessio Amantis	367

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

I. EARLY ENGLISH DIALECTS.

FROM historical testimony, and an examination of the literary records of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we learn that the English speech was represented by three principal dialects.¹

1. The Northern dialect, spoken throughout the Lowlands of Scotland, Northumberland, Durham, and nearly the whole of Yorkshire. Roughly speaking, the Humber and Ouse formed the southern boundary of this area, while the Penine Chain determined its limits to the west.

2. The Midland dialect, spoken in the counties to the west of the Penine Chain, in the East-Anglian counties, and in the whole of the Midland district. The Thames formed the southern boundary of this region.

3. The Southern dialect, spoken in all the counties south of the Thames; in Somersetshire, Gloucestershire, and portions of Herefordshire and Worcestershire.

There is no doubt that the Midland dialect exercised an influence upon the Southern dialect wherever it happened to be geographically connected with it, just as the Northumbrian acted upon the adjacent Midland dialects; and this enables us to understand that admixture of grammatical forms which is to be found in some of our early English manuscripts.

¹ See Higden's account of these dialects, p. 338.

These dialects¹ are distinguished from each other by the *uniform* employment of certain grammatical inflexions.

A convenient test is to be found in the inflexion of the *plural* number, *present* tense, *indicative* mood.

The Northern dialect employs *-es*, the Midland *-en*, and the Southern *-elh*, as the inflexion for all persons of the plural present indicative.²

	NORTHERN.	MIDLAND.	SOUTHERN.
1st pers.	hop- <i>es</i> , ³	hop- <i>en</i> , ⁴	hop- <i>elh</i> , we hope.
2nd „	hop- <i>es</i> ,	hop- <i>en</i> ,	hop- <i>elh</i> , ye hope.
3rd „	hop- <i>es</i> ,	hop- <i>en</i> ,	hop- <i>elh</i> , they hope.

The inflexions of the singular number, though no absolute test of dialect, are of value in enabling us to separate the West-Midland from the East-Midland.

The West-Midland conjugated its verb in the singular number and present tense almost like the Northern dialect.

	WEST-MIDLAND.	NORTHERN.
1st pers.	hope,	hopes. ³
2nd „	hopes,	hopes.
3rd „	hopes,	hopes.

The West-Midland of Shropshire seems to have employed the Southern inflexion *-es* and *-elh*, as well as *-es*, in the 2nd and 3rd persons sing. indic.

The East-Midland dialect, like the Southern, conjugated its verb in the sing. pres. indic. as follows:—

1st pers.	hope,
2nd „	hopest,
3rd „	hopeth.

¹ The Northern, Midland, and Southern dialects are sometimes designated as Northumbrian, Mercian, and West-Saxon.

² The Northern dialect often drops the *s* in the 1st person.

³ This *-es* occurs also in the 2nd pl. imperative instead of *-elh*.

⁴ The *-n* is frequently dropped in all persons.

Some of the East-Midland dialects geographically connected with the Northern seem to have occasionally employed the inflexion *-es* in the 2nd and 3rd pers. as well as *-est* and *-eth*. It is mostly found in poetical writers, who used it for the sake of obtaining an extra syllable rhyming with nouns pl. and adverbs in *-es*.

The West-Midland is further distinguished from the East-Midland dialect in employing the inflexion *-es* for *-est* in the 2nd pers. sing. preterite of regular verbs.

The following differences between the *Northern* and *Southern* dialects are worth noticing.

I. GRAMMATICAL DIFFERENCES.

NORTHERN.

SOUTHERN.

1. *-es* in all persons of the *-eth*.
pl. pres. indic. and
2. *-es* in all persons of the *-e, -est, -eth (-th)*.
sing. pres. indic.
3. No inflexion of *person* in Retention of the inflexions
the sing. or pl. of the *-ede, -edest, -ede*, sing.; as
preterite indic. of regular 1st *lovede*, 2nd *lovedest*, 3rd
verbs *-ed, -ed, -ed*; as 1st *lovede. -en* (pl.), as 1st,
loved, and *loved*, 3rd 2nd, 3rd *loveden*.
loved (sing. and plural).
4. Dropping of final *e* in 2nd person of strong verbs
strong or irregular verbs, ends in *-e*, as *spek-e*,
as *spak*, spakest; *segh*, spakest; *seze*, sawest.
sawest.
5. Infinitives drop the final Infinitives retain the final *-en*
-en (*-e*), as *sing*, to sing. or *-e*, as *sing-en, sing-e*, to
sing.
6. *At* for *to*, as sign of the *At* is wholly unknown in this
infinitive, e. g. *at fight*, dialect.
to fight.

NORTHERN.

SOUTHERN.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. <i>Sal, suld</i> , shall, should. | <i>Schal, scholde (schulde)</i> . |
| 8. Present or imperfect participles end in <i>-and</i> (or <i>-ande</i>). | Present or imperfect participles end in <i>-inde</i> . |
| 9. Omission of the prefix <i>y-</i> or <i>i-</i> in past participles, e.g. <i>broken</i> . | Retention of <i>y-</i> or <i>i-</i> in past participles, e.g. <i>y-broke, y-broken (i-broke, i-broken)</i> . |
| 10. The final <i>-en</i> in past participles is never dropped. | The final <i>-en</i> is often represented by <i>-e</i> , e.g. <i>y-broke = y-broken; i-fare = i-faren</i> (gone). |
| 11. No infinitives in <i>-i, -ie</i> , or <i>-y</i> . | Numerous infinitives in <i>-i, -ie</i> , or <i>-y</i> , as <i>hatie, lovie, ponki</i> , &c. |
| 12. No plurals in <i>-en</i> , except <i>eghen, hosen, oxen, schoom</i> . | A large number of nouns form their plurals in <i>-en</i> . |
| 13. The plurals <i>brether, childer, kuy (ky), hend</i> . | <i>Children, brethren (brothren), ken (kun), honden (honde)</i> . |
| 14. The genitive of nouns feminine in <i>-es</i> . | The genitive of nouns feminine in <i>-e</i> . |
| 15. No genitive plurals in <i>-ene</i> . | Genitive plural in <i>-ene</i> retained as late as A.D. 1387. |
| 16. Adjectives drop all inflexions of number and case, except <i>aller, alither, alder</i> , of all; <i>bather</i> , of both. | Adjectives retain many inflexions of number and case. |
| 17. Definite article uninflected: <i>pat</i> a demonstrative adjective. | Definite article inflected: <i>pat (pet)</i> the <i>neuter</i> of the definite article, and not a demonstrative adjective. |
| 18. <i>per, pir</i> (these). | <i>pise, pes</i> . |
| 19. <i>Ic, ik, I</i> . | <i>Ich (uch)</i> . |

NORTHERN.

SOUTHERN.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 20. <i>Seo, sho</i> (she). | <i>Heo</i> (hi, hue, ho). |
| 21. <i>Thai, thair</i> (thair), <i>thaim</i> (tham) = they, their, them. | <i>Hii</i> (hi, heo, hue), <i>here</i> (hire, heore), <i>hem</i> (heom, huem). |
| 22. <i>Urs, zoures</i> (yhours), <i>hirs, thairs</i> = ours, yours, hers, theirs. | <i>Ure, eowere</i> (zoure), <i>hire, here</i> (heore). |
| 23. Absence of the pronouns <i>ha</i> , or <i>a</i> = he; <i>hine</i> = him (acc.); <i>wan</i> = which, whom (acc.); <i>his</i> (<i>hise, is</i>) = them; <i>his</i> (<i>is</i>) = her. | Use of the pronouns <i>ha</i> (a), <i>hine, wan, his</i> (is), <i>his</i> (is). |
| 24. Use of <i>hethen</i> = hence; <i>thethen</i> = thence; <i>whethen</i> = whence. | Unknown in Southern dialect. |
| 25. <i>Sum</i> = as. | Unknown in Southern dialect. |
| 26. <i>At</i> = to; <i>fra</i> = from; <i>til</i> = to. | Unknown in Southern dialect. |
| 27. Conj. <i>at</i> = that. | Unknown in Southern dialect. |

II. ORTHOGRAPHICAL DIFFERENCES.

NORTHERN.

SOUTHERN.

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>ā</i> , | <i>ō</i> . |
| <i>ban</i> (bone), | <i>bon</i> . |
| <i>laf</i> (loaf), | <i>lof, loof</i> . |
| 2. <i>kin</i> , | <i>kun</i> . ¹ |
| <i>hil</i> (hill), | <i>hul</i> . |
| <i>pit</i> , | <i>put</i> . |
| 3. <i>k</i> , | <i>ch</i> . |
| <i>aske</i> (to ask), | <i>esse</i> . |
| <i>bink</i> , | <i>bench</i> . |
| <i>cloke</i> (clutch), | <i>clouche</i> . |
| <i>kirke</i> (church), | <i>chirche</i> . |

¹ The Kentish dialect substitutes *e* for *u*, as *ken* (kin), *bel* (hill), *pet* (pit).

NORTHERN,	SOUTHERN.
<i>croke</i> (cross),	<i>crouche</i> .
<i>rike</i> (kingdom),	<i>riche</i> .
<i>skrike</i> (screech, shriek),	<i>schriche</i> (<i>schirche</i>).
<i>sek</i> (sack),	<i>zech</i> (<i>sech</i>).
4. Absence of compound vowels.	Use of the compound vowels <i>ea</i> , <i>eo</i> (<i>ie</i> , <i>ue</i>). ¹
5. <i>qu</i> (<i>qw</i>),	<i>hw</i> (<i>wh</i>).
<i>quat</i> (what),	<i>hwat</i> .
6. <i>f</i> ,	<i>v</i> .
<i>fel</i> (fell),	<i>vel</i> .
<i>fa</i> (foe),	<i>vo</i> . ²

II. OUTLINES OF EARLY ENGLISH GRAMMAR.³

With regard to the Alphabet, it is only necessary to mention that *ƿ* and *þ* are used for *th*. An initial *ȝ* (A.S. *g*) answers to *y* (occasionally *g*); *ȝ* final and before *t* corresponds to *gh*.

NOUNS.

Gender.—The gender of Old English nouns are three,—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter, agreeing in general with the Anglo-Saxon or oldest English forms.

Neut. *wyf*, *child*.

A.S. *wif*, *cild*, woman, child.

Fem. *soul*, *sawel*, *heorte*
(*herte*).

A.S. *sawel*, *heorta*, soul, heart.

Masc. *drem*.

A.S. *dream*, song.

¹ The Southern dialect of Kent seems to have pronounced *ea* as *y*, as we find *east*, *eald* (old), written *yeast*, *yeald*.

² The Kentish dialect of the fourteenth century, like the modern provincial dialects of the South of England, has *z* for *s*, as *zinge*, to sing; *zay*, say; *zede*, said.

³ These Outlines are based upon the Southern dialect.

After A.D. 1350 we find a tendency to limit the use of the neuter gender, as in the modern stage of the language.

Declension.—Nouns may be divided into three declensions:—

DIVISION I.

Class i. Nouns of the *n* declension containing masculine, feminine, and neuter substantives ending in *-e* (originally in *-a* or *-e*) and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-an*).

Class ii. Nouns (originally feminine) ending in a consonant and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-a*).

Class iii. Nouns (originally feminine) ending in *-e* (originally in *-u*) and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-a*).

DIVISION II.

Class i. Nouns (originally neuter) ending in a consonant and having the singular and plural alike.

Class ii. Nouns (originally neuter) ending in a vowel (originally in *-w*, *-e*, or *-u*, together with some few ending in a consonant and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-u*).

DIVISION III.

Class i. Nouns (originally masculine) ending in a consonant and forming the plural in *-es* (originally in *-as*).

Class ii. Nouns (originally masculine) ending in a vowel and forming the plural in *-en* (originally in *-u*).

DIVISION I.—*Class i.*

E. E.			SINGULAR.			A. S.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	sterre (star),	tonge (tongue),	e3e (eye).			steorra,	tunge,	eåge.
Gen.	sterre,	tonge,	e3e.			stecrran,	tungan,	eågan.
Dat. }								
Acc. }	sterre,	tonge,	e3e			steorran,	tungan,	eågan.
						steorran,	tungan,	eåge.

	E.E.		PLURAL.	A. S.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } Acc. }	sterren,	tongen,	ejen.	steorran,	tungan,	eágan.
Gen.	sterrene,	tongene,	ejene.	steorrena,	tungena,	eágena.
Dat.	sterren,	sterren,	ejen.	steorrum,	tungum,	eagum.

In like manner are declined:—*bee*, pl. *been*; *chirche*, pl. *chirchen*; *eare*, *ere* (ear), pl. *earen*, *eren*; *flo* (arrow), pl. *flon*; *fo* (enemy), pl. *fon*; *gome*, *gume* (man), pl. *gomen*; *to* (toe), pl. *ton*, *toon*; *wise* (manner), pl. *wisen*; *woke*, *wuke* (week), pl. *woken*.

Lefdye (lady); *wrizte*, a wright, workman; *time*; *eorpe* (earth)—although belonging to this declension, generally form the plural in *-es*.

Class ii.

	E.E.	SINGULAR.	A.S.
Nom.	sawel, sauel (soul).		sáwel.
Gen.	sowle, soule.		sáwle.
Dat. } Acc. }	sowle, soule.		sáwle.

PLURAL.

Nom.	sowlen, soulen.	sáwla.
Gen.	sowlene, soulene.	sáwla, sawlena.
Dat. } Acc. }	sowlen, soulen.	{ sáwlum, sáwla.

Thus are declined:—*ben* (prayer), pl. *benen*; *edder* (adder), pl. *eddren*; *lay* (law), pl. *layen*, *lawen*; *syn* (sin), pl. *synnen*, *sunnen*; *tide* (time), pl. *tiden*. *Nizt* (night), *wizt* (wight, creature), remain unchanged in the plural. Cp. the compounds *se'ennight*, *fortnight*. *World* often forms the genitive singular in *-es*. *Hand*, *sin*, form also the plural in *-e*, as *honde*, *sinne*, hands, sins.

Class iii.

E. E.	SINGULAR.	A. S.
Nom. dore (door).		dur-u.
Gen. dore.		dure.
Dat. } dore.		{ dure,
Acc. }		{ dura.
PLURAL.		
Nom. doren.		dura.
Gen. dorene.		dura (durena).
Dat. } doren.		{ durum,
Acc. }		{ dura.

Like *dore* are declined *denne*, a den; *gife*, a gift.

To this declension belonged originally *cu*, *cou* (cow), pl. *kun*, *ken* (kine). The Northern dialect prefers *ky*, *kve*.

Genitive of Feminine Nouns.—From the above declensions of feminine nouns it is seen that the genitive case is denoted by the vowel *-e* and not *-es*. Chaucer has '*heorte blood*,' heart's blood; '*widewe sone*,' widow's son; '*The Prioressse Tale*' the Tale of the Prioress. This rule is well illustrated in the modern terms *Lord's day* and *Lady day* (the day of our lady, the Virgin Mary).

Dialectical varieties.—As early as the latter part of the twelfth century we find a tendency in Northern writers to adopt the *-es* as the genitive inflexion of feminine as well as of masculine nouns.

Plurals in -en.—We often find the same words forming their plurals in *-es* and *-en*, even in Southern writers.

DIVISION II.—Class i.

E. E.	SINGULAR.	A. S.
Nom. and Acc. hors (horse).		hors.
Gen. horses.		horses.
Dat. horse.		horse.

	E.E.	FLURAL.	A.S.
Nom. and Acc.	hors.		hors.
Gen.	horse.		horsa.
Dat.	horse.		horsum.

After the same manner are declined :—*hus* (house); *der* (deer); *bern, barn* (child); *spel* (story); *schep* (sheep); *wif* (woman, wife); *3er* (year). *Wilde der, wilde hors*, signify wild animals, wild horses; *horse knaves* = horse-servants, grooms. In modern English, *deer, horse, sheep, swine, year*, have a *collective* sense and remain unchanged in the plural.

Shakespeare (*Ant. and Cleop.* iii. 6) uses *hors* as a collective name :

“ The wife of Anthony
Should have an army for an usher, and
The neighs of *horse* to tell of her approach.”

Class ii.				
	E.E.	SINGULAR.	A.S.	
Nom. and Acc.	schip (ship),	{ traw, } { trow, } (tree).	scip,	treów.
Gen.	schipes,	{ trowes, } { trauwes. }	scipes,	treówes.
Dat. }	schipe,	{ trauwe.	scipe,	treówe.
Acc. }		{ trowe.	scip,	treów.
PLURAL.				
Nom. and Acc.	schipen,	{ trauwen, } { trowen, } { tren. }	scipu,	treówu.
Gen.	{ schipene, } { schipe, }	{ trauwene, } { trowene, } { trene. }	scipa,	treówa.
Dat. }	schipen,	{ trauwen, }	scipum,	treówum.
Acc. }		{ trouwen, } { tren. }		

In the same way are declined :—*deovel* (devil); *fat* (vat); *heved, heaved* (head); *lim* (limb); *riche* (kingdom); *token* (sign); *sorwe* (sorrow); *wonder* (marvel); *werre* (war). *Calf, child, ey*

(egg), *lamb*, form their plural in *-ren* (originally *-ru*), as—*Calvren* (A.S. *cealfriu*); *children*, *childern* (A.S. *cildru*); *eyren* (A.S. *ægru*); *lambren* (A.S. *lambriu*).

Dialectical varieties.—The Northern dialect avoids the use of these plurals in *-ren*. All except *child* (pl. *childer*) form their plurals in *-es*.

DIVISION III.—Class i.

E.E.	SINGULAR.	A.S.
Nom. and Acc. del (part).		dæl.
Gen.	deles.	dæles.
Dat. }	dele.	{ dæle.
Acc. }		{ dæl.
	PLURAL.	
Nom. and Acc.	deles.	dælas.
Gen.	delene.	dæla.
Dat. }	deles.	dælum.
Acc. }		

Thus also are declined :—*day*; *engel* (angel); *feld* (field); *muth* (mouth); *king*; *ston* (stone); *wey* (way). *Fend* (enemy), *frend*, *freond* (friend), are used as plurals, the older forms being *fýnd* or *feónd*, *frynd* or *freónd*. *Winter* has the pl. *winter* and *winters*; *got*, *gayt* (goat) makes the pl. *geet* (Northern *gayf*). *Fader* drops the *-es* in the genitive case.

Class ii.

E.E.	SINGULAR.	A.S.
Nom. and Acc.	sone, sune (son).	sunu.
Gen.	sone, sune.	sunu.
Dat. }	sone, sune.	sunu.
Acc. }		
	PLURAL.	
Nom.	sonen, sunen (sune, sunes).	sunu.
Gen.	sonene, sunene.	sunu.
Dat.	sonen, sunen.	sunum.
Acc.	sone, sune.	sunu.

In the same manner are declined :—*dozter* (daughter), *doztren*; *moder* (mother), pl. *modren*; *rother* (ox), pl. *rotheren*; *suster* (sister), pl. *sustren*. *Brother*, *moder*, *dozter* are indeclinable in the singular. *Brother* makes the plural *brithren* and *bretheren*.

Dialectical varieties.—The Northumbrian dialect employs *brether*, *brethere* (brethren), and the West-Midland has the curious pl. *dezter* (daughters).

I. General Remarks on the Declensions.

Case endings.—*a.* The dative singular of all the declensions is denoted by a final *-e*.

b. In the Northern dialect the genitive *-es* is often omitted as *man sone* (son of man); *hefd haire* (hair of the head).

c. No trace of the genitive plural *-ene* or *-en* is to be found in the Northern dialects. The genitive in *-ene* (*-en*, *-yn*), in the other dialects, is often superseded by the dative with preposition.

d. The A.S. dative pl. *-um*, in some few cases, is denoted by *-e*; in the majority of instances it is the same as the nominative.

II. Number.

Plurals in -en.—*a.* The Northern dialect seems to avoid the use of this inflexion, and the only instances that occur are *eghen* (eyes), *oxen*, *hosen*, and *shoon*.

b. *Brether* (brothers), *childer* (children), *hend* (hands), *he* (brains), *ky* (cows) are properly Northern plurals, but are occasionally found in Midland dialects having Northern tendencies.

ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have a Definite and an Indefinite form; the former is used when the adjective is preceded by the d

finite article, a demonstrative or a possessive pronoun; the latter in all other cases.

I. DEFINITE DECLENSION.

Examples—*god* (good); *þe god-e* (the good).

	E.E.			SINGULAR.			A.S.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	god-e,	gode,	gode.	góda,	góde,	góde.			
Gen.	{ goden, gode, }	of all genders.			gódan, of all genders.				
Dat.	{ goden, gode. }	,, ,,			gódan. ,, ,,				
Acc.	{ goden, gode. }	gode, gode.			gódan, gódan, góde.				

PLURAL.

Nom.	{ goden, gode. }	gód-an.
Gen.	{ godene, ¹ gode. }	gódena.
Dat.	{ god-en, gode. }	gódum.
Acc.	{ goden, gode. }	gódan.

II. INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

Example—*god* (good).

	E. E.			SINGULAR.			A. S.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	god,	god,	god.	gód,	gód,	gód.			
Gen.	godes,	godre,	godes.	gódes,	gódre,	gódes.			
Dat.	gode,	godre,	gode.	gódum,	godre,	godum.			
Acc.	godne,	gode,	god.	gódne,	góde,	gód.			

¹ This form seldom occurs after A. D. 1200.

	E.E.	FLURAL.	A.S.
	<i>M. F. and N.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. and Acc.	gode,	góde.	gód(-u).
Gen.	godre,	gód-ra.	gódra.
Dat.	gode,	gódum.	gódum.

Remarks on the Declension of the Adjective.

a. The vocative of adjectives takes the definite inflexion of the strong declension, and terminates in *-e*; as, 'O *stronge* god,' 'O *3onge* (young) Hughe.'

b. The genitive singular of the indefinite declension is more often expressed by the *dative* with a preposition than by the inflexion *-es*.

Such forms as *alleskynnes* (all kinds of), *noskynnes* (no kind of), are instances of the genitives *alles* (of all) and *nones* (of none).

The Northern dialect frequently employs the contracted forms *alkin* (all kind of); *nankin*, *nakin* (no kind of); *ilkin* (each kind of); *sumkin* (some kind of); *whatkin* (what kind of).

c. The genitive plural *-re* is retained in but few cases; *beye* (both) makes gen. pl. *beire* (Northern *bather*); its latest example is *alre*, *alder*, *alther* (of all).

d. Adjectives qualifying nouns of Romance origin form their plural in *-es*, as *wateres principales* (chief rivers); *thingses cspiritueles* (spiritual things).

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparative and superlative of adjectives are regularly formed by adding *-ere*, *-er*, and *-este*, *-est* to the indefinite form. The Southern dialect often employs *-ore*, *-or*, and *-oste*, *-ost*; and the Northern *-are*, *-ar*, and *-asle*, *-ast*, instead of *-ere* and *-este*.

Adjectives and adverbs ending in *-lich*, *-liche*, have *-laker*

or *-loker* in the comparative, and *-lakest* or *-lokest* in the superlative. Adjectives and adverbs in the Northern dialect end in *-lic*, *-like*, or *-ly*, instead of *-lich*, *-liche*.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

The following adjectives are irregularly compared :—

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	A. S.	SUPERLATIVE.	A. S.
er, ere, ar, or	{ (before, early), }	{ erur,	ærre,	{ erst, arst, orest,	{ ærest.
ald, old	{ (old), }	{ aldre, eldre,	{ yldre,	eldest,	yldest.
bad,	{ }	{ badder, wers, wors,	{ wyrs,	worst,	wyrst.
fer	(far),	{ firre, fer, ferre,	{ fyrre, fyr,	{ ferrest,	fyrrest.
god	(good),	{ bet, betre,	{ bet,	best,	{ betest. betst.
heh, hez	{ (high), }	{ hirre, herre,	{ hýrre,	{ hegest, hest, hext,	{ héhst. hýhst.
ille	(bad),	war, ¹		worst.	
yvel, uvel	{ (evil), }	{ warre, ¹ werre, worre,	{ }	werst.	{ }
lang, long	{ (long), }	{ leng, lenger,	{ lenger,	lengest,	lengest.
lyte	(little),	{ lasse, lesse, les,	{ læsse, læs,	{ lest,	læst.

¹ *War*, *warre*, are not found in the Southern dialect.

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.	A.S.	SUPERLATIVE.	A.S.
mikel, michel, muchel, miche, moche	{	(much),	{ mo, mor,	{ má, máre, most, mest,	{ mæst.
neg, nez, neh	{	(nigh),	{ nerre, ner,	{ nearre, near, nyr, nezest, nest, next,	{ nyhst, nehst.
sare, sore	{	(sore),	{ sarre, sorre,	{ sarrest. sorest.	

NUMERALS.

NUMERALS.	ORDINALS.
þe (þat) forme, fyrste } (ton, tone=that one) }	first.
þe (þat) oþer, toþer (= } that other), }	second.
þe (þat) þridde,	third.
ferþe,	fourth.
fifte,	fifth.
sixte, }	sixth.
sexe, }	
seofeþe, }	seventh.
seveþe, }	
eiȝteoþe. }	eighth.
eiȝteþe, }	
nipe,	ninth.
tiþe, }	tenth.
teþe. }	

Dialectical varieties.—*Twin* (two), *thrin* (three), *fon*, *fone*, *fune* (few), are Northern forms.

The Southern numerals answering to *seventh*, *eighth*, &c., end in *-þe*, *-the*; the corresponding Northern numerals end

in *-end* (occasionally in *-and*), as *sevend*, *aghtend*, *achtand*, *neghend*, *tend*, and are due to Norse influence. The Kentish dialect prefers *-ende* to *-þe*, agreeing with the Old Frisian forms in *-nd*. Many Midland works have examples of forms in *-nþe*.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

	E. E.			A. S.		
	Masc.	Fem.	SINGULAR. Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	þe,	{ þa, þeo, þo, }	{ þat, þet. }	se,	seo,	þæt.
Gen.	þes, ¹	{ þare, þere, }	þes.	þæs,	þære,	þæs.
Dat.	þan,	{ þare, ² þere, }	þan.	þám,	þære,	þám.
Acc.	{ þen, þene, þan, þane, }	{ þo, þe, }	{ þat. þet. }	þone,	þá,	þæt.
Abl.	þý,	þý,	þý. ³
FLURAL.						
Nom. and Acc.	þo, þa.			þa.		
Gen.	{ þare, þere. }			þára.		
Acc. and Dat.	þan.			þám.		

	E. E.			A. S.		
	Masc.	Fem.	SINGULAR. Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	þis, þes, ⁴	{ þeos, þues, ⁴ }	þis.	þes,	þe'is,	þis.

¹ Not often employed.² Sometimes written *þar*.³ Properly instrumental, as *þy mǎ* = eo magis.⁴ Retained as late as A. D. 1387.

	E. E.		SINGULAR.			A. S.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
Gen.	þises,	þisse,	þises.	þises,	þisse,	þises.		
Dat.	{ þise, þisen, }	þisse,	þise.	þisum,	þisse,	þisum.		
Acc.	{ þisne, þerne, ¹ }	{ þos, þise, }	þis.	þisne,	þás,	þis.		

PLURAL.

Nom.	þeos, þues, þes, þos, þis, þise.	þás.
Gen.	þise, þisse.	þissa.
Dat.	{ þise, þisen. }	þisum.
Acc.	þes, þise, &c.	þás.

Dialectical varieties.—*a.* In the Northern dialect the definite article is indeclinable in the singular number. The plural is *þa* or *þaa*.

b. In the Southern dialect *þat* or *þet* is the neuter article; in the Northern it is used as a demonstrative adjective, having for its plural *þas* = those.

c. *Þisser*, *þissere*² (gen. and dat. sing. fem.) is occasionally, in the Kentish dialect, used instead of *þisse* (with preposition); and *þissere*³ (gen. and dat. pl. fem.) for *þisse* (A. S. *þissa*).

d. Demonstrative adjectives peculiar to the Northern dialect are:—

1. *Þir*, *þer*, *þere* (Icelandic, *þau*, *þeir*, *þær*) (these).
2. *Swilk*, *slike*, *silk*, *sic* (such).
3. *Ilka*, each (one).

e. *Þellych*, *þellyche* (*þalk*, *þulk*, *þilke*, *þulke*) (this, suchlike, these), is peculiar to the Southern dialect.

¹ *þerne* = *þesne*, is peculiar to the Kentish dialect.

² A. S. *þissere*.

³ A. S. *þissera*.

PRONOUNS.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are—*Ich* (I), *þu*, *þou* (thou), *he* (he), *heo* (she), *hit* (it).

E.E.		SINGULAR.	A.S.	
Nom.	{ <i>Ich</i> , <i>uch</i> , ¹ <i>ic</i> , <i>ik</i> , <i>I</i> , ² }	<i>þu</i> , <i>þou</i> .	<i>Ic</i> ,	<i>þu</i> .
Gen.	<i>min</i> , <i>mi</i> ,	<i>þin</i> , <i>þi</i> .	<i>mín</i> ,	<i>þín</i> .
Dat.	{ <i>me</i> ,	<i>þe</i> .	<i>me</i> ,	<i>þe</i> .
Acc.				

DUAL.		PLURAL.	DUAL.	PLURAL.
Nom.	<i>wit</i> , ³	<i>we</i> .	<i>wit</i> ,	<i>we</i> .
Gen.	<i>unker</i> ,	<i>ure</i> , <i>ur</i> .	<i>uncer</i> ,	<i>úre</i> .
Dat.	{ <i>unc</i> , <i>unk</i> ,	<i>ous</i> , <i>us</i> .	<i>unc</i> ,	<i>ús</i> .
Acc.				

Nom.	<i>get</i> , <i>git</i> ,	<i>ʒe</i> , <i>ʒhe</i> , <i>ye</i> .	<i>git</i> ,	<i>ge</i> .
Gen.	<i>gunker</i> ,	{ <i>eower</i> , <i>gure</i> , <i>ʒure</i> .	<i>incer</i>	<i>eówer</i> .
Dat.	{ <i>gunk</i> ,	{ <i>eow</i> , <i>ow</i> , <i>ou</i> , <i>ʒou</i> , <i>yow</i> .	<i>inc</i> ,	<i>eów</i> .
Acc.				

E.E.		SINGULAR.	A.S.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	{ <i>a</i> , <i>ha</i> , <i>he</i> ,	{ <i>heo</i> , <i>hi</i> , <i>hy</i> , <i>ho</i> , <i>hue</i> ,	{ <i>hit</i> , <i>it</i> .	<i>he</i> ,	<i>heó</i> , <i>hit</i> .

¹ This pronoun is still preserved in the South-Western dialects under the forms *Ucb* and *Utky*.

² *Ic*, *Ik*, and *I* are Northern forms.

³ The dual of the personal pronouns are seldom employed, and seem to have been disused before A.D. 1300.

	E.E.			SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Gen.	his,	hire,		his,	hire,	his.
Dat.	him,	hire,		him,	hire,	him.
Acc.	{ hine, ¹ hire, ¹ him, hi, his, his, }			{ hit, it. }		
				hine,	hi,	hit.

PLURAL.

Nom.	hi, hii, heo.	hí.
Gen.	{ hire, here, heore, huere, hor. }	hira (heora).
Dat.	heom, huem, hem, hom.	him (heom).
Acc.	hi, his, hise, is.	hi.

The personal pronouns are frequently used reflectively; as, *Ich me reste*, I rest myself.

Self is declined like an adjective (in the oblique cases, *selve* sing., *selven* pl.); so that we easily understand such forms as *Ich sylf* = I myself, *þu sylf* = thou thyself; (*Ich*) *me sylf* = I myself, where *self* is placed after the *dative* of the personal pronoun. Cp. Fr. *moi-même*, *lui-même*, &c.

Dialectical varieties.—*a.* *He* = East-Midland for *hi*, they; *ho* = West-Midland for *heo*, she; *sco*, *scho* = Northern for *heo*, she.²

b. *A* (*Ha* = he, she, it, they) is peculiar to the Southern dialect.

c. *His* (*hise*, *is*) = them; *his* (*is*), her, occur in *Southern* writers, but are wholly unknown in the Northern dialect. *is* = them, is found in *Genesis* and *Exodus* (East-Midland), where it coalesces with (*ī*) verbs, as *caldes* = *calde es*,³ called

¹ *Hine* (*ine*, *in*) = him, is still retained in the modern Southern dialect; as,

² I seed *en* = I saw him

³ *Sbee* and *they* (*they*) do not occur in any pure Southern writer before A.D. 1387

³ The oldest form of this pronoun is *bes*.

them; *dedis* = *dede is*, placed (did) them: (2) with pronouns, as *hes* = *he + is*, he, them; *wes* = *we + is*, we, them.

d. The pronoun *hit* (it) in the West-Midland dialect is used as a possessive pronoun; as *hit dedez*, its deeds; *hit coostez*, its properties.

e. *Hil* or *it* in the East-Midland dialect coalesces with (1) verbs, as *sagt* = *sag it*, saw it; *havedit* = *havede + it*, had it; *wast* = *was + it*, it was: (2) with pronouns, as *ghet*, *get* = she, it.

f. *Hine*, him, is not found in the Northern dialects.

g. *Ʒaa*, *Ʒai* (they); *Ʒair*, *Ʒar* (their); *Ʒam*, *Ʒaim* (them)—are Northern forms, and are not used by Southern writers.

h. *Ʒei* is a Midland form of *Ʒai* (they).

i. In the Southern dialect the personal pronoun *Ich* coalesces (1) with the 3rd pers. pl. as *Ichom* = I them; (2) with verbs as *Ichot* = *Ich wot*, I know; *Icham* = *Ich am*, I am; *Icholle* = *Ich wolle*, I will. *Nuly* = *ne + wule + y*, I will not. *Mosti* = *moste + i*, I must.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The possessive pronouns are identical in form with the genitive case, e.g. *ure* = our, ours, of us; *eoure*, *ore*, *Ʒoure* = your, yours, of you; *here* = their, theirs, of them.

Dialectical varieties.—The Northern forms corresponding to *ure*, *eower*, *here*, are *urs*, *Ʒoures*, *thairs*. In some of the Midland dialects we find *ouren* (ours), *youren* (yours), *heren* (theirs), all of which are used by Wicliffe. In some Midland dialects *heres* and *hores* = theirs, occur for *here*.

III. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

E. E.

Masc. and Fem.

Neut.

Nom.	hua, huo,	huet, huat, wat.
Gen.	huas, huos, wos,	
Dat.	huam, hwom, wom,	huam, wam, wom.
Acc.	huam, huan, wan,	huet, huat, wat.

A.S.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	hwá,	hwæt.
Gen.	hwæs,	hwæs.
Dat.	hwám (hwæm),	hwám (hwæm).
Acc.	hwone (hwæne),	hwæt.
Abl.	hwý,	hwý.

Dialectical varieties.—*a. Wha, qua* (who), *quas* (whose), *quam* (whom), *quat* (what), are Northern forms (and occasionally adopted by some of the Midland dialects) for *hua*, *huas*, *huam*, *huet* (*wal*).

b. Me is used in the Southern dialect as an indefinite pronoun answering to Fr. *on*, one, they; e.g. *me telp*, one esteems; *me seide*, one said. The Northern dialect uses *man* (Ger. *man*) in the same way.

Wha (qua) is used indefinitely, e.g. *als wha say* = as one may say.

VERBS.

Moods.—There are four moods—Indicative, Subjective, Imperative, and Infinitive. Besides the ordinary infinitive there is a gerund (used after *to*);—infin. *comen*, to come; ger. *to comene*. This distinction between the two forms is not always preserved.

Tenses.—Only two tenses are formed by inflection—the Present and the Past.

Participles.—The present participle ends in *-inde*; the past participle has the prefix *i-* or *y-*, unless the verb commences with one of the following prefixes: *a-*, *at-*, *bi-*, *be-*, *for-*, *vor-*, *of-*, *to-*, *un-*, *wiþ-*.

There are two conjugations of verbs, the Strong (or irregular), and the Weak (or regular):—

I. WEAK VERBS.

Class i.

INFINITIVE MOOD—*Lovien, loven*, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	E. E.	PRESENT.	A. S.	Plural.
		Plural.	Sing.	
1. lovie, love,	lovieth, loveth.		lufige,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a. \text{ lufia}\text{} \\ b. \text{ lufige.}^1 \end{array} \right.$
2. lovest,	lovieth, loveth.		lufast,	
3. loveth,	lovieth, loveth.		lufa,	lufia.
PRET.				
1. lovede,	loveden.		lufode,	lufoden.
2. lovedest,	loveden.		lufodest,	lufodon.
3. lovede,	loveden.		lufode,	lufodon.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. lovie, love.	lufige.
Plur. lovien, loven.	lufion.

PRET.

Sing. lovede.	lufode.
Plur. loveden.	lufodon.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. love.	lufa.
Plur. a. lovieþ, loveþ.	a. lufia.
b. lovie, love (followed by the pronoun). }	b. lufige.

GERUND.

to lovienne, lovene.	to lufigenne.
----------------------	---------------

¹ The form *b* is used in all persons when the pronoun follows, as *lufige we*.

E.E.	PRES. PART.	A.S.
lovinde.		lufigende.
	PAST PART.	
i-loved, } y-loved. }		gelufod.

Like *lovie*, to love, are conjugated *clepie*, to call; *herie*, to praise; *hopie*, to hope; *makie*, to make; *schunie*, to shun; *tholie*, to suffer. Many verbs of this class drop the *i*; and are written *love*, *clepe*, &c.

Class ii.

INFINITIVE MOOD—*Heren* (A.S. *hýran*), to hear.

E.E.	PRESENT.	A.S.
Sing.	Plural.	Sing. Plural.
1. here,	hereth.	hýre, { <i>a.</i> hýrað. <i>b.</i> hýre.
2. herest, herst,	hereth.	hýrst, hýrað.
3. hereth, herth,	hereth.	hýrð, hýrað.
	PRET.	
1. herde,	herden.	hýrde, hýrdon.
2. herdest,	herden.	hýrdest, hýrdon.
3. herde,	herden.	hýrde, hýrdon.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	PRESENT.
Sing. here.	hýre.
Plur. heren.	hýron.
	PRET.
Sing. herde.	hýrde.
Plur. herden.	hýrdon.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. her.	hýr.
------------	------

	E.E.	A.S.
Plur.	hereth.	a. hýrað.
	here.	b. hýre.

GERUND.

to herenne, heren. to hýrenne.

PRES. PART.

herinde. hýrende.

PAST PART.

i-herd.	}	ge-hýred.
y-herd.		

In the 3rd pers. sing. indic. of verbs having *t* or *d* for the st syllable of the root, *t* is often used for *-teð* or *dæð*, as—

gret = *gredæð*, cries.

let = *letteð*, hinders.

let = *ledæð*, leads.

sent = *sendæð*, sends.

went = *wendæð*, turns, wends.

If the root of the verb ends in *d* or *t* doubled, or preceded by another consonant, the *de* or *te* of the past tense and *-d* or *-t* of the past participle are omitted, e.g.—

wenden, to turn, pret. *wende*, past part. *wend*.

letten, to hinder, „ *lette*, „ „ „ *let*.

The following verbs, among many others, belong to this class :—

PRESENT.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Callen, to call,	calde,	icald.
Demen, to judge,	demde,	idemed, idemt.
Dippen, to dip,	dipte,	idipt.
Greden, to cry,	gredde,	igred.
Hidden, } to hide,	{ hidde, }	ihid.
Huden, }	{ hudde, }	ihud.

PRESENT.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Kythe, to shew,	{ kydde,	ikid.
	{ kudde,	ikud.
Kepen, to keep,	kepte,	ikept.
Lenden, to lend,	lende,	{ ilent.
		{ ilend.
Leren, to teach,	lerde,	ilerd.
Lette, to hinder,	lette,	ilet.
Meten, to meet,	mette,	imet.
Schriden, } to clothe,	{ schridde,	ischrid.
Schruden, }	{ schrudde,	ischrud.
Senden, to send,	sende,	isent.
Wenen, to ween,	wende,	iwend.

Some few verbs have double forms in the preterite and past participle.

PRESENT.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Clothen, } to clothe,	{ cledde,	icled.
Clethen, }	{ cladde,	iclad.
Delen, to deal.	{ delte,	idelt.
	{ dalte,	idalt.
Leden, to lead,	{ ledde,	iled.
	{ ladde,	ilad.
Leven, to leave,	{ lefte,	ileft.
	{ lafte,	ilaft.
Reden, to advise,	{ redde,	ired.
	{ radde,	irad.
Spredden, to spread,	{ spredd,	ispred.
	{ spradde,	isprad.
Swelten, to die,	{ swelte,	iswelt.
	{ swalte,	iswalt.
Swetten, to sweat,	{ swette, }	iswet.
	{ swatte, }	iswat.

PRESENT.

PRET.

PAST PART.

Thretten, to threaten,	{ thrette, thratte,	ithret. ithrat.
------------------------	------------------------	--------------------

Cacche (catch), *lacchen* (seize), *techen* (teach), make the
preterites *cazte*, *cauzte*; *lazte*, *lauzte*; *tazte*, *tauzte*.

Habben (*hebban*), to have, is thus conjugated:—

Indic. Pres. 1. habbe (*hebbe*, have).

2. hafst (*havest*, *hast*, *hest*).

3. hafth (*haveth*, *hath*, *heth*).

Plural, 1, 2, 3. habbeth, haveth.

Pret. hafde, havede, hade, hadde, hedde.

Class iii.

INDICATIVE MOOD—*Tellen* (A.S. *tellan*), to tell.

E.E.		PRESENT.	A.S.	
Sing.	Plural.		Sing.	Plural.
1. telle,	telleth.		telle,	{ a. tellaſ. b. telle.
2. tellest, telst, }	telleth.		telst,	tellad.
3. telleth, telth, }	telleth,		telſ,	tellaſ.
		PRET.		
1. tealde, tolde,	tealden, tolden. }		tealde,	tealdon.
2. tealdest, toldest,	tealden, tolden. }		tealdest,	tealdon.
3. tealde, tolde,	tealden, tolden. }		tealde,	tealdon.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. telle.	telle.
Plur. tellen.	tellon.

	E.E.	PRET.	A.S.
Sing.	tealde, tolde.	}	tealde.
Plur.	tealden, tolden.		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	telle.	tele.
Plur.	telleth.	{ a. tellaþ, b. telle.

GERUND.

to tellenne.	to tellanne.
--------------	--------------

PRES. PART.

tellinde.	tellende.
-----------	-----------

PAST PART.

i-teald,	}	geteald.
i-told.		

If the root of the verb ends in a double consonant, the 2nd pers. sing. imp. ends in *-e*, as *sullen*, to sell, imp. *sulle*. In other cases the final *-e* is dropped. To this class belong the following verbs:—

PRESENT.		PRET.	PAST PART.
Beggen, beyen,	} to buy,	bozte.	ibozt.
Bigen, biggen,			
Bringen, to bring,		brozte,	ibrozt.
Reche, to reck,		rozte,	irozt.
Seche, to seek,		sozte.	isozt.
Sellen,	} to sell,	{ sealde, solde,	iseald. isold.
Sullen,			
Worchen,	} to work,	wrozte,	iwrozt.
Werchen,			
<i>þenchen</i> , to seem,		{ þozte, þuzte,	iþozt.

Seggen, seyen, to say, makes 2nd and 3rd pers. indic. *seist (sayst)*; *seith (sayþ)*; 3rd pers. pret. *sede (seide)*.

Legge, to lay, makes 3rd pers. pret. *lede (leide)*.

Willen, to will, makes 1st pres. indic. *wille, wolle*; 2nd, *wilt, wolt*; 3rd, *wile, wule*, pl. *willeth*; pret. 1. *wolde, wulde*; 2. *woldst*; 3. *wolde*.

II. STRONG (OR IRREGULAR) VERBS.

DIVISION I.

(No change of vowel in the preterite plural.)

INFINITIVE MOOD—*Holden*¹ (A. S. *healdan*), to hold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

E. E.		PRESENT.	A. S.	
Sing.	Plural.	Sing.	Plural.	
1. holde,	holdeth.	healde,	{ a. healdað. b. healde.	
2. holdest,	holdeth.	hylst.	healdað.	
3. halt,	holdeth.	hylt, healt,	healdað.	

PRET.

1. heold,	heolden,	}	heöld,	heöldon.
held,	helden.			
2. heolde,	heolden,	}	heólde,	heöldon.
helde,	helden.			
3. heold,	heolden,	}	heöld,	heöldon.
held,	helden.			

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Sing. holde.	healden.
Plur. holden.	healdon.

¹ In the Kentish dialect it is written *bealden (bealde)*.

	E.E.	PRET.	A.S.
Sing.	heolde, helde.	}	heólde.
Plur.	heolden, helden.		heóldon.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	hold.	heald.
Plur.	{ a. holdeth. b. holde.	{ a. healdaþ. b. healde.

GERUND.

to holdenn.	to healdanne.
-------------	---------------

PRES. PART.

holdinde.	healdende.
-----------	------------

PAST PART.

iholden.	gehealden.
----------	------------

The verbs belonging to this division may be divided
three classes :—

1st class, *e* or *a* (originally *æ* or *ea*) in the preterite.

2nd class, *eo* or *e* in the preterite.

3rd class, *o* or *u* in the preterite.

Class i.

PRES.	PRET.	PAST PART.
a. Beren, to bear,	{ ber, bar, bor,	iboren.
Bidden, to ask, bid,	{ bed, bad,	iboden.
Bihoten, to promise,	bihet,	bihoten.
Breken, to break,	{ brec, brak, brok,	ibroken.

PRES.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Eten, to eat,	{ et, at, }	eten.
Forjeten, to forget,	{ forjet, forjat, forjot, }	forjoten, forjeten.
Fon, fongen, to take,	{ feng, veng, }	ifongen.
3iven, 3even, to give,	{ 3ef, 3af, yaf, }	izeven, izoven.
Hoten, to command,	het,	ihoten.
Hebben, to heave,	{ haf, hof, hef, }	ihoven.
Liggen, to lie,	lei,	ileien.
Sitten, to sit,	{ set, sat, }	iseten.
Speken, to speak,	{ spec, spak, spok, }	ispeken, ispoken.
Steken, to close,	{ stek, stac, }	istoken. isteken.
Stelen, to steal,	{ stel, stal }	istele. i-stolen.
Wreken, to wreak,	{ wreck wrak, }	iwreken. iwroken.
b. Cumen, } to come, Comen, }	{ com, cam, }	i-comen. icumen.
Nimen, to take,	{ nem, nom, nam, }	inomen, inumen.

Class ii.

PRES.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Beten, to beat,	{ beot, bet, }	i-beten.
Cnowen, to know,	{ kneow, knew, }	i-knownen.
Fallen, } to fall, Vallen, }	{ feol, fel, fil, vil, vul, }	ifallen.
Gnawen,	gnew,	ignawen.
Hewen, to hew,	{ heow, hew, }	ihewen.
Hongen, } to hang, Hingen, }	{ heng, hing, }	ihangen.
Hote, to command, name,	{ hight, het, }	ihoten. ihaten.
Lepen, } to leap, Lhepen, }	{ leop, lep, hlip, }	ilopen.
Leten, } to let, Laten, }	let,	iletten.
Slepen, to sleep,	{ sleop, slep, }	islepen.
Swepen, to sweep,	swep,	iswopen.
Wepen, to weep,	{ weop, wep, }	iwepen. iwopen.
Waschen, to wash,	{ wesch, weisch, weis, }	iwaschen.
Waxen, to grow,	{ wex, wax, }	iwoxen. iwaxen.
Welde, to wield,	weld,	iwolden.

Class iii.

PRES.		PRET.		PAST PART.
Drazen,	} to draw,	dro3,	}	idrazen,
Drawen,		drou3,		idrawen.
		dru3,		
Faren, to go,		for,		ifaren.
Hle3en,	} to laugh,	lo3,	}	ilo3en.
Laz3en,		logh,		
Laghen,		lough,		
Forsaken, to forsake.		forsoc,		forsaken.
Graven, to bury,		grof,		igraven.
		slo3, slow,		isla3en.
Sle, to slay,		slou3,		islawen.
		slug,		isleien.
Schapen, to create,		schop,		ischopen.
		schup,		ischapen.
Standen, to stand,		stod,		istanden.
		toc,	}	itaken.
Taken, to take,		tok,		
		touk,		
		woc,	}	iwaken.
Waken, to watch,		wok,		
		wouk,		

DIVISION II.

(Change of vowel in the preterite plural.)

INFINITIVE MOOD—*Binden*, to bind; *drifan*, to drive; *clúfen*, to cleave. (A.S. *Bindan*, *drifan*, *clúfan*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	E.E.		PRESENT.		A.S.	
Sing.		Plural.		Sing.		Plural.
binde,		bindeþ.		binde,		<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="font-size: 3em; vertical-align: middle;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>a.</i> bindaþ, <i>ð.</i> binde.¹ </div> </div>

¹ *ð.* Followed by the personal pronoun.

	E. E.	PRESENT.		A. S.
	Sing.	Plural.	Sing.	Plural.
	drive,	driveth.	drife,	{ a. drífað, b. drífe.
	cleve,	cleveth.	clúfe,	{ a. clúfað, b. clúfe.
2. bindest (binst),	bindep.	binst,		{ a. bindað, b. binde.
drivest,	driveth.	drífst,		{ a. drífað, b. drífe.
cleves,	cleveth.	clúfst,		{ a. clúfað, b. clúfe.
3. bint,	bindep.	bint,		{ a. bindað, b. binde.
drifth,	driveth.	drífð,		{ a. drífað, b. drífe.
clefth,	cleveth.	clúfð,		{ a. clúfað, b. clúfe.

PRET.

1. bond (band),	bunden.	band,	bundon.
drof (draf),	driven.	dráf,	drifon.
claf (claf, clef),	cloven.	cléaf,	clufon.
2. bunde, bonde,	bunden.	bunde,	bundon.
drive,	driven.	drife,	drifon.
cleve,	cloven.	clufe,	clufon.
3. bond (band),	bunden.	band,	bundon.
drof (draf),	driven.	dráf,	drifon.
clef (claf, clef),	cloven.	cléaf,	clufon.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	E. E.	PRESENT.	A. S.
Sing.	binde.		binde.
	drive.		drífe.
	cleve.		clúfe.

	E.E. PRESENT.	A.S.
Plur.	binden.	bindon.
	driven.	drifon.
	cleven.	clúfon.

PRET.

Sing.	bunde.	bunde.
	drive.	drife.
	cleve.	clufe.
Plur.	bunden.	bundon.
	driven.	drifon.
	cloven.	clufon.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	bind.	bind.
	drif.	dríf.
	clef.	clúf.
Plur.	a. bindeth.	bindaþ.
	b. binde.	binde.
	a. driveth.	drífaþ.
	b. drive.	drífe.
	a. cleveth.	clúfaþ.
	b. cleve.	clúfe.

GERUND.

bindenne.	to bindanne.
drivenne.	„ drífanne.
clevenne.	„ clúfanne.

PRES. PART.

bindinde.	bindende.
drivinde.	drífende.
clevinde.	clúfende.

E.E.	PAST PART.	A.S.
ibunden.		gebunden.
idriuen.		gedrifen.
icloven.		geclofen.

The following verbs belong to this division of the storr conjugation :—

Class i.

PRES.		PRET.	PAST PART.
a. Binden, to bind,		{ band, bond, bound, }	ibunden, ibonden.
Bersten, } Bresten, }	to burst,	{ barst, brast, borst, brost, }	ibrusten, ibrosten.
Biginnen, to begin,		{ bigan, bigon, }	bigunnen. bigonnen.
Climben, to climb,		{ clamb, clomb, clemb, }	iclumben, iclomben.
Delven, to dig,		{ dalf, delf, }	idolven.
Drinken, to drink,		{ drank, dronk, }	idrunken. idronken.
Eornen, } Yernen, }	to run,	{ arn, orn, yarn, }	irunnen, iurnen.
Fizte, to fight,		{ faght, fozt, }	ifozten.
Finden, to find,		{ fand, fond, found, }	ifunden, ifonden.

PRES.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Grinden, to grind,	{ grond, ground,	igrunden. igrounden.
3elden, to requite,	{ 3ald, 3eld, 3old,	3olden.
Helpen, to help,	{ halp, holp,	iholpen.
Melten, to melt,	{ malt, molt,	imolten.
Singen, to sing,	{ sang, song,	isungen. isongen.
Sinken, to sink,	{ sank, sonk,	isunken. isonken.
Swelzen, to swell,	{ swal, swol,	iswolzen.
Swinken, to labour,	{ swank, swonc,	iswunken. iswonken.
b. Bergen, } Bermen, } to protect,	{ barg, berg,	iborzen. iborwen.
Kerven, to cut,	{ karf, kerf,	icorven.
Sterven, to die,	{ starf, sterf,	istorven.
Werpen, to throw,	{ warp, werp,	iworpen.

Class ii.

PRES.	PRET.	PAST PART.
Abiden, to abide,	{ abad, abod,	abiden.

PRES.		PRET.		PAST PART.
Biten, to bite,		{ bat, bot, }		ibiten.
Gliden, to glide,		{ glad, glod, }		igliden.
Riden, to ride,		{ rad, rod, }		iriden.
Risen, to rise,		{ ras, ros, }		irisen.
Schinen, to shine,		{ schan, schon, }		ischinen.
Schripen, to shrive,		{ schraf, schrof, }		ischripen.
Smiten, to smite,		{ smat, smot, }		ismiten.
Striven, to strive,		{ straf, strof, }		istriven.
Writen, to write,		{ wrat, wrot, }		iwriten.

Class iii.

	PRES.		PRET.		PAST PART.
a.	Beden, }	to offer,	{ bead, bed, }		iboden.
	Beoden, }				
	Chesen, }	to choose,	{ cheas, ches, }		ichosen.
	Cheosen, }				
	Crepen, }	to creep,	{ creap, crep, }		icropen.
	Creopen, }				
	Fleon, to flee,		{ fle3, flaw, fleiz, vleaz, }		iflo3en. iflowen.
	Lesen, to lose,		{ leas, les, }		iloren. ilosen.

PRES.		PRET.	PAST PART.
Lezen, to lie,		{ le3, lei3,	ilo3en. ilowen.
Schete, to shout,		schet,	ischoten.
Seon, to see,		{ se3, seg, sei3, saw, si3, sagh,	iso3en, isen.
Sethen, to seethe, boil.		{ seth, seath,	isoden.
Teon, } Ten, } to go, conduct,		{ teg, te3,	ito3en.
6. Bugen, } Buwen, } to bow,		{ beah, bei3,	ibo3en. ibowen.
Dre3en, } Drien, } to suffer,		{ dreg, dre3, drei3,	idro3en.
Lute, } Lote, } to bow,		{ leat, let,	iloten.
Loken, to lock,		{ leac, leak,	iloken.
Stigen, } Stizen, } to ascend,		{ steg, staw, ste3, stegh, stei3, stih, sti3,	isti3en.
Wrien, } Wri3en, } to cover,		{ wrei3, wre3,	iwro3en.

General Remarks on the Strong (or Irregular) Conjugation.

1. If the base of a verb ends in *-e* or *-eo*, the *-e* or *-eo* is the *-e* of the inflexions in the present indicative and imperative, as *flep* = flees; *sep* = sees.

2. Verbs having *-d* or *-t* as the final letter of the root-

syllable, take *-t* instead of *-deð* or *-teð*, as the personal inflexion, as *bint* = bindeth, binds; *grint* = grindeth, grinds; *halt* = holdeth, holds; *rit* = rideth, rides; *stont*, *stent* = standeth, stands.

3. The 2nd and 3rd pers. are frequently contracted thus: *est* = eatest; *binst* = bindest; *drinkþ* = drinks; *drifþ* = drives.

4. Verbs whose base originally terminated in *g* often retain it under the form *þ* in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. indic.: as *drawen*, to draw; *dra3st*, drawest; *dra3th*, draws; *fleon*, to fly; *flizst*, fliest; *flizþ*, flies; *wrien*, to cover; *wri3þ*, covers.

4. In some verbs the vowel is changed in the 3rd sing. pres. indic., as *holden*, to hold; *halt*, holds; *hoten*, to command, *hat*, commands; *stonden*, to stand, *stent*, stands.

III. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

Some verbs originally strong follow the weak conjugation:

<i>leten</i> , to let,	pret. <i>lette</i>	(orig. <i>let</i>).
<i>gripe</i> , to seize,	„ <i>grapte</i>	(orig. <i>grap</i> or <i>grop</i>).
<i>slep</i> , to sleep,	„ <i>slepte</i>	(orig. <i>slep</i>).
<i>treden</i> , to tread,	„ <i>trodde</i>	(orig. <i>træd</i>).

1. *Agen*, *awen*, *ogen*, *owen*, to own; 1st and 3rd sing. pres. indic. *ah*, *agh* (*auh*, *awh*, *a3*, *ouh*, *og*, *ow*); 2nd, *awe* (*owe*); pl. *a3en*, *ozen*, *ogen*, *owen* (*owe*); pret. *aghte*, *auhte*, *a3te*, *ogte*, *oughie*.

2. *Am* is the 1st pers. sing. of the old infinitive *wesan*, to be. The other persons are as follows:—2nd pers. pres. indic. *ert*, *art*; 3rd, *is*; pret. 1st, *was*, *wes*; 2nd, *were*; pl. *weren*, *were*.¹

3. *An*, 1st pers. sing., from *unnen*, to grant.

¹ *Sind* (are), occasionally occurs, but is not used after 1250.

4. *Beon*, *ben*, to be; ger. *beonne*, *byenne*. 1st pers. pres. indic. *be*, *bi*, *beo*; 2nd, *bist*, *best*; 3rd, *biþ*, *beth*, *beeth*, *buth*: 1st, 2nd and 3rd pers. pl. *beth*, *buth*; imper. pl. *beth*, *buth*.

5. *Cunnen*, to be able, to know; 1st sing. pres. indic. *can*, *con*; 2nd, *cunne*, *const*, *canst*, *cost*; 3rd, *con*; pl. *connen*, *cunnen*; pret. *cuiþe*, *couthe*, *coude* (Eng. could); pp. *cuth*, *couth*, known.

6. *Daren*, to dare. 1st sing. pres. indic. *dar*, *der*; 2nd, *darst*, *derst*; 3rd, *dar*; pl. *durren*, *dorren*, *dorre*; pret. *dorste*, *durst*.

7. *Don*, to do; ger. *doenne*, *done*. 1st sing. pres. indic. *do*; 2nd, *dest*, *dost*; 3rd, *deth*; pl. *doth*; pret. *dude*, *dide*, *dede*; imp. *doth*.

8. *Dowen*, *dowe*, to be good, worth; 1st and 3rd pres. *dow*; pl. *dowen*, *dowe*. *Deih* (properly a present) is sometimes used for *doughte* (pret.).

9. *Gon*, to go; ger. *gonne*, *gone*. 1st sing. pres. indic. *go*; 2nd, *gest*, *gost*; 3rd, *geth* (pl. *goth*); pret. *eode*, *geode*, *gede*, *yode*; imp. *goth*; pp. *igon*.

10. *Mogen*, *mozen*, *mowen*, to be able, may; 1st sing. pres. indic. *may* (*mai*, *mey*); 2nd, *mizt*, *migt*; 3rd, *may* (*mai*); pl. *mowen*, *mouen*, *muwen*; pret. *mizte*, *mighte* (*moghte*, *moughie*).

11. 1st sing. pres. indic. *mot*,¹ *may*, *must*; 2nd, *most*; 3rd, *mot*, *mut*; pl. *moten*; pret. *moste*, *muste*.

12. 1st sing. pres. indic. *shal* (*ssel*), *shall*; 2nd, *schall* (*ssel*); 3rd, *shal* (*ssel*); pl. *schulen* (*ssollen*, *ssolle*, *ssule*, *sule*); pret. *schulde*, *scholde* (*ssolde*).

13. 1st and 3rd sing. pres. indic. *þarf* (*therf*, *þar*, *ther*), *need*; 2nd, *thurfe*; pl. *thurfen*; pret. *þurfte*, *therfte* (*thurte*).²

¹ Cp. Ger. *muß*, *musste*.

² *Thurste* is sometimes written for *durst*, taking the signification belonging to *þurfte* and *durst*.

14. *Unnen*, to grant; 1st sing. *an*.

15. *Witen*, to know. 1st sing. pres. indic. *wot* (*woot*, *wat*); 2nd, *wost*; 3rd, *wot* (*woot*, *wat*); pl. *wileth*; pret. *wiste*, *wuste*; imp. sing. *wite*, pl. *wileth*.

16. 1st sing. pres. indic. *wille* (*wolle*, *wulle*); 2nd, *wilt*, *wolt*; 3rd, *wile*, *wole*, *wule*; pl. *willeth*, *wolleth*.

Negative Forms.—*Am*, *have*, *wille*, *witen* (know), take negative forms, as *nam*, am not; *nis*, is not; *nas*, was not; *nade*, had not; *nile*, will not; *not*, knows not; *nuste*, knew not.

Dialectical Varieties.—(a) *Weak Verbs*.

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

a. Present Tense. (1) For the inflexions of the Northern and Midland dialects in the indic. pres. tense see p. xii. (2) The East-Midland dialect has a tendency to omit *-t* in the 2nd pers. sing., as *findes* = finest.

b. Preterite Tense. (1) The Northern dialect drops *all* the inflexions of persons in the sing. and pl. of weak (and strong) verbs, as 1st, 2nd, 3rd sing. *loved*, *spak*; 1st, 2nd, 3rd pl. *loved*, *spak*. (2) The West-Midland dialect has *-es* (*-e3*) as the inflexion of the 2nd pers. pret. of weak verbs, as *lovedes* = lovedest.

The Southern and Midland dialects frequently drop the *-n* in all persons of the plural, as *lovede* = *loveden*, loved.

The Northern dialect prefers the forms *ledde*, *lefte*, *redde*, to *ladde*, *lafte*, *radde* (see p. xxxvi.).

II. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The Northern and West-Midland dialects (and occasionally the East-Midland) employ *-es* instead of *-eth* in the 2nd pers. imperative of weak and strong verbs, e.g. *loves*, *love* (*ye or you*).

(b) *Strong Verbs.*

1. The Northern dialect employs the preterites *bar*, *brak*, *f*, *spak*, instead of *ber*, *brek*, *gef* (3*ef*), *spek*.
2. The Northern dialect retains the *a* in pret. belonging Classes i. and ii. Division II., as—

NORTHERN.	SOUTHERN.	NORTHERN.	SOUTHERN.
band,	bond.	ras,	ros (roos).
bat,	bot.	smat,	smot (smoot).
fand,	fond.	stang,	stong.
glad,	glod.		

III. INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. The Northern dialect drops the infinitive ending *-en* *-e*, as well as the gerundial *-enne*.¹
2. The Southern dialect abounds in infinitives in *-ie*² (*e*, *y*), remnants of older forms in *-ian*, as *hatie*, to hate (A.S. *hat-i-an*); *herye*, to praise (A.S. *her-i-an*); *makie*, to make (A.S. *mac-i-an*). These forms are *never* employed by any Northern writers.

IV. PARTICIPLES.

- a. The pres. participle in the Southern dialect ends in *ide*, in the Northern *-ande* (*-and*), and in the Midland in *ide* (*-end*).³
- b. The passive participle of strong verbs ends in *-en*, but *n* is often dropped in the Southern and Midland dialects

The gerundial inflection is often corrupted by Southern and Midland dialects into *-inge*, as *to sellinge* = *to sellenne*, to sell. As early as the twelfth century we find such forms as *to doende* = *to doenne*, to do; *to delende* = *to inne*, to divide.

¹ The Mid. Prov. dialects of the Southern counties still retain some of the infinitives, as *sowy*, to sow; *milky*, to milk.

² Present participles in *-inge* (*-ing*) are not uncommon in the Southern dialect, and the corruption commenced before A.D. 1300.

(never in the Northern), as *ibroke* = *ibroken* ; *icorve* = *icorven* (cut).

The Northern dialect always omits the prefix *i-* (*y-*), as *bunden* for *ibunden*, *corven* for *icorven*.

(c) *Anomalous Verbs.*

I. The Northern dialect has the following peculiar forms :—

1. *Sal* (= Southern, *schal*, *ssal*), shall, takes *no* inflexion of person in the indic. mood, e.g. present tense, 1st, 2nd, 3rd, sing. *sal*, pl. *sal* ; past tense, 1st, 2nd, 3rd, sing. *suld*, *sulde* (= Southern, *schulde*, *scholde*, *ssolde*), should.
2. *Wil* (pret. *wald*, *walde*) = will, follows the same rule.
3. The verb *to be* is thus conjugated :—1st sing. pres. indic. *-es* ; 2nd, *-es* (occasionally *-ert*) ; 3rd, *-es* ; pl. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, *-er* (occasionally *-es*) ; pret. sing. 1st, 2nd, 3rd, *was* (occasionally *war*) ; pl. *ware* (*war*).
4. The following contracted forms are of frequent occurrence :—*bus* = behoves ; *bud* = behoved ; *ha* = to have ; *ma* = to make ; *mas*, *mase* = makes ; *ta* = to take ; *tas*, *tase* = takes ; *tan* = taken ; *slan* = slain.
5. *Mun*, *mon*, shall, never occurs in any Southern dialect.

II. The West-Midland dialect contracts *schullen* or *schuln* (the pl. of *schal*) into *schin* (*schyn*) or *schun*, e.g. *þay schin knawe* = they shall know.

ADVERBS.

I. COMPARISON.

Adverbs are compared by the affixes *-er* (positive) and *-est* (superlative).

II. PREFIXES.

a- (before a consonant), *an-* (before a vowel) ; as *aʒen*, again ; *anihte*, by night ; *aʒer*, yearly ; *an-ende*, lastly ; *anunder*, under.

Occasionally we find *of* instead of *a*, as *of buve*, above; *of newe*, newly; *adown* = *of dune*, downwards.

III. TERMINATIONS.

1. Adverbs that now end in *-ly* formerly ended in *-liche*. (The adjectival affix sing. is *-lich*.)

2. Adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding a final *-e*, as *soth*, *sooth*, true; *sothe*, *soothe*, truly.¹

3. *-es* (genitive); *alles*, altogether, of necessity, needs; *axenes*, against; *amiddes*, amidst; *amonges*, amongst; *bisides*, besides; *deathes*, at death, dead; *dazes*, by day; *lives*, alive; *nedes*, of necessity; *newes*, anew; *nizles*, by night; *togederes*, together. *Enes*, *ones*, once; *neodes*, needs; *twies*, twice; *hennes*, hence; *thries*, thrice,—are later forms for *en-e*, *henn-e* (*hennen*, *heon-an*); *neod-e*, *twie* (*twien*, A.S. *twitwā*); *thrie* (*thrien*, A.S. *þrýwa*).

4. *-linge*, as *allinge*, altogether; *hedlinge*, headlong; *growlinge*, on the face, prone; *triflinge*, playfully.

5. *-en* (*-e*), *abouten*, about; *befor-en*, *befor-n*, before; *buven*, above; *binnen*, *binne*, within; *with-out-en*, without.

-der, motion to, *hi-der*, *thider*, *whider*, hither, thither, whither.

-en (*-e*), motion from; *hennen*, *henne*, hence; *thennen*, *thenne*, thence; *whennen*, *whenne*, whence, which give rise to the later forms with genitive affix *-es*, as *hennes*, *thennes*, *whennes*.

Dialectical varieties.—1. The Scandinavian forms *hethen*, hence; *quethen* (*whethen*), whence; *thethen*, thence; *sum*, as,—are not used in the Southern dialect.

2. The Northern dialect prefers the prefix *on-* (*o-*) to *a-*, as *on-slepe*, asleep; *o-bak*, aback; *on-rounde*, around.

¹ The loss of the final *-e* explains the modern use of *adjectives* for adverbs, as *right* = rightly; *long* = long (time).

3. In the West-Midland dialect we find *in-* as an adverbial prefix, as *in-blande*, *in-lyche*, alike, *in-mydde*, amidst; *in-monge*, amongst.¹ Chaucer uses *in-fere*, together.

4. The Southern affix *-linge* becomes *-linges* (Sc. *-lins*) in the Northern dialect, as *grovelinges*, on the face, prone; *handlinges*, hand to hand; *hedlinges*, headlong.

5. The Northern dialect employs *-gate* (way) as a suffix, as *al-gate*, always; *how-gate*, how-so; *thus-gate*, thus wise; *swa-gate*, so-wise, in such a manner.

6. *In-with*, within; *ut-with*, without; *forwit*, before—are peculiar to the Northern dialect.

PREPOSITIONS.

The Northern dialect employs *fra* for the Southern *fram* (*vram*), Midland *fro*, from; *at, til*, for the Southern *to*; *amel, emel*, Southern *amiddes*, amid. *Mide, mid*, with; *toppe*, above, are unknown to the Northern dialect.

CONJUNCTIONS.

1. *If* takes a negative form in the West-Midland dialect, as *nif* = if not.

2. *No-but* occurs in the Midland dialect for *only*.

3. *Warn, warne* = unless; *thofquether* = nevertheless, are unknown in the Southern dialect.

4. *Ac*, but, is not found in the Northern dialect.

INTERJECTIONS.

Quine, quin (= *whi-ne*, why not) occurs in the Northern dialect for *O that!*

¹ *Alike, along* (on account of), *among*, are corruptions of A. S. *gellec, gelong, gemang*. Cp. *enough* = A. S. *genob*.

The following sentences are intended to supply some deficiencies in the "Specimens," and to serve as Exercises on the Grammatical Outlines.

1. Sute Jhesu my *soule* fode,
Thin werkes bueth bo (both) swete ant gode !
2. Sute Jhesu min *huerte* gleem,
Ybore thow were in Bedlehem.
3. Nime ȝeme of *chirche* stevene.
4. Thre maner peyne man fangeth for his *senne* nede.
5. The wonde swelth and aketh,
So doth the *naddre* stenge.
6. At the *woke* end spak the ermyte.
7. I have the leten *eddre* blod.
8. The wod bigan to springe
Of *Rymenhilde* weddinge.
9. The *quene* fader Corineus was ded.
10. Ac *helle* king is oreles (pitiless).
11. This wes on oure *levedy* even.
12. From dethe to lyve he aros thurf oure *levedi* lore,
13. Thu schalt beo *themperesse* peer.
14. That was thin *uncle* lond.
15. Crist was ycleped *hevene* king.
16. Heo wep for hire *sone* blod.
17. Here gode hi solde stille (secretly), and to *thapostlene* fet
hit caste.
18. *He knoweth one (alone) ilc sterre* name.

19. A dosyn of *doggen*.
20. Gerner of *gromene* maw.
21. Tuo maner *soulen*.
22. Here wei to schipe hi nome,
And to the *fowelen* parays (parish) thulke dai hi come.
23. Pilatus thurf the *gywene* wille him demde to dethe.
24. Alle *soulen* day an urthe (on earth) riȝt is to holde heȝe.
25. At fourti *dazen* ende.
26. We nimeth ȝeme of *manne* bure (dwelling).
27. Hit is softest mine *bridde*.
28. I am loth smale *foȝle*.
29. Therthe schoke, the sonne dym bycome in *thare* tyde.
30. Ich am that lyȝt
Of alle *ther* wordle rounde.
31. Atten spousynge ther mot be ryȝt asent of bothe, of
man and of *ther* wymman eke.
32. The niȝtingale *hi* iseȝe.
33. To *there* blisse God us bring!
34. Tofore oure levedi *thane* schrewe he gan lede.
35. Zueche tyeares driveth *thane* devil vram *the* herte, as *thet*
weter cacheth *thane* hond out of the kechene.
36. He lyst (loses) al his time and (both) *the* niȝt and *thane*
day.
37. He restede *thane* zevende day.
38. Mid grate wille Ich habbe *therne* Paske wywylnd (de-
sired), *thet* is to zigge *therne* dyath, *thise* ssame, *thise*
wendinge (departure).

39. He ʒaf him *thisne* ring.
40. Of *thisen* we habbeth vayre vorbysne (example).
41. Alle we habbeth *enne* vader.
42. To *thyssere* joyen (joys) scholle be y-leyd (placed) alle the joyen that moʒe (may) be yseyd (named).
43. To *thyssere* joye longye (belong) scholle alle the joyen that thyre (to her) folle (may befall) of hyre chyldre God.
44. Thet (that) thet is to moche to *onen* is to lite to *anothren*.
45. For ʒyf (if) thy wil rejoith (rejoices) more in *enyas kennes* thynges, thou ne onourest (honourest) naʒt God aryʒt.
46. He ne fond *nones kunnes* blisse.
47. In euche (each) *oitheres kunnes* quede (fault)
Ich the forʒeve at thisse nede.
48. *Ures forme* faderes gult we abigget (suffer for) alle
49. He is *elches* (each) godes (good) ful.
50. He nemnede *evereches* (every) owe (own) name.
51. Nou of alle *thotherene* (the other) kynedoms aʒen his non was.
52. He scel ne *nenne othrenne* wray (betray),
53. He ssel verst yzy (see) the ʒeve dyadliche synnes, of *huychen* we habbeth yspeke and of *echen* ssel him ssrive (confess)
54. Hi wile deme *evrinne* be his dedes.
55. Tho (those) scullen habben *hardne* dom.
56. He *schal fulne* (foul) deth afonge (take).

57. He *yzeȝ* (saw) *ane gratne* dyevel.
58. Hii nome *an grete* loverding.
59. The vissere (fisherman) heth more blisse vor to nime
ane *gratne* visse (fish) then ane *littlene*.
60. Children bevly (avoid) the velaȝrede of the *greden*.
61. Dyath is to the *guoden* beginnyng of live.
62. Me (one) ssel (shall) zeche red (advice) ate *yealden* and
naȝt mid the *yonge*.
63. Roboam vorlet thane red of the *yealden* guode men.
64. Of here *beire* (*bey* = both) name me makede *anne* (one).
65. Mi muth (mouth) haveth *tweire kunne* salve.
66. He tekþ ous to knawe the greate thinges vram (from)
the little, the *preciouses* vram the *viles*.
67. *A* vul (fell) and ne miȝte no leng (longer) sitte.
68. *Ha* beat (beats) and smit and (both) wyf and children
ase *ha* were out of his wytte.
69. The dyevel *hine* dep (causes) to worke.
70. The kyngdom of hevene is *hyre*.
71. Out berste *aithere* hire eȝe (eye).
72. *Heore* is this worldes wynne (bliss).
73. *Here aither* was of other glad.
74. Al this lond beo (shall be) *ȝoure*.
75. Hit is *ure*. *Oure* is the maistry.
76. The kyndom of hevene is *heren*.
77. *Some of ouren* wenten to the grave.

78. His kinges croune he nom and sette *is* upe (upon) the rode heved (head of the cross).
79. Huanne he (cat) heth mid *hire* (the mouse) long yplayed thanne he *his* eth (eats).
80. The guode man yeaf his cou to the preste ; he *his* nom and zente *hise* to the othren thet he hedde.
81. Heo wess (washed) the meseles vet (feet) and wipede *is* nessce (softly) and custe *is* wel suete.
82. Bi *than* 3e wite (learn) *than* ende.
83. Evrilc man mid *than* the (that) he haveð, mai biggen (buy) hevene-riche (heaven).
84. Thou hest yby (been) onboȝsam (disobedient) to thine vader and to thine moder and to *than* to huam thou ssoldest bouȝe (obey).
85. Prede is ybounde ine *than* thet ȝelph (boasts) of his wytte.
86. And ȝet for al *than* hii broȝte oure loverd to dethe.
87. The stone upe *whan* ich sitte ich fond ligge in a wei ther no need to ston nas.
88. Tho adde he al is wille vor *wanne* (for which) it was al ido.
89. This were ure faderes of *wan* we beth ycome (descended).
90. *Icham* mid min fon biset ; ȝif *ichom* may overcome, Ich ȝou wolle in gret richesse do (place).
91. Ne sixtu (seest thou) wel *icham* alive, *icholle* segge hou it is.
92. *Ichabbe* ysed hit.
93. *Thritte* wynter *havy* woned in londe her.

94. Mine *wolly* have away.
95. To love *nuly* I noht wonde (cease).
96. *Mosti* ryden to Rybbesdale.
97. For (*wolny*, *nulmi*) hi sul fle into the pine of helle.
98. Of *hit* woe wille I wete (learn),
Gif (if) I may *hit* bales bete.
99. Al *get* bit (bites) o twinne (in two),
100. Alle *hes* hadde wið migte (force) bigeten (obtained),
101. Alle *wes* oȝen to haven in mode (mind),
102. Frend (friends) sul *wit* ben,
And trewðe pligt (pledge) nu *unc* bitwen.
103. Ledeð (pass) samen (together) *gunker* lif.
104. Ic sal reden (advise) *gunc* boðen.
105. Ihesu for love thou *stehe* on rode,
For love thou *seȝe* thine heorte blode.
106. Thou *ȝeve* us weole (weal) and wunne (bliss).
107. Enes thu *sunge*.
108. Thu *slowe* the holi prophete.
109. And ȝet (yet) of graunt (consent) thou *myȝtez* fayle.
110. Thou *woldeȝ* knawe þer of the stage.
111. The kid is to *seethinge*.
112. And the dragoun stood bifore the womman, thet was
to *beringe* chiild, that whan she hadde born chiild, he
shulde devoure hir sone. And she chiildede a sone
male, that was to *reulinge* alle folkes in an yren ȝerd.
113. The kirke he thrette (threatened) for to *brennyng*.
114. *Thu therof lixt.*

115. Thu *spezt* folliche.
116. Hi (they) *werthe* a slepe.
117. He *worth* sik.
118. Lucie *werth* aslepe.
119. Him ne *hyt* non other mede (reward).
120. That vuel (disease) that thu hast so longe ihad ne
 schal no leng ileste, ac thu *worst* hol and sound,
 wordle withouten ende.
121. Him thoȝte he *clemde* upon this treo.
122. No man ne *therste* hire brothere nempne (name).
123. Hit *schynde* briȝte.
124. He (rope) nas *isponne* ne *iweve*, ac *ibroide* of strenges
 longe and siththe (afterwards) as me *knyt* a net, *iknyt*
 hard and strong, of hard hors her y-maked.
125. His flesch was *ignawe*.
126. And whon he wolde *alles* bicomē mon.
 He moste be boren of a wommon.
127. No man wolde of him thenche *ene*,
 He was *allinge* forȝute clene.
128. Archebischof was he ymaked, *unthonkes* theȝ (though)
 hit were,
129. And myn *unthonkes* Ich am iwedded.

I.

ENGLISH VERSION OF GENESIS AND EXODUS,

ABOUT A.D. 1250.

The following passages in the life of Joseph are taken from *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, an Early English song, edited for the Early English Text Society by R. Morris, 1865.

Nothing is known of the author of this interesting version; the form from which it is edited was written shortly before A.D. 1300, the dialect is most probably the *East-Midland* of South-
York.

The italics in the following extracts are the expansions of the contractions.

[Lines 1907—1994.]

For sextene ger ioseph was old,
 Quane he was in-to egipte sold;
 He was iacobes gunkeste sune,
 Brickest of waspene,¹ and of witter wune,
 If he sag hise breðere mis-faren, 5
 His fader he it gan vn-hillen & baren;
 He wulde ðat he sulde hem ten
 ðat he wel ðewed sulde ben;
 for-ði [he] wexen² wið gret nið
 And hate, for it in ille [herte] lið. 10
 ðo wex her hertes niðful & bold
 Quanne he hem adde is dremes told,
 ðat his handful stod rigt up soren,
 And here it leigen alle hem bi-foren;

¹ For wasteme.

² MS. wexem.

And sunne, & mone, & sterres .xi^e.¹ 15
 wurðeden him wið frigti luue;
 Ɔo seide his fader, "hu mai Ɔis sen
 Ɔat Ɔu salt Ɔus wurðed ben,
 Ɔat Ɔine breðere, and ic, and she
 Ɔat Ɔe bar, sulen luten Ɔe?" 20
 Ɔus he chidden hem bi-twen,
 Ɔoge Ɔhogte iacob siðe it sulde ben.
 Hise breðere kepten at sichem
 Hirdnesse, & iacob to sen hem
 sente ioseph to dalen ebron; 25
 And he was redi his wil to don.
 In sichem feld ne fonde hem nogt,
 In dotayn he fond hem sogt;
 He knewen him fro feren kumen,
 Hate hem on ros, in herte numen; 30
 Swilc nið & hate ros hem on,
 He reddeden alle him for to slon.
 "Nai," quat ruben, "slo we him nogt,
 Oðer sinne may ben wrogt,
 Qwat-so him drempte Ɔor qwiles he slep, 35
 In Ɔis Ɔisternesne,² old and dep,
 Get wurð [h]e worpen naked and cold,
 Qwat-so his dremes owen a-wold."
 Ɔis dede was don wið³ herte sor,
 Ne wulde ruben nogt drechen Ɔor; 40
 He gede and sogte an oðer stede,
 His erue in bettre lewse he dede;
 Vdas dor⁴ qwiles gaf hem red,
 Ɔat was fulfilt of derne sped;
 fro galaad men wið chafare 45
 Sag he Ɔor kumen wið spices ware;

¹ For endluee.² For cisternesne.³ For wið.⁴ For Ɔor.

To-warde egipte he gunne ten.
 Iudas tagte hu it sulde ben,
 Ioseph solde ðe breðere ten,
 for .xxx. plates to ðe chapmen ; 50
 Get wast better he ðus was sold,
 dan¹ he ðor storue *in* here wold.
Dan ruben cam ðider a-gen,
 to ðat cisternes he ran to sen ;
 He missed Ioseph and ðhogte swem, 55
 wende him slagen, set up an rem ;
 Nile he blinnen, swilc sorwe he cliued,
 Til him he sweren ðat he liued.
 ðo nomen he ðe childes srud,
 ðe iacob hadde mad im *in* prud ; 60
 He kides blod he wenten it,
 ðo was ðor-on an rewli lit.
 Sondere men he it leiden on,
 And senten it iacob *in*-to ebron,
 And shewed it him, and boden him sen 65
 If his childes wede it migte ben ;
 Senten him bode he funden it.
 ðo iacob sag dat² sori writ,
 He gret. and saide ðat "wilde der
 Hauen min sune swolgen her." 70
 His cloðes rent, in haigre srid,
 Long grot and sorge is him bi-tid.
 His sunes comen him to sen,
 And hertedin him if it migte ben ;
 "Nai ! nai !" quat he, "helped³ it nogt, 75
 Mai non herting on me ben wrogt ;
 ic sal ligten til helle dale,
 And groten ðor min sunes bale."

¹ For ðan.

² For ðat.

³ For helpeð.

(ðor was in helle a sundri stede,
 wor ðe seli folc reste dede ; 80
 ðor he stunden til helpe cam,
 Til ihesu crist fro ðeden¹ he[m] nam.)
 ðe chapmen skiuden here fare,
 In-to egipte ledden ðat ware ;
 wið putifar ðe kinges stiward, 85
 He maden swiðe bigetel forward,
 So michel fe ðor is hem told,
 He hauen him bogt, he hauen sold.

[Lines 2037—2446.]

P^utifar trewið hise wiwes tale,
 And haued² dempt iosep to bale ; 90
 He bad [him] ben sperd fast[e] dun,
 And holden harðe in prisun.
 An litel stund, quile he was ðer,
 So gan him luuen ðe prisuner,
 And him de³ chartre haueð bi-tagt, 95
 wið ðo prisunes to liuen in hagt.
 Or for misdede, or for on-sagen,
 ðor woren to ðat prisun dragen,
 On ðat ðe kinges kuppe bed,
 And on ðe made ðe kinges bred ; 100
 Hem drempte dremes boðen onigt,
 And he wurðen swiðe sore o-frigt ;
 Ioseph hem seruede ðor on sel,
 At here drink and at here mel,
 He herde hem m^urnen(.) he hem freinde for-qu^at ;
 Harde dremes ogen awold ðat. 106
 ðo seide he to ðe butuler,
 " Tel me ðin drem, mi broðer her.

¹ For ðeðen.

² For haueð.

³ For ðe.

Queðer-so it wurðe softe or strong[e],
ðe reching wurð on god bi-long[e].” 110

“**M**e drempte, ic stod at a win-tre,
ðat adde waxen buges ðre,
Orest it blomed, and siðen bar
ðe beries ripe, wurð ic war ;
ðe kinges [kuppe] ic hadde on hond, 115
ðe beries ðor-inne me ðhugte ic wrong,
And bar it drinken to pharaon,
Me drempte, als ic was wune to don.”

“**G**ood is,” *quað* Ioseph, “to dremen of win,
heilnesse an blisse is ðer-in ; 120
ðre daies ben get for to cumen,
ðu salt ben ut of *prisun* numen,
And on ðin offiz set agen ;
Of me ðu ðhenke ðan it sal ben,
Bed min herdne to pharaon, 125
ða[t] ic ut of *prisun* wurðe don,
for ic am stolen of kinde lond,
and her wrighteleslike holden *in* bond.”

Quað ðis bred-wrigte, “liðeð nu me,
me drempte ic bar bread-lepes ðre, 130
And ðor-in bread and oðer meten,
Quilke ben wune ðe kinges to eten ;
And fugeles hauen ðor-on lagt,
ðor-fore ic am *in* sorge and hagt,
for ic ne migte me nogt weren, 135
Ne ðat mete fro hem beren.”

“**M**e wore leuere,” *quað* Ioseph,
“Of eddi dremes rechen swep ;
ðu salt, after ðe ðridde dei,
ben do on rode, weila-wei ! 140
And fugeles sulen ði *fleis* to-teren,
ðat sal non agte mugen ðe weren.”

Soð wurð so ioseph seide þat,
 þis buteler Ioseph sone for-gat.
 Two ger siðen was Ioseph sperd
 þor in þrísun wið uten erd;
Ðo drempte pharaon king a drem,
 þat he stod bi ðe flodes strem,
 And ðeden¹ ut-comen .vii. neet,
 Euerilc wel swiðe fet and gret,
 And .vii. lene after ðo,
 ðe deden ðe .vii. fette wo,
 ðe lene hauen ðe fette freten;
 þis drem ne mai ðe king for-geten.
 And oðer drem cam him bi-foren,
 .vii. eares wexen fette of coren,
 On an busk ranc and wel tidi,
 And .vii. lene rigt þor-bi,
 welkede, and smale, and drugte numen,
 ðe ranc he hauen ðo ouer-cumen,
 To-samen it smiten and, on a stund,
 ðe fette þrist hem to ðo grund.
 ðe king abraid and woc in þhogt,
 ðes dremes swep ne wot he nogt,
 Ne was non so wis man in al his lond,
 ðe kude vn-don þis dremes bond;
 ðo him bi-þhogte þat buteler
 Of þat him drempte in þrísun þer,
 And of ioseph in ðe prisun,
 And he it tolde ðe king pharaun.
 Ioseph was sone in prisun ðo hogt,
 And shauen, & clad, & to him brogt;
 ðe king him bad ben hardi & bold,
 If he can rechen þis dremes wold;

¹ For ðeðen.

He told him *quat* him dremp^te o nigt, 175
 And iosep rechede his drem wel rigt.
 "Ʒis two dremes boðen ben on,
 God wile Ʒe tawnen, king pharaon;
 Ʒo .vij. ger ben get to cumen,
 In al fulsum-hed sulen it ben numen, 180
 And .vij. oðere sulen after ben,
 Sori and nedful men sulen is sen;
 Al Ʒat Ʒise first .vii. maken,
 Sulen Ʒis oðere vii. rospen & raken;
 Ic rede Ʒe king, nu her bi-foren, 185
 To maken laðes and gaderen coren,
 Ʒat Ʒin folc ne wurð vnder-numen,
Quan Ʒo hungri gere ben forð-cumen."
 King pharaon listnede hise red,
 Ʒat wurð him siðen seli sped. 190
 He bi-tagte iosep his ring,
 And his bege of gold for wurðing,
 And bad him al his lond bi-sen,
 And under him hegest for to ben,
 And bad him welden in his hond 195
 His folc, and agte, & al his lond;
 Ʒo was vnder him Ʒanne putifar,
 And his wif Ʒat him so to-bar.
 Iosep to wiue his dowter nam,
 Oðer is nu *quan* ear bi-cam; 200
 And ghe Ʒer him two childer bar,
 Or men wurð of Ʒat hunger war,
 first manassen and effraym;
 He luueden god, he geld it hem.
 Ʒe .vii. fulsum geres faren, 205
 Iosep cuðe him bi-foren waren;
 Ʒan coren wantede in oðer lond,
 Ʒo *ynug* [*was*] vnder his hond.

Hvnger wex in lond chanaan,
 And his .x. sunes iacob for-þan
 Sente in to egipt to bringen coren;
 He bilef at hom ðe was gungest boren.
 ðe .x. comen, for nede sogt,
 To Iosep, and he ne knewen him nogt,
 And ðog he luttan him frigitlike,
 Anð seiden to him mildelike,
 "We ben sondes for nede driuen
 To bigen coren ðor-bi to liuen."
 (Iosep hen knew al in his ðhogt
 Als he let he knew hem nogt.)
 "It semet wel ðat ge spies ben,
 And in to ðis lond cumen to sen,
 And came ge for non oðer ðing,
 but for to spien ur lord ðe king."
 "Nai," he seiden euerilc on,
 "Spies were we neuer non,
 Oc alle we ben on faderes sunen,
 For hunger doð es¹ hider cumen."
 "Oc nu ic wot ge spies ben,
 for bi gure bering men mai it sen;
 Hu sulde on man, poure for-geten,
 swilke and so manige sunes bigeten?
 for seldum bi-tid self ani king
 swilc men to sen of hise ofspring."
 "A louerd, merci! get is ðor on,
 A migt he nogt fro his fader gon;
 He is gungest, hoten beniamin,
 for we ben alle of ebrisse kin."
 "Nu, bi ðe feið ic og to king pharaon,
 sule ge nogt alle eðen gon,

¹ For us.

Til ge me bringen beniamin,
 ƿa gungeste broðer of gure¹ kin."
 For ƿo was Iosep sore for-dred
 ƿat he wore oc ðhurg hem for-red;
 He dede hem binden, and leden dun, 245
 And speren faste in his prisun;
 ƿe ƿridde dai he let hem gon,
 Al but ƿe ton broðer symeon;
 ƿis symeon bi-lef ƿor in bond,
 To wedde under Iosepes hond. 250
 ƿes oðere breðere, sone on-on,
 Token leue and wenten hom;
 And sone he weren ƿeden² went,
 Wel sore he hauen hem bi-ment,
 And seiden hem ƿan ƿor bi-twen, 255
 "Wrigtful we in sorwe ben,
 for we sinigeden *quilum* or
 On hure broðer michil mor,
 for we werneden him merci,
 Nu drege we sorge al for-ði." 260
 Wende here non it on his mod,
 Oc Iosep al it under-stod.
 Iosepes men ƿor *quiles* deden
 Al-so Iosep hem adde beden;
 ƿo breðere seckes hauen he fild, 265
 And in *euercil* ƿe *siluer* pilt
 ƿat ƿor was paid for ƿe coren,
 And bunden ƿe muðes ƿor bi-foren;
 Oc ƿe breðere ne wisten it nogt
 Hu ƿis dede wurðe wrogt; 270
 Oc alle he weren ouer-ðogt,
 And hauen it so to iacob brogt,

¹ MS. *has pore.*

² For ƿeden.

And tolden him so of here sped,
 And al he it listnede *in* frigtihed ;
 And *quan* men *þo* seckes *þor* un-bond,
 And in *þe* coren *þo* agtes fond,
 Alle he woren *þanne*¹ sori ofrigt.
 Iacob *þus* him bi-meneð o-rigt,
 " Wel michel sorge is me bi-cumen,
þat min two childre aren me for-numen ;
 Of Iosep wot ic ending non,
 And bondes ben leid on sytheon ;
 If ge beniamin fro me don,
 Dead and sorge me segeð on ;
 Ai sal beniamin wið me bi-lewen
þor *quiles* ic sal on werlde liuen."
þo *quað* iudas, " us sal ben hard,
 If we no² holden him non forward."

W^{ex} derðe,³ *þis* coren is gon,
 Iacob est bit hem faren agon,
 Oc he ne duren *þe* weie cumen in,
 " but ge wið us senden beniamin ;"
þo *quað* he, " *quan* it is ned,
 And ne can no bettre red,
 Bereð dat⁴ siluer hol agon,
þat hem *þor*-of ne wante non,
 And oðer siluer *þor* bi-foren,
 for to bigen wið oðer coren ;
 fruit and spices of dere pris,
 Bereð *þat* man *þat* is so wis ;
 God hunne him eði-modes ben,
 And sende me min childre agen."
þo nomen he forð weie rigt,
 Til he ben cumen *in*-to egypte ligt ;

¹ MS. *þanno*.² For *ne*.³ MS. *has derke*.⁴ For *þat*.

And *q*uanne Iosep hem alle sag, 305
 Kinde *ð*ogt *in* his herte was [*ð*ag].
 He bad his stiward gerken is meten,
 He seide he sulden wið him alle eten;
 He ledde hem alle to Iosepes biri,
 Her non hadden *ð*o loten miri. 310
 "Louerd," he seiden *ð*o euerilc on,
 "Gur siluer is gu brogt a-gon,
 It was in ure seckes don,
 Ne wiste ur non gilt *ð*or-on."
 "Beð nu stille," *quad* stiward, 315
 "for ic nu haue min forward."
*ð*or cam *ð*at broðer symeon
 And kiste is breðere on and on;
 Wel fagen he was of here come,
 for he was numen *ð*or to nome. 320
 It was vndren time or more,
 Om cam *ð*at riche louerd *ð*ore;
 And al *ð*o briðere, of frigi mod,
 fellen bi-forn *ð*at louerd-is fot,
 And bedden him riche *present* 325
*ð*at here fader hi[m] adde sent;
 And he leuelike it under-stod,
 for alle he weren of kinde blod.
 "L iueð," *quad* he, "*ð*at fader get,
*ð*at *ð*us manige sunes bi-gat?" 330
 "louerd," he seiden, "get he liueð,
 Wot ic *ð*or non *ð*at he ne biueð?
 And *ð*is is gunge beniamin,
 Hider brogt after bode-word *ð*in."
*ð*o Iosep sag him *ð*or bi-foren, 335
 Bi fader & moder broðer boren,
 Him ouer-wente his herte on-on,
 Kinde luue gan him ouer-gon;

Sone he gede ut and stille he gret,
 ȝat al his wlite wurð teres wet. 340
 After ȝat grot, he weis is wliton,
 And cam ȝan in and bad hem eten;
 He dede hem wassen and him bi-foren,
 And sette hem as he weren boren;
 Get he ȝhogte of his faderes wunes 345
 Hu he sette at ȝe mete hise sunes;
 Of euerilc sonde, of euerilc win,
 most and best he gaf beniamin.
 In fulsum-hed he wurðen glaðe,¹
 Iosep ne ȝoht ȝor-of no scaðe, 350
 Oc it him likede swiðe wel,
 And hem lerede and tagte wel,
 And hu he sulden hem best leden,
Quene he cōmen in vnkinde ȝeden;²
 "And al ȝe bettre sule ge speden, 355
 If ge wilen gu wið treweiðe leden."
 Eft on morwen *quan* it was dai,
 Or or ȝe breðere ferdan a-wei,
 Here seckes worn alle fild wið coren,
 And ȝe siluer ȝor-in bi-foren; 360
 And ȝe seck ȝat agte beniamin
 Iosepes cuppe hid was ȝor-in;
 And *quan* he weren ut tune went,
 Iosep haueð hem after sent.
 ȝis sonde hem ouertakeð raðe, 365
 And bi-calleð of harme and scaðe;
 "Vn-seli men, *quat* haue ge don?
 Gret vn-selðehe is gu cumen on,
 for is it nogt min lord for-holen,
 ȝa[t] gure on haueð is cuppe stolen." 370

¹ For glade.² For deden.

ƿ[o] seiden ƿe breðere sikerlike,
 "Vp quam ƿu it findes witterlike,
 He slagen and we agen driuen
 In-to ƿraldom, euermor to liuen."
 He gan hem ransaken on and on, 375
 And fond it ƿor sone a-non,
 And nam ƿo breðere euerilk on,
 And ledde hem sorful a-gon,
 And brogte hem bi-for iosep
 Wid reweli lote, and sorwe, and wep. 380
 ƿo quat iosep, "ne wiste ge nogt
 ƿat ic am o wol witter ƿogt?
 Mai nogt longe me ben for-holen
 Quat-so-euere on londe wurð stolen."
 "Louerd!" quad Iudas, "do wið me 385
 Quat-so ƿi wille on werlde be,
 Wið-ƿan-ƿat ƿu friðe beniamin;
 ic ledde [him] ut on trewthe min,
 ƿat he sulde ef[t] cumen a-gen
 to hise fader, and wið him ben." 390
 ƿo cam iosep swilc rewðe up-on,
 he dede halle ut ƿe toðere gon,
 And spac un-eðes, so e gret,
 ƿat alle hise wlite wurð teres wet.
 "Ic am iosep, dredeð gu nogt, 395
 for gure helðe or hider brogt;
 To ger ben nu ƿat derðe¹ is cumen,
 Get sulen .v. fulle ben numen,
 ƿat men ne sulen sowen ne sheren,
 So sal drugte ƿe feldes deren. 400
 Rapeð gu to min fader a-gen,
 And seið him quilke min blisses ben,

¹ MS. has *derke*.

And doþ him to me cumen hider,
 And ge and gure orf al to-gider ;
 Of lewse god in lond gersen
 405 sulen ge sundri riche ben."

Euerilc he kiste, on ilc he gret,
 Ilc here was of is teres wet.

Sone it was king pharaon kid
 410 Hu ȝis newe tiding wurð bi-tid ;

And he was bliðe, in herte fagen,
 ȝat Iosep wulde him ȝider dragen,
 for luue of Iosep migte he timen.

He bad cartes and waines nimen,
 415 And fechen, wiues, and childre, and men,

And gaf hem ȝor al lond gersen,
 And het hem ȝat he sulden hauen
 More and bet ȝan he kude crauen.

Iosep gaf ilc here twinne srud,
 420 Benjamin most he¹ made prud ;

fif weden best bar beniamin,
 ȝre hundred plates of siluer fin,
 Al-so fele oðre ȝor-til,

He bad ben in is faderes wil,
 425 And .x. asses wið semes fest ;

Of alle egiptes welðhe best
 Gaf he is breðere, wið herte bliðe,
 And bad hem rapen hem homward swiðe ;
 And he so deden wið herte fagen.

Toward here fader he gunen dragen,
 430 And qʒane he comen him bi-foren,

Ne wiste he nogt qʒat he woren.
 "Louerd," he seiden, "israel,
 Iosep ȝin sune greteð ȝe wel,

¹ MS. be.

And sendeð ðe bode ðat he liueð,
 Al egipte in his wil cliueð.” 435
 Iacob a-braid, and trewed it nogt,
 Til he sag al ðat welðe brogt.
 “Wel me,” quað he, “wel is me wel,
 ðat ic aue abiden ðus swil[c] sel ! 440
 And ic sal to min sune fare
 And sen, or ic of werlde chare.”
 Acob wente ut of lond chanaan,
 And of is kinde wel manie a man ;
 Iosep wel faire him vnder-stod, 445
 And pharaon ðogte it ful good ;
 for ðat he weren hirde-men,
 He bad hem ben in lond gersen.
 Iacob was brogt bi-foren ðe king
 for to geuen him his bliscing. 450
 “fader dere,” quað pharaon,
 “hu fele ger be ðe on ?”
 “An hundred ger and .xxx. mo
 Haue ic her drogen *in* werlde wo,
 ðog ðinkeð me ðor-offen fo, 455
 ðog ic is haue drogen *in* wo,
 siðen ic gan on werlde ben,
 Her vten erd, man-kin bi-twen ;
 So ðinked¹ euerilc wis[e] man,
 ðe wot quor-of man-kin bi-gan, 460
 And ðe of adames gilte muneð,
 ðat he her uten herdes wuneð.”
 Pharaon bad him wurðen wel
 in softe reste and seli mel ;
 He and hise sunes in reste dede 465
 In lond gersen, on sundri stede ;

¹ For ðinkeð.

Siðen ðor was mad on scité,
 ðe was y-oten Ramesé.
 Iacob on liue wunede ðor
 In reste fulle .xiiij. ger; 470
 And god him let bi-foren sen
 Quilc time hise ending sulde ben;
 He bad iosep his leue sune,
 On ðhing ðat¹ offe wel mune,
 ðat q^uan it wurð mid him don, 475
 He sulde him birien in ebron;
 And witterlike he it aueð him seid,
 ðe stede ðor abraham was leid;
 So was him lif² to wurðen leid, 480
 Quor ali gast stille hadde seid
 Him and hise eldere(.) fer ear bi-foren,
 Quor iesu crist wulde ben boren,
 And quor ben dead, and quor ben grauen;
 He ðogt wið hem reste to hauen.
 Iosep swor him al-so he bad, 485
 And he ðor-of wurð bliðe & glad.
 Or ðan he wiste off werlde faren,
 He bade hise kinde to him charen,
 And seide q^uat of hem sulde ben,
 Hali gast dede it him seen; 490
 In clene ending and ali lif,
 So he for-let ðis werldes strif.
 Osep dede hise lich faire geren,
 Wassen, and riche-like smeren,
 And spice-like swete smaken;
 And egipte folc him bi-waken 495
 xl. nigtes and .xl. daiges,
 swilc woren egipte lages.

¹ For ðar.² For lef.

[Lines 2475—2536.]

And pharaon king cam bode bi-foren,
 ȝat Iosep haueð his fader sworn ; 500
 And he it *him* gatte ȝor he wel dede,
 And bad *him* nimen *him* feres mide,
 Wel wopnede men and wis of here[n],
 dat¹ noman hem bi weie deren ;
 ȝat bere is led, ȝis folc is rad, 505
 he foren a-buten bi adad ;
 ful seune nigȝt he ȝer abiden,
 And bi-men^{ing} for iacob deden ;
 So longe he hauen ȝeȝen numen,
 To flum iurdon ȝat he ben cumen, 510
 And ouer pharan til ebron ;
 ȝor is ȝat liche in biriele don,
 And Iosep in to egipte went,
 Wid² al is folc ut wið him [s]ent.
 Hi^{se} breðere comen *him* ȝanne to, 515
 And gunnen him bi-seken alle so ;
 “ Vre fader,” he seiden, “ or he was dead,
 Vs he ȝis bodewurd seigen bead,
 Hure sinne ȝu *him* for-giue,
 Wið-ȝanne-ȝat we vnder ȝe liuen.” 520
 Alle he fellen him ȝor to fot,
 To beȝen meȝe and bedden oc ;
 Anð he it for-gaf hem mildelike,
 And luuede hem alle kinde-like.
 Osep an hundred ger was hold, 525
 And his kin wexen manige-fold ;
 He bad sibbe cumen him bi-foren,
 Or he was ut of werlde boren ;
 “ It sal,” *quað* he, “ ben soð, bi-foren
 ȝat god hað ure eldere sworn ; 530

¹ For ȝat.

² For wið.

He sal gu leden *in* his hond
 Heſen to ſat hotene lond;
 for godes luue get bid ic gu,
 Lested it ſanne, hoteſ it nu,
 ſat mine bene ne be for-loren, 535
 wiſ gu ben mine bones boren."
 He it him gatten and wurſ he dead,
 God do ſe soule ſeli red!
 Hiſe liche was ſpice-like maked,
 And longe egipte-like waked, 540
 And ſo biried hem bi-foren,
 And ſiſen late of londe boren.
 Hiſe oðre breðere, on and on,
 Woren ybiried at ebron.
 An her endede, to ful in wiſ, 545
 ſe boc ſe is hoten genesis,
 ſe moyses, ſurg godes red,
 Wrot for lefful ſoules ned.
 God ſchilde hiſe ſowle fro helle bale,
 ſe made it ſus on engel tale! 550
 And he ſat ſiſe lettres wrot,
 God him helpe weli mot,
 And berge is ſowle fro ſorge & grot
 Of helle pine, cold & hot!
 And alle men, ſe it heren wilen,¹ 555
 God lene hem *in* hiſe bliſſe ſpilen
 Among engeles & ſeli men,
 Wiſuten ende in reſte ben,
 And luue & pais us bi-twen,
 And god ſo graunte, amen, amen! 560

¹ MS. welin.

II.

NICHOLAS DE GUILDFORD,

A. D. 1250—1260.

The Owl and the Nightingale.

and with Cotton MS. Calig. A. ix., by the editor of the present work.]

poem entitled *The Owl and the Nightingale* (edited for Percy Society by Thomas Wright, M.A., F.S.A., 1843) attributed to Nicholas De Guildford, who is mentioned in the text itself as living at Portesham in Dorsetshire.

precise date of the piece is a matter of dispute, some ascribing it to the reign of Henry III., and others to that of Edward I., but it is probably not later than the time of Henry III.

poem is written in the dialect of the South of England, free from any of those broad provincialisms which characterize a particular county.

[Lines 1—94.]

ICH was in one sumere dale,
In one suþe diþele hale,
I-herde ich holde grete tale
An hule and one niþtingale.
Þat þait was stif and starc and strong, 5
Sum wile softe, and lud among;
An aiþer aȝen oþer sual,
And let þat wole mod ut al.
And eiþer seide of oþeres custe
Þat alre-worste þat hi wuste; 10
And hure and hure of oþere songe
Hi holde plaiding suþe stronge.

þe niȝtingale bi-gon þe speche,
 In one hurne of one breche;
 And sat up one vaire boȝe,
 þar were abute blosme i-noȝe,
 In ore waste þicke hegge,
 I-meind mid spire and grene segge.

Ho was þe gladur vor þe rise,
 And song a vele cunne wise:
 Het þuȝte þe dreim þat he were
 Of harpe and pipe, þau he nere,
 Bet þuȝte þat he were i-shote
 Of harpe and pipe þan of þrote.

þo stod on old stoc þar bi-side,
 þar þo ule song hire tide,
 And was mid iui al bi-growe,
 Hit was þare hule earding-stowe.

þe niȝtingale hi i-seȝ,
 And hi bi-hold and over-seȝ,
 And þuȝte wel w[o]l of þare hule,
 For me hi halt lodlich and fule:
 "Unwiȝt," ho sede, "awei þu flo!

Me is the w[o]rs þat ich þe so;
 I-wis for þine w[o]le lete
 Wel oft ich mine song for-lete;
 Min horte at-flip, and salt mi tonge,
 þonne þu art to me i-þrunge.
 Me luste bet speten, þane singe
 Of þine fule ȝoȝelinge."

þos hule abod fort hit was eve,
 Ho ne miȝte no leng bileve,
 Vor hire horte was so gret,
 þat wel neȝ hire fnast at-schet;
 And warp a word þar after longe:
 "Hu þincþe¹ nu bi mine songe?

¹ For þincþ þe.

West þu þat ich ne cunne singe,
 þeȝ ich ne cunne of writelinge?
 I-lome þu dest me grame,
 And seist me boþe tone and schame; 50
 ȝif ich þe holde on mine note,
 So hit bi-tide þat ich mote!
 And þu were ut of þine rise,
 Þu sholdest singe an oþer wise."

Þe niȝtingale ȝaf answare: 55
 "ȝif ich me loki wit þe bare,
 And me schilde wit þe blete,
 Ne reche ich noȝt of þine þrete;
 ȝif ich me holde in mine hegge,
 Ne recche ich never what þu segge. 60
 Ich wot þat þu art un-milde
 Wiþ hom þat ne muȝe from se¹ schilde;
 And þu tukest wroþe and uuele
 Whar þu miȝt over smale fuȝele;
 Vor-þi þu art loþ al fuel-kunne, 65
 And alle ho þe driveþ honne,
 And þe bi-schricheþ and bi-gredet,
 And wel nārewe þe bi-ledet;
 And ek forþe þe sulve mose
 Hire þonkes wolde þe to-tose. 70
 Þu art lodlich to bi-holde,
 And þu art loþ in monie volde;
 Þi bodi is short, þi swore is smal,
 Gretteŕe is þin heved þan þu al;
 Þin eȝene boþ col-blake and brode, 75
 Riȝt swo ho weren i-peint mid wode;
 Þu starest so þu wille abiten
 Al þat þu mist mid clivre smiten;

¹ For þe.

Þi bile is stif and scharp and hoked,
 Riȝt so an owel þat is croked, 80
 Þar-mid þu clackes[t] oft and longe,
 And þat is on of þine songe,
 Ac þu þretest to mine fleshe,
 Mid þine clivres woldest me meshe;
 Þe were i-cundur to one frogge, 85
 [Þat sit at mulne under cogge],
 Snailles, mus, and fule wiȝte,
 Boþ þine cunde and þine riȝte.
 Þu sittest adai, and flizst aniȝt,
 Þu cuþest þat þu art on un-wiȝt; 90
 Þu art lodlich and un-clene,
 Bi þine neste ich hit mene,
 And ek bi þine fule brode,
 Þu fedest on hom a wel ful fode."

[Lines 139—232.]

Þos word aȝaf þe niȝtingale, 95
 And after þare longe tale
 He song so lude and so scharpe,
 Riȝt so me grulde schille harpe.
 Þos hule luste þider-ward,
 And hold hire eȝe noþer-wa[r]d, 100
 And sat to-suolle and i-bolȝe,
 Also ho hadde on frogge i-suolȝe.
 For ho wel wiste and was i-war
 Þat ho song hire a bisemar;
 And noþeles ho ȝaf andsvare, 105
 "Whi neltu flon into þe bare,
 And se wiþere unker bo
 Of briȝter howe, of vairur blo?
 No þu havest wel scharpe clawe;
 Ne kepich noȝt þat þu me clawe; 110

Þu havest clivers suþe stronge,
 Þu tuengst þar-mid so doþ a tonge."
 "Þu þoʒtest so doþ þine i-like,
 Mid faire worde me bi-swike;
 Ich nolde don þat þu me raddest 115
 Ich wiste wel þat þu me misraddest;
 Schamie þe for þin un-rede!
 Un-wroʒten is þi suikel-hede;
 Schild þine suikeldom vram þe liʒte,
 And hud þat woʒe amon[g] þe riʒte. 120
 Þane þu wilt þin un-riʒt spene,
 Loke þat hit ne bo i-sene;
 Vor suikedom haved schome and hete,
 ʒif hit is ope and under-ʒete.
 Ne speddestu noʒt mid þine un-wrenche, 125
 For ich am war, and can wel blenche;
 Ne helpþ noʒt þat þu bo to þriste;
 Ich wolde viʒte bet mid liste,
 Þan þu mid al þine strengþe;
 Ich habbe on brede, and ech on lengþe 130
 Castel god on mine rise;
 "Wel fiʒt þat wel fiʒt,' seiþ þe wise.
 Ac lete we awei þos cheste,
 Vor suiche wordes both un-werste;
 And fo we on mid riʒte dome, 135
 Mid faire worde and mid w[i]sdome.
 Þeʒ we ne bo at one acorde,
 We muʒe bet mid fayre worde,
 Wit-ute cheste, and bute fiʒte,
 Plaidi mid foʒe and mid riʒte; 140
 And mai hure eiþer wat hi wile
 Mid riʒte segge and mid skile."
 Þo quap þe hule, "Þu schal us seme,
 Þat kunne and wille riʒt us deme."

"Ich wot wel," quath þe niȝtingale, 145

"Ne þaref þarof bo no tale.

Maister Nichole of Guldeforde,

He is wis and war of worde;

He is of dome suþe gleu,

And him is loþ evrich unþeu; 150

He wot insiȝt in eche songe,

Wo singet wel, wo singet wronge;

And he can schede vrom þe riȝte

þat woȝe, þat þuster from þe liȝte."

þo hule one wile hi bi-þoȝte, 155

And after þan þis word up-broȝte:

"Ich granti wel þat he us deme,

Vor þeȝ he were wile breme,

And lof him were niȝtingale,

And oþer wiȝte gente and smale, 160

Ich wot he is nu suþe acoled,

Nis he vor þe noȝt afoled,

þat he for þine olde lue

Me adun legge and þe buve;

Ne schaltu nevre so him queme, 165

þat he for þe fals dom deme.

He is him ripe and fastrede,

Ne lust him nu to none un-rede;

Nu him ne lust na more pleie,

He wile gon a riȝte weie." 170

þe niȝtingale was al ȝare

Ho hadde i-lorned wel aiware:

"Hule," ho sede, "seie me soth,

Wi dostu þat un-wiȝtis doþ?

þu singist aniȝt, and noȝt adai, 175

And al þi song is wallawai;

þu miȝt mid þine songe afere

Alle þat i-hereþ þine i-bere;

Þu schirchest and ʒollest to þine fere,
 Þat hit is grislich to i-here, 180
 Hit pinchest boþe wise and snepe
 Noȝt þat þu singe, ac þat þu wepe.
 Þu flȝst anȝt, and noȝt adai;
 Þarof ich w[o]ndri, and wel mai:
 Vor evrich þing þat schuniēt riȝt, 185
 Hit luveþ þuster and hatiet liȝt;
 And evrich þing þat is lof misdede,
 Hit luveþ þuster to his dede."

[Lines 254—282.]

Þos hule luste suþe longe,
 And was of-toned suþe stronge; 190
 Ho quap, "Þu hattest niȝtingale,
 Þu miȝtest bet hoten galegale,
 Vor þu havest to monie tale.
 Lat þine tunge habbe spale!
 Þu wenest þat þes dai boþ i-noȝe; 195
 Lat me nu habbe mine þroȝe:
 Bo nu stille, and lat me speke,
 Ich wille bon of þe a-wreke,
 And lust hu ich con me bi-telle
 Mid riȝte soþe wit-ute spelle. 200
 Þu seist þat ich me hude adai,
 Þar-to ne segge ich nich ne nai;
 And lust ich telle þe ware-vore
 Al wi hit is and ware-vore;
 Ich habbe bile stif and stronge, 205
 And gode clivers scharp and longe,
 So hit bi-cumeþ to havekes cunne;
 Hit is min hiȝte, hit is mi wune,
 Þat ich *me draȝe* to mine cunde,
Ne mai noman þare-vore schende; 210

On me hit is wel i-sene,
 Vor rihte cunde ich am so kene,
 Vor-thi ich am loþ smale foþle,
 Þat floþ bi grunde an bi þuuele,
 Hi me bi-chermet and bi-gredeþ, 215
 And hore flockes to me ledeþ;
 Me is lof to habbe reste,
 And sitte stille in mine neste.

[Lines 303—352.]

Wenestu þat haveck bo þe worse,
 Þoþ crowe bi-grede him bi þe mershe, 220
 And goþ to him mid hore chirme,
 Riht so hi wille wit him schirme?
 Þe havec folþeþ gode rede,
 And flizt his wei, and lat hem grede.
 Ȝet þu me seist of oþer þinge, 225
 And telst þat ich ne can noȝt singe,
 Ac al mi rorde is þoning,
 And to i-hire grislich þing.
 Þat nis noȝt soþ, ich singe efne
 Mid fulle dreme and lude stefne. 230
 Þu wenist þat ech song bo grislich
 Þat þine pipinge nis i-lich:
 Mi stefne is bold and noȝt un-orne,
 Ho is i-lich one grete horne,
 And þin is i-lich one pipe 235
 Of one smale woede un-ripe.
 Ich singe bet þan þu dest:
 Þu chaterest so doþ on Irish preost;
 Ich singe an eve ariht time,
 And soþþe won hit is bed-time, 240
 Þe þridde siþe ad middelnizte,
 And so ich mine song adihte

Wone ich i-so arise vorre
 Oþer dai-rim oþer dai-sterre,
 Ich do god mid mine þrote, 245
 And warni men to hore note.
 Ac þu singest alle-longe niȝt,
 From eve fort hit is dai-liȝt,
 And evre seist þin o song
 So longe so þe niȝt is long, 250
 And evre croweþ þi wrecche crei,
 Þat he ne swikeþ niȝt ne dai;
 Mid þine pipinge þu adunest
 Þas monnes earen þar þu wunest,
 And makest þine song so un-w[o]rþ 255
 Þat me ne telþ of þar noȝt w[o]rþ.
 Evrich murȝþe mai so longe i-leste,
 Þat ho shal liki wel un-wreste;
 Vor harpe and pipe and fūzeles songe
 Mislikeþ, ȝif hit is to longe, 260
 Ne bo þe song never so murie,
 Þat he ne shal þinche wel un-murie,
 ȝef he i-lesteþ over un-wille;
 So þu miȝt þine song aspile.
 Vor hit is soþ, Alvred hit seide, 265
 And me hit mai ine boke rede,
 'Evrich þing mai losen his godhede
 Mid unmeþe and mid over-dede.'

[Lines 391—410.]

Þe niȝtingale in hire þoȝte
 At-hold al þis, and longe þoȝte 270
 Wat ho þar-after miȝte segge;
 Vor ho ne miȝte noȝt alegge
 Þat þe hule hadde hire i-sed;
 Vor he *spac boþe riȝt* an red.

An hire of-þuȝte þat ho hadde 275
 Þe speche so for-vorþ i-ladde,
 An was oferd þat hire answare
 Ne wr[o]þe noȝt ariȝt i-fare.
 Ac noþeles he spac boldeliche,
 Vor he is wis þat hardeliche 280
 Wiþ his vo berþ grete i-lete,
 Þat he vor areȝþe hit ne for-lete;
 Vor suich worþ bold ȝif þu fliȝst,
 Þat w[o]le flo ȝif þu vicst;
 ȝif he isiþ þat þu nart areȝ 285
 He wile of-bore w[o]rchen bareȝ.
 And forþi þeȝ þe niȝtingale
 Were aferd ho spac bolde tale.

[Lines 411—446.]

“Hule,” ho seide, “wi dostu so?
 Þu singest awinter wolawo; 290
 Þu singest so doþ hen a snowe,
 Al þat ho singeþ hit is for wowe;
 Awintere þu singest wroþe and ȝomere,
 An evre þu art dumb asumere;
 Hit is for þine fule niþe, 295
 Þat þu ne miȝt mid us bo bliþe,
 Vor þu forbernest wel neȝ for onde
 þane ure blisse cumeþ to londe.
 Þu farest so doþ þe ille,
 Evrich blisse him is un-wille; 300
 Grucching and luring him boþ rade,
 ȝif he i-soþ þat men boþ glade;
 He wolde þat he i-seȝe
 Teres in evrich monnes eȝe:
 Ne roȝte he þeȝ flockes were 305
 I-meind bi toppes and bi here.

Al-so þu dost on þire side;
 Vor wanne snou liþ þicke and wide,
 And alle wiȝtes habbeþ sorȝe,
 Þu singest from eve fort amorȝe. 310
 Ac ich alle blisse mid me bringe;
 Ech wiȝt is glad for mine þinge,
 And blisseþ hit wanne ich cume,
 And hiȝteþ aȝen mine kume.
 Þe blostme ginneth springe and sprede 315
 Boþe ine tro and ek on mede;
 Þe lilie mid hire faire wlite
 Wol-cumeþ me, þat þu hit w[i]te,
 Bid me mid hire faire blo
 Þat ich schulle to hire flo; 320
 Þe rose also mid hire rude,
 Þat cumeþ ut of þe þorne wode,
 Bit me þat ich shulle singe
 Vor hire luve one skentinge."

[Lines 449—555.]

.....þe hule sede, 325
 "Þu havest bi-cloped, also þu bede,
 An ich þe habbe i-ȝive ansuare;
 Ac ar we to unker dome fare
 Ich wille speke toward þe,
 Al-so þu speke toward me, 330
 An þu me ansuere ȝif þu miȝt."

[Lines 597—624.]

".....þu atutest me mine mete,
 An seist þat ich fule wiȝtes ete:
 Ac wat etestu, þat þu ne liȝe,
Bute attercoppe and fule vliȝe? 335

An wormes, ȝif þu miȝte finde
 Among þe volde of harde rinde?
 ȝet ich can do wel gode wike,
 Vor ich can loki manne wike;
 An mine wike boȝ wel gode,
 Vor ich helpe to manne node;
 Ich can nimen mus at berne,
 An ek at chirche ine þe derne;
 Vor me is lof to Cristes huse,
 To clansi hit wiȝ fule muse;
 Ne schal þar nevre come to
 Ful wiȝt, ȝif ich hit mai i-vo.
 An ȝif me lust one mi skentinge,
 To yernen oȝer w[o]nienge,
 Ich habbe at wude tron wel grete,
 Mit picke boȝe noȝing blete,
 Mid ivi grene al bi-growe,
 Þat evre stont i-liche i-blowe,
 And his hou never ne vor-lost,
 Wan hit snuiȝ ne wan hit frost;
 Þar-in ich habbe god i-hold,
 Awinter warm, asumere cold.
 Wane min hus stont briȝt and grene,
 Of þine nis noȝing i-sene."

[Lines 659—668.]

Þe niȝtingale at þisse worde
 Was wel neȝ ut of rede i-worȝe,
 An þoȝte ȝorne on hire mode,
 ȝif ho oȝt elles understode,
 ȝif ho kuȝe oȝt bute singe,
 Þat miȝte helpe to oȝer þinge,
 Her-to ho moste andswere vinde,
 Oȝer mid alle bon bi-hinde.

An hit is suþe strong to fize
 Aȝen soþ and aȝen riȝte.

[Lines 707—750.]

"Hule, þu axest me," ho seide,	370
"ȝif ich kon eni oþer dede,	
Bute singen in sum[er]e tide,	
An bringe blisse for and wide.	
Wi axestu of craftes mine?	
Betere is min on þan alle þine;	375
Betere is o song of mine muþe,	
þan al þat evre þi kun kuþe.	
An lust, ich telle þe ware-vore:	
Wostu to þan man was i-bore?	
To þare blisse of hoveneriche,	380
þar ever is song and murȝþe i-liche.	
þider fundeþ evrich man	
þat eniþing of gode kan.	
Vor-þi me singeþ in holi chirche,	
An clerkes ginneþ songes wirche,	385
þat man i-þenche bi þe songe	
Wider he shal; and þar bon longe,	
þat he þe murȝþe ne vor-ȝete,	
Ac þar-of þenche and bi-ȝete,	
An nime ȝeme of chirche stevene,	390
Hu murie is þe blisse of hovene.	
Clerkes, munekes, and kanunes,	
þar boþ þos gode wicke tunes,	
Ariseþ up to midelniȝte,	
An singeþ of þe hovene liȝte;	395
An prostes upe londe singeþ,	
Wane þe liȝt of daie springeþ;	
An ich hom helpe wat I mai,	
<i>Ich singe mid hom niȝt and dai;</i>	

An ho boþ alle for me þe gladdere, 400
 An to þe songe boþ þe raddere.
 Ich warni men to here gode,
 þat hi bon bliþe on hore mode,
 An bidde þat hi moten i-seche 405
 þan ilke song þat ever is eche.
 Nu þu miȝt, hule, sitte and clinge;
 Her among nis no chateringe.
 Ich graunti þat we go to dome
 To-fore þe sulfe þe pope of Rome.
 Ac abid ȝete noþeles, 410
 þu shalt i-here an oþer wes;
 Ne shaltu for Engelonde
 At pisse worde me at-stonde."

[Lines 835—853.]

"Abid! abid!" þe ule seide,
 "þu gest al to mid swikelede; 415
 Alle þine wordes þu bi-leist,
 þat hit þincþ soþ al þat þu seist;
 Alle þine wordes boþ i-sliked,
 An so bi-semed an bi-liked,
 þat alle þo þat hi avop, 420
 Hi wenep þat þu segge soth.
 Abid! abid! me shal þe ȝene,
 þu hit shal w[o]rþe wel i-sene,
 þat þu havest muchel i-loȝe
 Wone þi lesing boþ unwroȝe. 425
 þu seist þat þu singist mankunne,
 And techest hom þat hi fundieþ honne
 Up to þe songe þat evre i-lest:
 Ac hit is alre w[o]nder mest,
 þat þu darst liȝe so opeliche. 430
 Wenest þu hi bringe so liȝtliche
 To Godes riche al singinge?

[Lines 903—918.]

Wi nultu singe an oder þeode,
 War hit is muchele more neode?
 Ðu neaver ne singst in Irlonde, 435
 Ne þu ne cumest noȝt in Scotlonde:
 Hwi nultu fare to Noreweie?
 And singin men of Galeweie?
 Ðar beoð men þat lutel kunne
 Of songe þat is bineoðe þe sunne; 440
 Wi nultu þare preoste singe,
 An teche of þire writelinge?
 An wisi hom mid þire stevene,
 Hu engeles singeþ ine heovene?
 Ðu farest so doð an ydel wel, 445
 Ðat springeþ bi burne þar is snel,
 And let for-drue þe dune,
 And floh on idel þar a-dune.

[Lines 1633—1680.]

Ðe nihtegale i-h[e]rde this,
 An hupte uppon on blowe ris, 450
 An herre sat þan heo dude ear;
 "Hule," heo seide, "beo nu wear,
 Nulle ich wiþ þe plaidi namore,
 For her þe nust þi rihte lore;
 Ðu ȝeilpest þat þu art manne loþ, 455
 An evereuch wiht is wið þe worþ;
 An mid ȝulinge and mid i-grede,
 Ðu wanst wel þat þu art un-lede.
 Ðu seist þat gromes þe i-foð,
 An heie on rodde þe an-hoð, 460
 An þe to-twichet and to-schakeð,
 An summe of þe schawles makeð;
 Me þunch þat þu for-leost þat game,
 Ðu ȝulpest of þire oȝe schame;

Me þunch þat þu me gest an honde,
 Ðu ʒulpest of þire oʒene schonde¹.
 Ðo heo hadde þeos word i-cwede,
 Heo sat in one faire stude,
 An þar after hire stevene dihte,
 An song so schille and so brihte,
 Ðat feor and ner me hit i-herde.
 Ðar-vore anan to hire cherde
 Ðrusche, and þrostle, and wudewale,
 An fuheles boþe grete and smale;
 For-þan heom þuhte þat heo hadde
 Ðe houle over-come, vor-þan heo gradde.
 An sungen alswa vale wise,
 An blisse waʒ among þe rise;
 Riʒt swa me gred þe manne aschame,
 Ðat taveleþ and for-leost þat gome.

Ðeos hule þo heo þis i-herde,
 "Havestu," heo seide, "i-banned ferde?
 An wultu, wrecche, wið me fiʒte?
 Nai, nai, navestu none miʒte.
 Hwat gredeþ þeo þat hider come?
 Me þunch þu ledest ferde tome.
 ʒe schule wite ar ʒe fleo heonne,
 Hwuch is þe strenþe of mine kunne;
 For þeo þe haveþ bile i-hoked,
 An clivres charpe and wel i-croked,
 Alle heo beoþ of mine kunrede,
 An walde come, ʒif ich bede;
 Ðe seolfe coc, þat wel can fiʒte,
 He mot mid me holde mid riʒte,
 For boþe we habbeþ stevene briʒte,
 An sitteþ under weolcne bi niʒte."

¹ MS. schomme.

[Lines 1687—1792.]

"Ah hit was unker voreward,
 Do we come hider-ward,
 Dat we þar-to holde scholde,
 Þar riht dom us ȝive wolde. 500
 Wultu nu breke foreward?
 Ich wene dom þe þing[þ] to hard;
 For þu ne darst domes abide,
 Du wult nu, wreche, fiȝte and chide.
 ȝot ich ow alle wolde rede, 505
 Ar ihc utheste uppon ow grede,
 Dat oþer fiht-lac leteþ beo,
 An ginneþ raþe awei fleo.
 For, bi þe clivres þat ich bere!
 ȝef ȝe abideþ mine here, 510
 ȝe schule on oþer wise singe,
 An acursi alle fiȝtinge;
 Vor nis of ow non so kene,
 Dat durre abide mine onsene."
 Deos hule spac wel baldeliche, 515
 For þah heo nadde swo hwatliche
 I-fare after hire here,
 Heo walde neoþeles ȝefe answere.
 Þe niȝtegale mid swucche worde,
 For moni man mid speres orde, 520
 Haveþ lutle strence, and mid his chelde,
 Ah neoþeles in one felde
 Þurh belde worde an mid i-lete,
 Deþ his i-vo for arehþe swete;
 Þe wranne, for heo cuþe singe, 525
 War com in þare moreȝeiing,
 To helpe þare niȝtegale:
 For þah heo hadde stevene smale,

Heo hadde gode þorte and schille,
 An fale manne song awille; 530
 Þe wranne was wel wis i-holde,
 Vor þez heo nere i-bred a wolde,
 Ho was i-tozen among man[k]enne,
 An hire wisdom brohte þenne;
 Heo miȝte speke hwar heo walde, 535
 To-vore þe king þah heo scholde.
 "Lustef," heo cwap, "lateþ me speke :
 Hwat ! wulle ȝe þis pes to-breke,
 An do þanne swuch schame?
 ȝe, nis he nouȝer ded ne lame, 540
 Hunke schal i-tide harm and schonde,
 ȝef ȝe doþ griþ-bruche on his londe.
 Lateþ beo, and beoþ i-some,
 An fareþ riht to ower dome,
 An lateþ dom þis plaid to-breke, 545
 Al-swo hit was erur bi-speke."
 "Ich an wel," cwap þe niȝtegeale ;
 "Ah, wranne, nawt for þire tale,
 Ah do for mire lahfulnesse :
 Ich nolde þat un-rihtfulnesse 550
 Me at þen ende over-kome ;
 Ich nam of-drad of none dome.
 Bi-hote ich habbe, soþ hit is,
 Þat maister Nichole, þat is wis,
 Bi-tuxen us deme schulde ; 555
 An ȝef ich wene þat he wule,
 Ah war mihte we hine finde?"
 Þe wranne sat in ore linde,
 "Hwat, nuȝte ȝe," cwap heo, "his hom?
 He wunef at Porteshom, 560
 At one tune ine Dorsete,
 Bi þare see in ore ut-lete ;

Þar he demep manie riȝte dom,
 An diht and writ mani wisdom,
 An þurh his muþe and þurh his honde 565
 Hit is þe betere into Scotlonde.
 To seche hine is lihtlich þing,
 He naveþ bute one woning :
 Þat his bischopen muchel schame ;
 An alle þan þat of his nome 570
 Habbep i-hert and of his dede,
 Hwi nulleþ hi nimen heom to rede,
 Þat he were mid heom i-lome
 For teche heom of his wisdomes,
 An ȝive him rente a vale stude, 575
 Þat he miȝte heom i-lome be mide?"
 "Certes," cwap þe hule, "þat is soð:
 Þeos riche men wel muche mis-doð,
 Þat leteþ þan gode mon,
 Þat of so feole þinge con, 580
 An ȝiveþ rente wel mis-liche,
 An of him leteþ wel lihtliche ;
 Wið heore cunne heo beoþ mildre,
 An ȝeveþ rente litle childre,
 Swo heore wit hi demþ adwole, 585
 Þat ever abid maister Nichole.
 Ah ute we þah to him fare,
 For þar is unker dom al ȝare."
 "Do we," the niȝtegale seide :
 "Ah wa schal unker speche rede, 590
 An telle to-vore unker deme?"
 "Þar-of ich schal þe wel i-cweme,"
 Cwap þe houle, "for al ende of orde,
 Telle ich con word after worde ;
 An ȝef þe þincþ þat ich mis-rempe, 595
þu stond aȝein and dome crempe."

Mid þisse worde forþ hi ferdn,
Al bute here and bute verde,
To Portesham þat heo bi-come;
Ah hu heo spedde of heore dome
Ne chan ich eu namore telle;
Her nis namore of þis spelle.

III.

EARLY ENGLISH ROMANCE.

BEFORE A.D. 1300.

The Story of Havelok the Dane.

The Lay of Havelok the Dane, an Anglo-Danish Story, which retains the legend of the origin of the English town of Grimsby, in its present form a translation from a French romance titled *Le Lai de Aveloc*, written in the first half of theelfth century, and probably founded upon an Anglo-Saxon original. Of the English translator, who wrote in an East-Midland dialect, we know nothing.

The following extract, shewing how Grim saved the life of Havelok, and became the founder of Grimsby, is taken from *The Ancient English Romance of Havelok the Dane*, edited by Sir F. Madden for the Roxburghe Club. (London, 1828.)

[Lines 339—748.]

In that time (Athelwold's), so it bifelle,
Was in the lon of Denemark
A riche king, and swythe stark.
The name of him was Birkabeyn,
He hauede mani knict and sueyn, 5
He was a fayr man, and wicth,
Of bodi he was the best[e] knicth,
That evere micte leden uth here,
Or stede onne ride, or handlen spere.
Thre children he hauede bi his wif, 10
He hem louede so his lif.

He hauede a sone, douhtres two,
 Swithe fayre, as fel it so,
 He that wile non forbere
 Riche ne poure, king ne kaysere,
 Deth him tok than he bes[t] wolde
 Liuen, but hyse dayes were fulde;
 That he ne moucte no more liue,
 For gol ne siluer, ne for no gyue.

Hwan he that wiste, rathe he sende
 After prestes fer and hende,
 Chanounes gode, and monkes bothe,
 Him for to wisse and to rede;
 Him for to hoslon and for to shriue,
 Hwil his bodi were on liue.

Hwan he was hosled and shriuen,
 His quiste maked and for him gyuen
 His knictes dede he alle site,
 For thorw hem he wolde wite
 Hwo micte yeme hise children yunge,
 Til that he kouthen speken wit tunge;
 Speken and gangen, on horse riden,
 Knictes and sweynes bi here siden.
 He spoken theroffe and chosen sone
 A riche man was, under mone
 Was the trewest[e] that he wende,
 Godard, the kinges oune frende;
 And seyden, he moucthe hem best loke
 Yif that he hem undertoke,
 Til hise sone mouthe bere
 Helm on heued, and leden ut here;
 In his hand a spere stark,
 And king ben maked of Denemark.
 He wel trowede that he seyde

And on Godard handes leyde ; 45
 And seyde, " Here I biteche the
 Mine children alle thre,
 Al denemark, and al mi fe,
 Til that mi sone of helde be ;
 But that ich wille, that tho[u] suere 50
 On auter, and on messe-gere,
 On the belles that men ringes,
 On messe bok the prest on singes,
 That thou mine children shalt wel yeme,
 That hire kin be ful wel queme, 55
 Til mi sone mowe ben knicth,
 Thanne biteche him tho his richth,
 Denemark, and that thertil longes,
 Castles and tunes, wodes and wonges."
 Godard stirt up, and sweor al that 60
 The king him bad, and sithen sat
 Bi the knictes, that ther ware,
 That wepen alle swithe sare
 For the king that deide sone ;
 Jhesu Crist, that makede mone, 65
 On the mirke nich to shine,
 Wite his soule fro helle pine ;
 And lene that it mote wone
 In heven-riche with godes sone !
 Hwan Birkabeyn was leyd in graue, 70
 The erl dede sone take the knaue,
 Hauelok, that was the eir,
 Swanborow his sister, Helfled, the tother,
 And in the castel dede he hem do,
 Ther non ne micte hem comen to 75
 Of here kyn, ther thei sperd were ;
 Ther he greten ofte sore,
Bothe for hunger and for kold,

Or he weren thre winter hold.
 Feblelike he gaf hem clothes, 80
 He ne yaf a note of his othes;
 He hem ne clothede rith, ne fedde,
 Ne hem ne dede richelike be-bedde.
 Than Godard was sikerlike
 Under God the moste swike, 85
 That eure in erthe shaped was,
 Withuten on, the wike Judas.
 Have he the malisun to day
 Of alle that eure speken may!
 Of patriarck, and of pope! 90
 And of prest with loken kope!
 Of monekes and hermites bothe!
 And of the leue holi rode,
 That God him selue ran on blode!
 Crist warie him with his mouth! 95
 Waried w[or]the he of north and suth!
 Offe alle men that speken kunne!
 Of Crist, that made mone and sunne!
 Thanne he hauede of al the lond
 Al the folk tilled intil his hond, 100
 And alle haueden sworn him oth,
 Riche and poure, lef and loth,
 That he sholden hise wille freme,
 And that he shulde him nouth greme,
 He thouthe a ful strong trechery, 105
 A trayson, and a felony,
 Of the children for to make:
 The deuel of helle him sone take!
Hwan that was thouth, onan he ferde
 To the tour ther he worn sperde, 110
 Ther he greten for hunger and cold;
 The knaue that was sumdel bold,

Kam him ageyn, on knes him sette,
And Godard ful feyre he ther grette,
And Godard seyde, "What is thow?
Hwi grete ye and goulen nou?" 115

"For us hungreth swithe sore:"—

Seyden he wolden more,
"We ne haue to hete, ne we ne haue
Her-inne neyther knith ne knaue 120
That yeueth us drinken, ne no mete,
Haluendel that we moun ete.

Wo is us that we weren born!
Weilawei nis it no korn
That men micte maken of bred? 125
Us hungreth, we aren ney ded."

Godard herde here wa,
Ther-offe yaf he nouth a stra,
Bot tok the maydnes bothe samen,
Also it were up on hiis gamen, 130
Also he wold[e] with hem leyke,
That weren for hunger grene and bleike.
Of bothen he karf on-two here throtes,
And sithen hem al to grotes.

Ther was sorwe, wo-so it sawe! 135
Hwan the children bith wawe
Leyen and sprauleden in the blod;
Hauelok it saw, and then bistod.

Ful sori was that seli knaue,
Mikel dred he mouthe haue, 140
For at hise herte he saw a knif,
For to reuen him hise lyf.

But the knaue that litel was
He knelede bifor that Judas,
And seyde, "louerd merci nou! 145
Manrede, louerd bidd I you!

Al Denemark I wile you yeue,
 To that forward thu late me liue.
 Here hi wile on boke swere,
 That neure more ne shal I bere 150
 Ayen the, louerd, shel ne spere,
 Ne other wepne bere, that may you dere.
 Louerd haue merci of me!
 To day I wile fro Denemark fle,
 Ne neuere more comen ageyn; 155
 Sweren Y wole that Bircabein
 Neuere yete me ne gat:"—
 Hwan the deuel herde that,
 Sumdel bigan him for to rewe;
 Withdrou the knif, that was lewe, 160
 Of the seli children blod;
 Ther was miracle fair and god!
 That he the knaue nouth ne slou
 But to rewnesse him thit drow.
 Of Auelok rewede him ful sore 165
 And thouche he wolde that he ded wore,
 Buton that he nouth wit his hend
 Ne drepe him nouth, that fule fend,
 Thoucte he, als he him bistod,
 Starinde als he were wod; 170
 "Yif Y late him liues go,
 He micte me wirchen michel wo,
 Grith ne get Y neuere mo,
 He may [me] waiten for to slo;
 And yf he were brouct of liue, 175
 And mine children wolden thriue
 Louerdinges after me,
 Of al Denemark micten he be.
 God it wite, he shal ben ded,
 Wile I taken non other red; 180

I shal do casten him in the se
 Ther I wile that he drench[ed] be,
 Abouten his hals an anker god,
 That he ne flete in the flod."
 Ther anon he dede sende 185
 After a fishere that he wende,
 That wolde al his wille do,
 And sone anon he seyde him to:
 "Grim, thou wost thu art mi thral,
 Wilte don mi wille al, 190
 That I wile bidden the,
 To morwen shal maken the fre,
 And aucte the yeuen, and riche make,
 With-than thu wilt this child take,
 And leden him with the to nicht, 195
 Than thou sest the mone lith,
 Into the se, and don him therinne
 Al wile I taken on me the sinne."
 Grim tok the child and bond him faste,
 Hwil the bondes micte laste, 200
 That weren of ful strong line:
 Tho was Havelok in ful strong pine,
 Wiste he neuere her wat was wo:
 Jhesu Crist, that makede to go
 The halte, and the dumble speken, 205
 Havelok the of Godard wreken!
Hwan Grim him hauede faste bounden,
 And sithen in an eld cloth wounden,
 A keuel of clutes ful unwraste,
 That he [ne] mouthe speke ne fnaste, 210
 Hwere he wolde him bere or lede;
 Hwan he hauede don that dede,
 Hwan the swike him hauede hethede,
That he schulde him forth [lede],

And him drinchen in the se, 215
 That forward makeden he.
 In a poke, ful and blac,
 Sone he caste him on his bac,
 Ant bar him hom to hise cleue, 220
 And bitaucte him Dame Leue,
 And seyde, "Wite thou this knaue,
 Also thou with my lif haue;
 I shal dreinchen him in the se,
 For him shole we ben maked fre,
 Gold hauen ynou and other fe, 225
 That hauet mi louerd bihote me."
 Hwan Dame [Leue] herde that,
 Up she stirte, and nouth ne sat,
 And caste the knaue adoun so harde,
 That hise croune he ther crakede 230
 Ageyn a gret ston, ther it lay.
 Tho Hauelok micte sei, "Weilawei!
 That eure was I kinges bern!"
 That him ne hauede grip or ern,
 Leoun or w[o]lf, w[o]luine or bere, 235
 Or other best, that wolde him dere.
 So lay that child to middel nicth
 That Grim bad Leue bringen lict,
 For to don on his clothes:
 "Ne thenkeste nowt of mine othes 240
 That ich haue mi louerd sworn?
 Ne wile I nouth be forloren.
 I shal beren him to the se,
 (Thou wost that houes me;)
 And I shal drenchen him therinne; 245
 Ris up swithe, an go thu binne,
 And blou the fir, and lith a kandel."
Als she shulde his clothes handel

On for to don, and blawe the fir,
 She saw therinne a lith ful shir, 250
 Also brith so it were day,
 Aboute the knaue ther he lay.
 Of hise mouth it stod a stem,
 Als it were a sunne bem;
 Also lith was it ther-inne, 255
 So ther brenden cerges inne:
 "Jhesu Crist!" wat dame Leue,
 "Hwat is that lith in ure cleue!
 S[t]ir up Grim, and loke wat it menes,
 Hwat is the lith as thou wenes." 260
 He stu[r]ten bothe up to the knaue,
 For man shal god wille haue,
 Vnkeueleden him, and swithe unbounden;
 And sone anon him funden,
 Als he tirnedden of his serk, 265
 On his rith shuldre a kyne merk,
 A swithe brith, a swithe fair:
 "Goddot!" quoth Grim, "this ure eir
 That shal [ben] louerd of Denemark,
 He shal ben king strong and stark; 270
 He shal hauen in his hand
 A Denemark and Engeland;
 He shal do Godard ful wo,
 He shal him hangen or quik flo;
 Or he shal him al quic graue, 275
 Of him shal he no merci haue."
 Thus seide Grim, and sore gret,
 And sone fel him to the fet,
 And seide, "Louerd, have merci
 Of me, and Leue that is me bi! 280
 Louerd we aren bothe thine,
 Thine cherles, thine hine.

Lowerd we sholen the wel fede,
 Til that thu cone riden on stede,
 Til that thu cone ful wel bere 285
 Helm on heued, sheld and spere.
 He ne shal neuere wite, sikerlike,
 Godard, that fule swike.
 Thoru other man, louerd, than thoru the,
 Sal I neuere freman be. 290
 Thou shalt me, louerd, fre maken,
 For I shal yemen the and waken ;
 Thoru the wile I fredom haue :"
 Tho was Haueloc a blithe knaue.
 He sat him up, and crauede bred, 295
 And seide, "Ich am ney dede,
 Hwat for hunger, wat for bondes,
 That thu ledest on min hondes ;
 And for keuel at the laste
 That in mi mouth was thirst faste. 300
 Y was with the so harde prangled,
 That I was the with ney strangled."
 "Wel is me that thu mayth hete."
 "Goddoth!" quath Leue, "Y shal the fete
 Bred an chese, butere and milk, 305
 Pastees and flaunes, al with suilk ;
 Shole we sone the wel fede,
 Louerd, in this mikel nede.
 Soth it is, that men seyt and suereth :
 'Ther God wile helpen, nouth ne dereth :'" 310
Thanne sho hauede brouth the mete,
 Haueloc anon bigan to ete
 Grundlike, and was ful blithe ;
 Couth he nouth his hunger mithe.
 A lof he het, Y woth, and more, 315
 For him hungrede swithe sore.

Thre dayes ther biforn, I wene,
Et he no mete, that was wel sene.
Hwan he hauede eten and was fed,
Grim dede maken a ful fayr bed; 320
Vnclothede him, and dede him ther-inne,
And seyde, "Slep sone, with muchel winne;
Slep wel faste, and dred the nouth,
Fro sorwe to ioie art thu brouth."
Sone so it was lith of day, 325
Grim it undertok the wey
To the wicke traitour Godard,
That was Denema[r]k[es] a stiward,
And seyde, "Louerd, don ich haue
That thou me bede of the knaue; 330
He is drenched in the flod,
Abouten his hials an anker god;
He is witerlike ded,
Eteth he neure more bred;
He lith drenched in the se!— 335
Yif me gold, other fe,
That Y mowe riche be,
And with thi chartre make fre,
For thu ful wel bihetet me,
Thanne I last spak with the." 340
Godard stod, and lokede on him
Thoruthlike, with eyen grim,
And seyde, "Wiltu ben erl?
Go hom swithe, fule, drit, cherl;
Go hethen, and be euere more 345
Thral and cherl, als thou er wore.
Shal [thou] haue non other mede,
For litel, ig do the lede
To the galues, so God me rede!
For thou haues don a wicke dede : 350

Thou mai[s]t stonden her to longe,
Bute thou swithe ethen gonge."

Grim thoucte to late that he ran
Fro that traytour that wicke man;

And thoucte, "Wat shal me to rede? 355

Wite he him on liue, he wile bethe

Heye hangen on galwe tre:

Betere us is of londe to fle,

And berwen bothen ure liues,

And mine children, and mine wiues." 360

Grim solde sone al his corn,

Shep with wolfe, neth wit horn,

Hors, and swin wit berd,

The gees, the hennes of the yerd;

Al he sold, that outh douthe, 365

That he eure selle moucte,

And al he to the peni drou:

Hise ship he greythede wel inow,

He dede it tere, an ful wel pike,

That it ne doutede sond ne krike; 370

Therinne dide a ful god mast,

Stronge kables, and ful fast.

Ores god, an ful god seyl,

Therinne wantede nouth a nayl,

That euere he sholde therinne do: 375

Hwan he hauedet greythede so,

Hauelok the yunge he dide ther-inne,

Him and his wif, hise sones thrinne,

And hise two doutres, that faire wore,

And sone dede he leyn in an ore, 380

And drou him to the heye se,

Ther he mith alther-best fle:

Fro lond woren he bote a mile,

Ne were neuere but ane hwile,

That it ne bigan a wind to rise
 Out of the north, men calleth bise,
 And drof hem intil Engeland,
 That al was sithen in his hond,
 His, that Hauelok was the name;
 But or he hauede michel shame,
 Michel sorwe and michel tene,
 And thrie he gat it al bidene,
 Als ye shulen nou forthwar lere
 Yf that ye wilen ther-to here.

385

390

In Humber Grim bigan to lende,
 In Lindeseye, rith at the north ende,

395

Ther sat is ship up on the sond,
 But Grim it drou up to the lond.
 And there he made a litel cote,
 To him and to hise flote.

400

Bigan he there for to erthe
 A litel hus to maken of erthe,
 So that he wel thore were
 Of here herboru herborwed there,
 And for that Grim that place aute,
 The stede of Grim the name laute,

405

So that Grimesbi calleth alle
 That ther-offe speken alle,
 And so shulen men callen it ay,
 Bituene this and domesday.

410

IV.

THE ROMANCE OF KING ALEXANDER.

BEFORE A.D. 1300.

A French Romance of Alexander, in nine books, consisting of about 20,000 lines, was composed in the year A.D. 1200, and a free English translation of this work was made some time before A.D. 1300, by an unknown author, who has been called Adam Davie, on account of some religious Poems composed by a person of that name being found in the MS. containing the Alexandrine Romance.

The following extracts (the dialect of which is *Southern*, with some *Midland* peculiarities) are taken from the *Metrical Romances of the Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Centuries*, edited by Henry Weber; 3 vols. Edinburgh, 1810.

[Lines 4824—4849.]

LORDYNGES, also I fynde,
At Mede sò bigynneth Ynde;
Forsothe ich woot, it stretcheth ferrest
Of alle the londes in the est,
And oth the south half sikerlyk,
To the cee taketh of Affryk;
And the north half to a mountayne,
That is ycleped Caucasayne.
Forsooth yee shulen vnderstonde,
Twyes is somer in the londe
And neuer more wynter ne chele¹,
That londe is ful of al wele;
Twyes hy gaderen fruyt there,
And wyne, and corn in one yere.

5

10

¹ Weber prints *chalen*.

· THE ROMANCE OF KING ALEXANDER. 53

In the londe, als I fynde, of Ynde 15
 Ben cites fyue thousynde;
 Withouten ydles, and castels,
 And borughs tounes, swithe feles.
 In the londe of Ynde thou mighth lere
 Nyne thousynde folk of selcouth manere, 20
 That ther non is other yliche;
 Ne helde thou it noughth ferlich,
 Ac by that thou understonde the gestes
 Bethe of man and ek of beestes,
 That us telleth the maistres saunz fayle; 25
 Than mighth thou haue meruaile.

[Lines 4852—4855; 4862—4889.]

Listneth of wondres, and sitteth in pes,
 In Ynde is a water y-hote Ganges;
 There ben inne fysshes of strengthe,
 Thre hundreth feet hy ben of lengthe. 30
 There is another ydle halt Gangerides
 There ben inne castels and of poeple pres;
 Hy beeth also mychel and bolde,
 As childe of seven yeres olde,
 Hy ne ben no more verreyment: 35
 Ac hy ben of body faire and gent;
 Hy ben natheles faire and wighth[e],
 And gode and engyneful to fighth[e],
 And have horses auenaunt,
 To hem stalworth and asperaunt. 40
 Clerkes hy ben with the best[e]
 Of alle men hy ben queyntest[e];
 And evermore hy beth werrende,
 And upon other conquerrende.
 By the *mone and by the sterren*, 45
Hy connen jugge alle werren.

Hy ben the altherbest[e]
 That ben from est into west[e];
 For hy connen shete the gripes fleigheyng
 And the dragons that ben brennyng. 50
 Hy ben in wode gode hunteres,
 To cacche bores and wilde beres,
 And ek lyouns and olyfaunz.
 The kyng of these sergeaunz
 May leden to bataille 55
 Two thousande knighttes saunz faille,
 And seven hundreth olifaunz
 And fourty thousande redy sergeaunz.

[Lines 4902—4915.]

Michel is the wonder that is under Crist Jesus.
 There biyonden is an hyll, is cleped Malleus. 60
 Listneth now to me I prairie for my loue!
 This hyll is so heie that nothing cometh aboue;
 The folk on the north-half in thester stede hy beth,
 For in al the yer no sunne hy ne seeth.
 Hy on the south-half ne seen sonne non 65
 Bot in on moneth, atte fest of saint John;
 Thoo that woneth in the est[e] partie,
 The sonne and the hote skeye
 Al the day hem shyneth on,
 That hy ben black so pycche son¹. 70
 Thise naciouns ben outelyng,
 And in her owen yemyng.

[Lines 4928—4953.]

A folk woneth beside thoos,
 That beeth y-cleped Farangos;
 That haunteth wilderness and forestes, 75
 And nymeth therinne wilde bestes,

¹ Weber prints *pyches som*.

And flesshe hy eten raw and hoot,
 Withouten kycchen[de], God it woot.
 Another folk hem woneth by,
 That beth y-hoten Maritiny. 80
 By the water is her wonynge,
 And hy libben al by fysshynge.
 Hy nymmeth the fyssh, and eteth it thanne,
 Withouten fyre, withouten panne.
 Ne hebben hy non other fyre 85
 Bote shynying of the sonne clere.
 Another folk there is next, as hogges crepeth,
 After crabben and airen hy skippen and lepeth;
 Of thornes and bussches ben her garnement,
 And of holmen leues, I sigge verrayment. 90
 Another folk woneth there biside;
 Orphani hy hatteth wide.
 When her eldrynges beth elde,
 And ne mowen hem-seluen welde,
 Hy hem sleeth, and bidelue, 95
 And the guttes hy eteth hem-selue;
 The guttes hy eten, for loue fyne,
 And for penaunce and for discipline.

[Lines 4962—4983.]

Another folk there is biside;
 Houndynges men clepeth hem wide. 100
 From the brest[e] to the grounde
 Men hy ben, abouen houndes,
 Berkyng of houndes hy habbe.
 Her honden, withouten gabbe,
 Ben y-shuldred as an fysshe, 105
 And clawed after hound, i-wisse.
 In wood hy woneth, god it woot.
 And libben by the wylde goot.

Another folk there is ferliche,
Also blak so any pycche;
An eighe hy habbeth and no mo,
And a foot on to goo.
With his foot whan hyt ryneth
He wrieth his body, and wanne it shineth;
For his foot so mychel is,
It may his body wryen, i-wis.
Another folk there is forthers,
That libbeth also palmers,
Ac mete thai ne habben
Bot hawen, hepen, slon, and rabben.

[Lines 5182—5203.]

The gode clerk, men cleped Solim,
Hath y-writen in his latin,
That ypotame a wonder beest is
More than an olifaunt, i-wis;
Toppe and rugge, and croupe and cors,
Is semblabel to an hors.
A short beek, and a croked tayl
He hath, and bores tussh, saunz fayle;
Blak is his heued as pycche.
It is a beeste ferliche;
It wil al fruyt etc,
Applen, noten, reisyng, and whete.
Ac mannes flesshe, and mannes bon,
It loueth best of everychon.
In roche is his wonyng,
In water and londe his purchaceyng.
Bothe hy eteth flesshe and fysshe.
Of no beest[e] drad he nys.
Hynd and forth he tourneth his pas,
Whan he gooth on any cas,

That no man ne shulde y-wite,
Whiderwarde hy were biwite.

[Lines 6508—6641.]

Now ye schule y-here gestes,
Bothe of wormes and of bestis,
That kyng Alisaunder fond, 145
Tho he wente in Egipte lond.
Sitteth stille, and geveth listenyng,
And ye schule here of wondur thyng.
Certes, lordynges, Alisaunder the kyng
Wolde y-seo al thyng; 150
Weore hit open, weore hit loke,
That he myght here of spoke.

He fond, as the bok tellith us,
A best in the lond y-cleped Cessus.
Horned hit is as an oxce: 155
Berd hit hadde long y-waxe.
Hit hath monnes feet byhynde;
And his feet to-fore, so Y fynde,
Buth yliche monnes hond[e].
Hit nedeth nothyng to wond[e]. 160
Hit is a best founde in boke
Wel griseliche on to loke.

Another best also ther ys
That hatte rinocertis, y-wis.
Hit is more than an olifaunt; 165
In wilde wode is his haunt¹.
The olifans, in medlé,
And theo lyouns he wol sle.
For, on his snowte, an horn he beres,
That he smyt with lyouns and beres. 170

¹ Weber prints *bont*.

Theo horn is scharp as a sweord,
Bothe by the greyn and at ord.

A best ther is, of more los,
That is y-cleped Monoceros.
In marreys and reods is heore wonyng, 175
No best no haveth his fyghtyng.

To-fore, y-mad is his cors
After the forme of an hors.
Fete after olifant, certis :
Hed he hath as an heort[is]. 180

Tayl he hath as an hog :
Croked tuxes as a dog.
Ther nys to hym tygre, no lyoun,
No no best, so feloun.

He hath, in his front strong, 185
An horn foure feet long,
So as Y in bokes fynde ;
No raysour is so kervynge.

He sleth ypotanos, and kokadrill[e],
And alle bestes to his wille 190
Hound no best dar him asayle,
No non armed mon, saun faile.
No no mon may him lache,
Bote by that he no snache.

Another best there is, of eovel kynde, 195
Griseliche hit is, after theo feonde.
He schal sterve anon ryght,
That hit may on have a syght.
Cathalebra is hire name :
God ows schilde al fro schame ! 200

Yet ther beon emoten, so Y fynde,
That beon more than grehoundis,

No mon no may heom anoye,
 Bote he wol anon ryght dye.
 Ethiope and Clante both two londis; 205
 Ant bytweone heom renneth selcouth strondis.
 From Nyl, a water of Paradys
 Thennes cometh, and hoteth Tiger y-wis.
 In tyme of wynter hit is dryhe;
 And in somur hit over-renneth the contray. 210
 Heo noriceth delfyns, and cokadrill,
 Of whom after telle Y wol.

Ther woneth a folk, of body lyght;
 Broun they beon, and nothyng wight.
 For they beon withoute clothes, naked; 215
 Hardy, they beon and ful of wrake.
 Delfyns they nymeth, and cokedrill[e],
 And afygteth, to heore wille,
 For to beore heom to the flod;
 And by lond, gef heom thynkith god. 220
 Theose beon stronge y-wis:
 In winter no eteth they flesch no fisch;
 No corn, no fruyt, no other thyng:
 Ac they liveth, so theo heryng,
 By the water, and gendryth thereynne. 225
 Feet and hond both heore vynes.
 They cometh a lond in somer tide,
 And makith teyntis wide and side:
 And libbeth by flesch and fisch,
 So doth other men y-wis. 230

Now listeneth and sitteth stille,
 What best is the cokadrille.
 He is strong, and of gret valour,
Brode feet he hath four.

Ac by kynde he is-byreved, 235
 That they no haueth no tonge in the heved,
 Ayren they liggeth, as a griffon;
 Ac they beon more feor aroun.

'Twelf fote he is long,
 And so olifant he is strong. 240
 In hire mouth both teth treble set,
 None better bores y-whet.
 He beoreth at ones, there he is good,
 Ten men over theoflod.

Theo delfyns woneth hire byside; 245
 A strong best of gret pryde.
 They haveth schuldren on the rygge,
 Eche as scharpe as sweordis egge.
 Whan the delfyn the cokadrill seoth,
 Anon togedre wroth the[i] both, 250
 And smyteth togedre anon ryght,
 And makith thenne a steorne fyght,
 Ac the delfyn is more queynte¹,

.
 And halt him in the water doune¹;

And whan theofkodadrill him over swymmeth, 255
 He rerith up his brustelis grymme,
 And his wombe al to-rent;
 Thus is the cokadrill y-schent,
 And y-slawe of theofdelfyn
 God geve ous god fyn. 260

Monye both theofmerveilles of Ethiope,
 That Alisaundre hath y-grope.
 There he fond a mounte bering,
 And tidynges herde of his endyng.

¹ Weber prints *queynter* and *douner*.

Hit helpeth noght, ay¹ Y saide : 265
Ac therof he was eovil paied.
Yet in Ethiope is a dych,
Merveillous, and eke gryslich.
Nyght and day there is gredyng;
Ac mon may seo no quyk thyng. 270
Ac sot and snow cometh out of holes,
And brennyng fuyr, and glowyng coles;
That theo snow for the fuyr no malt,
No the fuyr for theo snow aswelt.
This is now a wondur thyng, 275
That last to theo worldis endyng.

¹ as?

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER.

A. D. 1298.

Reign of William the Conqueror.

[Copied and edited from Cotton MS. Caligula A. xi.]

Robert of Gloucester, a monk of the abbey of Gloucester lived in the reign of Edward I, wrote a rhymed Chronicle of England from the Siege of Troy to the death of Henry III (1272).

A contemporary MS. in the British Museum has furnished the editor with the present specimen of the Chronicler's language which represents the Southern dialect of Gloucester. Robert of Gloucester is supposed to have been the author of a metrical version of the Lives of Saints. A few of these Lives (including the Life of St. Dunstan) have been printed in *Early English Texts*, edited for the Philological Society by F. J. Furnivall, M.A.

MUCHE aþ þe sorwe ibe ofte in Engelande,
 As 3e mowe her ȝ er ihure ȝ understonde,
 Of moni bataile þat aþ ibe, ȝ þat men þat lond ne
 Verst, as 3e abbeþ ihurd, þe emparours of Rome,
 Suppe Saxons and Englissh mid batayles stronge,
 ȝ suppe hii of Denemarch, þat hulde it al so longe
 Atte laste hii of Normandie, þat maisters beþ ȝut l
 Wonne hit ȝ holdeþ ȝut, icholle telle in wuch man
 Þo Willam bastard hurde telle of Haraldes suikelhe
 Hou he adde ymad him king, and mid such falshe
 Vor þat lond him was bitake, as he wel wuste,
 To wite hit to him wel, ȝ he wel to him truste.

As þe hende he dude verst, and messagers him sende, —
 Þat he understode him bet is dede vor to amende,
 ȝ þoȝte on þe grete oþ, þat he him adde er ydo, 15
 To wite him wel Engeland, ȝ to spousi is doȝter also;
 ȝ hulde him þer-of vorewarde, as he bihet ek þe kinge,
 ȝ bote he dude bi-time, he wolde sende him oþer tidinge,
 ȝ seche him out ar tuelf monþe, ȝ is riȝtes winne,
 Þat he ne ssolde abbe in al Engeland, an hurne to wite
 him inne. 20

Harald him sende worde, "þat folie it was to truste
 To such oþ, as was ido mid strengþe, as he wel wuste;
 Vor ȝif a maide treuþe ipliȝt, to do an fole dede
 Al one priveliche, wiþoute hire frendes rede,
 Þulke vorewarde were uor noȝt, ȝ watloker it aȝte her,
 Þat ich suor an oþ, þat was al in þi poer, 26
 Wiþ-owte conseil of al þe lond, of þing þat min noȝt nas.
 Þer-uore nede oþ isuore, nede ibroke was.
 ȝ ȝif þou me wolt seche in Engeland, ne be þou noȝt so
 sturne,

Siker þou be þou ne ssalt me finde in none hurne." 30

þo Willam hurde þat he wolde susteini is trecherie,
 He let of-sende is kniȝtes of al Normandie,
 To conseili him in þis cas, ȝ to helpe him in such nede;
 And he gan of hor porchas largeliche hom bede,
 As hii founde supþe in Engeland, þo it iwonne was, 35
 þe betere was toward him hor herte uor þis cas.

þe duc Willam is wille among hom alle sede,
 Þat four þinges him made mest biginne þulke dede.

þat Godwine, Harald's fader to deþe let do
 So villiche Alfred, is cosin, ȝ is felawes also, 40
 ȝ uor Harald adde is oþ ibroke, þat he suor mid is riȝt
 hond,

þat he wolde to is bioþe, witie Engeland,
 ȝ uor Seint Edward him ȝef Engeland also,

And uor he was next of is blod, ȝ best wurȝe ȝer to,
 ȝ uor Harald nadde no riȝt bote in falshede. 45
 ȝes ȝinges him made mest biginne ȝulke dede.
 ȝ uor he wolde ȝat alle men iseye is trewehede,
 To ȝe pope Alisandre he sende in such cas him to rede.
 Haraldes falshede ȝo ȝe pope ysey ȝere,
 ȝ parauntre me him tolde more ȝan soȝ were, 50
 ȝe pope asoilede ȝ blessedede Willam, ȝ alle his
 ȝat into ȝis bataile mid him ssolde iwis,
 ȝ halwede is baner ȝat me at-uore him bere.
 ȝo was he ȝ alle his gladdore ȝan hii er were.
 So ȝat ȝis duc adde aȝen heruest al ȝare 55
 His barons ȝ kniȝtes, mid him uor to fare.
 To ȝe hauene of Sein Walri ȝe duc wende ȝo
 Mid ȝe men ȝat he adde, ȝ abide mo.
 After heruest ȝo hor ssipes ȝ hii al preste were,
 ȝ [wynd] hom com after wille, hor seiles hii gonne arere,
 ȝ hiderward in ȝe se wel glad ȝen wei nome. 61
 So ȝat bi-side Hastinge to Engeland hii come,
 Hom ȝoȝte ȝo hii come alond, ȝat al was in hor hond.
 As sone as ȝe duc Willam is fot sette alond,
 On of his kniȝtes gradde, "hold vaste Willam nou 65
 Engeland, uor ȝer nis no king bote ȝou,
 Vor siker ȝou be, Engeland is nou ȝin iwis."
 ȝe duc Willam anon uorbed alle his,
 ȝat non nere so wod, to robby, ne no maner harm do
 ȝere,
 Vȝe ȝe lond, ȝat is was, bote hom ȝat aȝen him were. 70
 Al an fourtene niȝt hii bileuede ȝer aboute,
 ȝ conseilede of batayle, ȝ ordeinede hor route.
 King Harald sat glad ynou at Euerwik atte mete,
 So ȝat ȝer com a messenger, ar he adde iȝete,
 ȝ sede, ȝat duc Willam to Hastinges was icome, 75
 ȝ is baner adde arerd, ȝ ȝe contreie al inome.

Harald, anon mid grete herte corageus ynou,
 As he of no mon ne tolde, þuderward uaste he drou,
 He ne let noȝt clupie al is folc, so willesfol he was,
 ȝ al for in þe oþer bataile him vel so vair cas. 80
 Þo duc Willam wuste þat he was icome so nei,
 A monek he sende him in message, ȝ dude as þe sley,
 Þat lond, þat him was iziue, þat he ssolde him vpȝelde,
 Oþer come, ȝ dereyni þe riȝte mid suerd in þe velde.
 ȝif he sede, þat he nadde none riȝte þer-to, 85
 Þat vpe þe popes lokinge of Rome he ssolde it do,
 ȝ he wolde þer-to stonde, al wiþoute fiȝte,
 Wer Seint Edward hit him ȝaf, ȝ wer he adde þer-to riȝte.
 Harald sende him word aȝen, þat he nolde him take no lond,
 Ne no lokinge of Rome, bote suerd ȝ riȝt hond. 90
 Þo hit oþer ne miȝte be, eiþer in is side
 Conseilede ȝ ȝarkedede hom, bataile uor to abide.
 Þe englisse al þe niȝt biuore uaste bigonne to singe,
 ȝ spende al þe niȝt in glotonie ȝ in drinkinge.
 Þe Normans ne dude noȝt so, ac criede on God uaste, 95
 And ssriue hom æch after oþer þe wule þe niȝt ylaste,
 ȝ amorwe hom let hoseli mid milde herte ynou.
 ȝ suppe þe duc wiþ is ost toward þe bataile drou,
 An stounde he gan abide, ȝ is kniȝtes rede :—
 “ȝe kniȝtes,” he sede, “þat beþ of so noble dede, 100
 Þat nere neuere ouercome, ne ȝoure elderne naþemo,
 Understondeþ of the kunde of France þat ȝoure elderne
 dude so wo,
 Hou mi fader in Paris amidde is kinedom,
 Mid prowesse of ȝoure faderes mid strengþe him ouercom.
 Understondeþ hou ȝoure elderne þe king nome also, 105
 ȝ held him uorte he adde amended þat he adde misdo,
 ȝ Richard, þat was þo a child, izolde Normandie,
 Þat was duc herbiuore, ȝ þat to such maistrie,
 Þat at *ecbe parlement* þat he in France were,

Þat he were igurd wiþ suerd, þe wule he were þere,
 Ne þat þe king of France ne his so[n] hardi nere,
 Ne non atte parlement þat knif ne suerd bere.
 Understondeþ ek þe dedes, þat þulke Richard dude also,
 Þat he ne ouercom nozt kinges alone, ac wel more þer-to,
 Ac he ouercom þe deuel, ȝ adoun him caste,
 To-gadere as hii wrastlede, ȝ bond is honden vaste
 Bihinde at is rugge; of such prowesse ȝe þenche,
 Ne ssame ȝe nozt þat Harald, þat euere was of lu
 wrenche,

ȝ biuore ȝou was uorsuore, þat he wolde mid is taile
 Turne is wombe toward vs, ȝ is face in bataile.
 Understondeþ þe suikedom, þat is fader ȝ he wroȝte,
 ȝ hii þat mid him here beþ, þo hii to deþe broȝte
 So villiche Alfred mi cosin, ȝ my kunesmen also.
 Hou miȝte in eny wise more ssame be ido?
 Monie, þat dude þulke dede, ȝe mowe her [to day] ise. ȝ
 Hou longe ssolle hor luþer heued aboue hor ssoldren be?
 Adraweþ ȝoure suerdes, ȝ loke wo may do best,
 Þat me ise ȝoure prowesse fram est to þe west,
 Vor to awreke þat gentil blod, þat so villiche was inome
 Of vr kunesmen, vor we mowe wel, vr time is nou icome."
 Þe duc nadde nozt al ised, þat mid earnest gret
 His folc quicliche to þe bataile sscet.
 A suein, þat het Taylefer, smot uorþ biuore þer,
 ȝ slou anon an Engliss mon, þat a baner ber,
 ȝ ef-sone anoþer baneur, ȝ þe þridde almost also,
 Ac him-sulf he was aslawe, ar þe dede were ydo.
 Þe uerst ende of is ost biuore Harald mid such ginne
 So þikke sette, þat no mon ne miȝte come wiþinne,
 Wiþ stronge targes hom biuore, þat archers ne dude he
 nozt,

So þat Normans were nei to grounde ibroȝt.
 Willam biþoȝte an queintise, ȝ bigan to fle uaste,

ȝ is folc uorþ mid him, as hii were agaste,
 ȝ flowe ouer an longe dale, ȝ so vp an-hey.
 Þe Englisse ost was prout ynou, þo he þis isey,
 ȝ bigonne hōm to sprede, ȝ after þen wey nome. 145
 Þe Normans were aboue þe hul, þe othere upward come,
 ȝ biturnde hom aboue al eseliche, as it wolde be donward,
 ȝ þe othere bineþe ne miȝte noȝt so quicliche upward,
 ȝ hii were biuore al to-sprad, þat me miȝte bitwene hom
 wende.

Þe Normans were þo wel porueid aboute in eche ende, 150
 ȝ stones adonward slonge vpe hom ynowe,
 ȝ mid speres ȝ mid flon vaste of hom slowe,
 ȝ mid suerd ȝ mid ax, uor hii þat upward nome,
 Ne miȝte no wille abbe of dunt, as hii þat donward come,
 ȝ hor vant-warde was to-broke, þat me miȝte wiþinne hom
 wende, 155

So þat þe Normans uaste slowe in ech ende.
 Of þe Englisse al uor noȝt þat þe valeie was nei,
 As heie ifuld mid dede men, as þe doune anhei.
 Þe ssetare donward al uor noȝt vaste slowe to grounde,
 So þat Harald þoru þen eie issote was depes wounde. 160
 ȝ a kniȝt þat isei, þat he was to deþe ibroȝt,
 ȝ smot him, as he lay bineþe, ȝ slou him as uor noȝt.
 Fram þat it was amorwe þe bataile ilaste strong,
 Vorte it was hei mid ouernon and þat was somdel long.
 Moni was þe gode dunt þat duc Willam ȝef a day. 165
 Vor þre stedes he slou vnder him, as me say,
 Vor-priked, and uor-arnd aboute, ȝ uor-wounded also,
 ȝ debrused aȝen dedemen, ar þe bataile were ido.
 ȝ ȝut was Willames grace þulke day so god,
 Þat he nadde no wounde warþoru he ssedde an drope
 blod. 170

Þus lo! þe Englisse folc vor noȝt to grounde com
 Vor a fals king, þat nadde no riȝt to þe kinedom,

ʒ come to a nywe louerd, þat more in riȝte was.
 Ac hor noþer, as me may ise, in pur riȝte nas.
 ʒ þus was in Normannes hond þat lond ibroȝt iwis, 175
 Þat an-aunter ȝif euermo keueringe þer-of is.
 Of þe Normans beþ heye men, þat beþ of Engelonde
 ʒ þe lowe men of Saxons, as ich understonde,
 So þat ȝe seþ in eiper side wat riȝte ȝe abbeþ þerto;
 Ac ich understonde, þat it was þoru Godes wille ydo. 180
 Vor þe wule þe men of þis lond pur heþene were,
 No lond, ne no folc aȝen hom in armes nere;
 Ac nou suppe þat þet folc auenge cristendom,
 ʒ wel lute wule hulde þe biheste þat he nom,
 ʒ turnde to sleupe, ʒ to prute, ʒ to lecherie, 185
 To glotonie, ʒ heye men multe to robberie,
 As þe gastes in a uision to Seint Edward sede,
 Wu þer ssolde in Engeland come such wrecchede;
 Vor robberie of heie men, vor clerken hordom,
 Hou God wolde sorwe sende in þis kinedom. 190
 Bituene Misselmasse and Sein Luc, a Sein Calixtes day,
 As vel in þulke ȝere in a Saterdag,
 In þe ȝer of grace, as it vel also,
 A þousend and sixe ʒ sixti, þis bataile was ido.
 Duc Willam was þo old nyne ʒ þritti ȝer, 195
 ʒ on ʒ thritti ȝer he was of Normandie duc er.
 Þo þis bataile was ydo, duc Willam let bringe
 Vaire is folc, þat was aslawe, an erpe þoru alle þinge.
 Alle þat wolde leue he ȝef, þat is fon anerpe broȝte.
 Haraldes moder uor hire sone wel ȝerne him bisoȝte 200
 Bi messagers, ʒ largeliche him bed of ire þinge,
 To granti hire hire sones bodi anerpe vor to bringe.
 Willam hit sende hire vaire inou, wiþoute eny thing ware
 uore :
 So þat it was þoru hire wiþ gret honour ybore
 To þe hous of Waltham, ʒ ibroȝt anerpe þere, 205

In þe holi rode chirche, þat he let him-sulf rere,
 An hous of religion, of canons ywis.
 Hit was þer vaire an erþe ibroȝt, as it ȝut is.
 Willam þis noble duc, þo he adde ido al þis,
 Þen wey he nom to Londone he ȝ alle his, 216
 As king and prince of londe, with nobleye ynou.
 Aȝen him wiþ uair procession þat folc of toune drou
 ȝ vnderueng him vaire inou, as king of þis lond.
 Þus com lo Engeland. in to Normandies hond.
 ȝ þe Normans ne couþe speke þo. bote hor owe speche,
 ȝ speke french as hii dude at om ȝ hor children dude also
 teche. 216

So þat heiemen of þis lond. that of hor blod come,
 Holdeþ alle þulke speche þat hii of hom nome.
 Vor bote a man conne frenss, me telþ of him lute.
 Ac lowe men holdeþ to engliss ȝ to hor owe speche ȝute.
 Ich wene þer ne beþ in al þe world contreyes none, 221
 Þat ne holdeþ to hor owe speche bote Engeland one.
 Ac wel me wot uor to conne boþe wel it is,
 Vor þe more þat a mon can, the more wurþe he is.
 Þis noble duc Willam him let crouny king 225
 At Londone a mid winter day nobliche þoru alle þing,
 Of þe erchebissop of Euerwik, Aldred was is name.
 Þer nas prince in al þe world of so noble fame.
 Of þe heyemen of þe lond, þat hii ne ssolde aȝen bi-turne,
 He esste ostage strong inou ȝ hii ne solde noȝt wurne, 230
 Ac toke him ostage god at is owe wille,
 So that ȝif eny aȝen him was, huld him þo stille:
 ȝif toward Edgar Atheling eni is herte drou,
 ȝat was kunde eir of þis lond, him huld þo stille ynou.
 So þat þo þis Edgar wuste al hou it was, 235
 ȝat him nas no þing so god as to seky cas,
 His moder ȝ is sostren tuo mid him sone he nom,
 To wende aȝen to þe lond fram wan he er com.

A wind þer com þo in þe se ȝ drof hom to Scotlonde,
 So þat after betere wind hii moste þere at-stonde. 240
 Macolom king of þe lond to him sone hom drou,
 ȝ vor þe kunne fram wan hii come, honoured hom ynou.
 So þat þe gode Margarete as is wille to [him] com,
 þe eldore soster of þe tuo in spoushod he nom.
 Bi hire he adde an doȝter suppe þe gode quene Mold, 245
 þat quene was of Engelond, as me aþ er ytold,
 þat goderhele al Engelond was heo euere ybore.
 Vor þoru hire com suppe Engelond into kunde more.
 In þe ȝer of grace a þousend ȝ sixti þerto
 King Macolom spousede Margarete so. 250
 Ac king Willam þer biuore aboute an tuo ȝer
 Wende aȝen to Normandie fram wan he com er,
 As in þe verste ȝere þat he ueng is kinedom.
 Ac sone aȝen to Engelond a sein Nicolas day he com,
 ȝ kniȝtes of biȝonde se, and oþer men also, 255
 He ȝef londes in Engelond, þat liztliche come þerto,
 þat ȝute hor eirs holdeþ alonde moni on;
 ȝ deseritede moni kunde men, þat he huld is fon.
 So þat þe mestedel of heye men, þat in Engelond beþ,
 Beþ icome of þe Normans, as ȝe nou iseþ. 260
 ȝ men of religion of Normandie also
 He feffede here mid londes, & mid rentes also.
 So þat vewe contreies beþ in Engelonde,
 þat monekes nabbeþ of Normandie somwat in hor honde.
 King Willam biȝoȝte him ek of þe folc, þat was uorlore, 265
 ȝ aslawe ek þoru him in þe bataile biuore.
 ȝ þere, as þe bataile was, an abbeye he let rere
 Of Sein Martin, uor hor soulen, þat þere aslawe were,
 ȝ þe monekes wel inou feffede wiþoute fayle,
 þat is icluped in Engelond, abbey of þe batayle. 270
 þe abbeye also of Cam he rerde in Normandie
 Of Sainte Steuene, þat is nou, ich wene, a nonnerye.

He broȝte vp moni oþer hous of religion also,
 To bete þulke robberie, þat him þoȝte he adde ydo.
 ȝ erles eke ȝ barons, þat he made here also, 275
 þoȝte þat hii ne come noȝt mid gode riȝte þerto,
 Hii rerde abbeis ȝ priories vor hor sunnes þo,
 At Teoskesburi ȝ Oseneye, and aboute oþer mo.
 King Willam was to milde men debonere ynou,
 Ac to men, þat him wiþsede, to alle sturnhede he drou. 280
 In chirche he was deuout inou, vor him ne ssolde no
 day abide,

þat he ne hurde masse ȝ matines, ȝ euesong an ech tide.
 So varþ monye of þis heye men, in chirche me may yse
 Knely to God, as hii wolde al quic to him fle, 284
 Ac be hii arise, ȝ abbeþ iturnd fram þe weued hor wombe,
 Wolues dede hii nimeþ vorþ, þat er dude as lombe.
 Hii to-draweþ þe sely bonde-men as hii wolde hom hulde ywis.
 Þey me wepe ȝ crie on hom, no mercy þer nis.
 Vnneþe was þer eni hous in al Normandie
 Of religion, as abbey oþer priorie, 290
 þat king Willam ne feffede here in Engelonde,
 Mid londes, oþer mid rentes, þat hii abbeþ here an honde,
 As me may wide aboute in moni contreye ise,
 Ware-þoru þis lond nede mot þe pouerore be.
 King Willam adde ispoused, as God ȝef þat cas, 295
 Þe erles doȝter of Flaundres, Mold hire name was.
 Sones hii adde to-gadere ȝ doȝtren boþe tuo,
 As Robert þe Courthese, ȝ Willam þe rede king also,
 Henry þe gode king was ȝongost of echon.
 Doȝtren he adde also Cecile het þat on 300
 Þe eldoste, þat was at Cam nonne ȝ abbesse.
 Constance þe oþer was, of Brutayne contesse,
 Þe erles wif Alein, Adele ȝongoste was,
 To Steuene Bleis ispoused, as God ȝef þat cas,
 ȝ bi him adde ek an sone, Steuene was is name, 305

Þat suppe was king of Engeland, 7 endede mid ssame.
 Macolom king of Scotlond, and Edgar Aþeling,
 Þat best kunde in Engeland adde to be king,
 Hulde hom euere in Scotlond, 7 poer to hom nome,
 To worri vpe king Willam, wanne god time come. 310
 7 gret compainie of heye men here in Engelande
 Þat ne louede noȝt king Willam, were þo in Scotlonde,
 Vor king Macolom [alle] vnderueng, þat aȝen king Willam
 were,

7 drou hom to him in Scotlond, 7 sustenede hom þere.
 Vor Edgar-is wiues broþer, was kunde eir of þis londe, 311
 So þat hii adde of boþe þe londes gret poeir sone an honde.
 Ar king Willam adde ibe king volliche þre ȝer,
 Þat folc of Denemarch, þat þis lond worrede er,
 Greiþede hom mid gret poer, as hii dude er ilome,
 7 mid þre hondred ssipuol men to Engeland hii come. 312
 Hii ariuede in þe north contreye, 7 Edgar Aþeling
 7 king Macolom were þo glade þoru alle þing.
 To hom hii come at Homber mid poer of Scotlond,
 7 were alle at o conseil to worri Engeland.
 Hii worrede al Norþhumberlond, 7 uorþ euere as hii come,
 So þat þe toun of Euerwik, 7 þe castel ek hii nome, 313
 7 monye heye men also of þe contreie aboute,
 So þat þet folc binorþe ne dorste no u[e]r at-route.
 7 þo hii adde al iwonne þe contreie þer biside,
 Hii ne come no uer Souþward, ac þer hii gonne abide 314
 Bituene þe water of Trente 7 of Ouse also.
 Þere hii leuede¹ in hor poer vorte winter were ido.
 Þe king Willam abod is time vorte winter was al oute,
 7 þo com he mid gret poer 7 mid so gret route,
 Þat hii nadde no poer aȝen him uorto stonde, 315
 Ac lete þe king þe maistrie, 7 flowe to Scotlonde,
 7 hom to hor owe lond þe Deneis flowe aȝé.

¹ bi-leuede ?

De king destruede þe contreie al aboute þe se,
 Of frut & of corne þat þer ne bileuede noȝt
 Sixti mile fram þe se, þat nas to grounde ibroȝt. 340
 ⁊ al þat þe Deneis no mete ne founde þere
 Wanne hii come to worri, ⁊ so þe feblore were.
 So þat ȝute to þis day mucche lond þer is
 As al wast ⁊ vntuled, so it was þo destrued ywis.
 King Willam adauntede that folc of Walis, 345
 ⁊ made hom bere him truage, ⁊ bihote him ⁊ his.
 Þe seueþe ȝer of is kinedom, an alle soule day,
 Þe quene Mold is wif deide, þat er longe sik lay,
 In þe ȝer of grace a þousend ⁊ seuenti ⁊ þre.
 Anon in þulke sulue ȝere, as it wolde be, 350
 Þe king Willam, uorto wite þe wurþ of is londe,
 Let enqueri streitliche þoru al Engelonde,
 Hou moni plou lond, ⁊ hou moni hiden also,
 Were in euerich ssire, ⁊ wat hii were wurþ þerto;
 ⁊ þe rentes of ech toun; ⁊ of þe wateres echone 355
 Þet worþ, ⁊ of wodes ek, þat þer ne bileuede none,
 Þat he nuste wat hii were worþ of al Engelonde,
 ⁊ wite al clene þat worþ þerof, ich vnderstonde,
 ⁊ let it write clene ynou, ⁊ þat scrit dude iwis
 In þe tresorie at Westminstre, þere it ȝut is, 360
 So þat vre kinges suppe, wanne hii raunson toke,
 I-redy wat folc miȝte ȝiue, hii founde þere in hor boke.
 Þer was bi king Willames daye worre ⁊ sorwe inou,
 Vor no mon ne dorste him wiþ-segge, he wroȝte mucche
 wiþ wou.

To hom, þat wolde is wille do, debonere he was ⁊ milde, 365
 ⁊ to hom þat [him] wiþ-sede, strong tirant ⁊ wilde.
 Wo-so come to esse him riȝt of eni trespas,
 Bote he payde him þe bet, þe wors is ende was,
 ⁊ þe more vnriȝt me ssolde him do : ac among oþere napeles
 þoru-out al Engelond he huld wel god pes, 370

Vor me miȝte bere bi is daye, ȝ lede hardeliche
 Tresour aboute ȝ oȝer god oueral aperteliche,
 In wodes ȝ in oȝere studes, so ȝat no time nas
 ȝat pes bet isustained, ȝat [ȝ]ar bi his time was.
 Game of houndes he louede inou, ȝ of wilde best, 375
 ȝ is forest ȝ is wodes, ȝ mest ȝe niwe forest,
 ȝat is in Souȝ-hamtessire, vor ȝulke he louede inou,
 ȝ astorede wel mid bestes ȝ lese mid gret wou.
 Vor he caste out of house ȝ hom of men a gret route,
 ȝ bi-nom hor lond, ȝe ȝritti mile ȝ more ȝer aboute, 380
 ȝ made it al forest ȝ lese, ȝe bestes uorto fede.
 Of pouere men deserited he nom lutel hede.
 ȝeruore ȝerinne vel¹ mony mis-cheuing,
 ȝ is sone was ȝerinne issote Willam ȝe rede king,
 ȝ is o sone, ȝat het Richard, caȝte ȝer is deȝ also. 385
 ȝ Richard, is o neuue, brec ȝere is nekke ȝer to
 As he rod an honting², ȝ parauntre is hors spurnde.
 ȝe vnriȝt ido to pouere men to such mesauntere turnde.
 Wo-so bi king Willames daye slou hert oȝer hind,
 Me ssolde pulte out boȝe is eye, ȝ makye him pur blind. 390
 Heye men ne dorste bi is day wilde best nime noȝt,
 Hare ne wilde swin, ȝat hii nere to ssame ybroȝt.
 ȝer nas so hey mon non, ȝat him enes wiȝ-sede.
 ȝat me ne ssolde him take anon, ȝ to prison lede.
 Monye heye men of ȝe lond in prison he huld strong,
 So ȝat muchedel Engelond ȝoȝte is lif to long. 396
 Bissopes ȝ abbodes were to is wille echon,
 ȝ ȝif ȝat eni him wrappede, adoun he was anon.
 ȝre siȝe he ber croune aȝer, to Midewinter at Gloucestre,
 To Witesonetid at Westminstre, to Ester at Wincestre.
 ȝulke festes he wolde holde so nobliche, 401
 Wiȝ so gret prute ȝ wast, ȝ so richeliche,
 ȝat wonder it was wenene it com, ac to susteini such nobleȝe,

¹ wel in MS.² honteth in MS.

He destruede þat pouere volc ȝ nom of hom is preye,
 So þat he was riche him-sulf, ȝ þat lond pouere al out.
 Sturne he was þoru-out al, ȝ heiul ȝ prout. 406
 Suiþe þikke mon he was, ȝ of grete strengþe,
 Gret wombede ȝ ballede, ȝ bote of euene lengþe.
 So stif mon he was in armes, in ssoldren, ȝ in lende,
 Þat vnneþe eni mon miȝte is bowe bende, 410
 Þat he wolde him-sulf vp is fot, ridinge wel vaste
 Liȝtliche, ȝ ssete al-so mid bowe ȝ arblaste.
 So hol he was of body ek, þat he ne lay neuere uaste
 Sik in is bed vor non vuel, bote in is deþ vuel atte laste.
 As he wolde sometime to Normandie wende, 415
 Al þat aȝt was in Engeland he let somony in ech ende
 To Salesburi touore him, þat hii suore him alle þere
 To be him triwe ȝ holde, þe wule he of londe were.
 Þer-to he nom gret peine of hom, ȝ fram Salesburi to Wiȝt
 He wende, ȝ fram þanene to Normandie riȝt. 420
 ȝ þe wule he was out of Engeland, Edgar Aþeling
 (Þat riȝt eir was of Engeland ȝ kunde to be king)
 Made is ȝonge soster, as God ȝef þat cas,
 Nonne in þe hous of Romeseye, Cristine hire name was.
 Þat folc com þo of Denemarch to Engeland sone, 425
 ȝ robbede ȝ destruede, as hii were iwoned to done.
 Þat word into Normandie to king Willam com.
 So grêt poer of thulke lond ȝ of France he nom
 Mid him into Engeland, of kniȝtes ȝ squiers,
 Speremen auote & bowemen, ȝ also arblasters, 430
 Þat hom þoȝte in Engeland so muche folc neuere nas,
 Þat it was wonder ware-thoru isoustained it was.
 Hii of Denemarch flowe sone, vor hii nadde no poer,
 Ac þet folc of biȝonde se bileuede alle her,
 Þat vnneþe al þat londe sustenance hom vond. 435
 ȝ þe king hom sende her ȝ þer aboute in Engeland
 To diuerse men, to finde hom mete, more þan hor poer was.

So þat in ech manere þat lond destrued was :
 Frut ȝ corn þer failede, tempestes þer come,
 Þondringe ȝ liztinge ek, þat slou men ilome. 440
 Manne orf deide al agrounde, so gret qualm þer com þo.
 Orf failede ȝ eke corn, hou miȝte be more wo?
 Seknesse com ek among men, þat aboute wide,
 Wat vor hunger, wat uor wo, men deide in ech side,
 So þat sorwes in Engeland were wel mony volde. 445
 Þe king ȝ oþer richemen wel lute þer-of tolde,
 Vor hii wolde euere abbe y-nou, wanne þe pouere adde wo.
 Sein Poules chirche of Londone was ek vorbarnd þo.
 King Willam to Normandie þoȝte supþe atte laste.
 He sette is tounes ȝ is londes to ferme wel vaste, 450
 Wo-so mest bode þer-uore; ȝ þei a lond igranted were
 To a man to bere þeruore a certain rente bi ȝere,
 ȝ anoþer come and bode more, he were inne anon,
 So þat hii that bode mest broȝte out moni on.
 Nere þe vorewarde no so strong, me boȝte is out wiȝ wou,
 So þat þe king in such manere suluer wan ynou. 456
 Þo he adde iset is londes so mid such tricherye
 So heye, ȝ al is oþer thyng, he wende to Normandie,
 ȝ þere he dude wowe y-nou mid slaȝt ȝ robberye,
 ȝ nameliche vpe þe king of France, ȝ vpe is compainie, 460
 So þat in þe toun of Reins king Willam atte laste,
 Vor eld ȝ uor trauail, bigan to febli vaste.
 Þe king Phelip of France þe lasse þo of him tolde,
 ȝ drof him to busemare, as me ofte deȝ þan olde.
 "Þe king," he sede, "of Engeland halt him to is bedde, 465
 ȝ liȝ mid is grete wombe at Reins, a child-bedde."
 Þo king Willam hurde þis, he made him somdel wroȝ,
 Vor edwit of is grete wombe, ȝ suor anon þis op:
 "Bi þe vprisinge of Jhesu Crist; ȝif God me wole grace sende,
 Vorto make mi chirchegong, ȝ bringe me of þis bende, 470
 Suche wiues icholle mid me lede, ȝ such liȝt atten ende,

þat an hondred þousend candlen ȝ mo icholle him tende
Amidde is lond of France, ȝ is prute ssende,
þat a sori chirchegong ichcholle him make ar ich þanne
wende."

Vorewarde he huld him wel inou, vorto heruest anon, 475

þo he sey þat feldes were vol of corne echon,

Al þe contreie vol of frut, wanne he miȝte mest harm do,

He let gadery is kniȝtes ȝ is squiers also,

And þat were is wiues, þat he wiȝ him ladde.

He wende him into France, ȝ þe contreie ouer-spradde, 480

ȝ robbede ȝ destruede; him ne miȝte no-þing lette.

þe grete cite of Medes suppe afure he sette,

Vor me ne miȝte no chirchegong wiȝ-oute liȝte do.

þe cite he barnde al clene, ȝ an chirche also

Of vr leuedi, þat þerinne was, ȝ an auncre godes spouse, 485

þat nolde vor no thing fle out of hire house.

ȝ moni mon and womman ek þer vel in meschaunce,

So þat a sori chirchegong hit was to þe king of France.

King Willam wende aȝen, þo al þis was ido,

ȝ bigan sone to grony and to febly also, 490

Vor trauail of þe vout asaut, ȝ vor he was feble er,

ȝ parauntre vor wreche also, vor he dude so vuele þer.

þo he com to Reins aȝen, sik he lay sone,

His leches lokede is stat, as hor riȝt was to done,

ȝ iseye ȝ sede also, þat he ne miȝte ofscapie noȝt. 495

þere was sone sorwe ynou among is men ybroȝt,

ȝ he him-sulf deol ynou ȝ sorwe made also,

ȝ nameliche uor þe mucche wo þat he adde anerþe ydo.

He wep on God vaste ynou, ȝ criede him milce ȝ ore,

ȝ bihet, ȝif he moste libbe, þat he nolde misdo nan more.

Er he ssolde þat abbe ydo, vor it was þo late ynou. 501

Atte laste, þo he isei þat toward is ende he drou,

His biquide in þis manere he made biuore is deȝ.

Willam, þe rede, al Engelond is sone he biqueȝ,

Þe 3ongore al is porchas; ac, as lawe was ȝ wone, 505
 Normandie is eritage he 3ef is eldoste sone
 Roberd þe Courtehes; ȝ Henry þe 3ongoste þo
 He biqueþ is tresour, vor he nadde sonen nanmo.
 He het dele ek pouere men muche of is tresorie,
 Vor he adde so muche of hom inome in robberye. 510
 Chirchen he let rere also, ȝ tresour he 3ef ynou,
 To rere vp þe chirche of France, þat he barnde wiþ wou.
 Þe prisons he let of Engelond deliury echone,
 ȝ of Normandie also, þat þer ne leuede none.
 Þo deide he in þe 3er of grace a þousend, as it was 515
 And four score and seuen, as God 3ef þat cas.
 He was king of Engelond four ȝ tuenti 3er also,
 ȝ duc ek¹ of Normandie vifty 3er & two.
 Of elde he was nyne ȝ fifty 3er, þo God him 3ef such cas.
 Þe morwe after Seinte Mari day þe later ded he was. 520
 In þe abbey of Cam iburred was þis king;
 ȝ Henry is 3onge sone, was at is buriing,
 Ac noþer of is oþer sonen; vor in France þo
 Roberd Courtehes was in worre and in wo;
 ȝ Willam anon so is fader Engelond him biqueþ, 525
 He nolde noȝt abide vorte is fader deþ,
 Ac wende him out of Normandie anon to Engelonde,
 Vorto nime hastiliche seisine of is londe,
 Þat was him þo leuere, þan is fader were,
 So þat þer nas of is sonen bote þe 3onge Henry þere. 530

¹ er in MS.

VI.

The Life of St. Dunstan.

The following legend of St. Dunstan's adventure with the Devil (from *Lives of Saints*) is in the same dialect as the *Reign of William the Conqueror*; see page 62.

SEINT Dunstan was of Engeland: icome of gode more
 Miracle oure louerd dude for him: er he were ibore.
 For þo he was in his moder wombe: a candelmasse day
 Þer folc was at church ynouȝ: as to the tyme lay
 As hi stode mid here liȝt: as me doȝ ȝut now 535
 Here liȝt aqueynte overal: here non nuste hou
 Her liȝt hit brende suyȝe wel: and her liȝt hit was oute
 Þat folc stod in gret wonder: and also in grette doute
 And hi speke ech to oȝer: in whiche manner hit were
 Hou hit queynte so sodeynliche: the liȝt that hi here 540
 As hi stode and speke þerof: in gret wonder echon
 Seint Dunstanes moder taper: afure worȝ anon
 Þat heo huld on hire hond: heo nuste whannes hit com
 Þat folc stod and bihuld: and gret wonder þerof nom
 Ne non nuste wannes hit com: bote þurȝ our louerdes grace
 Þerof hi tende here liȝt: alle in þe place 546
 What was þat oure louerd Crist: þe liȝt fram heuene sende
 And þat folc þat stod aboute: here taperes þerof tende
 Bote of þat holi child: þat was in hire wombe þere
 Al Engelande scholde þe bet beo ilȝt: þat hit ibore were 550
 Þis child was ibore neoȝe hondred ȝer: and fyve and tuenti
 ariȝt

After that oure suete louerd: in his moder was aliȝt
 Þe furste ȝer of þe crouning: of þe king Adelston
 His moder het Kenedride: his fader Herston 554
 Þo þis child was an urȝe ibore: his freond nome þerto hede
 Hi lete hit do to Glastnebury: to norischi and to fede
 To teche him eke his bileue: pater noster and crede

þe child wax and wel iþeȝ: for hit moste nede
 Lute ȝeme he nom to þe wordle: to alle godnisse he drouȝ
 Ech man þat hurde of him speke: hadde of him ioȝe ynouȝ
 þo he was of manes wit: to his uncle he gan go 561
 þe archebischoþ of Canterbury: seint Adelm þat was þo
 þat makede wiþ him ioȝe ynouȝ: and euer þe lengere þe
 more

þo he seȝ of his godnisse: and of his wyse lore
 For deȝnte þat he hadde of him: he let him sone bringe
 Bifore þe prince of Engelond: Adelstan þe kyng 566
 þe kyng him makede ioȝe ynouȝ: and grantede al his bone
 Of what þinge so he wolde bidde: if it were to done
 þo bad he him an abbei: þat he was forþ on ibroȝt
 Bi þe toun of Glastnebury: þat he ne wornede him noȝt.
 þe king grantede his bone: and after him also 571
 Edmund his broȝer þat was king: in his poer ido
 To Glastnebury wende sone: þis gode man seint Dunstan
 þo beye þe kynges him ȝeve leue: Edmund and Adelstan
 Of þe hous of Glastnebury: a gret ordeynour he was 575
 And makede moche of gode reule: that neuer er among hem
 nas

Ac þat hous þat furst bigonne: four hondred ȝer bifore
 And eke þreo and vyfti: er seint Dunstan were ibore
 For þer was ordre of monekes: er seint Patrik com 579
 And er seint Austyn to Engelande: brouȝte Cristendom
 And seint patrick deide tuo hondred: and tuo and vyfti ȝer
 After þat oure suete leuedi oure louerd here ber
 Ac none monekes þer nere furst: bote as in hudinge echon
 And as men þat drowe to wyldernisse: for drede of godes fon
 Seint Dunstan and seint Adelwold: as oure louerd hit bisay
 I-ordeyned to preostes were: al in one day 586
 þer after sone to Glastnebury: seint Dunstan anon wende
 He was abbod þer ymaked: his lyf to amende
 And for he nolde bi his wille: no tyme idel beo
 A priuei smyþþe bi his celle: he gan him biseo 590

For whan he moste of oreisouns : reste for werinisse
 To worke he wolde his honden do : to fleo idelnisse
 Seruie he wolde poure men : the wyle he miȝte deore
 Al þe dai for þe love of God : he ne kipte of hem non hure
 And whan he sat at his worc þer : his honden at his dede 595
 And his hurte mid ihesu crist : his mouþ his bedes bede
 So þat al at one tyme : he was at þreo stedes
 His honden þer, his hert at god : his mouþ to bidde his bedes
 Þerfore þe deuel hadde of him : gret enuye and onde
 O tyme he cam to his smyþþe : alone him to fonde 600
 Riȝt as þe sonne wende adoun : riȝt as he womman were
 And spac wiþ him of his worc : wiþ laȝinge chere
 And seide þat heo hadde wiþ him : gret worc to done
 Treoflinge heo smot her and þer : in anoþer tale sone
 Þat holi man hadde gret wonder : þat heo was and þere
 He sat longe and biþoȝte him : longe hou hit were 606
 He biþoȝte him ho hit was : he droȝ forþ his tonge
 And leide in þe hote fur : and spac faire longe
 Forte þe tonge was al afure : and sipþe stille ynouȝ
 Þe deuel he hente bi þe nose : and wel faste drouȝ 610
 He tuengde and schok hire bi þe nose : þat þe fur out blaste
 Þe deuel wrickede her and þer : and he huld euer faste
 He ȝal and hupte and drouȝ aȝe : and madeke grislich bere
 He nolde for al his biȝete : þat he hadde icome þere
 Mid his tonge he snytte hire nose : and tuengde hire sore 615
 For hit was wiþinne þe nyȝte : he ne miȝte iseo nomore
 Þe schrewe was glad and bliþe ynouȝ : þo he was out of
 his honde
 He fleȝ and gradde bi þe lifte : þat me hurde in-to al þe londe
 'Out what hap þe calewe ido : what hap þe calewe ido.'
 In þe contrai me hurde wide : how the schrewe gradde so
 As god þe schrewe hadde ibeo : atom ysnyt his nose 621
 He ne hiȝede no more þiderward : to hele him of þe pose.

VII.

METRICAL ENGLISH PSALTER.

BEFORE A.D. 1300.

The following extracts are selected from *The Anglo-Saxon and Early English Psalter*, (Surtees Society, 2 vols. 1845, 1847.)

The Early English Psalter is copied from a MS. written about the middle of the reign of Edward II, but the language is much earlier, and represents the speech of Yorkshire and the Northumbrian dialect as spoken during the latter half of the thirteenth century.

Nothing whatever is known concerning the authorship of this version of the Psalms.

For the sake of comparison, Psalms xiv., xxiii., and cii. in a Midland dialect are repeated from Hereford's version of the Psalter contained in the Wicliffite version of the Scriptures, edited by Madden and Forshall, Oxford, 1850.

From the Northumbrian Psalter.

[Collated with Cotton MS. Vespasian D. vii.]

PSALM VIII.

- 2 LAVERD, oure Laverd, hou selkouth is
Name pine in alle land pis.
For upe-hoven es þi mykel-hede
Over hevens þat ere brade;
3 Of mouth of childer and soukand
Made þou lof in ilka land,
For þi faes; þat þou for-do
Þe fai, þe wreker him unto.
4 For I sal se pine hevenes hegh,
And werkes of pine fingres slegh;

5

10

- þe mone and sternes mani ma,
 þat þou grounded to be swa.
 5 What is man, þat þou mines of him?
 Or sone of man, for þou sekес him?
 6 þou liteled him a litel wight 15
 Lesse fra þine aungeles bright;
 With blisse and mensk þou crouned him yet,
 7 And over werkes of þi hend him set.
 8 þou under-laide alle þinges
 Under his fete þat ought forth-bringes, 20
 Neete and schepe bathe for to welde,
 In-over and beestes of þe felde
 9 Fogheles of heven and fissches of se,
 þat forth-gone stihes of þe se.
 10 Laverd, our Laverd, hou selkouth is 25
 Name þine in alle land þis.

PSALM XIV.

- 1 LAVERD, in þi teld wha sal wone?
 In þi hali hille or wha reste mone?
 2 Whilke þat in-comes wemles,
 And ai werkes rightwisenes; 30
 3 þat spekes sothnes in herte his,
 And noght dide swikeldome in tunge his,
 Ne dide to his neghburgh ivel ne gram;
 Ne ogaines his neghburgh up-braiding nam.
 4 To noght es lede lither in his sight; 35
 And dredand Laverd he glades right.
 He þat to his neghburgh sweres,
 And noght bi-swikes him ne deres.
 5 Ne his silver til okir noght is givand;
 Ne giftes toke over un-derand. 40
 þat does þese night and dai,
Noght sal he be stired in ai.

PSALM XVII.

- 2 I SAL love þe, Laverd, in stalworthhede;
 3 Laverd mi festnes ai in nede,
 And mi to-flight þat es swa, 45
 And mi leser oute of wa,
 Laverd mi helper þat es alle,
 And in him ai hope I salle.
 Mi schelder, and of mi hele horne,
 And mi fonger ai þer forne. 50
 4 Lovand Laverd calle sal I,
 And fra mi faas be sauf for-þi.
 5 Um-gaf me sorwes of dede;
 Um-griped me weeles of quede.
 6 Soreghes um-gaf me of helle; 55
 Bi-sied me snares of dede ful felle.
 7 In mi droving Laverd called I,
 And to mi God cried I witerli;
 And he herd fra his hali kirke mi steven,
 And mi crie in his sight in eres yhode even. 60
 8 Stired and quoke þe erthe yare,
 Groundes of hilles to-dreved are;
 And þai ere stired [þ]of þaim be lath,
 For þat he es with þaim wrath.
 9 Up-stegh reke in his ire, 65
 And of face of him brent þe fire;
 Koles þat ware down-falland
 Kindled ere of him glouand.
 10 He helded hevens, and doune come he;
 And dimnes under his fete to be. 70
 11 And he stegh over Cherubin, and flegþ þare;
 He flegþ over fetheres of windes ware.
 12 And he set mirkenes his lurking lang,
 His telde to be in his um-gang;

- Mirke watres þat ware of hewe, 75
 In þe kloudes of þe skewe.
- 13 For levening in his sight cloudes schire
 Forth yheden, haile, and koles of fire.
- 14 And Laverd thonered fra heven, and heghest sire
 Gaf his steven; haile, coles of fire. 80
- 15 And he sent his arwes, and skatered þa;
 Fele-faldd levening, and dreved þam swa.
- 16 And schewed welles of watres ware,
 And groundes of ertheli werld un-hiled are,
 For¹ þi snibbing, Laverd myne; 85
 For¹ one-sprute of gast of wreth þine.
- 17 He sent fra hegh, and up-toke me
 Fra many watres me nam he.
- 18 He out-toke me þare a-mang
 Fra mi faas þat war sa strang, 90
 And fra þa me þat hated ai;
 For samen strengþed over me war þai.
- 19 Þai for-come me in daie of twinging;
 And made es Laverd mi for-hiling.
- 20 And he led me in brede to be; 95
 Saufe made he me, for he wald me,
- 21 And for-yhelde to me Laverd sal,
 After mi rightwisenes al;
 And after clensing of mi hende
 Sal he yhelde to me at ende. 100
- 22 For waies of Laverd yemed I
 Ne fra mi God dide I wickedly.
- 23 For al his demes in mi sight ere þa,
 And his rightwisenes noght put I me fra.
- 24 And I sal be with him wemmeles, 105
 And loke me fra mi wickednes.
- 25 And Laverd to me for-yhelde he sal

¹ Printed text reads *Fra*.

- After mi rightwisnes al,
 And after clennes of my hend swa
 In sight of eghen his twa. 110
- 26 With hali halgh bes of þe;
 With man un-derand, un-derand be.
- 27 With chosen, and be chosen þou sal;
 With il-torned and il tornest[ou] al
- 28 For þou meke folk sauf make sal nou; 115
 And eghen of proude meke saltou.
- 29 For þou lightes mi lantern bright,
 Mi God, mi mirkenes light.
- 30 For in þe be I out-tane fra fanding al,
 And in mi God sal I over-fare þe wal. 120
- 31 Mi God unfiled es his wai;
 Speche of Laverd with fire es ai
 Fraisted; for-hiler es he
 Of al þat in him hopand be.
- 32 For wha God bot Laverd we calle; 125
 Or wha God bot our God of alle?
- 33 Laverd þat girde me with might,
 And set un-wemmed mi wai right.
- 34 Þat set mi fete als of hertes ma,
 And ouer heghnes settand me swa. 130
- 35 That leres mi hend at fight nou,
 And mine armes als brasen bow set þou.
- 36 And þou gaf me for-hiling of hele of þe,
 And þi right hand on-fanged me;
 And þi lare in ende me rightid al, 135
 And þi lare it me lere sal.
- 37 Þou to-breddest mi gainges under me,
 And mi steppes noght unfest þai be.
- 38 I sal filghe mi faas, and umlap þa;
 And noght again torne to þai wane swa. 140
- 39 I sal þam breke, ne stand þai mighte;

- Pai sal falle under mi fete doun righte,
 40 And þou girde me with might at fight in land;
 And under-laide under me [alle] in me riseand
 41 And mi faas o-bak þou gaf me nou; 145
 And hatand me for-lesed þou.
 42 Pai cried, ne was þat sauf made ought,
 To Laverd, and he herde þam noght.
 43 And I sal gnide [þam] als duste bi-for winde likam;
 Als fen of gates o-wai do þam. 150
 44 Out-take fra ogain-saghes of folk þou sal;
 In heved of genge me set with al.
 45 Folk whilk I ne knewe served to me;
 In hering of ere me boghed he.
 46 Outen sones to me lighed þai, 155
 Outen sones elded er þai;
 And þai halted þare þai yhode
 Fra þine sties þat ere gode.
 47 Laverd lives, and mi God blissed be;
 And God of mi hele up-hoven be he. 160
 48 God þat gives wrekes me to,
 And unders folk under me so,
 Mi leser artou, night and dai,
 Fra mi faes ben wrathful ai
 49 And fra in me risand up-heve saltou me; 165
 Fra wicke man out-take me to fle.
 50 For-þi in birþes sal I to þe schryve,
 Laverd, and to þi name salm sal I mi¹ live.
 51 Heles of his king mikeland,
 And als swa mercy doand 170
 To his Crist, þat es David,
 And to his sede til in werld þar wid.

¹ in?

PSALM XXIII.

- 1 OF Laverd es land and fulhed his;
Erþeli werld, and alle þar-in is.
- 2 For over sees it grounded he, 175
And over stremes graipēd it to be.
- 3 Wha sal stegh in hille of Laverd winli
Or wha sal stand in his stede hali?
- 4 Underand of hend bi-dene,
And þat of his hert es clene; 180
In un-nait þat his saule noght nam
Ne sware to his neghburgh in swikedam.
- 5 He sal fang of Laverd blissing,
And mercy of God his heling.
- 6 Þis es þe strend of him sekand, 185
Þe face of God Jacob laitand.
- 7 Oppenes your yates wide,
Ye þat princes ere in pride;
And yates of ai up-hoven be yhe,
And king of blisse in-come sal he. 190
- 8 Wha es he king of blisse? Laverd strang
And mightand in fight, Laverd mightand lang.
- 9 Oppenes your yates wide,
Yhe þat princes ere in pride;
And yates of ai up-hoven be yhe 195
And king of blisse in-come sal he.
- 10 Wha es he þe king of blisse þat isse?
Laverd of mightes es king of blisse.

PSALM CII.

- 1 BLISSE, mi saule, to Laverd ai isse, 199
And alle þat with-in me ere to hali name hisse.
- 2 Blisse, mi saul, to Laverd of alle thinges,
And nil for-gete alle his for-yheldinges.

- 3 Þat winsom es to alle þine wickenesses,
 Þat heles alle þine sekenesses.
 4 Þat bies fra sterving þi lif derli, 205
 Þat crounes þe with rewþes and with merci.
 5 Þat filles in godes þi yherninges al,
 Als erne þi yhouthe be newed sal.
 6 Doand mercies laverd in land,
 And dome til alle un-right tholand. 210
 7 Kouthe made he to Moises his waies wele,
 His willes til sonnes of Israel.
 8 Rew-ful and milde-herted Laverd gode,
 And milde-herted and lang-mode.
 9 Noght wreth he sal in evermore, 215
 Ne in ai sal he threte þar-fore.
 10 Noght after our sinnes dide he til us,
 Ne after our wickenes for-yheld us þus.
 11 For after heghnes of heven fra land,
 Strengþed he is merci over him dredand. 220
 12 How mikle est del stand[s] west del fra,
 Fer made he fra us oure wickenes swa.
 13 Als rewed es fadre of sonnes,
 Rewed es Laverd, þare he wones,
 Of þa þat him dredand be; 225
 14 Fore our schaft wele knawes he,
 Mined es he wele in thoght
 Þat dust ere we and worth noght.
 15 Man his daies ere als hai,
 Als blome of felde sal he welyen awai. 230
 16 For gaste thurgh-fare in him it sal,
 And noght undre-stand he sal with-al;
 And knawe na-mare sal he
 His stede, whare þat it sal be.
 17 And Laverdes merci evre dwelland, 235
 And til ai ou[e]r him dredeand.

- And in sones of sones his rightwisenes,
 18 To þas þat yhemes wite-word his;
 And mined sal þai be, night and dai,
 Of his bodes to do þam ai.
 19 Laverd in heven graiþed sete his,
 And his rike til alle sal Laverd in blis.
 20 Blissess to Laverd with alle your mighte,
 Alle his aungels, þat ere brighte;
 Mightand of thew, doand his worde swa,
 To here steven of his saghs ma.
 21 Blissess to Laverd, alle mightes his,
 His hine þat does þat his wille is.
 22 Blissess Laverd, with wille and thoghte,
 Alle þe werkes þat he wroghte.
 In alle stedes of his laverdschipe ma,
 Blisse, mi saule, ai Laverd swa.

PSALM CIII.

- 1 Blisse, mi saule, Laverd nou;
 Laverd, mi God, swith mikel ertou.
 Schrift and fairehed schred þou right;
 2 Umlappes als kleping with light.
 Strekand heven als fel with blis;
 3 Þat hiles with watres overestes his;
 Þat settes þin up-steghing kloude,
 Þat gaas over fetheres of wyndes loude.
 4 Þat makes þine aungels gastes flighand,
 And þin hine fire brinnand.
 5 Þat groundes land over stapelnes his,
 Noght helde sal in werlde of werld þis.
 6 Depnes als schroude his hiling alle,
 Over hilles his watres stand salle.
 7 *Fra þi snibbing sal þai fle,*
For steven of þi thoner fered be.

- 8 Up-steghes hilles and feldes doun-gas,
In stede whilk þou grounded to þas. 270
- 9 Mere set þou whilk over-ga þai ne sal,
Ne turne to hile þe land with-al.
- 10 Þat out-sendes welles in dales ma,
Bitwix mid hilles sal watres ga.
- 11 Drink sal alle bestes of felde wide, 275
Wilde asses in þar thrist sal abide.
- 12 Over þa wone sal foghles of heven,
Fra mid of stanes gif sal þai steven.
- 13 Fra his overmastes hilles watrand
Of fruite of his werkes filled bes þe land. 280
- 14 Forth-ledand hai to meres ma,
And gresse to hinehede of men swa,
Þat þou outhede fra erthe brede.
- 15 And hert of man faines wyne rede,
Þat he glade likam in oyele beste, 285
And brede þe hert of man sal feste.
- 16 Be fulle-filled sal trees of felde ilkan,
And the cedres of Yban,
Whilk he planted with his hand.
- 17 Þar sal sparwes be nestland, 290
Wilde haukes hous-leader of þa.
- 18 Hilles hegh til hertes ma;
And þe stane, bi dai and nighte,
Until irchones es to flighte.
- 19 He made þe mone in times lange; 295
Þe sunne, it knew his setel-gange.
- 20 Þou set mirkenesses, and made es night gode;
In it sal forth-fare alle bestes of wode.
- 21 Lyoun whelpes romand þat þai reve swa,
And seke fra God mete unto þa. 300
- 22 Sprungen es sunne and samened er þai,
And in þar dennes bi-louked sal be al dai.

- 23 Oute sal man ga unto his werke,
 And til his wirkeing til even merke.
 24 Hou mikel ere, Laverd, þine werkes ma; 305
 Alle in wisdome made þou þa:
 Ilka land ful-filled es it
 With þine aghte thurgh þi wit.
 25 Þis see mikel and roume til hende,
 Þar wormes, of whilke es nan ende; 310
 Bestes smaller with the mare.
 26 Þider schippes sal over-fare;
 Þis dragoun þat þou made biforn,
 For to plaie with him in skorn.
 27 Alle fra þe þai abide, 315
 Þat þou gif þam mete in tide.
 28 Giveand þe to þam, gedre þai sal;
 Þe oppenand þi hand with al,
 Alle sal þai, mare and lesse,
 Be fulfilled with þi godenesse. 320
 29 Þe soth-lik turnand þi likam
 Þai sal be dreved; þe gast of þam
 Þou salt out-bere, and wane sal þai,
 And in þair duste sal turne for ai.
 30 Out-send þi gaste and made þai sal bene, 325
 And new saltou þe face of erthe bi-dene.
 31 Be blis of Laverd in werld þis,
 And faine sal Laverd in werkes his.
 32 Þat bi-haldes land, and to qwake makes it;
 Þat neghes hilles, and þai smoke yhit. 330
 33 I sal sing to Laverd in mi lif for-þi,
 I sal salme to mi God hou lang am I.
 34 Winsome to him be mi speche al,
 I soth-lik in Laverd like sal.
 35 Wane sinful fra erthe, and wik þat isse, 335
 Swa þat þai noght be: mi saule, Laverd blisse.

VIII.

From Hereford's Version of the Psalms.

PSALM XIV.

1 Lord, who shal duelle in thi tabernacle, or who shal eft resten in thin holy hil?

2 That goth in withoute wem; and werkith ryztwisenesse.

340

3 That speketh treuthe in his herte; that dide not trecherie in his tunge. Ne dide to his nezhebore euel; and reprof toc not to aȝen hise neȝboris.

4 To noȝt is broȝt down in his siȝt the malice doere, forsothe the dredende the Lord he glorifieth. That swereth to his nezhebore, and desceyueth not;

345

5 That his monee ȝaf not to usure; and ȝiftis upon the innocent toc not. He, that doth these thingus, shal not be movud in to withoute ende.

PSALM XXIII.

1 Off the Lord is the erthe, and the plente of it; the roundnesse of londis, and alle that dwellen in it.

350

2 For he upon the ses foundede it; and vpon the flodis befor greithide it.

3 Who shal steȝen vp in to the hyl of the Lord; or who shal stonde in his holy place?

355

4 The innocent in hondis, and in clene herte, that toc not in veyn his soule; ne swor in treccherie to hys nezhebore.

5 This shal take blessing of the Lord; and mercy of God his helthe ȝiuere.

360

6 This is the ieneracioun of men sechende God; of men sechende the face of God of Jacob.

7 Doth awei þoure ȝatus, ȝee princis; and beth rerid out, ȝee euer lastende ȝatis, and ther shal gon in the king of glorie. 36:

8 Who is this king of glorie? a Lord strong and myȝti, a Lord myȝti in bataile.

9 Doth awei þoure ȝatis, ȝee princis; and beth rered vp, ȝee euer lastende ȝatis, and ther shal gon in the king of glorie. 37:

10 Who is this king of glorie? the Lord of vertues, he is king of glorie.

PSALM CII.

1 BLESSE thou, my soule, to the Lord; and alle thingus that withinne me ben, to his holi name!

2 Blesse thou, my soule, to the Lord! and nile thou not forȝete alle the ȝeldingus of hym. 37:

3 That hath mercy to alle thi wickidness; that helith alle thin infirmytees.

4 That aȝeen-bieth fro deth thi lif; that crouneth thee in mercy and mercy doingis. 38:

5 That fulfilleth in goode thingus thi diseyr; shal be renewid as of an egle thi ȝouthe.

6 Doende mercies the Lord, and dom to alle men suffrende wrong.

7 Knowen he made his weies to Moises; and to the sones of Israel his willis. 38:

8 Reewere and merciful the Lord, long abidende and myche merciful.

9 Into euermore he shal not wrathen, ne into withoute ende he shal threte. 39:

10 Afir oure synnes he dide not to vs, ne afir oure wickidnessis he ȝelde to us.

11 For after the heiȝte of heuene fro erthe, he strengthide his mercy vpon men dredende hym.

12 Hou myche the rising stant fro the going down, 395
aferr he made fro vs oure wickidnessis,

13 What maner wise the fader hath mercy of the
sonus, the Lord dide mercy to men dredende hym;

14 for he knew oure britil making. He recordide
for pouder wee be, 400

15 A man as hey his dazes, as the flour of the
feld so he shal floure out,

16 For the spirit shal thurȝ paassen in hym, and he
shal not stonde stille; and he shal no more knowen
his place. 405

17 The mercy forsothe of the Lord fro withoute
ende, and vnto withoute ende, vpon men dredende
hym. And the riȝtwisnesse of hym in to the sonos
of sonos,

18 to hem that kepen his testament. And myndeful 410
thei ben of his maundemens, to do hem.

19 The Lord in heuene made redi his sete, and
his reume to alle shal lordshipen.

20 Blisse ȝee to the Lord, alle his aungelis, miȝti
bi vertue, doende the woord of hym, to ben herd the 415
vois of his sermounes.

21 Blessith to the Lord alle ȝee his vertues, ȝee his
seruauns that don his wil.

22 Blessith to the Lord, alle ȝee his werkis, in alle
place, ȝee his domynaciouns; blesse thou, my soule, to 420
the Lord!

IX.

THE PROVERBS OF HENDYNG.

A.D. 1272-1307.

The following illustrations of English proverbial philosophy in the thirteenth century are taken from MS. Harleian 2253. The dialect is *Southern* intermixed with some few Midland peculiarities.

MON that wol of wysdam heren,	
At wyse Hendyng he may lernen,	
That wes Marcolves sone ;	
Gode thonkes ȝ monie thewes	
For te teche fele shrewes,	5
For that wes ever is wone.	
Jhesu Crist, al folkes red,	
That for us alle tholedede ded	
Upon the rode-tre,	
Lene us alle to ben wys,	10
Ant to ende in his servys !	
Amen, par charité !	
‘God biginning maketh God endyng ;’	
Quoth Hendyng.	
Wyt ȝ wysdom lurneth ȝerne,	15
Ant loke that none other werne	
To be wys ȝ hende ;	
For betere were ¹ to bue wis,	
Then for te were feh ant grys,	
Wher-so mon shal ende.	20
‘Wyt ant wysdom is god warysoun ;’	
Quoth Hendyng.	

¹ Where in MS.

Ne may no mon that is in londe,
 For nothyng that he con fonde,
 Wonen at hom ȝ spede, 25
 So fele thewes for te leorne,
 Ase he that hath y-soht¹ ȝeorne
 In wel fele theode.

‘Ase fele thede, ase fele thewes;’
 Quoth Hendyng. 30

Ne bue thi child never so duere,
 Ant hit wolle unthewes lerne,
 Bet hit other-whyle;
 Mote hit al habben is wille,
 Woltou, nultou, hit wol spille, 35
 Ant bicom a fule.

‘Luef child lore byhoveth;’
 Quoth Hendyng.

Such lores ase thou lernest,
 After that thou sist ȝ herest, 40
 Mon, in thyne ȝouthē,
 Shule the on elde folewe,
 Bothe an eve ȝ amorewe,
 ȝ bue the fol couthe.

‘Whose ȝong lerneth, olt he ne leseth;’ 45
 Quoth Hendyng.

* * * * *

Me may lere a sely fode,
 That is ever toward gode,
 With a lutel lore;
 ȝef me nul him forther teche, 50
 Thenne is herte wol areche
 For te lerne more.

‘Sely chyld is sone y-lered;’
 Quoth Hendyng.

¹ MS. has y-sopt.

Ȝef thou wolt fleysh lust overcome,
 Thou most fiht¹ ȝ fle y-lome,
 With eye ȝ with huerte;
 Of fleyshlust cometh shame,
 Thah hit thunche the body game,
 Hit doth the soule smerte.
 'Wel fyht², that wel flyth;'

Quoth Hendyng.

Wis mon halt is wordes ynnē;
 For he nul no gle bygynne,
 Er he have tempred is pype.
 Sot is sot, ȝ that is sene;
 For he wol speke wordes grene,
 Er then hue buen rype.
 'Sottes bolt is sone shote;'

Quoth Hendyng.

Tel thou never thy fo-mon
 Shome ne teone that the is on,
 Thi care ne thy wo;
 For he wol fonde, Ȝef he may,
 Bothe by nyhtes ȝ by day,
 Of on to make two.
 'Tel thou never thy fo that thy fot aketh;'

Quoth Hendyng.

Ȝef thou havest bred ȝ ale,
 Ne put thou nout al in thy male,
 Thou del hit sum aboute.
 Be thou fre. of thy meeles,
 Wher-so me eny mete deles,
 Gest thou nout withoute.
 'Betere is appel y-ȝeve then y-ete;'

Quoth Hendyng.

¹ MS. has fist.

² MS. has fyht.

Alle whyle ich wes on erthe,
 Never lykede me my werthe,
 For none wynes fyllē;
 Bote myn j myn owen won,
 Wyn j water, stokes j ston,
 Al goth to my wille.
 'Este bueth oune brondes;'

90

Quoth Hendyng.

3ef the lacketh mete other cloht,
 Ne make the nout forthy to wroht,
 Thah¹ thou byde borewe;
 For he that haveth his god ploh,
 Ant of worldes wele y-noh,
 Ne wot he of no sorewe.
 'Gredy is the godles;'

95

100

Quoth Hendyng.

3ef thou art riche j wel y-told
 No be thou noht² tharefore to bold,
 Ne wax thou nout to wilde;
 Ah ber the feyre in al thyng,
 j thou miht habbe blessyng,
 j be meke j mylde.
 'When the coppe is follest, thenne ber hire feyrest;'

105

Quoth Hendyng. 110

* * * * *

Thah thou muche thenche ne spek thou nout al;
 Bynde thine tonge with bonene wal,
 Let hit don synke, ther hit up swal;
 Thenne myht³ thou fynde frend over-al.
 'Tonge breketh bon, j nad hire-selve non;'

115

Quoth Hendyng.

¹ MS. has þaþ.

² MS. has noþt.

³ MS. has myþt.

Hit is mony gedelyng,
 When me hym 3eveth a lutel thyng,
 Waxen wol un-saht ¹.
 Hy telle he deth wel by me, 120
 That me 3eveth a lutel fe,
 Ant oweth me riht naht.
 'That me lutel 3eveth, he my lyf ys on;'
 Quoth Hendyng.

Mon that is luef don ylle, 125
 When the world goth after is wylle,
 Sore may him drede;
 For 3ef hit tyde so that he falle,
 Men shal of is owen galle
 Schenchen him at nede. 130
 'The bet the be, the bet the byse;'
 Quoth Hendyng.

Thah the wolde wel bycome
 For te make houses roume,
 Thou most nede abyde, 135
 Ant in a lutel hous wone,
 Forte thou fele that thou mowe
 Withouten evel pryde.
 'Under boske shal men weder abide;'
 Quoth Hendyng. 140

Holde ich no mon for un-sele,
 Otherwhyle thah he fele
 Sumthyng that him smerte:
 For when mon is an treye ȝ tene,
 Thenne hereth God ys bene 145
 That he byd myd herte.
 'When the bale is hest,
 Thenne is the bote nest;'
 Quoth Hendyng.

¹ MS. has saht.

Such mon haue ich lend my cloth, 150
 That hath maked me fol wroth,
 Er hit come aȝeyn.
 Ah he that me ene serveth so,
 Ant he eft bidde mo,
 He shal me fynde unfeyn. 155
 ‘Selde cometh lone lahynde hom;’
 Quoth Hendyng.

Ȝef thou trost to borewyng,
 The shal fayle mony thyng,
 Loth when the ware; 160
 Ȝef thou haue thin ounne won,
 Thenne is thy treye overgon,
 Al wythoute care.
 ‘Owen ys owen, ȝ other mennes edneth;’
 Quoth Hendyng. 165

* * * * *

Moni mon seith, were he ryche,
 Ne shulde non be me y-lyche
 To be god ȝ fre;
 For when he hath oht bygeten,
 Al the fredome is forȝeten 170
 Ant leyd under kne.
 ‘He is fre of hors that ner nade non;’
 Quoth Hendyng.

Mon, that munteth over flod,
 Whiles that the wynd ys wod 175
 Abyde fayre ȝ stille;
 Abyd stille Ȝef that thou may,
 ȝ thou shalt haue another day
 Weder after wille.
 ‘Wel abit that wel may tholye;’ 180
 Quoth Hendyng.

That y telle an evel lype,
 Mon that doth him into shype
 Whil the weder is wod;
 For be he come to the depe, 185
 He may wrynge hond ȝ wepe,
 Ant be of drery mod.
 'Ofte rap reweth;'

Quoth Hendyng.

* * * * *

Riche ȝ pore, ȝonge ȝ olde, 190
 Whil ȝe habbeth wyt at wolde,
 Secheth ore soule bote;
 For when ȝe weneth alrebest
 For te haue ro ant rest,
 The ax ys at the rote. 195
 'Hope of long lyf
 Gyleth mony god wyf;'

Quoth Hendyng.

X.

Specimens of Lyric Poetry.

[Collated with Harl. MS. 2253.]

The following short poems, from the same MS. and in the same dialect as the *Proverbs of Hendyng*, are taken from, *Specimens of Lyric Poetry*, edited by T. Wright, M.A., for the Percy Society. London 1842.

I.

[Pages 27—30.]

Bytuene Mershe ant Averil
 When spray biginneth to springe, 200
 The lutel foul hath hire wyl
 On hyre lud to synge;
 Ich libbe in love-longinge
 For semlokest of alle thynges,
 He may me blisse bringe, 205

Icham in hire baundoun.
 An hendy hap ichabbe y-hent,
 Ichot from heuene it is me sent,
 From alle wymmen mi loue is lent
 Ant lyht on Alysoun.

210

On heu hire her is fayr y-noh,
 Hire browe broune, hire e3e blake,
 With lossum chere he on me loh;
 With middel smal ant wel y-make;
 Bote he me wolle to hire take,
 Forte buen hire owen make,
 Longe to lyuen-ichulle forsake,
 Ant feye fallen a-down.

215

An hendy hap, etc.

Nihtes when y wende ant wake,
 For-thi myn wonges waxeth won;
 Levedi al for thine sake
 Longinge is y-lent me on.
 In world nis non so wyter mon
 That al hire bounté telle con;
 Hire swyre is whittore then the swon,
 Ant feyrest may in toune.

220

225

An hendy, etc.

Icham for wowyng al for-wake,
 Wery so water in wore;
 Lest eny reve me my make,
 Ychabbe y-3yrned 3ore.
 Betere is tholien whyle sore,
 Then mournen euermore.
 Geynest under gore,
 Herkne to my rounne.

230

235

An hendy, etc.

II.

[Pages 29—30.]

With longyng y am lad,
 On molde y waxe mad,
 A maide marreth me; 240
 Y grede, y grone, un-glad,
 For selden y am sad
 That semly forte se;
 Levedi, thou rewe me!
 To routhe thou havest me rad; 245
 Be bote of that y bad,
 My lyf is long on the.
 Levedy, of alle londe
 Les me out of bonde,
 Broht icham in wo, 250
 Have resting on honde,
 Ant sent thou me thi sonde,
 Sone, er thou me slo;
 My reste is with the ro:
 Thah men to me han onde, 255
 To love nuly noht wonde,
 Ne lete for non of po.
 Levedi with al my miht
 My love is on the liht,
 To menske when y may; 260
 Thou rew ant red me ryht,
 To dethe thou hauest me' diht,
 Y deje longe er my day;
 Thou leve upon mi lay.
 Treuthe ichaue the plyht, 265
 To don that ich haue hyht,
 Whil mi lif leste may.

Lylie-whyht [hire] hue is,
 Hire rode so rose on rys,
 That reveth me mi rest. 270
 Wymmon war ant wys,
 Of prude hue bereth the pris,
 Burde on of the best;
 This wommon woneth by west,
 Brihtest under bys : 275
 Hevene y tolde al his
 That o nyht were hire gest.

III.

[Pages 41—43.]

Of a mon Matheu thohte,
 Tho he the wynȝord whrohte,
 Ant wrot hit on ys boc; 280
 In marewe men he sohte,
 At under mo he brohte,
 Ant nom and non forsoc,
 At mydday ant at non
 He sende hem thider fol son, 285
 To helpen hem with hoc;
 Huere foreward wes to fon,
 So the furmest hevede y-don,
 Ase the erst undertoc.
 At evesong even neh, 290
 Ydel men ȝet he seh
 Lomen habbe an honde;
 To hem he sayde an-heh,
 That suythe he wes undreh,
 So ydel forte stonde. 295
 So hit was bistad,
 That nomon hem ne bad,
 Huere lomes to fonde;

Anon he was by-rad,
 To werk that he hem lad, 300
 For nyht nolde he nout wonde.
 Huere hure a nyht hue nome,
 He that furst ant last come,
 A peny brod ant bryht;
 This other swore alle ant some, 305
 That er were come with lome,
 That so nes hit nout ryht;
 Ant swore somme unsaht,
 That hem wes werk by-taht,
 Longe er hit were lyht; 310
 For ryht were that me raht
 The mon that al day wraht,
 The more mede a nyht.

Thenne seith he y-wis,
 "Why, nath nout uch mon his? 315
 Holdeth nou or pees;
 A-way! thou art unwis,
 Tak al that thin ys,
 Ant fare ase foreward wees.
 3ef y may betere beode, 320
 To mi latere leode,
 To leve nam y nout lees;
 To alle that ever hider eode,
 To do to day my neode,
 Ichulle be wraththe-lees." 325

This world me wurcheth wo,
 Roo-les ase the roo,
 Y sike for un-sete;
 Ant mourne ase men doth mo,
 For doute of foule fo, 330
 Hou y my sunne may bete.

This mon that Matheu 3ef
 A peny that was so bref,
 This frely folk unfete;
 3et he 3yrnden more, 335
 Ant saide he comewel 3ore,
 Ant gonne is loue for-lete.

IV.

[Pages 43—44.]

Lenten ys come with love to toune,
 With blosmen ant with briddes rounne,
 That al this blisse bryngeth; 340
 Dayes-eyes in this dales,
 Notes suete of nyghtegales,
 Uch foul song singeth.
 The threstelcoc him threteth oo,
 A-way is huere wynter wo, 345
 When woderove springeth;
 This foules singeth ferly fele,
 Ant wlyteth on huere wynter wele,
 That al the wode ryngeth.
 The rose rayleth hire rode, 350
 The leues on the lyhte wode
 Waxen al with wille;
 The mone mandeth hire bleo,
 The lilie is lossom to seo,
 The fenyl ant the fille; 355
 Wowes this wilde drakes
 Miles murgeth huere makes,
 Ase strem that striketh stille;
 Mody meneth, so doth mo,
 Ichot ycham on of tho, 360
 For love that likes ille.

The mone mandeth hire lyht,
So doth the semly sonne bryht,
 When briddes singeth breme;
Deowes donketh the dounes, 365
Deores with huere derne rounes,
 Domes forte deme;
Wormes woweth under cloude,
Wymmen waxeth wounder proude,
 So wel hit wol hem seme, 370
3ef me shal wonte wille of on:
This wunne weole y wole for-gon,
 Ant wyht in wode be fleme.

XI.

ROBERT MANNYNG OF BRUNNE.

(A.D. 1260-1340.)

Robert Mannyng, commonly called Robert of Brunne, (from birthplace, Brunne or Bourn in Lincolnshire, seven or eight miles from Market Deeping,) translated, in the year A.D. 1303, William of Waddington's *Le Manuel des Pechiez* into English, under the title of *Handlyng Synne*.

Between the years 1327 and 1338 Mannyng translated the French rhyming chronicle of Piers (or Peter) de Langtoft into English verse at the request of Dan Robert of Malton, prior of the Gilbertine order of which Mannyng was a canon.

The following tale is extracted from '*Robert of Brunne's Handlyng Synne*', edited for the Roxburghe Club by F. J. Furnivall. London 1862.

The Tale of Pers the Usurer.

[Collated with Harl. MS. 1701.]

SEYNT Joun þe aumenere
Seyþ Pers was an okerere,
And was swyþe covetous,
And a nygun and avarous,
And gadrede pens unto store, 5
As okerers doun aywhore.
Befyl hyt so upon a day
Þat pore men sate yn þe way,
And sprede here hatren on here barme
Aþens þe sonne þat was warme, 10
And rekenede þe custome houses echoun,

At whych þey hade gode, and at whyche noun ;
 Þere þey hadde gode, þey preysede weyl,
 And þere þey hadde noght, never a deyl.
 As þey spak of many what, 15
 Come Pers forþ yn þat gat,
 Þan seyde echoun þat sate and stode,
 "Here comþ Pers þat never dyde gode."
 Echoun seyde to oþer janglande,
 Þey toke never gode at Pers hande ; 20
 Ne noun pore man never shal have,
 Coude ne never so weyl crave.
 One of hem began to sey
 "A waiour dar y wyþ 3ow ley
 Þat y shal have sum god at hym, 25
 Be he never so gryl ne grym."
 To þat waiour þey grauntede alle,
 To 3yve hym a 3yft, 3yf so myȝte befall.
 Þys man upsterte and toke þe gate .
 Tyl he com at Pers 3ate ; 30
 As he stode styлле and bode þe quede,
 One com wyþ an asse charged wyþ brede
 Þat yche brede Pers hade boght,
 And to hys hous shulde hyt be broght.
 He sagh Pers come þer wyþ alle, 35
 Þe pore þoghte 'now aske y shal.'
 Y aske þe sum gode, par¹ charyte,
 Pers 3yf þy wyl be.
 Pers stode, and lokede on hym
 Felunlyche wyþ yȝen grym. 40
 He stoupede down to seke a stone,
 But, as hap was, þan fonde he none.
 For þe stone he toke a lofe,
 And at þe pore man hyt drofe.

¹ MS. has pur.

Þe pore man hente hyt up belyve, 45
 And was þerof ful ferly blyþe.
 To hys felaws faste he ran
 Wyþ þe lofe, þys pore man.
 "Lo" he seyde "what y have
 Of Pers 3yft, so God me save!" 50
 Nay, þey swore by here þryft,
 Pers 3ave never swych a 3yft.
 He seyde, 3e shul weyl undyrstonde
 Þat y hyt hade at Pers honde;
 Þat dar y swere on þe halydom 55
 Here before 3ow echoun.
 Grete merveyle hade þey alle
 Þat swych a chaunce myȝt hym befalle.
 Þe þrydde day, þus wryte hyt ys,
 Pers fyl yn a grete syknes; 60
 And as he lay yn hys bedde,
 Hym þoghte weyl þat he was ledde
 Wyþ one that aftyr hym was sent
 To come unto hys jugement.
 Before the iuge was he broght 65
 To 3elde acounte how he hadde wroght:
 Pers stode ful sore a drad,
 And was abashed as mad,
 He sagh a fende on the to party
 Bewreyyng hym ful felunly; 70
 Alle hyt was shewed hym before,
 How he hade lyved syn he was bore;
 And namely every wykked dede
 Syn fyrst he coude hymself lede;
 Why he hem dyde, and for what chesun, 75
 Of alle behoveþ hym to 3elde aresoun.
 On the touper party stode men ful bryȝt,
 Þat wulde have saved hym at here myȝt,

But þey myghte no gode fynde
 Þat myȝt hym save or unbynde. 80
 Þe feyre men seyde, what ys to rede?
 Of hym fynde we no gode dede
 Þat god ys payd of,—but of a lofe
 Þe whych Pers a[t] the pore man drofe; 85
 ȝyt ȝave he hyt wyþ no gode wylle,
 But kast hyt aftyr hym wyþ ylle,
 For Goddys love ȝave he hyt noȝt,
 Ne for almes dede he hyt hade thoght.
 Nopeles, þe pore man
 Hade þe lofe of Pers þan. 90
 Þe fende hade leyd yn balaunce
 Hys wykkede dedes and hys myschaunce;
 Þey leyde þe lofe aȝens hys dedys
 Þat hade noȝt elles, þey mote nedys.
 Þe holy man telleþ us and seys 95
 Þat þe lofe made even peys.
 Þan seyð þese feyre men to Pers,
 “ȝyf þou be wys, nou þou leres
 How þys lofe þe helpeþ at nede
 To tylle þy soule wyþ almes dede.” 100
 Pers of hys slepe gan blynke,
 And gretly on hys dreame gan þynke,
 Syghyng wyþ mornyng chere,
 As man þat was in grete were
 How þat he acouped was, 105
 Wyþ fendes fele for hys trespas,
 And how þey wulde have dampned hym þere,
 ȝyf mercy of Jesu Cryst ne were.
 Alle þys yn hys herte he kaste,—
 And to hym self he spak at þe laste,— 110
 Þat for a lofe yn eveyl wylle,
 Halp me yn so grete perel,

Moche wolde hyt helpe at nede
 Wyþ gode wyl [to] do almes dede.
 Fro þat tyme þan wax Pers 115
 A man of so feyre maners,
 Þat no man myzt yn hym fynde,
 But to þe pore boþe meke and kynde;
 A mylder man ne myzte nat be
 Ne to the pore, more of almes fre; 120
 And reuful of herte also he was,
 Þat mayst þou here lere yn þys pas.
 Pers mette upon a day
 A pore man by the way,
 As naked as he was bore, 125
 Þat yn þe see had alle lore.
 He come to Pers þere he stode,
 And askede hym sum of hys gode,
 Sumwhat of hys clopyng,
 For the love of heuene kyng. 130
 Pers was of reuful herte,
 He toke hys kyrtyl of, as smerte,
 And dede hyt on the man aboue,
 And bad hym were hyt for hys loue;
 The man hyt toke and was ful blyþe; 135
 He ȝede and solde hyt asswyþe.
 Pers stode and dyde beholde
 How þe man þe kyrtyl solde,
 And was þarwyþ ferly wroþe
 Þat he solde so sone hys cloþe; 140
 He myzte no lenger for sorow stande
 But ȝede home ful sore gretande;
 And seyde, hyt was an euyl sygne,
 And þat hym self was nat dygne
 For to be yn hys preyere, 145
 Þerfor nolde he þe kyrtyl were.

Whan he hadde ful longe grete,
 And a party þerof began lete ;—
 For communlych aftyr wepe
 Fal men sone on slepe,—
 As Pers lay yn hys slepyng,
 Hym þoghte a feyre sweuenyng.
 Hym þoghte he was yn heuene lyzt,
 And of God he hade a syght
 Syttyng yn hys kyrtyl clade,
 þat þe pore man of hym hade,
 And spak to hym ful myldely :—
 “Why wepest þou, and art sorry?
 Lo, Pers,” he sayde “þys ys þy cloth.
 For he solde hyt, [3yt] were þou wroth ;
 Know hyt weyl, 3yf þat þou kan,
 For me þou 3aue hyt þe pore man,
 þat þou 3aue hym yn charyté,
 Euery deyl þou 3aue hyt me.”
 Pers of slepe oute breyde,
 And þoghte grete wunder, and seþen seyde,
 “Blessyd be alle pore men,
 For God almyȝty loueþ hem ;
 And weyl ys hem þat pore are here,
 þey are wyþ God boþe lefe and dere,
 And y shal fonde, by nyȝt and day,
 To be pore, 3yf þat y may.”
 Hastly he toke hys kateyl,
 And 3aue hyt to pore men echedeyl.
 Pers kallede to hym hys clerke
 þat was hys notarye, and bad hym herke :—
 “Y shal þe shewe a pryuyté,
 A þyng þat þou shalt do to me ;
 Y wyl þat þou no man hyt telle ;
 My body y take þe here to selle

To sum man as yn bondage,
 To lyue yn pouert and yn seruage;
 But þou do þus, y wyl be wroþ,
 And þou and þyne shal be me loþ.
 3yf þou do hyt, y shal þe 3yue 185
 Ten pownde of golde wel wyþ to lyue;
 Ðo ten pownde y take þe here,
 And me to selle on bonde manere;
 Y ne recche [neuer] vn to whom,
 But onlych he haue þe crystendom; 190
 Ðe raunsun þat þou shalt for me take,
 Ðarfore þou shalt sykernes make
 For to 3yue hyt blepely and weyl
 To pore men every deyl,
 And wyþholde þer-of no þyng, 195
 Ðe mountouns of a ferþyng."
 Hys clerk was wo to do þat dede,
 But only for manas and for drede.
 For drede Pers made hym hyt do,
 And dede hym plyghte his troupe þer-to. 200
 Whan hys clerk hade mad hys othe
 Pers dede on hym a foule clothe;
 Vnto a cherche boþe þey 3ede
 For to fulfille hys wyl yn dede.
 Whan þat þey to þe cherche com 205
 "Lorde," þoghte þe clerke, "now whom
 Myzt y fynde, þys yche sele
 To whom y myzte selle Pers wele."
 Ðe clerk lokede euery where,
 And at þe laste he knew where 210
 A ryche man (was) þat er hade be
 Specyal knowlych euer betewe,
 But þurghe myschaunce at a kas
Alle hys gode ylore was;

'ȝole' þus þat man hyghte, 215
 And knew þe clerke wel be syghte.
 Þey spak of olde a-queyntaunce,
 And ȝole tolde hym of hys chaunce.
 "ȝe" seyde þe clerk, "y rede þou bye
 A man to do þy marchaundrye, 220
 Þat þou mayst holde yn seruage
 To restore weyl þyn dammage."
 Þan seyde ȝole, "on swych chaffare
 Wulde y feyn my syluer ware."
 Þe clerke seyde "lo one here, 225
 A trewe man an a dubonure,
 Þat wyl serue þe to pay,
 Peyneble, al þat he may.
 'Pers' shalt þou calle hys name,
 For hym shalt þou haue moche frame. 230
 He ys a man ful gracyous
 Gode to wynne vn-to þyn hous,
 And God shal ȝyue þe hys blessing,
 And foysyn, yn alle þyng."
 Þe clerke ȝaue alle hys raunsun 235
 To þe pore men of þe toun,—
 Plenerly, alle þat he toke,
 Wyphelde he nat a ferþyng noke.
 Þe Emparoure sente hys messageres
 Alle aboute for to seke Pers, 240
 But þey ne myȝte neuer here
 Of ryche Pers, þe tollere
 Yn what stede he was nome,
 No whydyrwarde he was become;
 No þe clerke wulde telle to none 245
 Whydyrwarde þat Pers was gone.
 Now ys Pers bycome bryche,
 Þat er was boþe stoute and ryche.

Alle þat euer any man hym do bad,
 Pers dyde hyt wyþ herte glad. 250
 He wax so mylde and so meke,
 A mylder man þurt no man seke;
 For he mekede hym-self ouer-skyle
 Pottes and dysshes for to swele.
 To grete penaunce he gan hym take, 255
 And moche for to faste and wake,
 And moche he louede þolmodnesse
 To ryche, to pore, .to more, to lesse.
 Of alle men he wulde haue doute,
 And to here byddyng mekly loute; 260
 Wulde þey bydde hym sytte or stande
 Euer he wulde be bowande;
 And for he bare hym so meke and softe,
 Shrewes mysdede hym ful ofte,
 And helde hym foltede or wode 265
 For he was so mylde of mode.
 And þey þat were hys felaus
 Mysseyde hym most yn here sawes;
 And alle he suffrede here upbreyde,
 And neuer naght azens hem seyde. 270
 3ole hys lorde wel undyrstode
 þat al hys grace and hys gode
 Com for þe loue of Pers
 þat was of so holy maners;
 And whan he wyst of hys bounté, 275
 He kallede Pers yn pryuyté:
 "Pers," he seyde, "þou were wurþy
 For to be wursched more than y,
 For þou art weyl wyþ Jesu,
 He sheweþ for þe grete vertu; 280
 þarfor y shal make þe fre,
 Y wyl þat my felaw þou be."

Þar-to Pers grantede noghte
 To be freman as he besoghte;
 He wulde be, as he was ore, 285
 Yn þat seruage for euermore.
 He þankede þe lorde myldely
 For his grete curteysy.
 Syþþen Jesu, þurgh hys myzt,
 Shewede hym to Pers syzt, 290
 For to be stalworþe yn hys fondyng
 And to hym haue loue longyng.
 "Be nat sorowful to do penaunce;
 Y am wyþ þe yn euery chaunce;
 Pers, Y haue mynde of þe, 295
 Lo, here þe kyrtyl þat þou 3aue for me;
 Þerfor grace y shal þe sende
 Yn alle godenesse weyl to ende."
 Byfyl þat seriauntes and squyers
 Þat were wunt to serue Pers, 300
 Went yn pylgrymage, as yn kas,
 To þat cuntre þere Pers was.
 3ole ful feyre gan hem kalle,
 And preyde hem home to hys halle.
 Pers was þere, þat yche sele, 305
 And euerychone he knew hem wele.
 Alle he seruede hem as a knaue
 Þat was wunt here seruise to haue.
 But Pers nat 3yt þey knewe,
 For penaunce chaunged was hys hewe;
 Nat forþy þey behelde hym faste, 310
 And oftyn to hym here y3en þey kaste
 And seyde "he þat stonte here
 Ys lyche to Pers tollere."
 He hydde hys vysege al þat he myzte 315
 Out of knowlych of here syzte;

Noþeles þey behelde hym more
 And knew hym weyl, al þat were þore,
 And seyde, "þole, ys þone þy page?
 A ryche man ys yn þy seruage. 320
 Þe emparoure boþe fer and nere
 Haþ do hym seche þat we fynde here."
 Pers lestnede, and herde hem spekyng,
 And þat þey hade of hym knowyng;
 And pryuyly away he nam 325
 Tyl he to þe porter cam.
 Þe porter hade hys speche lore,
 And heryng also, syn he was bore;
 But þurgh þe grace of swete Jesu
 Was shewed for Pers feyre vertu. 330
 Pers seyde, "late me furþ go."
 Þe porter spak, and seyde, "þo."
 He þat was def, and dounge also,
 Spak whan Pers spak hym to.
 Pers oute at þe ȝate wente, 335
 And þedyr ȝede, þere God hym sente.
 The porter ȝede up to þe halle,
 And þys merueyle tolde hem alle;
 "And þe squyler of þe kechyn,
 Pers, þat haþ woned here yn, 400
 He askede leue, ryȝt now late,
 And wente furþ out at þe gate.
 Y rede ȝou alle, ȝeueþ gode tent,
 Whederwarde þat Pers ys went.
 Wyþ Jesu Cryst he ys pryué, 345
 And þat ys shewed weyl on me.
 For what tyme he to me spak,
 Out of hys mouþ me þoghte brak
 A flamme of fyre bryght and clere,
 Þe flaumme made me boþe speke and here; 350

Speke and here, now, bope y may,
 Blessed be God and Pers to day!"
 þe lorde and þe gestes alle,
 One and oþer þat were yn halle,
 Hade merueyle þat hyt was so, 355
 þat he myzte swych myracle do.
 þan asswyþe Pers þey soghte
 But al here sekyng was for nozte;
 Neuer Pers þey ne founde,
 Nyzt ne day, yn no stounde; 360
 For he þat toke Ennok and Ely,
 He toke Pers, þurgh hys mercy,
 To reste wyþoutyn ende to lede,
 For hys meknes and hys gode dede.
 Take ensample here of Pers, 365
 And partep wyþ þe pore, 3e okerers,
 For 3ow shal neuer come joye wyþ-ynne,
 But 3e leue fyrst þat synne;
 And 3yue to almes þat yche þyng
 þat 3e haue wune wyþ okeryng. 370
 Now wyþ Gode leue wē Pers;
 God 3yue us grace to hys maners!

XII.

WILLIAM DE SHOREHAM.

(A. D. 1307—1327.)

De Baptismo.

Villiam de Shoreham, so called from Shoreham, near Otford, about four miles and a half from Sevenoaks,) was originally a monk of the Priory of Leeds, but was appointed vicar of Chartton by Walter Archbishop of Canterbury (1313-1327). The first poem *De Baptismo* (a copy of which is contained in *The Religious Poems of William de Shoreham*, edited for the Percy Society by T. Wright, M.A., London 1849) is copied from the liturgical MS. 17,376 in the British Museum, by the present editor. The dialect of course is Southern.

CRISTENDOM his that sacrement
That men her ferst fongeth;
Hit openeth ous to the hevene blisse
That many man after longeth
Wel sore; 5
For who that entreth ther,
He his sauffe evere-more.

Nou ferst ich wille telle 3ou
Wet may be the materie,
Wer-inne cristninge may be mad, 10
That bringeth ous so merie
To honoure.
Hiȝt moȝt be do ine kende water,
And non other licour.

Therefore ine wine me ne may, 15
 Inne sithere ne inne pereye,
 Ne ine thinge that nevere water nes,
 Thorȝ cristninge man may reneye,
 Ne inne ale.
 For-thie hiȝt were water ferst, 20
 Of water neth hit tale.

Ne mede ne forthe no other licour
 That chaungeth wateres kende,
 Ne longeth nauȝt to cristendom,
 Thazȝ som foles hit wende 25
 For wete;
 For suich is kendeliche hot,
 Thazȝ ther no feer hit ne hente.

Ac water is kendeliche cheld,
 Thazȝ hit be warnd of fere; 30
 Therfore me mey cristni ther-inne,
 In whaut time falthe a ȝere
 Of yse;
 So mey me nauȝt in ewe ardaunt,
 That neth no wateris wyse. 35

Also me may inne sealte se
 Cristny wel mitte beste;
 And eke inne othere sealte watere,
 Bote me ine to moche keschte
 Of sealte; 40
 For ȝef that water his kende lest,
 That cristninge stant te-tealte.

Ac 3yf ther were y-mengd licour
 Other wid kende watere,
 Ich wo3t wel thrinne to cristnye 45
 Hit nere nefur the betere,
 Ac wonde ;
 For bote that water his kende have,
 That cristnynge may nau3t stonde.

In water ich wel the cristny her 50
 As gode himself hyt di3te ;
 For mide to wessche nis nothyng,
 That man cometh to so li3te,
 In londe ;
 Nis non that habben hit ne may 55
 That habbe hit wile founde.

This bethe the wordes of cristninge
 Bi thyse Englissche costes.
 " Ich cristni the in the vader name,
 And sone and holy gostes 60
 And more."
 Amen! wane hit his ised ther-toe
 Confermeth thet ther to fore.

The wordes scholle be i-sed
 Witheoute wane and eche ; 65
 And onderstand hi more bi sed
 In alle manere speche
 Ine lede ;
 That 3verich man hi sigge more
 And cristny for nede. 70

Ac ȝif man scholde i-cristnid be
 That neth none deathes signe,
 The pope for te cristny hyne
 So nere nauȝt te digne
 The leste ;
 Ther-fore hi beth in cherche brouȝt,
 To cristny of the preste.

75

Ac he that ȝif so large water
 The fend fram ous to reave,
 In nede for to crystny men,
 ȝef alle men i-leave

80

 At felle ;
 Olepi me mot hym depe ine the water,
 And eke the wordes telle.

And wanne hi cristneth ine the founȝt,
 The prestes so thries duppeth,
 In the honour of the Trinité,
 Ac gode ȝeme kepeth

85

 The ned ;
 On time a clothe that water i-kest
 Ac ope the heuede to bede.

90

Ac water i-kest another love¹
 Cristneth the man alyve,
 Ac hit his sikerest in the heeved
 Ther beth the wittes fyve,
 Wel, brother,
 Ne non ne may i-cristened be,
 Ar ȝe his boren of moder.

95

¹ halve t

3et gret peryl hy undergothe
 That cristneth twyes enne, 100
 Other to 3eve asent ther-to,
 Other for love of kenne
 For-hedeth,
 Wanne child ari3t cristnyng heth,
 And that other nau3t for-bedeth. 105

Bote hi this conne, hit his peril
 To thise medewyves;
 For ofte children scheawith quike,
 I-bore to schorte lyves,
 And deyeth; 110
 Bote hi ari3t i-cristned be,
 Fram hevene evere hi weyeth.

Ac 3if that child i-cristned his
 Ac ine fot [th]at me hit weveth,
 Thise habbeth forme ther-of 115
 A Latin that ham gevieth
 To depe;
 And ich schel seggen hit an Englisch,
 Nou ther-of neme 3e kepe.

The prest taketh that ilke child 120
 In his honden by-thuixte,
 And seith "ich ne cristni thei nau3t,
 3ef thou ert i-cristned,
 Eftsone;
 Ac 3yf thou nart ich cristni the;" 125
 And deth that his to donne.

Ac ȝet ther beth cristnynges mo,
Ac no man ne may diȝtti;
For hi beth Godes grace self,
Men of gode ine wil to riȝti, 130
 And wyne,
Wanne hi wolde i-cristned be,
And more mid none ginne.

That on his cleped cristninge of blode,
Wanne suche bledeth for Criste; 135
That other of the Holi-Gost,
That moȝe mid none liste
 Be i-cristned.
And deyeth so wanne hi beth deede,
In heuene hi beth i-gistned. 140

The children atte cherche dore
So beth y-primisined;
And that hi beethe eke atte fount
Mid oyle and creyme alyned,
 Al faylleth; 145
Hiȝt wortheth¹ cristnyng,
And that child ther-to hit availleth.

¹ *wortheth* is written in the margin of the MS.

XIII.

CURSOR MUNDI. (CURSUR O WERLD.)

ABOUT A. D. 1320.

The *Cursor Mundi* is a metrical version of Old and New Testament history interspersed with numerous mediaeval legends.

It seems to have been a very popular book with our forefathers, and one MS. has the following Rubric,

“This is the best book of all

The Course of the World men do it call.”

There are several MSS. of this work, but the Cottonian MS. Vespasian A. iii., in the Northumbrian dialect, has furnished the following extracts.

The Visit of the Wise Men, and the Flight into Egypt.

FRA he [Christ] was born þe day thritteind,

þai offerd him þaa kinges heind,

Wit riche giftes þat þai broght;

þat he was born bot þat yeire noght,

And sum sais bot þe neist yeire

5

Foluand, and sum wit resun sere

Sais, yere after þai com.

John gilden-moth sais wit þis dome,

þat he fand in an ald bok,

þis kinges þre þar wai þai tok,

10

A tuelmo[n]th, ar þe nativité,

For elles moght not kinges thre,

Haf raght to ride sa ferr owai

And com to Crist þat ilk day.

He sais þat in þe bok he fand	15
Of a prophet of Estrinland,	
Hight Balaam, crafti and bald,	
And mikel of a stern he tald,	
A sterne to cum þat suld be sene,	
Was neuer nan suilk befor sua scene.	20
Us telles alsua John gildenmoth	
Of a folk ferr and first uncuth,	
Wonnand be þe est occean,	
Þat biyond þam ar wonnand nan.	
Amang squilk was broght a writte,	25
O Seth þe name was laid on it;	
O suilk a stern þe writt it spak	
And of þir offerands to mak.	
Þis writte was gett fra kin to kin,	
Þat best it cuth to haf in min,	30
Þat at þe last þai ordeind twelve,	
Þe thoughtfulest amang þam selve,	
And did þam in a montain dern,	
Desselic to wait þe stern.	
Quen ani deid o þat dokein,	35
His sun for him was sett again,	
Or his neist þat was fere.	
Sua þat ever þan ilk yere	
Quen þair corns war in-don,	
Þai went in to þat montaine son,	40
Þar þai offerd, praid and suank,	
Thre dais [and] noþer ete ne dranc;	
Þus thoru ilk oxspring þai did,	
Til at þe last þis stern it kyd.	
Þis ilk stern þam come to warn,	45
Apon þat mont in forme o barn,	
And bar on it liknes of croice,	
And said to þaim wit man[ne]s woice,	

Þat þai suld wend to Juen land.
 Þai went and tua yeir war wa[l]kand. 50
 Þe stern went forth-wit, þat þam ledd,
 And ferlic þan war þai fedd;
 Þair scrippes, quer þai rade or yode,
 Þam failed neuer o drinc ne fode.
 Þir kinges rides forth þair rade, 55
 Þe stern alwais þam for-wit glade.
 Þai said, "far we nu to yond king,
 Þat sal in erth haf nan ending;
 Þis king we sal be offrand nu,
 And honour him wit truthes tru; 60
 Al þe kinges o þis werld,
 For him sal be quakand and ferd."
 Þai folud o þis stern þe leme,
 Til þai come into Jerusalem,
 Bot fra þai come þar als-suith, 65
 Þe stern it hid and can unkyth,
 Þoru þe might of sant drightin,
 For Horods sak his wiperwin;
 Þat wist þof-queþer þe kinges noght,
 Bot wend haf funden þat þai soght. 70
 Þai toke þair gesting in þe tun,
 And spird him efter up and dun;
 Bot þe burgeses o þe cité
 Thoght ferli quat þis thing suld be;
 Þai asked quat þai soght, and þai 75
 Said, "a blisful child, par fai,
 He sal be king of kinges alle,
 To hend and fete we sal him falle,
 Sagh we an stern þat ledd us hidir."
 Þan þai gedir þam to gedir, 80
 And spak hir-of wit gret wondring.
 And word cum til Herod þe kyng,

Þat þar was suilk kynges cummun,
 And in þat tun gestening had nummun.
 Quen he þis tīþand undirstod,
 Him thoght it noþer fair na god,
 For wel he wend, þat ful o suik,
 To be put ute of his kingrike,
 And did he suith to samen calle
 Þe maisters of his kingrik alle,
 And fraind at þaim if þai wist,
 Quar suld he be born, þat Crist
 Þat suld þe king of Jues be.
 Þai said, "in Bethleem Jude."
 For þe prophet had writen sua,
 And said "Þou Bethleem Juda,
 Þof þou be noght þe mast cité,
 Þou es noght lest of dignité;
 O þe sal he be born and bred,
 Mi folk of Israel sal [he] lede."
 Herod þaa kings cald in dern,
 And spird þam quen þai sagh þe stern;
 "Gais," he said, "and spirs welle gern,
 And quen yee funden haf þe barn,
 Cums again and tels me,
 For wit wirscip I wille him se."
 "Sir," þai said, "þat sal be yare."
 Quen þai went in þair wai to far,
 And left Herod, þat fals felun,
 Þe stern þai sagh befor þam bon;
 And herbi semis, sua þinc me,
 Sagh nan it bot þa kinges thre;
 Bituix þe list an[d] þe erth it glade,
 Sua fair a stern was never made;
 Right fra the tun of Jerusalem,
 It ledd þam into Bethleem;

85

90

95

100

105

110

115

Ute over þat hus þan stode the stern,
 Þar Jhesus and his moder wern.
 Þai kneld dun and broght in hand,
 Ilkan him gaf worþi offrand; 120
 Þe first o þam þat Jasper hight,
 He gaf him gold wit resun right,
 And þat was for to sceu takning
 O kynges alle þat he was kyng;
 Melchior him com þair neist, 125
 Hei[n]d he was, bath godd and prist,
 Wit recles for-wit him he felle,
 Þat agh be brint in kirc to smelle;
 It es a gum þat cums o firr;
 Bot Attropa gaf gift o mir, 130
 A smerl o selcuth bitturnes,
 Þat ded man cors wit smerld es;
 For roting es na better rede,
 In taken he man was [and] suld be dede.
 O þir thre giftes, sais sum bok, 135
 At ans alle thre he tok,
 Ful suetlik, wit smiland chere,
 Biheild þaa giftes riche and dere.
 Joseph and Maria his spuse,
 Ful fair þai cald þam til huse, 140
 Fair þai did þair conrai dight;
 Wit þe child war þai þat night,
 Wit-uten pride, þe soth to telle,
 Had þai na bedd was spred wit pelle;
 Bot þat þai faand, wit-uten wand, 145
 Þai tok and þanked Godd his sand;
 Ful fain war þai, þai sua had spedd.
 Þaa kinges thre ar broght to bedd,
 Thre weri kinges o þair wai,
 Þe feirth a child, wel mare þan þai; 150

þat wist þai wel and kyð wit dede,
Ful wel he wil þam quit þair mede.
þai had in wil þat ilk night,
To torn be Herods als þai hight,
Bot quilts þai slepand lai in bedd, 155
An angel com þat þam for-bedd
To wend þam bi him ani wai,
(For he was traitur, fals in fai),
Anoþer wai þat þai suld fare.
þe morun quen þai risen ware, 160
And þai had honurd þar þe child,
þai tok þair leve at Mari mild,
And thanked Joseph curtaisli
O þair calling and herbergeri;
þaa kinges ferd anoþer wai. 165
Quen that Herods herd þer-of sai,
Ful wrath he wex, þat wrangwis king,
And herd him driven al til heþing.
He sett his waites bi þe stret,
If þai moght wit þaa kinges mett, 170
He commandid son þai suld be slan,
If þai moght oþer be over-tan.
Bot God wald not þai mett þam wit;
þai ferd al sauf into þair kyth.
Quen Herods sagh he moght not sped, 175
Sua wa was him þat he wald wede;
For þat his wil sua moght not rise,
He thought him wenge on oþer wise.
He made a purveance in hi,
þat mani saccles suld it bii; 180
For he moght find nan wit sak,
On þe sakles he suld ta wrake.
Qua herd ever ani slik
Purveance sa ful o suike,

Pat for þe chesun of a barn 185
 Sua mani wald þat war for-farn?
 He commandid til his knyghtes kene,
 To sla the childer al be-dene,
 Wit-in þe tun of Bethleem;
 And ute-wit mani barn-tem 190
 Did he sacclesli o liif,
 Ful waful made he mani wiif.
 Wit-in þe land left he noght an
 O tua yeir eild, þat he ne was slan;
 Tua yeir o less, I tel it yow, 195
 For sua he wend to sla Jhesu;
 Alle for noght can he to strive,
 Moght he noght Jhesu bring o live;
 Ar he self wald, þat mighti king;
 To ded it moght na man him bring, 200
 And not yeitt þan þat he ne suld rise,
 Al at his aun devise;
 It was a mikel sume o quain
 O þaa childer þat war slain;
 An hundret fourti four thusand, 205
 Thoru Jhesu com to liif lastand.
 Bot seven dais for-wit, we rede,
 Ar Herod had gest do þis dede,
 Þar Joseph on his sleping lai,
 An angel þus til him can sai: 210
 "Rise up Josep and busk and ga,
 Maria and þi child al-sua,
 For yow behoves nu alle thre,
 In land of Egypt for to fle;
 Rise up ar it be dai, 215
 And solus forth þe wildrin wai;
 Herod þat es þe child fa,
 Fra nu wil sek him for to sla;

Pare sal yee bide stil wit þe barn,
 Til þat I eft cum yow to warn." 220
 Son was Joseph redi bun,
 Wit naghtertale he went o tun,
 Wit Maria mild, and þair meiné,
 A maiden and þair suanis thre,
 Þat servid þam in þair servis; 225
 Wit þaim was nan bot war and wis,
 For sco rad þat moder mild;
 And in hir barm sco ledd hir child,
 Til þai come at a cove was depe¹.
 Þar þai þam thought to rest and slepe; 230
 Þar did þai Mari for to light,
 Bot son þai sagh an ugli sight.
 Als þai loked þam biside,
 Ute o þis cove þan sagh þai glide
 Mani dragons, wel sodanli; 235
 Þe suanis þan bigan to cri.
 Quen Jhesus sagh þam glopnid be,
 He lighted of his moder kne,
 And stod apon þaa bestes grim,
 And þai þam luted under him. 240
 Þan com þe propheci al cler
 To dede, þat said es in sauter:
 "Þe dragons wonand in þair cove,
 Þe laverd agh yee worthli to lufe."
 Jhesus he went befor þam þan, 245
 Forbed þam harm do ani man.
 Maria and Joseph ne for-þi
 For þe child war ful dreri;
 Bot Jhesus ansuward þaim onan:
 "For me drednes haf nu yee nan,
 Ne haf yee for me na barn site, 250

¹ Dipe MS.

For I am self man al parfite,
 And al þe bestes þat ar wild,
 For me most be tame and mild."
 Leon yode þam als imid, 255
 And pardes als þe dragons did,
 Bifor Maria and Joseph yede,
 In right wai þam for to lede.
 Quen Maria sagh þaa bestes dute,
 First sco was gretli in dute, 260
 Til Jhesus loked on hir blith,
 And dridnes bad hir nan to kith.
 "Moder," he said, "haf þou na ward,
 Noþer o leon ne o lepard,
 For þai com noght us harm to do, 265
 Bot þair servis at serve us to."
 Bath ass and ox at wit þam war,
 And bestes þat þair harnais bar,
 Ute o Jerusalem þair kyth,
 Þe leons mekli yod þam wit, 270
 Wit-uten harm, or ox or ass,
 Or ani best þat wit þam was.
 Þan was fulfild þe propheci,
 Þat said was þoru Jeremi,
 "Wolf and weþer, leon and ox, 275
 Sal comen samen, and lamb and fox."
 A wain þai had þair gere wit-in,
 Þat draun was wit oxen tuin.
 Forth þair wai þai went fra þan,
 Wit-uten kithing of ani man. 280
 Maria forth þam foluand rade,
 Gret hett in wildernes it made;
 O gret travail sco was weri,
 A palme tre sco sagh hir bi;
 Joseph sco said, "fain wald I rest, 285

Under bis tre, me thinc wer best."
 " Gladli," said he, " þat wil resun."
 Son he stert and tok hir dun,
 Quen sco had sitten þar a wei,
 Sco bihild a tre was hei, 290
 And sagh a frut þar-on hingand,
 Man clepes palmes in þat land.
 " Joseph," sco said, " fain wald I ete
 O þis frut, if I moght gete ;"
 " Maria me thinc ferli o þe 295
 Þat se þe gret heght o þis tre,
 Þe frut hu suld man reche unto,
 Þat man his hand mai to nan do?
 Bot I site for an oþer thing,
 Þat we o water haf nu wanting ; 300
 Ur water purveance es gan,
 And in þis wildernes es nan,
 Naþer for us, ne for ur fee,
 Ne for nan of ur meiné."
 Jhesus satt on his moder kne, 305
 Wit a ful blith cher said he,
 " Bogh þou til us suith þou tre,
 And of þi frut þou give us plenté."
 Unnethe had he said þe sune,
 Quen þe tre it boghed dune, 310
 Right to Maria, his moder, fote,
 Þe crop was evening to þe rote.
 Quen alle had eten frut inogh,
 Yeit it boghud dun ilk bogh,
 Til he wald comand it to rise, 315
 Þat gert it lute in his servis.
 To þat tre þan spak Jhesu :
 " Rise up," he said, " and right ye nu,
 I wil þou, fra mi forward,

Be planted in min orcherd, 320
 Amang mi tres o paradise,
 Þat þou and þai be of a prise ;
 Vnder þi rote þar es a spring,
 I wil þat ute þe water wring ;
 Mak us a welle, for mine sake, 325
 Þat alle mai plenté o water take."
 Wit þis stert up þe tre stedfast ;
 Under þe rote a welle ute-brast,
 Wit strand suete, and clere, and cald ;
 Alle dranc inogh ilkan þat wald, 330
 Wit alle þe bestes in þat place,
 Þai loued ai drightin of his grace.
 Apon þe morn, quen it was dai,
 And þai ware busked to þair wai,
 Jhesus him turnd to þe tre, 335
 And said, " þou palme i comand þe,
 Þat o þi branches an be scorn,
 And wit mine angel heþen born,
 To planted be in paradise,
 Þar mi fader mirthes es." 340
 Unnethes he had þis word spoken,
 An angel com, a bogh was broken,
 And born awai it was alson ;
 His comanment was noght vndon,
 Þe bugh til heuen wit him he bar ; 345
 Þai felle in suim, al þat þar war,
 For angel sight þai felle dun mad.
 Jhesus þan said, " qui er yee rade ?
 Quer it es sua yee wat it noght,
 Þat handes mine þis tre has wroght, 350
 And I wil nu þis ilk tre
 Stand in paradis to be,
 To mi santes insted of fode

Al in þis way to yow it stode."
 Siþen forth þai ferd þair wai, 355
 And Joseph can to Jhesu sai,
 " Laverd þis is a mikel hete,
 It greves us, it es sua grete;
 If þou redest þat it sua be,
 We wil þe wai ga be þe se, 360
 For þar es tuns in for to rest,
 Þat we to ga me thinc it best."
 " Joseph nu dred þe noght i sai,
 For i sal mak þe scort þi wai,
 Þat þou on thritté dais lang 365
 Jornes sal haf bot a dai-gang."
 Als þai togedir talked sua,
 Þai loked þam on-ferrum fra,
 And sun bigan þai for to se,
 O land of Egypt sum cité. 370
 Þan þai wex ful glad and blith,
 And come þam tille a cité suith;
 Þar þai fand nan o þair knaing,
 At þat þai cuth ask at þair gesting.
 In þat siquar þai come to tun, 375
 Was preistes at þair temple bun
 To do þe folk, als þai war sete,
 Ma sacrifices to þair maumet.
 Bot Maria ner was gestalten þar,
 To se þat kirck hir sun sco bar; 380
 Quen sco was cummen þat kirck witin,
 Man moght a selcuth se to min,
 Þat al þair idels, in a stund,
 Grovelings fel unto þe grund,
 Dun at þe erth alle war þai laid. 385
 Þan come þe propheci was said,—
 " Quen he," it sais, " þe laverd sal

Cum til Egypti, þair idels alle
 Sal falle dun, als þai war noght,
 Þe quilk þai wit þair handes wroght." 390
 O þat tun was a laverding,
 Quen him was tald o þis tiping,
 He gadir[d] folk and duelled noght,
 And to þe temple he þam broght;
 For to wreke þam he was bun, 395
 Þat þus did cast þair goddes dun.
 Quen he þam sagh in temple lii,
 Hiis godds and his maumentri,
 He com to Maria wituten harme,
 Þar sco hir child bar in hir arme; 400
 Honurand forwit him he felle,
 And til his folk þus he can telle:
 "Þis child if he ne war Godd Almighty,
 Ur godds had standen al upright,
 Bot for he is Godd mighti sene 405
 Ures ar fallen dun be-dene;
 Quat dos or goddes or mai do ger,
 Bot we ne wrick þe wisliker;
 Þe wark of him sua mai we dred,
 Als wittnes on ur eldres dede, 410
 Hu it be-tide to Pharaon;
 Wit al his folk he was fordon,
 For þai wald noght apon him tru,
 Sua ful o might and o vertu,
 Al þai drund in þe se; 415
 I tru on him, alsua do yee."
 Was noght a temple or-quar in tun,
 Þat þar ne fel sum idel dun.

The Oil of Mercy.

Adam had pastd nine hundret yere,
 Naa selcut, þof he wex vnfere, 420
 For-wroght wit his hak and spad,
 Of himself he wex al sad;
 He lened him þan apon his hak,
 Wit Seth his sun þus-gat he spak:
 "Sun he said þou most now ga 425
 To paradis, þat i com fra,
 Til cherubin þat [is] þe yate-ward."
 "Yai Sir, wist i wyderward
 Þat tat vncuth contre ware,
 Þou wat þat i was never þare." 430
 Þus he said, "i sal þe sai
 How-gate þou sal tak þe wai;
 Toward þe est end of þis dale
 Find a grene gate þou sale;
 In þat way sal þou find forsoth, 435
 Þi moders and mine our bather slog[t]h,
 Foluand thoru þat gresse gren,
 Þat euer has sipen ben gren,
 Þat we com wendand als unwis,
 Quen we war put o paradis, 440
 Vnto þis wreched warld slade,
 Þar i first me self was made;
 Thoru þe gretnes of our sin,
 Moght na gres groue sipen þar-in.
 Þe falau slog[t]h sal be þi gate, 445
 O paradis right to the yate."
 "Fader," he said, "sai me þi wille,
 Quat sal i sai, þat angel tille."
 "Þou sal him telle I am vnfere,
 For I haue liued so mani a yeir, 450

Ai in striif and soruuing stad,
 Þat o mi liif I am al sad;
 Þou prai him þat he word me send,
 Quen I sal o þis werld wend.
 Anoper erand sal þar be, 455
 Þat he wald send me word wit þe,
 Quedir þat I sal haue it in hii,
 Þe oile me was hight o merci.
 Þe tim þat I lest paradis.
 Welle i knau now mi foliis, 460
 Again godds wil have i wroght,
 And þat sumdel have I now boght,
 Mi soru has ai siþen ben neu,
 Nou war it time o me to reu."
 Seth went him forth, wit-outen nai, 465
 To paradis þat ilk way.
 Þe slogth he fand þat him gan wiss
 Tilward þe ȝate of paradis;
 Quen þar-of son [he] had a sight,
 Al was he gloppend for þat light; 470
 Þe mikel light þat he sagh þar,
 A brennand fire he wend it ware.
 He seuid him als his fader badd,
 And ȝode forth and was noght raadd.
 Þis angel at þe ȝatte he fand, 475
 And asked him of his errand.
 Seth þen sette him spelle on end,
 And tald him warfor þat he was send,
 Tald him of his fader care,
 Als he him taght sum yee herd are, 480
 To send him word wen he suld dei,
 To live moght he na langar drei;
 And wen þat drightin had him tight,
 To send him þe oile þat he him hight.

Quen cherubin þis errand herd,	485
Mikelik he him answard,	
“Ga to þe ʒatte he said and loutte	
þi hed inwar[d], þiself wit-outte,	
And tent to thinges at þi might,	
þat sal be sceud un-to þi sight.”	490
Quen Seth a quil had loked in,	
He sagh sua mikel welth and win,	
It es in erth na tung may telle,	
þat flour þat frutte, þat suette smelle,	
O blis and ioi sua mani thing.	495
In middes þe land he sagh a spring,	
Of a welle þat es utenemes,	
þat oute of ran four gret stremmes,	
Tyson, Fison, Tigre, Eufrate;	
þis four mas al þis erth wate.	500
Out over þat welle þan lokes he,	
And sagh þar stand a mikel tre,	
Wit braunches fel, o bark al bare,	
Was þar no leve on, less na mare.	
Seth bigan to thinc for-qui	505
þat þis tre bicom sua dri;	
O þe steppes umthoght he than,	
þat welud war for sin of man;	
þat ilk scha did him to min,	
þat þis tre was dri for Adam sin.	510
He com þan to þat angel scene,	
And sceud him al þat he had sene;	
Quen he his sight al had him tald,	
He badd him eft ga to be-hald;	
He loked in eft, and stod þer-oute,	515
And sagh þe thing þat gart him doute.	
þis tre, þat i of forwit said,	
A neddur hit hade al umbilaid.	

Cherubin, þat angel blyth,
 Bad him ga lok þe thrid syth; 520
 Þis tre was of a mikel heght,
 Him thoght þan at þe thrid sight
 Þat to þe sky it raght þe toppe;
 A new-born barn lay in þe croppe,
 Bondon wit a sueþel band, 525
 Þar him thoght it lay suelland.
 He was al ferd wen he þat sei,
 And to þe rotte he kest his he,
 Him thoght it raght fra erth til helle,
 Quare under he sagh his broþer Abelle; 530
 In his saul he sagh him þare,
 Þat Caim slogh, forwít, ful o care.
 He went agayn þan for to scau,
 To cherubin al þat he sau;
 Cherubin wit chere sa milde, 535
 Bigan to tel him o þat child;
 "Þis barn," he said, "þat þou has sene,
 Is Goddes sun, wit-outen wene;
 Þi fader sin now wepes he,
 Þat he sal clens, sum time sal be, 540
 Quen þe plentez sal cum o time,
 Þis is þe oile þat was hight him;
 Til him and til his progeni,
 Wit pité sal [he] sceu his merci."
 Quen Seth had under-standen wele, 545
 Þat angel said him ilk dele,
 His leve wald [he] tak at Cherubin;
 Pepins, þen, he gave him thrin,
 Þe quilk o þe appel tre he nam,
 Þat his fader ete of; "Adam, 550
 Þi fader," he said, "þan sal þou say,
 Þat he sal dei þe thrid day

Efter þat þou be commun ham,
 And, als he was, turn into lam;
 Bot þou sal tak þis pepins þre, 555
 Þat I toke o þat appel tre,
 And do þam under his tong rote;
 Þai sal til mani man be bote,
 Þai sal be cedre, ciprese, and pine;
 O þam sal man have medicen. 560
 Þe fader in cedre þou sal take,
 A tre of heght þat has na make;
 And cipres, be þe suete savur,
 Bitakens our suete sauveur,
 Þe mikel suetnes, þat es þe sun; 565
 Þe pine to bere a frut es won,
 Mani kirkels of a tre mast
 Gain gifes o þe Holi Gast."
 Seth was of his errand fain,
 And sune com til his fader again. 570
 "Sun," he said, "has þou sped oght,
 Or has þou ani merci broght?"
 "Sir, Cherubin, þe hali angel
 Þat es yateward þe gretes wel,
 Sais it sal negh þe warlds end, 575
 Ar þat oile þe may be send,
 Thoro birth of a blisful child,
 Þat sal fra harm þe werld schild;
 O þi ded he bad me sai,
 Sal be to dai þe thrid dai." 580
 Adam was for þis tipand blith;
 Sua glad was he never his sith,
 Quen he herd he suld live na mare;
 Þan he logh, bot never are,
 And þus on Godd began to cri, 585
 "Laverd inogh now lived have i;

Pou tak mi saul out of þe flexs,
 And do it ware þi wille es."
 Quat of þis werld he was ful sad,
 Pare never a dai þar-in was glad, 590
 Þat lived nine hundret yeir and mare,
 And alle his liue in site and care,
 And leuer was sipen to lenger in helle,
 Þan langer in þis live to dwelle.
 Adam al[s] him was tald befor, 595
 Was ded apon þe thrid morn.
 Dolven he was þoru Seth his sun,
 In þe dale þat hat Ebron.
 Þe pipins war don under his tung,
 Þar ras o þam thre wandes yong, 600
 Son of an ellen heght þai ware,
 Þai stod þan stille and wex na mare;
 Ful many yeir ilike grene,
 Halmes was o þam sene.
 Stille ai stod þaa wandes thre 605
 Fra Adam tim until Noe;
 Fra Noe quen þe flod ras,
 Til Abraham þat haly was;
 Fra Abraham ai stil stod þai,
 Til Moyses þat gaf þe lai, 610
 Ever stod þai stille in an,
 Witouten wax, witouten wain.

XIV.

SUNDAY SERMONS IN VERSE.

ABOUT A.D. 1330.

The following curious Sermons and Tales, in the Northumbrian dialect, illustrating mediaeval preaching, are taken from *English Metrical Homilies*, edited by John Small, M.A., Edinburgh 1862.

From the Sermon for the Second Sunday in Advent.

The Signs of the Doom.

[Pages 25-33.]

SAIN Jerom telles that fifteen	
Ferli takeninges sal be sen	
Bifor the day of dom, and sal	
Ilkan of thaim on serdai fal.	
The first dai sal al the se	5
Boln and ris and heyer be	
Than ani fel of al the land,	
And als a felle up sal it stand,	
Þe heyt thar-of sal passe the felles	
Bi sexti fot, als Jerom telles,	10
And als mikel the tother day	
Sal it sattel and wit away,	
And be lauer than it nou esse,	
For water sal it haf wel lesse.	
The thride dai mersuine and qualle	15
And other gret fises alle	
Sal yel, and mak sa reuful ber	
That soru sal it be to her.	
The ferthe day freis water and se	
Sal bren als fir and glouand be.	20

The fift day sal greses and tres
 Suet blodi deu that grisli bes.
 The sexte day sal doun-falle
 Wer/des werks, bathe tours and halle.
 The sevend day sal stanes gret 25
 To gider smit and bremly bete.
 And al the erthe the achtande day
 Sal stir and quac and al folc flay.
 The neynd day the fels alle
 Be mad al euin wit erthe salle. 30
 The tend day sal folc up crep,
 Als wod men of pittes dep.
 The elleft day sal banes rise
 And stand on graues thar men nou lies.
 The tuelft day sal sternes falle. 35
 The thretend day sal quek men dey alle,
 Wit other ded men to rise,
 And com wit thaim to gret asise.
 The faurtend day at a schift
 Sal bathe brin erthe and lift. 40
 The fifetende day thai bathe
 Sal be mad newe and fair ful rathe;
 And al ded men sal rise,
 And cum bifer Crist our iustise.
 Than sal Crist dem als king ful wis, 45
 And ger the sinful sare grise,
 Sa grisli sal he to thaim be,
 That thaim war leuer that thai moht fle
 Fra that dom that he sal dem
 Than al this wer/d, sa bes he brem 50
 Tille thaim that sinful cumes thar,
 And forthi sal thai gret sar,
 And say allas that we war born!
 Shamlic haf we us self forlorn.

Than salle thair wike dedes alle
 Stand and igaines thaim kalle,
 And with thair taking ber witnes
 Of thair sin and thair wiknes.
 Of mikel soru sal þai telle,
 For Satenas wit feres felle,
 To bind thaim he sal be ful snelle,
 And bremli draw thaim till helle,
 Thar thai sal euermare duelle,
 And wafullic in pines welle,
 And endeles of soru telle.
 This bes thair dom that her in sin
 Ligges, and wil thair sin noht blin,
 Bot wald thai think on domes dai
 Thaim bird lef thair plihtful play.
 Allas! Allas! quat sal thai say
 Bifor him that mihtful may,
 Quen al the men that was and esse
 Sal se thair sines mare and lesse,
 And al the angeles of the heuin,
 And ma fendes than man mai nefen.
 Igain-sawe may thar nan be,
 Of thing that alle men may se.
 Of this openlic schauing
 Hausi Godd schawed many takning,
 Of a takning that I haf herd telle,
 That falles wel til our godspelle.

Tale of a Monk.

A blak munk of an abbaye
 Was enfermer of all[e] I herd say,
 He was halden an hali man
 Imange his felaus euerilkan;
 An cloyster monk loued him ful wele,
 And was til him ful speciel,

For riuelic togider drawes	
Faithe lufreden god felawes.	
Fel auntour that this enfermer	90
Was sek, and he that was til him der	
Com to mak him glad and blithe,	
And his lufredene til him to kithe;	
He asked him hou he him felid,	
And he his stat alle til him telid,	95
And said ful hard fel I me,	
To dede I draw, als ye mai se.	
His felau was for him sary,	
And praied him ful gern forthie,	
That yef Godd did of him his wille,	100
That he suld scheu his stat him tille.	
This seke monk hiht to com him to,	
Yef he moht get lef thar-to :	
I sal, he said, yef I may,	
Com to the my stat to say.	105
Quen this was sayd, he deyed son,	
And his felau asked his bon,	
And prayed Godd for his mercye,	
That he suld schew him openly,	
Other wakand or slepand,	110
Of his felaw state sum tithand,	
And als he lay apon a niht,	
His felaw com wit lemes liht,	
And tald him bathe of heuin and helle,	
And he prayed he suld him telle	115
His state, and he said wel far I	
Thoru the help of our Lefdi,	
War scho ne hafd ben, I hauid gan	
To won in helle wit Satan.	
His felau thoht herof ferly,	120
And asked him quarfor and qui,	

And sayd, we wend alle wel that thou
Haued ben an hali man til nou :
Hou sal it far of us kaytefes,
That in sin and foli lyes,
Quen thou that led sa hali life,
Was demed tille hell[e] for to drife.
Quen this was said, the ded ansuerd
And tald his felaw hou he ferd,
And said son quen I gaf the gaste,
Till[e] my dom was I led in haste,
And als I stod my dom to her
Bifor Jesus, wit dreri cher,
Of fendes herd Ic mani upbrayd,
And a boc was bifor me layd,
That was the reuel of sain Benet,
That Ic hiht to hald and get.
This reul thai gert me rapli rede,
And als I red, sar gan I drede,
For overlop moht I mac nan,
Bot of the clauses euerilkan,
Yald Ic account hou I thaim held,
And my consciens gan me meld ;
It schawed thar ful openlye
That I led mi lif wrangwislie,
For in the reul es mani pas,
That than ighain me casten was,
Quar-thoru almost haued I thare
Ben demid til helle for to fare.
Bot for I lufed wel our Lefdye
Quil I lifd, Ic hafd forthie
Ful god help thar thoru hir mercy,
For scho bisoht Crist inwardlie
That I moght in purgatorie
Clens mi sin and mi folye.

125

130

135

140

145

150

155

Forthi hop I to far ful welle,
 For mi soru sal son kele;
 Forthi my frend I prai the,
 That thou ger felaus prai for me.
 Quen this was said, awai he went, 160
 And his felawe ful mikel him ment,
 And efter this siht mani a day
 Gert he for his sawell prai.

rmon for the Third Sunday after the Octave of Epiphany.

The Miraculous Stilling of the Tempest on the Sea of Galilee.

[Pages 134-144.]

Sain Matheu þe wangeliste
 Telles us to dai, hou Crist 165
 Schipped into the se a time,
 And his decipelis al wit him.
 And quen þair schip com on dep,
 Jesu seluen fel on slep,
 And gret tempest bigan to rise, 170
 That gert þe schipmen sar grise.
 Thai wakned Crist, and said yare,
 Help us lauerd, for we fo[r]fare.
 And Crist, als mihti Godd, ansuerd
 And said, foles qui er ye fered; 175
 Als qua sai, Godd es in þis schip
 That mai wel saue this felauschip.
 And crist comanded wind and se
 To lethe, and fair weder be.
 And sa fair weder was in hie, 180
 That al his felaues thoht ferlie,
 And said, quatkin man mai this be,
 Til him bues bathe winde and se.
 This es the strenthe of our godspelle
 Als man on Ingelis tong mai telle. 185

Al hali kirc, als thinc me
 Mai bi this schippe takened be,
 That Crist rad in and his felawes,
 Imang dintes of gret quawes.
 For schip fletes on the flode, 190
 And hali kirc wit costes gode,
 Fletes abouen this werldes se,
 Flouand wit sin and caitifté;
 God cresten men er hali kirc,
 þat Goddes wil wille gladli werc. 195
 Þis schip ful gret wawes kepes,
 And crist tharin gasteli slepes
 Quen he tholes god men and lele,
 Wit wic men and fals dele,
 That betes thaim wit dede and word 200
 Als se bare betes on schip bord.
 For wit ensampel, mai we se
 That al this werld es bot a se,
 That bremlī bares on banc wit bale,
 And gret fisches etes the smale. 205
 For riche men of this werld etes,
 That pouer wit thair trauail getes.
 For wit pouer men fares the king,
 Riht als the quale fars wit the elringe,
 And riht als sturion etes merling, 210
 And lobbekeling etes sperling,
 Sua stroies mare men the lesse,
 Wit wa and werldes wrangwisnes,
 And schathe that lesse tholes of mare
 Smites als storm of se ful sare. 215
 And forthi that crist tholes this,
 Ite sembeles that he slepand is;
 Bot thai that thol thir strange stowres,
 Thai waken Crist and askes socoures

Wit orisoun, that es prayer, 220
 That wakenes Crist, and gers him her
 Al thair wandreth and thair wrake,
 And wit his miht he geres it slake.
 For rightwis cristen man praier
 Es til Jesus sa lef and dere, 225
 That quat-sa-ever we ask tharin,
 And we be out of dedeli sin,
 Our lauerd grauntes it us son,
 Yef sawel hel be in our bon.
 For yef we prai God that he 230
 Grant that igan our sawel be,
 Us au to thinc na ferlye
 Thoh Godd it warnes ouertlye.
 For bi ensampel mai we se
 That praier mai unschilful be; 235
 Als ef thou prai Godd that he
 Apon thi fais venge the,
 Thi praier es igan his wille,
 Forthi wil he it noht fulfille;
 Or yef thou prai efter catele, 240
 That es igan thi sawel hele;
 Or efter werldes mense and miht,
 That geres foles fal in pliht;
 Or ef thou praye him that he leche
 Thi sandinges and thi wandrethe, 245
 That dos in to the sawel gode,
 Yef thou it thol wit milde mode;
 Wit resoun mai thou Godd noht wite,
 Yef he the silc askinges nite,
 For yef he graunt the thi schathe, 250
 Thou war noht lef til him, bot lathe.
 Forthi es godd that we him praye
 Thing that our sawel hele mai;

For ar we bigin our prayer,
 Wat he quarof we haf mister. 255
 Bot for our godspel spekes of se,
 Quarbi this werld mai bisend be,
 Forthi wil I schaw other thinges,
 That er apert biseninges;
 Bitiuxe this wlanc werld and se, 260
 This werldes welth to do fle.
 Bi salte water of the se,
 Ful gratheli mai bisend be
 This werldes welth, auht, and catel,
 That wer/des men lufes ful wel, 265
 For salte water geres men threst,
 And wer/des catel geres men brest.
 The mar thou drinkes of the se,
 The mare and mar threstes ye;
 And ai the richer that man esse, 270
 The mar him langes efter riches.
 And in se dronkenes folc ful fele,
 And sua dos [many] in wer/des catele;
 For water drunkenes the bodie,
 And catel the sawel gastelie; 275
 For catel drawes man til helle,
 Thar wattri wormes er ful felle,
 And of thir wormes wil I telle
 A tal, yef ye wil her mi spelle.

Tale of a Usurer.

An hali man biyond the se, 280
 Was bischop of a gret cité;
 God man he was, and Pers he hiht,
 And thar bisyd woned a kniht,
 That thoru kind was bond and thralle,
 Bot knihthed gat he wit catelle. 285

This catel gat he wit okering,
 And led al his lif in corsing,
 For he haunted bathe dai and niht
 His okering, sine he was kniht,
 Als fast as he did bifore, 290
 And tharwit gat he gret tresore.
 Bot Crist that boht us der wit pine,
 Wald noht this mannes sawel tine,
 Bot gaf him graz himself to know,
 And his sin to the bischop schaw. 295
 Quen he him schraf at this bischop,
 This bischop bad him haf god hop,
 And asked him, yef he walde tac
 Riht penanz, for his sinful sac.
 Ful gladli wil I tac, he said, 300
 The penanz that bes on me laid;
 And the bischop said, thou sal mete
 A beggar gangand by the strete,
 And quat-als-euer he askes the,
 Gif him, this sal thi penanz be. 305
 And ful wel paid was this kniht,
 For him thoht his penanz ful liht.
 And als he for hamward, he mette
 A beggar that him cumly grette,
 And said, lef sir, par charité, 310
 Wit sum almous thou help me.
 This kniht asked quat he wald haf;
 Lauerd he said, sum quet I craue.
 Hou mikel, he said, askes thou me;
 A quarter lauerd, par charité. 315
 This kniht granted him his bone,
 And gert met him his corn sone.
 This pouer man was will of wan,
 For pok no sek no havid he nan,

Quarin he moht this quete do ; 320
 And forthi this kniht said him to,
 This quete, I rede thou selle me,
 For ful pouer me thinc the.
 The pouer said, layth thinc me
 To selle Goddes charité, 325
 Bot len me sum fetel tharto,
 Quarin I mai thin almous do.
 And he ansuered and said, nai,
 For al that this beggar moht sai,
 He said, this thou selle me, 330
 For fertil wil I nan len the.
 The beggar moht na better do,
 Bot sald this corn igain him to,
 And toc thar for fif schilling,
 And went him forthe on his begging. 335
 Quen this corn to the kniht was sald,
 He did it in an arc to hald,
 And opened this arc the thrid daye
 And fand tharin, selcouthe to say,
 Snakes and nederes thar he fand, 340
 And gret blac tades gangand,
 And arskes and other wormes felle.
 That I kan noht on Inglis telle.
 Thai lep upward til his visage,
 And gert him almost fal in rage. 345
 Sa was he for thir wormes ferde,
 Bot noht forthi that arc he speride,
 And to the bischope in a ras
 He ran, and tald him [al] his cas.
 The bischop sau that Godd wald tak 350
 Of this man sin wrethful wrac.
 And said, yef thou wil folfille
 Wit worthi penanz, Goddes wille,

And clens wit penanz riht worthi,
 Al thi sinnes and thi foli, 355
 I red that thou self the falle
 Nakid imang tha wormes alle,
 No gif thou of the self na tale,
 Bot bring thi sawel out of bale.
 Thoh tha wormes thi caroin gnawe, 360
 Thi pynes lastes bot a thrawe;
 And than sal thi sawel wende
 To lif of blis, witouten ende.
 This okerer was selli radde,
 To do that this bischop him badde, 365
 Bot of mercy haft he god hop,
 And gern he prayd the bischop,
 And said, lef fader, I pray the,
 That thou prai inwardli for me,
 That God gif me his graz to fang 370
 One mi bodi, this penanz strang.
 The bischop hiht this man lelye,
 To pray for him riht inwardlye.
 This man went ham thoh he war rad,
 And did als his bischop him badde; 375
 For imang al thir wormes snelle,
 Als nakid als he was born, he felle.
 Thir wormes ete that wreche manne,
 And left nathing of him bot ban.
 The bischop went into that toun, 380
 Wit clerkes in processiou,
 And come into this knihtes wanes,
 And soht ful gern his hali banes;
 And til this forsaid arc he yod,
 And opened it wit joiful mod, 385
 And riped imang tha wormes lathe,
 Bot nan of thaim moht do him schathe,

And forthe he gan tha banes draw,
And thai war als quite als snaw.
Quen al tha banes out-tan ware
Tha wormes gert he brin ful yare,
And bar thir bannes menskelye,
And fertered thaim at a nunrye ;
Thar Godd schewes mirakelle and miht,
And gifes blind men thar siht,
And croked men thar geres he ga,
And leches seke men of wa,
And schewes wel wit fair ferlikes,
That thas banes er god relikes.
This tale haf I nou tald here,
To ger you se on quat maner,
That the mar catel that man haues,
The mar and mare his hert craues ;
And namlic thir okerers,
That er cursed for thair aferes ;
Bot yef thai her thair lif amend,
Thai wend til wormes witouten end,
That sal thaim reuli rif and rend.
In helle pine witouten end.
That wist this bischop witerlye,
And forthi did he quaintelye,
Quen he gert wormes ete this man,
To yem his sawel fra Satan.
For wormes suld his sawel haf rended,
Quar-sa-euer it suld haf lended,
Yef he no havid wel ben scriuen,
And his caroin til wormes giuen.
Bot for his fleis was pined here,
His sawel es now til Godd ful dere,
Thar it wones in plai and gamen,
Godd bring us thider alle samen. Amen !

390

395

400

405

410

415

420

XV.

DAN MICHAEL OF NORTHGATE.

A. D. 1340.

n the year 1340 Dan Michael of Northgate (Kent), "a brother he cloister of St. Austin of Canterbury," translated into English the French treatise *Le Somme des Vices et des Vertus*, by re Lorens (A. D. 1279), under the title of *The Ayenbite of Inawyrmorse of Conscience*). This work is preserved in Arundel 57, which also contains two short Sermons, probably translated from a Latin original, by the same author.

These Kentish productions are the most valuable specimens which have been preserved of the Southern dialect in the thirteenth century.

Sermon on Matthew xxiv. 43.

Jor to sseawy þe lokynge of man wyþ-inne. þellyche uorbysne / oure lhord ihesu crist zayþ. 'Þis uorzoþe 7teþ. þet yef þe uader of þe house wyste huýche time þyef were comynde: uorzoþe he wolde waky / and nolde t polye þet me dolue his hous.' Be þise uader of house may onderstonde / þe wyl of skele. to huam be-longeþ che mayné. Þo3tes. and his besteriinge. wyt. and dedes / wel wiþ-out: ase wyþ-inne. þet is to zigge / huých yné / to moche slac / and wylles-uol ssel by: bote yef ilke uaderes stefhede hise strayny / and ordayny. Vor e yef he hym a lyte of his bysyhede wyþ-drazþ: huoy zigge / hou þo3tes. e3en. earen. tonge. and alle oþre tes: becomeþ wylde. Hous. is inwyt / in huýchen þe

uader of house woneþ. þe hord of uirtues gadereþ. Vor
huych hord: þet ilke zelue hous ne by y-dolue / heþlyche
he wakeþ. þer ne is naȝt on þyef: ac uele. ac to eche
uirtue: ech vice wayteþ. Þaȝles heþlyche by þe þyeue: is
onderstonde þe dyeuel. a-ye huam and his kachereles / þe
ilke zelue uader / þaȝles yef he ne were naȝt onlost: his
hous mid greate strengþe wolde loky. Þe uader of þe house/
ate uerste guoinge in: he zette sleȝþe / to by doreward.
þet y-knaup huet is to uorlete: and huet ys to wynny. huet
uor to besette out of þe house. huet uor to onderuonge
into þe house. Nixt þan: ha zette strengþe. þet þe vyendes/
þet sleȝþe zent to zygge / to keste out: strengþe wyþdroȝe. þet
his uoule lostes wyþdroȝe: and wyþ-zede. Riȝtnesse uorzoȝe
ssel zitte amydde / þet echeȝ his oȝen yefþ. Hueruore:
huyche time þe þyef is comynde / me not. ac eche tyme
me ssel drede. Þise zuo y-diȝt: naȝt longe to þe wakynde
þe slep of zenne benymþ. Vor al þet lyf is to waky. Zome
messagyers sleȝþe ssel lete in. þet zome þinges moȝe telle/
þet me may a-waki myde. Þus þe messagyer of dyape acseþ
inguoynge: he is onderuonge. Me him acseþ 'huo he ys.
huannes he comþ. huet he heþ ysoȝe.' He ansuereþ. he
ne may naȝt zigge: bote yef þer by heȝliche clom. Huich
y-graunted: þus he begynþ. 'Ich am drede / and be-
þenchinge of dyape. and dyap [is] comynde: ich do you to
wytene.' Sleȝþe specþ uor alle. and acseþ. 'And huer is
nou þe ilke dyap. and huanne ssel he come?' Drede zayþ.
'Ich wot wel þet he ne abyȝt naȝt to comene / and nyȝ
he is. ac þane day / oȝer þane tyme of his comynge: ich
not.' Sleȝþe zayþ. 'And huo ssel come myd hyre?' Drede
zayþ. 'A þouzend dyeulen ssolle come mide hire. and
brenge mid ham / greate bokes / and bernynde hokes /
and chaynen auere.' Sleȝþe zayþ. 'And huet wylleþ hy do
mid alle þan?' Drede zayþ. 'Ine þe bokes byȝe y-write
alle þe zennen of men. and hise brengeþ / þet be ham hi

ouercome men. of huychen þe zennes þerinne byeþ
 æ. þet byeþ to hare rihte. Hokes hi brengeþ / þet þo
 reþ to hare rihte ouercomeþ: hire zaulen be strengþe:
 bodye draþeþ out. and hise byndeþ mid þe chaines /
 in to helle hise draþeþ.' Sleþþe zayþ. 'Huamnes
 e?' Drede zayþ. 'Vram helle.' Sleþþe zayþ. 'And
 is helle. and huet yzeþe þe ine helle?' Drede zayþ.
 æ is wyd / wyþ-oute metinge. dyep / wyþ-oute botme.
 f brene on þolyinde. Vol of stenche / wyþ-oute com-
 un. Þer is zorþe. þer is þyesternesse. þer ne is non
 þer is gronyng e wyþ-oute ende. þer ne is non
 of guode. non wantrokiyng e of kueade. Ech þet
 e is: hateþ him zelue: and alle oþren. Þer ich yzeþ
 anyere tormens. þe leste of alle / is more þanne alle
 nen þet moþe by y-do ine þise wordle. Þer is wop.
 rindinge of teþ. þer me geþ uram chele in to greate
 of uere. and buoþe onþolyinde. Þere alle be uere /
 by uorbernd. and myd wermes ssolle by y-wasted /
 naht ne ssolle wasti. Hire wermes / ne ssolle naht
 . and hare ver ne ssel neure by ykuenct. No rearde
 æl þer by y-hyerd / bote. wo: wo. wo hy habbeþ:
 o hy gredeþ. Þe dyeules tormentors pyneþ. and to-
 æ hy byeþ y-pyned. ne neure ne ssel by ende of pyne:
 reste. Þellich is helle / an a þousend zyþe worse.
 is ich yzeþ ine helle / and a þousendziþe more worse.
 i com uor to zygge you.' Sleþþe zayþ. 'God wet ssolle
 . Nou broþren and zostren y-hyreþ my red. and yueþ
 Byeþ sleþe. an wakeþ ine youre bedes / porueynde
 s. naht onlyche beuore gode: ac be-uore alle men.'
 odness zayþ. 'Do we to worke godes nebsseft / ine
 / and ine zalmes: glede we hym. byeþ sobre / and
 þ / uor youre uo þe dyuel / ase þe lyoun brayinde
 bout þan: þet he wyle uor-zuelþe.' Strengþe zayþ.
 stondeþ hym: stronge ine byleaue. Byeþ glede ine

god. Cloþeþ you mid godes armes. þe hauberk of ryȝt. þane
 sseld of beleaue. nymeþ þane helm of helpe. and þe holy
 gostes 'zuord: þet is godes word.' Ryȝt[tesse] zayþ.
 'Lybbe we sobrelliche. ryȝt[uolliche] an bonayrelyche. So-
 brelyche: ine ous zelue. ryȝtuolliche: to oure emcristen.
 bonayrelyche: to god. þet we nolleþ þet me do to ous
 zelue: ne do we hyt naȝt to oþren. and þet we wylleþ þet
 me do to ous zellue: do we hit to oþre men. and uor zoþe
 þet is riȝt.' Sleȝþe zayþ. 'Þer is anoþer wyþ-oute þe gates
 uayr. and gled. hit þingþ þe[t] he bre[n]gþ glednesse.' Ryȝt[t]-
 nesse zayþ. 'onderuongeþ hym. be cas he ous ssel gledye.
 uor þes ilke uerste: gratlyche he ous heþ y-mad of-dret.'
 Sleȝþe zayþ to þe messagere. 'Guo in. and huo þou art.
 and huamnes þou comst. and huet þou hest yzoȝe: zay
 ous.' Þe messagyryz ayþ. 'Ich am loue of lyue eureles-
 tynde. an wylnyng of þe contraye of heuene. Yef ye me
 wylleþ y-here: habbeþ amang you. clom / and reste. Naȝt
 uor zoþe amang gredynges and noyses: ych ne may by
 yherd.' Riȝt[uolnesse] zayþ. 'Yef we longe godes drede /
 and be-þenching of dyaþe were stille: ryȝt hit is / þet þe
 spekinde / wel more we by stille.' Wylningge of þe lyue
 wyþ-oute ende / zayþ. 'Þeruore byeþ stille / and yhereþ
 myd wylle. Ich come uram heuene. and þelliche þinges
 ich y-zeȝ þer. þet no man ne may dyngneliche zigge.
 Þaȝles zomþyng ich wylle zigge: ase ich may. Ich yzeȝ
 god. ac be ane sseawere ine ssede.'

'Ich yzeȝ þe ilke onspekynde / an on-todelinde magesté
 of þe holy trinityé. be-gynnynge / ne ende ne heþ. Ac and
 lyȝt þer-inne woneþ / þet me ne may naȝt come to. Vraȝ
 þo lyȝte byeþ y-þorsse mine eȝen / and þe zyȝþe þyester.
 Hyt ouergeþ uorzoþe alle wyttis / and alle zyȝþes. þe ilke
 bryȝt[tesse]. and þe ilke uolnesse. Þaȝles a lytel ich yzeȝ
 oure lhord iesu crist / ine riȝt half zittinde. þet is to zyȝge:
 ine þe lyue wyþ-oute ende regnynde. Þaȝ he ouer alle

ssepþes by zuo uayr: þet ine him wylneþ þe angles to
 zyenne. Yet nou þe wounden and þe toknen of þe pas-
 sion he heþ ine his bodye. huermyde he ous boȝte. be-uore
 þe uader uor ous stant uor to bydde. Ich y-zeȝ nyxt iesu
 crist þe ilke blisfolle mayde / and moder þe ilke zodes¹ /
 and oure lhordes iesu cristes / myd alle worþssipe and
 reuerence / y-nemned marie / ine þe wonderuolle trone
 zittynde / aboue alle þe holy ordres of angles / and of
 men: an-heȝed. hire zone iesus uor ous byddinde. and to
 huam hi is uol of merci. Ac þe ilke wonderuolle magesté /
 and þe briztnesse of þe moder / and of þe zone: ich ne
 myȝte naȝt longe þolye / ich wente myne zizþe uor to yzi /
 þe ilke holy ordres of þe gostes: þet stondeþ beuore god.
 of huichen þe euelestinde holynesse of þe zizþe of god /
 an of þe loue. ne hit ne ssel lessi: ne hit ne ssel endi /
 ac eue wexe and blefþ. Ac naȝt þe ilke degrez / and
 dingnetes / herynges alsuo / huyche hyre makyere hy
 bereþ no man uollyche þenche / ne naȝt ne may by ynoȝ
 to telle. Þerefter þe profetes ich y-zeȝ. and þe patriarkes
 wonderlyche glediynde ine blisse. uor þet hy yzeȝen ine
 goste: uoluelde hy yzeþ. þet ine longe anoy onderuyng /
 þet ouet of blysse wyþ-oute ende chongeden. Ich y-zeȝ
 þe apostles ine tronen zittynde. þe tribȝ / and þe tongen /
 alle preste. and of poure / and of zyke: zuo blisuolle and
 holy / of oure lhord iesu crist / and zuo heȝe / ynoȝ
 alneway ich am wondrinde. Ich y-zeȝ / ac uollyche ich
 ne my[3]te al yzy / þe innumerable uelazrede of þe holy
 martires / mid blisse and worþssipe / y-corouned. þet be þe
 pinen of þise time / huyche hi beren to þo blisse / þet wes
 ysseawed ine ham: hy come þerto. Hyre holynesse / and
 hyre blysse: long time ich me lykede. Ich yzeȝ to þe
 blyssede heape of *confessours*. amang huam / men apostles /
 and techeres / þet holy cherche mid hare techinge wereden.

¹ *godes or zones?*

and alsuo uram alle heresy / wy[p]-oute wem habbeþ
yclenzed: sseawep. and hy uele habbeþ y-tazt. ssyneþ ase
sterren / ine eurelestynde wy[p]-oute ende. Þer byeþ
Monekes þet uor claustris / and uor strayte cellen. wel
moche / an clyerer þanne þe zonne: habbeþ wonynges.
Vor blake and uor harde kertles / huyter þane þe snaw.
and of alle zofthede / and nesshede / clopinge habbeþ an.
Vram hare ezen / god wypeþ alle tyeres. and þane kyng
hy ssolle ysy ine hys uayrhede. Alast / to þe uelazrede of
maydynes ich lokede: of huychen / blysse / sseppe / agray-
pinge / and melodya. huyche none mannes speche: dingæ-
lyche may telle. And hy zonge þane zang: þet non oþer
ne may zynge. Ac and þe zuete smel ine hare regyon /
zuo zuete ys: þet alle manyre zuete smelles ouercomþ.
And to hare benes: oure lhord arist. to alle oþren:
zittinde he lhest.' Sleþþe zayþ. 'Hyt lykeþ þet þou zayst.
Ac uor of echen of þe holy ordres / wondres þou hest
y-zed: we byddeþ þet þou zigge ous / huet is hare dede
ine mennessen / and huet is þe *conuers*[ac]ion of uelazrede:
zay ous.' Þe wylny[n]gge of þe lyue wyþ-outen ende zayþ.
'Vor zoþe ich wylle zygge. Þe dede of alle ine mennessen /
ys zeueuald. Hy lybbeþ. hy smackeþ. hy loueþ. hy byeþ
glede. hy heryeþ. hy byeþ zuyste. hy byeþ zikere.' Sleþþe
zayþ. 'Þaz ich zomdel þis onderstonde: uor ham þet
lhesteþ / of echen zay.' wylnyng of þe lyue wy[p]-outen ende
zayþ. 'Zuo hy hyt. Hy lybbeþ be lyue wyþ-outen ende.
wyþ-outen enye tyene. wy[p]-outen enye lessinge. wyþ-outen enye
wyþ-stondyng. Hyre lyf is þe zyþe and þe knaulechyng
of þe holy trinity. ase zayþ oure lhord iesus. þis is þet lyf
wyþ-outen ende / þet hy knawe þe zoþe god / and huam þe
zentest iesu crist. and þeruore ylyche hy byeþ / uor hy
y zyeþ: ase he is. Hy smackeþ þe redes and þe domes of
god. Hy smackeþ þe kendes / and þe causes / and þe
begynny[n]ges of alle þinges. Hy loueþ god wyþ-outen enye

comparisoun. uor þet by wyteþ huerto god his heþ y-broȝt uorþ. hy loueþ ech oþren: ase ham zelue. Hy byeþ glede of god onzyginde. hy byeþ glede of zuo moche of hare oȝene holynesse: and uor þet ech loueþ oþren ase him zelue. ase moche blisse heþ ech of oþres guode: ase of his oȝene. Þeruore by ziker / uor eurych heþ aseuele blyssen: ase he heþ uelazes. and aseuele blissen to echen: ase his oȝene of alle. and þeruore eureich more loueþ wyþoute comparisoun god: þet hym and oþre made / þanne him zelue / and alle oþre. More hy byeþ glede wyþoute gessynge of godes holynesse: þanne of his oȝene / and of alle oþre myd hym. Yef þanne on onneaþe nymþ u his blisse. hou ssel he nyme zuo uele and zuo manye blyssen? And þeruore hit is yzed. guo into þe blysse of þyne lhorde. naȝt þe blisse of þine lhorde / guo in to þe. ior hy ne may. Þerefter / hy herieþ god wyþoute ende / wyþoute werynesse. ase hyt is y-wryte. Lhord / y-blyssed by þo þet wonyeþ ine þyne house / in wordles of wordles: ssolle [hy] herie þe. Zuyfte hy byeþ. uor huer þet þe gost wyle by: uorzoþe þer is þet body. Alle hy byeþ my[3]t- uolle. Zykere hy byeþ of zuyche lyue. of zuo moche wysdome. of zuo moche loue. of zuo moche blysse. of zuyche herynge. of zuyche holynesse. þet non ende. non essynge. non uallynge doun ssolle habbe. Lo alyte ich. iabbe yzed to you. of þan þet ich yzeȝ ine heuene. Naȝt ior zoþe ne may zigge / ase ich yzeȝ / ne naȝt ase hy yyeþ: ne myȝte ysy.' Sleȝþe zayþ. 'Vorzoþe ine heuene we onderstondeþ þet þou were. and zoþ þing þer þou yseȝe. and zoþ þou hest y-zed.' Strengþe zayþ. 'Huo ssel ous oðele uram cristes loue? tribulacion. oþer zorȝe. and oþre. ykere byeþ. uor noþer dyap / ne lyf. and oþre.' Ryȝt zayþ. Doþ out þane uerste messagyer. hyt ne is naȝt riȝt þet he leue ine þe house / myd þe ryȝtuolle. Vor ryȝ[t]uolle oue: deþ out drede.' Strengþe zayþ. 'guo out drede. þou

ne sselt naȝt by ine oure stedes.' Drede zayþ. 'Huet
habbe ich mis-do. do. do. ich uor guode zede.' Tem-
perancia zayþ. 'Broþren and zostren / ich zigge to you.
naȝmore smacky / þanne be-houeþ. ac smacke to sobraé.
Þou drede / guo out myd guode wylle. þole þane dom /
þet riȝt heþ y-demd. be auenture þe myȝt eft by onder-
uonge. yef wynlynge of lyf wyþ-oute ende / oþerhuyl let
of.' Þe makyere zayþ. Þus / þus nou ssel eurich hys
heuynesse / ssake a-way / uram drede / to þe loue of þe
heuenelyche contraye him-zelue wende. Zuo by hit.

XVI.

RICHARD ROLLE DE HAMPOLE.

ABOUT A. D. 1340.

Richard Rolle de Hampole, commonly called Hampole, was an Augustine monk of the Priory of Hampole (about four miles fromcaster), who died in the year A. D. 1349.

He was the author of a metrical version of the Psalms (withmentary), portions of the book of Job, and some very excellent prose treatises, as yet inedited. About 1340 he wrote, both English and Latin, a poem called *The Pricke of Conscience*; from which the following selections are taken.

This poem, in the Northumbrian dialect, has been edited from the British Museum, by Richard Morris, for the Philological Society, London 1863.

The Pricke of Conscience.

The Wretchedness of Man's Birth.

[Lines 432—439.]

Alle mans lyfe casten may be,
 Principaly, in þis partes thre,
 Þat er þir to our undirstandyng,
 Bygynnyng, midward, and endyng.
 Þer þre partes er þre spaces talde 5
 Of þe lyf of ilk man, yhung and alde.
 Bygynnyng of mans lif, þat first es,
 Contenes mykel wrechednes;

[Lines 464—509.]

And [when man] was born til þis werldys light,
 He ne had nouthre strenthe ne myght, 10
 Nouthre to ga ne yhit to stand,
Ne to crepe with fote ne with hand.

þan has a man les myght þan a beste
 When he es born, and es sene leste;
 For a best, when it es born, may ga
 Als-tite afir, and ryn to and fra;
 Bot a man has na myght þar-to,
 When he es born, swa to do;
 For þan may he noght stande ne crepe,
 Bot ligge and sprawel, and cry and wepe.
 For unnethes es a child born fully
 Þat it ne bygynnes to goule and cry;
 And by þat cry men knaw þan
 Whether it be man or weman,
 For when it es born it cryes swa;
 If it be man it says "a. a,"
 Þat þe first letter es of þe nam
 Of our forme-fader Adam.
 And if þe child a woman be,
 When it es born it says "e. e."
 E es þe first letter and þe hede
 Of þe name of Eve þat bygan our dede.
 Þarfor a clerk made on þis manere
 Þis vers of metre þat es wreten here:
Dicentes E. vel A. quot-quot nascuntur ab Eva.
 "Alle þas," he says, "þat comes of Eve,
 Þat es alle men þat here byhoves leve,
 When þai er born, what-swa þai be,
 Þai say outhur a. a, or e. e."
 Þus es here þe bygynnyng
 Of our lyfe sorow and gretynge,
 Til whilk our wrechednes stirres us,
 And þarfor Innocent says þus:

*Omnes nascimur eiulantes,
 ut naturæ nostræ miseriam
 exprimamus.*

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

He says, "al er we born gretand,
 And makand a sorowful sembland,
 For to shew þe grete wrechednes
 Of our kynd þat in us es."
 Þus when þe tyme come of oure birthe,
 Al made sorow and na mirthe;
 Naked we come hider, and bare,
 And pure, swa sal we hethen fare.

50

[Lines 528—555.]

Þus es a man, als we may se,
 In wrechednes borne and caytefté,
 And for to life here a fon dayse,
 Þar-for Job þus openly sayse:

55

*Homo natus de muliere, brevi vivens
 tempore, repletur multis miseriis.*

He says, "Man that born es of woman,
 Lyfand short time to, ful-fild es þan
 Of many maners of wrechednes."

60

Þus says Job, and swa it es.
 Alswa man es borne til noght elles
 But to travayle, als Job yhit telles:

65

*Homo nascitur ad laborem,
 sicut avis ad volatum.*

He says, "Man es born to travaille right
 Als a foul es to þe flight."

For littel rest in þis lyf es,
 Bot gret travayle and bysynes;

70

Yhit a man es, whan he es born,
 Þe fendes son, and fra God es lorn
 Ay, til he thurgh grace may com
 Til baptem and til cristendom;

75

Þus may a man his bygynnyng se,
 Ful of wrechednes and of caytifté.

The Middle of Man's Life.

Þe tother part of þe lyf, men calles
 Þe mydward, aftir þat it falles,
 Þe whilk reches fra þe bygynnyng
 Of mans lyfe un-til þe endyng.

80

[Lines 662—707.]

A man es a tre, þat standes noght harde,
 Of whilk þe crop es turned donward,
 And þe rote to-ward þe firmament,
 Als says þe grete clerk Innocent.

85

.
 He says, "what es man in shap bot a tre,
 Turned up þat es down, als men may se,
 Of whilk þe rotes þat of it springes,
 Er þe hares þat on þe heved hynges;
 Þe stok, nest þe rot growand,
 Es þe heved with nek folowand;
 Þe body of þat tre þar-by
 Es þe brest with þe bely;

90

Þe bughes ar þe armes with þe handes,
 And þe legges, with þe fete þat standes;
 Þe braunches men may by skille calle
 Þe tas and þe fyngers alle;
 Þis es þe leef þat hangs noght faste,
 Þat es blawen away thurgh a wynd blaste,
 And þe body als wa of þe tre,
 Þat thurgh þe son may dried be."

95

100

A man þat es yhung and light,
 Be he never swa stalworth and wyght,
 And comly of shap, lufly and fayre,
 Angers and yvels may him appayre,
 And his beuté and his strength abate,
 And mak hym in ful wayk state,

105

And chaunge alle fayre colour,
 þat son fayles and fades, als dos þe flour.
 For a flour þat semes fayre and bright, 110
 Thurgh stormes fades, and tynes þe myght.
 Many yvels, angers, and mescheefes,
 Oft comes til man þat here lyves,
 Als fevyr, dropsy and jaunys,
 Tysyk, goute and other maladys, 115
 þat hym mas strength and fayrnes tyne
 Als grete stormes dose a flour to dwyne;
 þarfor a man may likend be
 Til a flour, þat es fayre to se,
 þan son aftir þat it es forth broght, 120
 Welkes and dwynes til it be noght.

[Lines 728—829.]

In the first bygynnyng of þe kynd of man
 Neghen hundreth wynter man lyfed þan,
 Als clerkes in bukes bers witnes;
 Bot sythen bycom mans lyf les, 125
 And swa wald God at it suld be;
 Forwhi he sayd þus til Noe:

*Non permanebit spiritus meus
 in homine in æternum, quia caro
 est, erunt dies illius centum 130
 viginti annorum.*

“My gast,” he says, “sal noght ay dwelle
 In man, for he is flesshe and felle;
 Hys days sal be for to life here,
 An hundreth and twenti yhere.” 135
 Bot swa grete elde may nane now bere,
 For sythen mans lyfe bycom shortere,
 For-whi þe complection of ilk man
 Was sythen febler þan it was þan;

Now es it alther-feblest to se,
 þarfor mans life short byhoves be;
 For ay þe langer þat man may lyfe,
 þe mare his lyfe sal hym now grieve,
 And þe les him sal thynk his lyf swete,
 Als in a psalme, says þe prophete :

140

*Si autem in potentatibus octoginta anni,
 et amplius eorum labor et dolor."*

145

" If in myghtfulnes four scor yher falle,
 Mare es þair swynk and sorow with-alle."
 For seldom a man þat has þat held,
 Hele has, and himself may weld ;
 Bot now falles yhit shorter mans dayes,
 Als Job, þe haly man, þus says :

150

*Nunc paucitas dierum meorum
 finietur brevi.*

155

" Now," he says, " my fon days sere
 Sal enden with a short tym here."

Old Age.

Fone men may now fourty yhere pas,
 And foner fifty, als in somtym was ;
 Bot als tyte als a man waxes alde,
 þan waxes his kynde wayke and calde,
 þan chaunges his complexcion
 And his maners and his condicion ;
 þan waxes his hert hard and hevy,
 And his heved feble and dysy ;
 þan waxes his gast seke and sare,
 And his face rouncles, ay mare and mare ;
 His mynde es short when he oght thynkes,
 His nese ofte droppes, his hand stynkes,
 His sight wax[es] dym þat he has,
 His bax waxes croked ; stoupand he gas

160

165

170

Fyngers and taes, fote and hande,
 Alle his touches er tremblande.
 His werkes for-worthes þat he bygynnes;
 His hare moutes, his eghen rynnes; 175
 His eres waxes deaf, and hard to here,
 His tung fayles, his speche is noght clere;
 His mouthe slavers, his tethe rotates,
 His wyttes fayles, and he ofte dotes;
 He is lightly wrath, and waxes fraward, 180
 Bot to turne hym fra wrethe it es hard;
 He souches and trowes sone a thyng,
 Bot ful late he turnes fra þat trowyng;
 He is covatous and hard haldand
 His chere es dreery and his sembland; 185
 He es swyft to spek on his manere,
 And latsom and slaw for to here;
 He prayses ald men and haldes þam wyse,
 And yhung men list him oft despyse;
 He loves men þat in ald tyme has bene, 190
 He lakes þa men þat now are sene;
 He is ofte seke and ay granand,
 And ofte angerd, and ay pleynand;
 Alle þir, thurgh kynd, to an ald man falles,
 Þat clerkes propertes of eld calles. 195
 Yhit er þar ma þan I haf talde,
 Þat falles to a man þat es alde.
 Þus may men se, wha-so can,
 What þe condicions er of an ald man.

The End of Man's Life.

Þe last ende of mans lyfe es hard, 200
 Þat es, when he drawes to ded-ward.
 For when he es seke, and bedreden lys,
 And swa feble þat he may noght rys,

þan er men in dout and noght certayn,
 Wethir he sal ever cover agayn. 205
 Bot yhit can som men, þat er sleghe,
 Witte if he sal of þat yvel deghe
 By certayne takens, als yhe sal here,
 þat byfalles when þe ded es nere;
 þan bygynnes his frount downward falle, 210
 And his browes heldes down wyth-alle;
 þe lefte eghe of hym þan semes les,
 And narower þan þe right eghe es;
 Hys nese, at þe poynt, es sharp and smalle,
 þan bygynnes his chyn to falle; 215
 His pouce es stille, with-uten styringes,
 His fete waxes calde, his bely clynges.
 And if nere þe dede be a yhung man,
 He ay wakes, and may noght slepe þan;
 And an alde man to dede drawand 220
 May noght wake, bot es ay slepand;
 Men says, al þir takens sere
 Er of a man þat þe dede es nere.

The World.

[Lines 1211—1292.]

þe world here, who-so wille,
 Unto four thinges may liken[d be] by skille. 225
 First þe world may lykend be,
 Mast properly, unto þe se;
 For þe se, aftir þe tydes certayn,
 Ebbes and flowes, and falles agayn,
 And waxes ful ken, thurgh stormes þat blawes, 230
 And castes up and down many gret wawes;
 Swa castes þe world, thurgh favour,
 A man to riches and honour;

And fra þat agayn he castes hym doun
 Til povert and to tribulacioun. 235
 And þa er þe grete stormes kene,
 And þe wawes, þat in þe world er sene.
 Yhit may þe world here þat wyde es,
 Be likend to a wildernes,
 Þat ful of wild bestes es sene, 240
 Als lyons, libardes, and wolwes kene,
 Þat wald worow men bylyve,
 And rogg þam in sonder and ryve;
 Swa þe world es ful of mysdoers.
 And of tyrauntes þat men ofte ders, 245
 Þe whilk er bisy, nyght and day,
 To nuye men in alle þat þai may.
 Þe world alswa may lykend be
 Til a forest, in a wilde cuntré,
 Þat es ful of thefs and outlawes, 250
 Þat, commonly, til forestes drawes,
 Þat hald passes, and robbes and reves
 Men of þat þai have, and noght þam leues;
 Swa es þe world here þar we duelle,
 Ful of thefs, þat er devels of helle, 255
 Þat ay us waytes, and er bysy
 To robbe us of our gudes gastly.
 Þe world may yhit, als yhe sal here,
 Be lykend, on þe fierth manere,
 To a feld ful of batailles 260
 Of enemys, þat ilk day men assayles.
 For-why here we er, on many wyse,
 Alle umset with sere enemys,
 And, speciali, with enemys thre,
 Agaynes wham us byhoves armed be: 265
 Þa er þe world, þe fende, our flesshe,
 Þat, to assayle us here, er ay freshe;

And þarfor byhoves us, day and nyght,
 Whilles we lif here, agayn þam fight.
 Þe world, als clerkes understandes, 270
 Agayn us fightes with twa handes,
 With þe right hand and þe left; þere twa
 May be-taken bathe wele and wa;
 Þe right hand es welthe, als I halde,
 And þe left hand es angre calde; 275
 For þe world assayles sum men awhile,
 With þe right hand þam to bygile,
 Þat es welth, als I sayde before,
 Of worldly riches and tresore;
 And assayles men, nyght and day, 280
 With þe left hand þam to flay,
 Þat es, with angre and tribulacion,
 And povert and persecucion,
 Þe whilk þer clerkes þe left hand calles
 Of þe world, þat ofte sythes falles. 285
 Bot with þe world comes dam fortune,
 Þat ayther hand may chaung sone;
 For sho turnes about ay hir whele,
 Up and doune, als many may fele;
 When sho hir whele lates about-ga, 290
 Sho turnes sum doune fra wele to wa,
 And, eft agaynward, fra wa to wele;
 Þus turnes sho about oft hir whele,
 Þe whilk þir clerkes noght elles calles,
 Bot happe or chaunce, þat sodanli falles, 295
 And þat men haldes here noght elles,
 Bot welthe and angre in whilk men dwelles.
 Þarfor worldly happe es ay in dout,
 Whilles dam fortune turnes hir whele about.
 Angre men dredes and walde it fle, 300
 And in welthe men wald ay be;

Bot parfit men, þat þair lif right ledes,
 Welthe of þe world ay flese and dredes;
 For welthe drawes a man fra þe right way
 Þat ledes til þe blisse þat lastes ay. 305

[Lines 1412—1473.]

Þe life of þis world es ful unstable,
 And ful variand and chaungeable,
 Als es sene in contrarius manere,
 By þe tymes and vedirs and sesons here.
 For þe world and worldis life togider 310
 Chaunges and turnes oft hider and þider,
 And in a state duelles ful short while,
 Unnethes þe space of a myle.
 And for-þi þat þe worlde es swa unstable
 Alle þat men sese þar-in es chaungeable; 315
 For God ordayns here, als es his wille,
 Sere variaunce for certayn skille,
 Of þe tymes, and wedirs, and sesons,
 In taken of þe worldes condicions,
 Þat swa unstable er and variande, 320
 Þat ful short while may in a state stande.
 For God wille men se, thurgh swilk takens sere,
 How unstable þis world es here,
 Swa þat men suld mare drede and be abayste,
 Over-mykel in þe world here to trayste. 325
 Ofte chaunges þe tymes here, als men wel wate,
 Als þus; now es arly, now es late,
 Now es day, now es nyght,
 Now es myrk, now es light;
 And þe wedirs chaunges and þe sesons, 330
 Þus aftir the worldes condicions;
 For now es cald, now es hete,
 Now es dry, and now es wete;

For now es snaw, hail, or rayn,
And now es fair wedir agayn;
Now es þe wedir bright and shynand,
And now waxes it alle domland;
Now se we þe lyfte clere and faire,
Now gadirs mystes and cloudes in þe ayre.
Alle þer variance to understande,
May be takens of þis world swa variande;
And yhit er þar other ma takens sere
Of þe unstablenes of þis lif here.
For now es mirthe, nou es murnyng,
Now es laghter, and now es gretynng;
Now er men wele, now er men wa,
Now es a man frende, now es he faa;
Now es a man light, now es he hevy,
Now es he blithe, now es he drery;
Now haf we ipy, now haf we pyn,
Now we wyn, and now we tyn;
Now er we ryche, now er we pur,
Now haf we or-litel, now pas we mesur;
Now er we bigg, now er we bare,
Now er we hale, now seke and sare;
Now haf we reste and now travaile,
Now we fande our force, now we fail;
Now er we smert, now er we slawe,
Now er we hegh, now er we lawe;
Now haf we ynogh, now haf we noght,
Now er we aboven, and now doun broght;
Now haf we pees, now haf we were,
Now eese us a thyng, now fele we it dere;
Now lofe we, now hate; now saghtel, now strife.
þer er þe maners here of þis lyfe,
þe whilk er takens of þe unstablenes
Of þis worldis lyfe, þat chaungeable es.

Death.

[Lines 1818—1829.]

Four skilles I fynd writen in som stede,
 Why men suld specialy drede þe dede;
 An es for þe dede stoure swa felle 370
 Þat es mare payne þan man can telle,
 Þe whilk ilk man sal fele within,
 When þe body and þe saule salle twyn.
 Another es for þe sight þat he sal se
 Of devels, þat about hym þan salle be. 375
 Þe thred es for þe account þat he sal yheld
 Of alle his lyf, of yhouthe and elde.
 Þe ferth es, for he is uncertayne
 Whether he sal wend til ioy or payne.

[Lines 1836—1851.]

First aght men drede þe ded in hert, 380
 For þe payn of þe dede þat es swa smert,
 Þat es þe hard stour at þe last ende,
 When þe saule sal fra þe body wende;
 A doleful partyng es þat to telle,
 For þai luf ay togyder to duelle; 385
 Nouthur of þam wald other forga,
 Swa mykel lof es bytween þam twa;
 And þe mare þat twa togyder lufes,
 Als a man and his wyfe oft prues,
 Þe mare sorow and murnyng 390
 By-hoves be at þair departyng.
 Bot þe body and þe saul with þe lyfe
 Lufes mare samen þan man and his wyfe,
 Whether þai be in gude way or ille,
 And þat es for many sere skylle. 395

[Lines 1884—1929]

Dede wil na frendshepe do, ne favour,
 Ne reverence til kyng, ne til emperour,
 Ne til pape, ne til bisshope, ne na prelate,
 Ne til nan other man of heghe estate,
 Ne til na religiouse, ne til na seculere, 4
 For dede over al men has powere.
 And thurgh þe dede hand al sal pas,
 Als Salamon says, þat wyse was :

*Communione**mortis scito.* 4

"Knew þou," he says, "þat þe dede es
 Comon to al men, bathe mare and les."
 þus sal dede visite ilk man,
 And yhit na man discryve it can,
 For here lyves nan under hevenryke, 4
 þat can telle til what þe ded es lyke.
 Bot þe payn of dede þat al sal fele
 A philosopher þus discribed wele ;
 For he lykend mans lyf til a tre
 þat war growand, if it swa mught be, 4
 Thurgh a mans hert and swa shuld sprynge,
 þat about war lapped with the hert strynge,
 And þe croppe out at his mouth mught shote,
 And to ilka ioynt war fested a rote ;
 And ilka vayne of þe mans body 4
 Had a rote festend fast þarby,
 And in ilka taa and fynger of hand
 War a rote fra þat tre growand,
 And ilka lym, on ilka syde,
 With rotes of þat tre war occupyde ; 4
 Yf þat tre war tite pulled oute
 At a titte, with al þe rotes aboute,

Þe rotes suld þan rayse þar-with
 Ilka vayn and ilka synoghe and lith;
 A mare payne couthe na man in hert cast 430
 Þan þis war, als lang als it suld last.
 And yhit halde I þe payne of dede mare,
 And mare strange and hard þan þis ware;
 Þos a philosopher when he lyfed,
 Þe payn of þe dede here discribed. 435
 Þarfor ilk man, als I byfor sayde,
 Aght to drede þe bitter dedes brayde,
 For bathe gode and ille sal it taste;
 Bot ille men aght drede it maste,
 For dred of ded mast pyns wythin 440
 A man þat here es ful of syn.

[Lines 2216—2233.]

Þe secund skil, als byfor es redde,
 Why þe dede es swa gretely [to] drede,
 Es for þe grisly sight of fendes
 Þat a man sal se, when his lyf endes. 445
 For when þe lyf sal pas fra a man
 Devels sal gadir about hym þan,
 To ravissche þe saul with þam away
 Tyl pyne of helle, if þai may.
 Als wode lyons þai sal þan fare 450
 And raumpe on hym, and skoul, and stare,
 And grymly gryn on hym and blere,
 And hydus braydes mak hym to fere;
 Þai sal fande at his last endyng
 Hym in-to wanhope for to bring, 455
 Thurgh thretyngeþ þat þai sal mak,
 And thurgh þe ferdnes þat he sal tak.
 Ful hydus sightes þai sal shew hym
 Þat his chere sal make grisly and grym.

[Lines 2300—2311.]

For þai er swa grisely, als says þe buke, 460
 And swa blak and foule on to loke,
 þat al þe men here of mydlerd
 Of þat sight mught be aferd;
 For al þe men here of this lyfe
 Swa grysely a sight couth noght descryfe, 465
 Ne, thurgh wyt, ymagyn ne deme,
 Als þai sal in tyme of dede seme;
 Ne swa sleygh payntur never nan was,
 þogh his sleght mught alle other pas,
 þat couthe ymagyn of þair gryslynes, 470
 Or paynt a poynt aftir þair liknes.

[Lines 2334—2356.]

Bot I wille shew yhow aparty
 Why þai er swa foul and grisly;
 For sum tyme when þai war bright angels,
 Als þa er þat now in heven duels; 475
 Fra þat blisful place, thurgh syn, þai felle,
 And bycome þan foule devels of helle,
 And horribely defygurd thurgh syn,
 þat þai war wyth fild, and hardend þarin;
 For war-ne syn war þai had ay bene 480
 Bright aungels, als þai war first sene;
 And now er þai made foule and ugly,
 þurgh fylyng of þair syn anly;
 þan es syn mar foule and wlatsume,
 þan any devel þat out of helle may come; 485
 For a thyng es fouler þat may file,
 þan þe thyng þat it fyles, and mare vile;
 þarfor says clerkes of grete cunnyng,
 þat syn es swa foule and swa grisly thyng,

þat if a man mught properly se his syn 490
In þe kynd lyknes þat it falles be in,
He shuld for ferdnes titter it fle
þan any devel þat he mught se.

[Lines 2364—2373.]

Sen þe devel þus has tane his uglines
Of þe filth of syn, þat swa filand es, 495
þan aght þe saul of synful with-in
Be ful foule, þat es alle slotered in syn;
þarfor a man aght, war-so he wendes,
Mare drede syn þan þe syght of fendes,
þat sal aper til hym at his dede day; 500
Bot his syn he sal se fouler þan þay,
Of whilk he wald noght hym right shrife,
Ne repent hym here in his lyfe.

XVII.

LAWRENCE MINOT.

A.D. 1352.

Lawrence Minot lived and wrote about the middle of the fourteenth century. He composed ten poems in celebration of the following battles and exploits of King Edward III:—The Battles of Halidon Hill (1333) and Bannockburn (1314); Edward's expedition to Brabant (1339); the Sea-fight of Swine at the mouth of the West Scheldt (1340); the Siege of Tournay (1340); the Landing of Edward at La Hogue (1346); the Siege of Calais (1346); the Battle of Neville's Cross (1346); the Sea-fight with the Spaniards off Winchelsea (1350); and the Capture of Guisnes (1352).

The present extracts, the dialect of which is Northumbrian, are from the *Poems of Lawrence Minot in Political Poems and Songs relating to English History*, Vol. I., edited by T. Wright, M.A. (Rolls' Series), London 1859.

Political Songs.

[Collated with Cotton MS. Galba E. ix.]

[Pages 63—69.]

I.

*How Edward the King come in Braband
And toke Homage of alle the Land.*

God, that schope both se and sand,
Save Edward king of England,
Both body, saul and life,
And grante him joy withowten strif!
For mani men to him er wroth,

In Fraunce and in Flandres both;
 For he defendes fast his right,
 And tharto Jhesu grante him might,
 And so to do both night and day,
 That yt may be to Goddes pay. 10
 Oure king was cumen, tre[w]ly to telle,
 Into Brabant for to dwelle;
 The kayser Lowis of Bavere,
 That in that land than had no pere,
 He, and als his sons two, 15
 And other princes many mo,
 Bisschoppes and prelates war thare fele,
 That had ful mekille werldly wele,
 Princes and pople, ald and 3ong,
 Al that spac with Duche tung, 20
 Alle thai come with grete honowre,
 Sir Edward to save and socoure,
 And proferd him, with alle thayre rede,
 For to hald the kinges stede.

The duke of Braband, first of alle, 25
 Swore, for thing that might bifalle,
 That he suld both day and night
 Help Sir Edward in his right,
 In toun, in feld, in frith and fen.
 This swore the Duke and alle his men, 30
 And al the lordes that with him lend,
 And tharto held thai up thaire hend,
 Than king Edward toke his rest,
 At Andwerp, whare him liked best;
 And thare he made his moné playne, 35
 That no man suld say thare ogayne.
 His moné, that was gude and lele
 Left in Braband ful mekille dele;

And alle that land, untill this day,
Fars the better for that jorney.

40

When Philip the Valas herd of this,
Tharat he was ful wroth iwis;
He gert assemble his barounes,
Princes and lordes of many tounes,
At Pariss toke thai thaire counsaile,
Whilk pointes might tham moste availe;
And in alle wise thai tham bithought
To stroy Ingland, and bring to nought.

45

Schipmen sone war efter sent,
To here the kinges cumandment;
And the galaies men also,
That wist both of wele and wo.
He cumand than that men suld fare
Tille Ingland and for nothing spare,
Bot brin and sla both man and wife,
And childe, that none suld pas with life.
The galay men held up thaire handes,
And thanked God of thir tithandes.

50

55

At Hamton, als I understand,
Come the gaylayes unto land,
And ful fast thai slogh and brend,
Bot noght so mekille als sum men wend.
For or thai wened war thai mett
With men that sone thaire laykes lett.
Sum was knocked on the hevyd,
That the body thare bilevid;
Sum lay stareand on the sternes;
And sum lay knocked out thaire hernes,
Than with tham was non other gle,

60

65

Bot ful fain war thai that might fle. 70
 The galay men the suth to say,
 Most nedes turn another way;
 Thai soght the stremis fer and wide,
 In Flandres and in Seland syde.

Than saw thai whare Cristofer stode, 75
 At Armouth, opon the flude,
 Then wen[te] thai theder alle bidene
 The galayes men, with hertes kene,
 Viiij. and xl. galays, and mo,
 And with tham als war tarettes two, 80
 And other many of galiotes,
 With grete noumber of smale botes;
 Alle thai hoved on the flode
 To stele sir Edward mens gode.

Edward oure king than was noght there, 85
 Bot sone when it come to his ere,
 He sembled alle his men fulle stille,
 And said to tham what was his wille.
 Ilk man made him redy then,
 So went the king and alle his men 90
 Unto thaire schippes ful hastily,
 Als men that war in dede doghty.

Thai fand the galay men grete wane,
 A hundereth ever ogaynes ane;
 The Inglis men put tham to were 95
 Ful baldly, with bow and spere;
 Thai slogh thare of the galaies men
 Ever sixty ogaynes ten;
 That sum ligges zit in that mire
 Alle hevidles, withowten hire. 100

The Inglis men war armed wele,
 Both in yren and in stele;
 Thai faght ful fast, both day and night,
 Als lang as tham lasted might.
 Bot galay men war so many,
 That Inglis men wex alle wery;
 Help thai soght, bot thare come nane,
 Than unto God thai made thaire mane.

105

Bot sen the time that God was born,
 Ne a hundreth ȝere biforn,
 War never men better in fight
 Than Ingliss men, whils thai had myght.
 Bot sone alle maistri gan thai mis;
 God bring thaire saules untill his blis!
 And God assoyl tham of thaire sin,
 For the gude wille that thai war in! Amen.

110

115

Listens now, and leves me,
 Who-so lifes thai salle se
 That it mun be ful dere boght
 That thir galay men have wrought.
 Thai hoved stille upon the flode,
 And rêved pover men thaire gude;
 Thai robbed, and did mekille schame,
 And ay bare Ingliss men the blame.
 Now Jhesu save alle Ingland,
 And blis it with his haly hand! Amen.

120

125

II.

Edward, oure cumly king,
 In Braband has his woning,
 With mani cumly knight;
 And in that land, trewly to telle,

130

Ordains he stille for to dwelle
To time he think to fight.

Now God, that es of mightes maste,
Grant him grace of the Haly Gaste,
His heritage to win ! 135
And Mari moder, of mercy fre,
Save oure king and his menzé
Fro sorow and schame and syn.

Thus in Braband has he bene,
Whare he bifore was seldom sene, 140
For to prove thaire japes ;
Now no langer wil he spare,
Bot unto Fraunce fast wille he fare,
To confort him with grapes.

Furth he ferd into Fraunce, 145
God save him fro mischance
And alle his cumpany !
The nobille duc of Braband
With him went into that land,
Redy to lif or dy. 150

Than the riche floure-de-lice
Wan thare ful litille prise,
Fast he fled for ferde ;
The right aire of that cuntré
Es cumen, with all his knightes fre, 155
To shac him by the berd.

Sir Philip the Valayse,
With his men in tho dayes,
To batale had he thought ;
He bad his men tham purvay 160

Withowten lenger delay,
But he ne held it noght.

He broght folk ful grete wone,
Ay sevyn oganis one,
That ful wele wapnid were;
Bot sone whe[n] he herd ascry
That king Edward was nere tharby,
Than durst he noght cum nere.

165

In that morning fell a myst,
And when oure Ingliss men it wist,
It changed alle thaire chere;
Oure king unto God made his bone,
And God sent him gude confort sone,
The weder wex ful clere.

170

Oure king and his men held the felde
Stalwortly, with spere and schelde,
And thought to win his right,
With lordes, and with knightes kene
And other doghty men bydene,
That war ful frek to fight.

175

180

When Sir Philip of France herd telle
That king Edward in feld walld dwelle,
Than gayned him no gle;
He traisted of no better bote,
Bot both on hors and on fote
He hasted him to fle.

185

It semid he was ferd for strokes,
When he did felle his grete okes
About his pavilyoune;
Abated was than alle his pride,

190

For langer thare durst he noght bide,
His bost was broght alle doune.

The king of Beme had cares colde,
That was ful¹ hardy and bolde
A stede to umstride, 195
The king als of Naverne
War faire feld² in the ferene
Thaire heviddes for to hide.

And leves wele, it es no lye,
The felde hat Flemangrye 200
That king Edward was in,
With princes that war stif and bolde,
And dukes that war doghty tolde
In batayle to bigin.

The princes, that war riche on raw, 205
Gert nakers strike and trumpes blaw,
And made mirth at thaire might;
Both alblast and many a bow
War redy railed opon a row,
And ful frek for to fight. 210

Gladly thai gaf mete and drink,
So that thai suld the better swink,
The wight men that thar ware.
Sir Philip of Fraunce fled for dout,
And hied him hame with alle his rout; 215
Coward, God giff him care!

For thare than had the lely flowre
Lorne alle halely his honowre,

That sogat fled for ferd ;
 Bot oure king Edward come ful stille,
 When that he trowed no harm him tille,
 And keped him in the berde.

220

III.

[Pages 75—80.]

*How Edward at Hogges unto land wan,
 And rade thurgh France or ever he blan.*

Men may rede in Romance right
 Of a grete clerk that Merlin hight ;
 Ful many bokes er of him wreten,
 Als thir clerkes wele may witen ;
 And ȝit in many privé nokes

225

May men find of Merlin bokes.
 Merlin said thus with his mowth,
 Out of the north into the sowth
 Suld cum a bare over the se,

230

That suld mak many man to fle ;
 And in the se, he said ful right,
 Suld he schew ful mekille might ;
 And in France he suld bigin,

235

To mak tham wrath that er tharein,
 Untille the se his taile reche sale
 Alle folk of France to mekille bale.

240

Thus have I mater for to make,
 For a nobille prince sake ;
 Help me God, my wit es thin ;
 Now Laurence Minot wille bigin.

A bore es broght on bankes bare,
 With ful batail bifor his brest ;

245

For John of France wille he noght spare
 In Normondy to tak his rest,
 With princes that er proper and prest.
 Alweldand God, of mightes maste, 250
 He be his beld, for he may best,
 Fader, and Sun, and Haly Gaste.

Haly Gaste, thou gif him grace
 That he in gude time may bigin,
 And send to him both might and space 255
 His heritage wele for to win;
 And sone assoyl him of his sin,
 Hende God, that heried helle.
 For France now es he entrid in,
 And thare he dightes him for to dwelle. 260

He dwelled thare, the suth to telle,
 Opon the coste of Normondy.
 At Hogges fand he famen felle,
 That war alle ful of felony;
 To him thai makked grete maistri, 265
 And proved to ger the bare abyde.
 Thurgh might of God and mild Mari,
 The bare abated alle thaire pride.

Mekille pride was thare in prese,
 Both on pencelle and on plate, 270
 When the bare rade withouten rese
 Unto Cane the graythest gate.
 Thare fand he folk bifer the 3ate
 Thretty thowsand stif on stede.
 Sir John of France come al to late; 275
 The bare has gert thaire sides blede.

He gert blede, if thai war bolde,
 For thare was slayne and wounded sore

Thretty thowsand trewly tolde,
Of pitaile was thare mekille more,
Knightes war thare wele two score
That war new dubbed to that dance.
Helm and hevyd thai have forlore,
Than misliked John of France.

More misliking was thare then,
For fals treson alway thai wrought;
Bot fro thai met with Inglis men,
Alle thaire bargan dere thai boght.
Inglis men with site tham soght,
And hastily quit tham thaire hire,
And at the last forgat thai noght,
The toun of Cane thai sett on fire.

That fire ful many folk gån fere,
When thai se brandes o-ferrum flye;
This have thai wonen of the were,
The fals[e] folk of Normundy.
I sai ȝow lely how thai lye
Dongen doun alle in a daunce;
Thaire frendes many ful faire forthi
Pleyn tham untill John of France.

Franche men put tham to pine
At Cressy, whan thai brak the brig,
That saw Edward with both his ine.
Than likid him no langer to lig;
Ilk Inglis man on others rig
Over that water er thai went,
To bataile er thai baldly big,
With brade ax and with bowes bent.

With bent bowes thai war ful bolde,
For to felle of the Frankisch men;

Thai gert tham lig with cares colde,
 Ful sari was sir Philip then.
 He saw the toun o-ferrum bren,
 And folk for ferd war fast fleand;
 The teres he lete ful rathly ren 315
 Out of his eghen, I understand.

Then come Philip, ful redy dight,
 Toward the town with alle his rowt,
 With him come mani a kumly knight,
 And alle umset the bare about. 320
 The bare made tham ful law to lout,
 And delt tham knokkes to thaire mede:
 He gert tham stumbille that war stout;
 Thare helpid nowther staf ne stede.

Stedes strong bilevid stille 325
 Biside Cressy opon the grene.
 Sir Philip wanted alle his wille,
 That was wele on his sembland sene.
 With spere and schelde and helmis schene,
 The bare durst thai noght habide. 330
 The king of Berne was cant and kene,
 Bot thare he lest both play and pride.

XVIII.

SIR JOHN MANDEVILLE.

A. D. 1300—1371.

Sir John Mandeville was born about A.D. 1300, commenced his travels in the year 1322, and wrote an account of them in English in the year 1356. The following extracts, in the Midland dialect, are copied from *The Voiage and Travaile of Sir John Maundeville*, ed. from the edition of 1725, by J. O. Halliwell, London 1839.

The Prologue.

[Collated with Cotton MS. Titus C. xvi.]

[Pages 1-5.]

FOR als moche as the lond bezonde the see, that is to seye, the holy lond, that men callen the lond of promysiou, or of behest, passynge alle othere londes, is the most worthi lond, most excellent, and lady and sovereyn of alle othere londes, and is blessed and halewed of the precyous body and blood of oure Lord Jhesu Crist; in the whiche lond it lykede him to take flesche and blood of the virgyne Marie, to envyrone that holy lond with his blessed feet; and there he wolde of his blessedness enoumber him in the seyd blessed and gloriouse virgine Marie, and become man, and worche many myracles, and preche and teche the feyth and the lawe of crystene men unto his children; and there it lykede him to suffre many reprevynges and scornes for us; and he that was kyng of heuene, of eyr, of erthe, of see and of alle thinges that ben conteyned in hem, wolde alle only

ben cleped kyng of that lond, whan he seyde, *Rex sum Judeorum*, that is to seyne, *I am kyng of Jewes*; and that lond he chees before alle other londes, as the beste and most worthi lond, and the most vertuouse lond of alle the world: for it is the herte and the myddes of alle the world: wytnessynge the philosophere, that seyth thus: *Virtus rerum in medio consistit*: that is to seye, *the vertue of thinges is in the myddes*; and in that lond he wolde lede his lyf, and suffre passiou and deth, of Jewes, for us; for to bye and to delyvere us from peynes of helle, and from deth withouten ende; the whiche was ordeynd for us, for the synne of oure formere fader Adam, and for oure owne synnes also: for as for himself, he hadde non evylle deserved: for he thoughte nevere evylle ne dyd evylle: and he that was kyng of glorie and of joye, myghten best in that place suffre deth; because he ches in that lond, rather than in ony othere, there to suffre his passiou and his deth; for he that wil pupplische ony thing to make it openly knowen, he wil make it to ben cryed and pronounced in the myddel place of a town; so that the thing that is proclamed and pronounced, may evenly strecche to alle parties: righte so, he that was formyour of alle the world, wolde suffre [deth] for us at Jerusalem; that is the myddes of the world; to that ende and entent, that his passiou and his deth, that was pupplischt there, myghte ben knowen evenly to alle the parties of the world. See now how dere he boughte man, that he made after his owne ymage, and how dere he azen-boghte us, for the grete love that he hadde to us, and wee nevere deserved it to him. For more precyous catelle ne gretter raunsoun, ne myghte he put[te] for us, than his blessed body, his precyous blood, and his holy lyf, that he thrall[e]d for us; and alle he offred[e] for us, that nevere did[e] synne. A dere God, what love hadde he to us his subyettes, whan he that nevere trespassed[e], wolde for trespassours suffre dethe! Righte

wel oughte us for to love and worschipe, to drede and serven suche a Lord; and to worschipe and preyse suche an holy lond, that brought[e] forth such fruyt, thorgh the whiche every man is saved, but it be his owne defaute. Wel may that lond be called delytable and a fructuose lond, that was bebledd and moysted with the precyouse blode of oure Lord Jhesu Crist; the whiche is the same lond, that oure Lord behighte us in heritage. And in that lond he wolde dye, as seised, for to leve it to vus his children. Wherefore every gode cristene man, that is of powere, and hath whereof, scholde peynen him with alle his strengthe for to conquere oure right heritage, and chacen out alle the mysbeleevynge men. For wee ben clept cristene men, afre Crist our fadre. And 3if wee ben righte children of Crist, we oughte for to chalenge the heritage, that oure fadre laste us, and do it out of hethene mennes hondes. But now pryde, covetyse and envye han so enflawmed the hertes of lordes of the world, that thei are more besy for to disherite here neyghbores, more than for to chalenge or to conquere here righte heritage before seyde. And the comoun peple, that wolde putte here bodyes and here catelle, for to conquere oure heritage, thei may not don it withouten the lordes. For a semblee of peple withouten a cheventeyn, or a chief lord, is as a flock of scheep withouten a schepperde; the which departeth and desparpleth, and wyten never whidre to go. But wolde God, that the temporel lordes and alle worldly lordes weren at gode acord, and with the comon peple wolden taken this holy viage over the see. Thanne I trowe wel, that within a lityl tyme, oure right[e] heritage before seyde scholde be reconsyld and put in the hondes of the right heires of Jhesu Crist.

And for als moche as it is longe tyme passed, that ther was no generalle passage ne vyage over the see; and many men desiren for to here speke of the holy lond, and han

erof gret solace and comfort ; I Jo' n Maundevylle, Knyght,
 e be it I be not worthi, that was born in Englonde, in the
 wn of Seynt Albones, passed the see, in the 3eer of our
 ord Jhesu Crist mcccxxii, in the day of Seynt Michelle ;
 d hidre to have ben longe tyme over the see, and have
 yn and gon thorghe manye dyverse londes, and many pro-
 nces and kingdomes and iles ; and have passed thorgh-
 it Turkye, Tartarye, Percy, Surrye, Arabye, Egypt the
 ghe and the lowe¹, Ermonye the litylle and the grete ; thorgh
 rbye, Caldee, and a gret partie of Ethiope ; thorgh Ama-
 yne, Inde the lasse and the more, a gret partie ; and
 orgh out many othere iles, that ben abouten Inde ; where
 vellen many dyverse folkes, and of dyverse maneres and
 wes, and of dyverse schappes of men. Of whiche londes
 id iles, I schalle speke more pleynly hereaftre. And I schal
 vise 3ou sum partie of thinges that there ben, whan time
 halle ben, aftre it may best come to my mynde ; and
 ecyally for hem, that wylle and are in purpos for to visite
 e holy citee of Jerusalem, and the holy places that are
 ereaboute. And I schalle telle the weye, that thei schulle
 lden thidre. For I have often tymes passed and ryden
 e way, with gode companye of many lordes : God be
 onked.

And 3ee schulle undirstonde, that I have put this boke
 it of Latyn into Frensch, and translated it a3en out of
 rensch into Englyssch, that every man of my nac[i]oun
 ay undirstonde it.

But lordes and knyghtes and othere noble and worthi
 en, that conne Latyn but litylle, and han ben bezonde the
 e, knowen and undirstonden, 3if I seye trouthe or no¹,
 id 3if I erre in devisyng, for for3etyng, or elles ; that thei
 owe redresse it and amende it. For thinges passed out
 longe tyme from a mannes mynde or from his syght,

¹ Omitted in the printed editions.

turnen sone into forȝetynge : because that mynde of man ne may not ben comprehended ne withholden, for the freeltie of mankynde.

CHAPTER XII.

Of the bygynnyng of Machomete.

[Pages 139-142.]

And ȝee schulle understonde, that Machamote was born in Arabye, that was first a pore knave, that kepte cameles, that wenten with marchantes for marchandise; and so befelle, that he wente with the marchandes in to Egipt: and thei weren thanne cristene, in tho partyes. And at the desertes of Arabye, he wente into a chapelle, where a Eremyte duelte. And whan he entred into the chapelle, that was but a lytille and a low thing and had but a lytyl dore and a low, than the entree began to wexe so gret and so large and so high, as though it had[de] ben of a gret mynstre, or the ȝate of a paleys. And this was the firste myracle, the Sarazins seyn, that Machomete dide in in his ȝouth. Afre began he for to wexe wyse and ryche; and he was a gret astronomer: and afre he was governour and prince of the lond of Corrodane; and he governed it fulle wisely, in such manere, that whan the prince was ded, he toke the lady to wyfe, that highte Gadrige. And Machomete felle often in the grete sikennesse, that men callen the fallynge evylle: wherfore the lady was fulle sory, that evere sche toke him to husbonde. But Machomete made hire to beleeve, that alle tymes, whan he felle so, Gabriel the Angel cam for to speke with him; and for the gret[e] light and bryghtnesse of the angelle, he myghte not susteyne him fro fallynge. And therfore the Sarazines seyn, that Gabriel cam often to speke with him. This Machomete regned in Arabye the ȝeer of oure Lord Jhesu Crist 610; and was of

: generacioun of Ysmael, that was Abrahames sone, that gat upon Agar, his chamberere. And therfore ther ben razines, that ben clept Ismaelytenes; and summe Againes, of Agar: and the othere properly ben clept Sarraies, of Sarra: and summe ben clept Moabytes, and summe nonytes; fro¹ the two sones of Loth, Moab and Amon, it he begatt on his doughtres, that weren aftirward grete hely princes. And also Machomete loved[e] wel a gode remyte, that duelled in the desertes, a myle fro Mount nay, in the weye that men gon fro Arabye toward ldee, and toward Ynde, o day journey fro the see, where: marchauntes of Venyse comen often for marchandise. And so often wente Machomete to this heremyte, that alle men weren wrothe: for he wolde gladly here this heremyte preche, and make his men wake alle nyght: and therfore his men thoughten to putte the heremyte to deth: and it befelle upon a nyght, that Machomete was dronken of the wyn, and he felle on slepe; and his men toke Machometes swerd out of his schethe while he slepte, and therewith thei slowgh[e] this heremyte, and putten his swerd alle bloody in his schethe agen. And at morwe, whan he fond the heremyte ded, he was fulle sory and wroth, and wolde have don his men to deth: but thei alle with on accord [seyde], that he himself had[de] slayn him, whan he was dronken, and schewed him his swerd alle bloody: and he trowed[e], that thei hadden seyde soth. And than he cursed[e] the wyn, and the tho that drynken it. And therfore Sarrazines, that be vout, drynken nevere no wyn: but summe drynken it ivyly. For ȝif thei dronken it openly, thei scholde be preyed. But thei drynken gode beverage and swete and drysshynge, that is made of Galamelle: and that is that men maken sugre of, that is of right gode savour: and it gode for the breest. Also it befalleth sumtyme, that

¹ MS. *for*.

Cristene men becomen Sarazines, outhor for povertie or for symplenesse, or elles for here owne wykkednesse. And therfore the archiflamyn or the flamyn, as oure erchebischopp or bisschopp, whan he resceyveth him, seyth thus, *La ellec, Sylā. Machomete rores alla*; that is to seye, *There is no God but on, and Machomete his messenger.*

CHAPTER XXVI.

Of the Contrees and Yles that ben beyonde the lond of Cathay; and of the Frutes there; and of xxii Kynges enclosed within the Mountaynes.

[Pages 263-269.]

Now schalle I seye 3ou sewyngly of contrees and yles, that ben beyonde the contrees that I have spoken of. Wherefore I seye 3ou, in passynge be the lond of Cathaye, toward the high Ynde, and toward Bacharye, men passen be a kyngdom, that men clepen Caldilhe; that is a fulle fair contre.

And there groweth a maner of fruyt, as though it weren Gowrdes: and whan thei ben ripe, men kutten hem a-to, and men fynden with-inne a lytille best, in flesch, in bon and blode, as thogh it were a lytille lomb, with-outen wolle.

And men eten bothe the frut and the best: and that is a gret merveylle. Of that frute I have eten; alle though it were wondirfulle: but that I knowe wel, that God is merveyllous in his werkes. And natheles I tolde hem, of als gret a merveylle to hem, that is amonges us: and that was of the Bernakes. For I tolde hem, that in oure contree weren trees, that baren a fruyt, that becomen briddes fleeynge: and tho that fellen in the water, lyven; and thei that fallen on the erthe, dyen anon: and thei ben right gode to mannes mete. And here-of had[de] thei als gret merveylle, that summe of hem trowed, it were an impossible thing to be.

In that contree ben longe apples, of gode savour; where-of

en mo than an 100 in a clustre, and als manye in another :
ad thei han grete longe leues and large, of 2 fote long
r more. And in that contree, and in other contrees there
outen, growen many trees, that beren clowe gylofres and
otemuges, and grete notes of Ynde and of Canelle and of
any other spices. And there ben vynes, that beren so
rete grapes, that a strong man scholde have ynow to done,
r to bere o clustre with alle the grapes. In that same
gioun ben the mountaynes of Caspye, that men clepen
ber in the contree. Betwene the mountaynes, the Jewes
f ten lynages ben enclosed, that men clepen Goth and
lagoth : and thei mowe not gon out on no syde. There
eren enclosed 22 kynges with hire peple, that duelleden
etwene the mountaynes of Sythye. There Kyng Alisandre
acede hem betwene tho mountaynes ; and there he
oughte for to enclose hem thorgh werk of his men.
ut whan he saugh, that he myghte not don it, ne brynge
to an ende, he preyed[e] to God of Nature, that he wolde
arforme that that he hadd[e] begonne. And alle were it so,
iat he was a payneme and not worthi to ben herd, 3it God
f his grace closed[e] the mountaynes to gydre : so that thei
wellen there, alle faste y-lokked and enclosed with high[e]
ountaynes alle aboute, saf only on o syde ; and on that
de, is the sea of Caspye. Now may sum men asken, sith
iat the see is on that o syde, wherfore go thei not out on
ie see syde, for to go where that hem lyketh ? But to this
uestioun, I schal answer, that see of Caspye goth out
e londe, undre the mountaynes, and renneth be the
esert at o syde of the contree ; and afre it streccheth
nto the endes of Persie. And alle though it be clept
see, it is no see, ne it toucheth to non other see : but
is a lake, the grettest of the world. And though thei
olden putten hem in to that see, thei ne wysten never,
here that thei scholde aryven. And also thei conen no

langage, but only hire owne, and no man knoweth but thei: and therfore mowe thei not gon out. And also jee schulle undirstonde, that the Jewes han no propre lond of hire owne for to dwellen inne, in alle the world, but only that lond betwene the mountaynes. And jif thei zelden tribute for that lond to the Queen of Amazoine, the whiche that maketh hem to ben kept in cloos fulle diligently, that thei schalle not gon out on no syde, but be the cost of hire lond. For hire lond marcheth to the mountaynes. And often it hath befallen, that summe of the Jewes han gon up the mountaynes, and aualed down to the valeyes: but gret nombre of folk ne may not do so. For the mountaynes ben so hye and so streight up, that thei moste abyde there, maugree hire myght. For thei mowe not gon out, but be a litille issue, that was made be strengthe of men; and it lasteth wel a 4 grete myle. And aftre, is there jif a lond alle desert, where men may fynde no watre, ne for dyggynge, ne for non other thing. Wherefore men may not dwellen in that place: so is it fulle of dragounes, of serpentis and of other venymous bestes, that no man dar not passe, but jif it be be strong wyntre. And that streyt[e] passage, men clepen in that contree, Clyron. And that is the passage, that the queen of Amazoine maketh to ben kept. And thogh it happene, sum of hem, be fortune, to gone out; thei conen no maner of langage but Ebrew; so that thei can not speke to the peple. And jif natheles, men seyn thei schulle gon out in the tyme of Antecrist, and that thei schulle maken gret slaughtre of Cristene men.

And therfore alle the Jewes, that dwellen in alle londes, lernen alle weys to speken Ebrew, in hope that whanne the other Jewes schulle gon out, that thei may understonden hire speche, and to leden hem in to Cristendom, for to *destroye* the cristene peple. For the Jewes seyn, that they *knownen* wel, be hire prophecyes, that thei of Caspye schulle

and spreden thorgh out alle the world; and that ene men schulle ben undre hire subieccioun, als thei han ben in subieccioun of hem. And ȝif that ryte, how that thei schulle fynden hire weye, afre we herd seye, I schalle telle ȝou. In the time of , a fox schalle make there his trayne, and mynen where kyng Alisandre leet make the ȝates: and so schalle mynen and perce the erthe, til that he asse thorgh, towards that folk. And whan thei fox, thei schulle have gret merveylle of him, be thei saugh[e] never suche a best. For of alle othere rei han enclosed amonges hem, saf only the fox. me thei schulen chacen him and pursuen him so lle that he come to the same place, that he cam fro. ne thei schullen dyggen and mynen so strongly, thei fynden the ȝates, that Kyng Alisandre leet make stones and passynge huge, wel symented and made or the maystrie. And tho ȝates they schulle breken, on out, be fyndynge of that issue. Fro that londe, toward the lond of Bacharie, where ben fulle yvele fulle cruelle. In that lond ben trees, that beren thogh it were of scheep; where of men maken and alle thing that may ben made of wolles. In tree ben many Ipotaynes, that dwellen somtyme atre, and somtyme on the lond: and thei ben half l half hors, as I have seyde before: and thei eten an thei may take hem. And there ben ryveres of hat ben fulle byttere, three sithes more than is the the see.

.t contree ben many griffounes, more plentee than other contree. Sum men seyn, that thei han the ward as an egle, and benethe as a lyoun: and ei seyn soth, that thei ben of that schapp. But *in hath the body more gret and is more strong*

thanne 8 lyouns, of suche lyouns as ben o this half; and more gret and strongere, than an 100 egles, suche as we han amonges us. For o griffoun there wil bere, fleyng to his nest, a gret hors, 3if he may fynde him at the poynt¹, or 2 oxen 3oked to gidere, as thei gon at the plowgh. For he hathe his talouns so longe and so large and grete upon his fete, as though thei weren hornes of grete oxen or of bugles or of ky3n; so that men maken cuppes of hem, to drynken of: and of hire ribbes and of the pennes of hire wenges, men maken bowes fulle stronge, to schote with arwes and quarelle.

¹ Omitted in the printed editions.

XIX.

ALLITERATIVE POEMS.

ABOUT A.D. 1360.

Author unknown—Dialect *West-Midland* (Lancashire).

The following extracts are from *Early English Alliterative Poems*,
edited for the Early English Text Society by R. Morris,
London 1864.

The Deluge.

Bot þat oþer wrake þat wex on wyȝeȝ, hit lyȝt
þurȝ þe faut of a freke þat fayled in trawþe.
Adam in obedyent¹ ordaynt to blysse,
þer pryuely *in* paradys his place watȝ devised,
To lyue þer *in* lykyng þe lenþe of a terme, 5
& themne enherite þat home þat aungeleȝ for-gart,
Bot þurȝ þe eggyng of Eue he ete of an apple.
þat en-poysened alle pepleȝ þat parted fro hem boþe,
For a defence þat watȝ dyȝt of dryȝtyn seluen,
& a payne þer-on put & pertly halden ; 10
þe defence watȝ þe fryt þat þe freke towched,
& þe dom is þe deþe þat drepeȝ *vus* alle.
Al in mesure & meþe was made þe vengiaunce,
& eftē amended *witȝ* a mayden þat make had neuer.
Bot in þe þryd watȝ for-þrast al þat þryue schuld, 15

¹ *obedience* ?

Þer wat3 malys mercyles & mawgre much scheued,
 Þat wat3 for fylþe vpon folde þat þe folk vsed,
 Þat þen wonyed¹ in þe worlde with-outen any mayster3;
 Hit wern þe fayrest of forme & of face als,
 Þe most & þe myriest þat maked wern euer,
 Þe stytest², þe stalworþest þat stod euer on fete;
 & lengest lyf in hem lent of lede3 alle oþer,
 For hit was þe forme-foster þat þe folde bred,
 Þe aþel auncetere3 sune3 þat Adam wat3 called,
 To wham god hade geuen alle þat gayn were,
 Alle þe blysse boutte blame þat bodi my3t haue,
 & þose lykkest to þe lede þat lyued next after,
 Forþy so semly to see syþen wern none.
 Þer wat3 no law to hem layd bot loke to kynde,
 & kepe to hit, & alle hit cors clanly ful-fylle;
 & þenne founden þay fylþe in fleschlych dede3
 & controeued agayn kynde contraré werke3,
 & vsed hem vn-þryftyly vchon on oþer,
 & als with oþer, wylsfully, vpon a wrange wyse.
 So ferly fowled her flesch þat þe fende loked,
 How þe dezter of þe douþe wern derelych fayre,
 & fallen in felazschyp with hem on folken wyse
 & en-gendered on hem Ieaunte3 with her Iape3 ille.
 Þose wern men meþele3 & ma3ty on vrþe,
 Þat for her lodlych layke3 alosed þay were.
 He wat3 famed for fre þat fe3t loued best,
 & ay þe biggest in bale þe best wat3 halden;
 & þenne euelez on erþe earnestly grewen
 & multiplyed mony-fold in monge3 mankynde,
 For þat þe ma3ty on molde so marre þise oþer,
 Þat þe wy3e þat al wro3t ful wroþly bygyrne3.
 When he knew vche contre corupte in hit seluen,
 & vch freke forloyned fro þe ry3t waye3,

¹ It looks like *worþed* in the MS.

² *styfest* or *stytest*?

Felle temptande tene towched his hert;
 As wyȝe, wo hym withinne, werp to hym seluen : 50
 " Me forþynkeȝ ful much þat euer I mon made,
 Bot I schal delyuer & do away þat doten on þis molde,
 & fleme out of þe folde al þat flesch wereȝ,
 Fro þe burne to þe best, fro bryddeȝ to fyscheȝ;
 Al schal doun & be ded & dryuen out of erþe, 55
 Þat euer I sette saule inne; & sore hit me rweȝ
 Þat euer I made hem myself; bot if I may her-after,
 I schal wayte to be-war her wrencheȝ to kepe."
 Þenne in worlde watȝ a wyȝe wonyande on lyue,
 Ful redy & ful ryȝtwys, & rewled hym fayre; 60
 In þe drede of dryȝtyn his dayeȝ he vseȝ,
 & ay glydande wyth his god his grace watȝ þe more.
 Hym watȝ þe nome Noe, as is in-noghe knawen,
 He had þre þryuen suneȝ & þay þre wyueȝ;
 Sem soply þat on, þat oþer hyȝt Cam 65
 & the Iolef Iapheth watȝ gendered þe þryd.
 Now god in nwy to Noe con speke,
 Wylde wrakful wordeȝ in his wylle greued:
 " Þe ende of alle-kyneȝ flesch þat on vrthe meueȝ,
 Is fallen forþ wyth my face & forþer hit I þenk; 70
 With her vn-worþelych werk me wlateȝ vn-with-inne,
 Þe gore þer-of me hatȝ greued & þe glette nwyd;
 I schal strenkle my distresse & strye al togeder,
 Boþe ledeȝ & londe & alle þat lyf habbeȝ.
 Bot make to þe a mancioun & þat is my wylle, 75
 A cofer closed of tres, clanlych planed;
 Wyrk woneȝ þerinne for wylde & for tame,
 & þenne cleme hit with clay comly with-inne,
 & alle þe endentur dryuen daube with-uten.
 And þus of lenþe & of large þat lome þou make, 80
 Þre hundred of cupydeȝ þou holde to þe lenþe,
 Of fyfty fayre ouer-þwert forme þe brede;

& loke euen þat þyn ark haue of he3þe þretté,
 & a wyndow wyd vpon, wrozt vpon lofte,
 In þe compas of a cubit kyndely sware, 85
 A wel dutande dor, don on þe side;
 Haf halle3 þerinne & halke3 ful mony,
 Boþe boske3 & boure3 & wel bounden pene3;
 For I schal waken vp a water to wasch alle þe worlde,
 & quelle alle þat þat¹ is quik with quauende flode3. 90
 Alle þat glyde3 & got3, & gost of lyf habbe3,
 I schal wast with my wrath þat wons vpon vrþe;
 Bot my forwarde with þe I festen on þis wyse,
 For þou in reysoun hat3 rengned & ryztwys ben euer;
 Þou schal enter þis ark with þyn aþel barne3 95
 & þy wedded wyf; with þe þou take
 þe make3 of þy myry sune3; þis meyny of a3te
 I schal saue of monne3 saule3, & swelt þose oþer.
 Of vche best þat bere3 lyf busk þe a cupple,
 Of vche clene comly kynde enclose seuen make3, 100
 Of vche horwed, in ark halde bot a payre,
 For to saue me þe sede of alle ser kynde3;
 & ay þou meng with þe male3 þe mete ho-beste3,
 Vche payre by payre to plese ayþer oþer;
 With alle þe fode þat may be founde frette þy cofer, 105
 For sustenance to yow-self & also þose oþer."
 Ful grayþely got3 þis god man & dos gode3 hestes,
 In dry3 dred & daunger, þat durst do non oþer.
 When hit wat3 fettled & forged & to þe fulle grayþed,
 Þenne con dry3ttyn hym dele dry3ly þyse worde3: 110
 "Now Noe," *quoth* oure lorde, "art þou al redy?
 Hat3 þou closed þy kyst with clay alle aboute?"
 "3e lorde with þy leue," sayde þe lede þenne,
 "Al is wrozt at þi worde, as þou me wyt lance3."
 "Enter in þenne," *quoth* he, "& haf þi wyf with þe, 115

¹ So in MS.

123 *with*-outen þrep & her þre wyue3;
 s I bedene haue, bosk þer-inne als,
 3e arm staued, styfly steke3 yow þerinne;
 n daye3 ben¹ seyed I sende out bylyue,
 owtande ryge þat rayne schal swyþe, 120
 l wasche alle þe worlde of werke3 of fylþe;
 flesh vpon folde by fonden on lyue;
 n yow a3t in þis ark staued,
 it I wyl saue of þyse ser beste3."
 þe neuer styste3² (þat niy3[t] he byggyne3), 125
 r staued & stoken, as þe steuen wolde.
 sone com þe seuenþe day, when samned wern alle,
 oned in þe whichche þe wylde & þe tame.
 ned þe abyne & bonke3 con ryse,
 ut vch walle-heued, in ful wode streme3, 130
 brymme þat abod vnbrosten bylyue,
 el lauande loghe to þe lyfte rered.
 lustered clowde clef alle in clowte3,
 vch a rayn-ryfte & rusched to þe vrþe;
 124 in forty daye3, & þen þe flod rysen, 135
 alte3 vche a wod and þe wyde felde3;
 n þe water of þe welkyn *with* þe worlde mette,
 deth mo3t dry3e drowned þerinne;
 3 moon for to make when meschef was cnowen,
 t dowed bot the deth in þe depe streme3. 140
 vylger ay wax, wone3 þat stryede,
 in-to vch hous, hent þat þer dowedled.
 ng to þe fly3t alle þat fle my3t,
 burde *with* her barne þe byggyng þay leue3,
 d to þe hy3 bonk þer brentest hit wern, 145
 ly to þe hy3e hylle3 þay [h]aled on faste;
 wat3 nedle3 her note, for neuer cowþe stynt
 raynande ryg [&] þe raykande wawe3,

¹ MS. reads *len*.² *styntes* ?

Er vch boþom wat3 brurd-ful to þe bonke3 egge3,
 & vche a dale so depe þat demmed at þe brynke3. 150
 Þe moste mountayne3 on mor þerne wat3 no more dry3e,
 And þer-on flokked þe folke, for ferde of þe wrake.
 Syþen þe wylde of þe wode on þe water flette;
 Summe swymmed þer-on þat saue hemself trawed,
 Summe sty3e to a stud & stared to þe heuen, 155
 Rwlý wyth a loud rurd rored for drede.
 Hare3, hertte3 also, to þe hy3e runnen,
 Bukke3, bausene3 & bule3 to þe bonkke3 hy3ed,
 & alled cryed for care to þe kyng of heuen,
 Re-cou3er of þe creator þay cryed vchone, 160
 Þat amounted þe masse, þe mase his mercy wat3 passed,
 & alle his pyté departed fro peple þat he hated.
 Bi þat þe flod to her fete flo3ed & waxed,
 Þen vche a segge se3 wel þat synk hym byhoued;
 Frende3 fellen in fere faþmed to-geder 165
 To dry3 her delful deystyné & dy3en alle samen;
 Luf loke3 to luf & his leue take3,
 For to ende alle at one3 & for euer twynne.
 By forty daye3 wern faren, on folde no flesch styryed,
 Þat þe flod nade al freten wiþ feztande waze3 ¹, 170
 For hit clam vche a clyffe cubites fyftene,
 Ouer þe hy3est hylle þat hunkled on erþe.
 Þenne mourkne in þe mudde most ful nede
 Alle þat spyrakle in-spranc², no sprawlyng awayled,
 Saue þe hapel vnder hach & his here straunge, 175
 Noe þat ofte neuened þe name of oure lorde,
 Hym a3t-sum in þat ark as ap3el god lyked,
 Þer alle lede3 in lome lenged druye.
 Þe arc houn wat3 on hy3e wiþ hurlande gotez,
 Kest to kyþez vncouþe þe clowde3 ful nere. 180
 Hit waltered on þe wylde flod, went as hit lyste,

¹ waves?² in-sprang?

Drof vpon þe depe dam, *in daunger* hit semed,
 With-outen mast, *oper* myke, *oper* myry bawe-lyne,
 Kable, *oper* capstan to clyppe to her ankrez,
 Hurrok, *oper* hande-helme hasped on roþer, 185
Oper any sweande sayl to seche *after* hauen,
 Bot flote forthe *with* þe flyt of þe felle wynde; ;
 Wheder-warde so þe water wafte, hit rebounde.
 Ofte hit roled on-rounde & rered on ende,
 Nyf oure lorde hade ben her lodeþ-mon hem had lumpen
 harde. 190

Of þe lenþe of Noe lyf to lay a lel date,
 Þe sex hundreth of his age & none odde 3ereþ,
 Of secounde monyth, þe seueneþe day ryþez,
 To-walten alle thyse welle-hedeþ & þe water flowed,
 & þryeþ fyfty þe flod of folwande dayez, 195
 Vche hille watþ þer hidde *with* yþez¹ ful graye ;
 Al watþ wasted þat þer wonyed þe worlde *withinne*,
 Þer euer flote, *oper* flwe, *oper* on fote þede,
 Þat roþly² watþ þe remnaunt þat þe rac dryueþ,
 Þat alle gendreþ so ioyst wern ioyned wyth-inne. 200
 Bot quen þe lorde of þe lyfte lyked hymselfen
 For to mynne on his mon his meth þat abydeþ,
 Þen he wakened a wynde on wattereþ to blowe ;
 Þenne lasned þe llak³ þat large watþ are,
 Þen he stac vp þe stangeþ, stoped þe welleþ, 205
 Bed blynne of þe rayn, hit batede as fast,
 Þenne lasned þe loþ lowkande togeder.
 After harde dayez wern out an hundreth & fyfté,
 As þat lyftande lome lugged aboute,
 Where þe wynde & þe weder warpen hit wolde ; 210
 Hit saþtled on a softe day synkande to grounde,
 On a rasse of a rok, hit rest at þe laste,
 On þe mounte of Mararach of Armene hilles,

¹ MS. *pres.*² *ruþly* ?³ So in MS.

Þat *oper*-wayez on ebrv hit hat þe thanes.
 Bot þa3 þe kyste in the crage3 wern closed to byde,
 3et fyned not þe flod ne fel to the boþeme3,
 Bot þe hy3est of þe egge3 vnhuled wern a lyttel,
 Þat þe burne bynne lorde byhelde þe bare erpe;
 Þenne wafte he vpon his wyndowe, & wysed þeroute
 A message fro þat meyny hem moldez to seche,
 210 Þat wat3 þe rauē so ronk þat rebel wat3 euer;
 He wat3 colored as þe cole, corbyal vnrwe.
 Þen¹ he fongez to þe flyzt, & farnē3 on þe wynde3,
 Houez hy3e vpon hyzt to herken tyþynges.
 He crouke3 for comfort wherī carayne he fynde3;
 215 Kest vpon a clyffe þer costese lay drye,
 He hade þe smielle of þe smach & smoltes þeder sonie;
 Falle3 on þe foule flesch & fyllez his wombe,
 & sone 3ederly for-3ete 3isterday steuen,
 How þe cheuetayn hym charged þat þe kyst 3emed.
 230 Þe rauē rayke3 hym forth þat reches ful lyttel
 How alle fode3 þer fare, elle3 he fynde mete;
 Bot þe burne bynne lorde þat bod to his come,
 Banned hym ful bytterly with bestes alle samen,
 He seche3 an *oper* sonde3-mon & sette3 on þe doune²;
 235 "Brynge3 þat bryzt vpon borde blessed & sayde³."
 "Wende worpelych wyzt *vus* wōnē3 to seche,
 Dryf ouer þis dymme water; if þou druye fynde3;
 Bryng bodworde to bōt, blysse to *vus* alle;
 240 þa3 þat fowle be false, frē be þou euer."
 Ho wyrle out on þe wede3 on wyngē3 ful scharpe,
 Dre3ly alle alonge day þat dorst neuer lyzt;
 & when ho fynde3 no folde her fote on to pyche,
 Ho vmbe-keste3 þe coste & þe kyst seche3,
 Ho hitte3 on þe euentyde & on þe ark sitte3;
 245 Noe nymme3 hir anon & naytly hir staue3.

¹ MS. illegible.² for douene.³ sadde?

Noe on anoþer day nymme; efte þe dovene,
 & bydde; hir bowe ouer þe borne efte bonke; to seche;
 & ho skyrme; vnder skwe & skowte; aboute,
 Tyl hit wat; nyze at þe naȝt & Noe þen seche;. 250
 On ark on an euentyde houe; þe dowue,
 On stamyn ho stod & styлле hym abyde; ;
 What ! ho broȝt in hir beke a bronch of olyue,
 Gracyously vmbe-grouen al with grene leue; ;
 Þat wat; þe syngne of sauýté þat sende hem oure lorde, 255
 & þe saȝtlyng of hymself with þo sely beste;.

Þen wat; þer ioy in þat gyn where lumphred er dryzed,
 & much comfort in þat cofer þat wat; clay daubed.
 Myrly on a fayr morn, monyth þe fyrst,
 Þat falle; formast in þe ȝer, & þe fyrst day, 260
 Ledes loȝen in þat lome & loked þer-oute,
 How þat wattere; wern woned & þe worlde dried.
 Vchon loued oure lorde, bot lenged ay styлле,
 Tyl þay had tylyng fro þe tolke þat tyned hem þer-inne;
 Þen gode; glam to hem glod þat gladed hem alle, 265
 Bede hem drawe to þe dor, delyuer hem he wolde;
 Þen went þay to þe wykket, hit walt vpon sone,
 Boþe þe burne & his barne; bowed þer-oute;
 Her wyue; walke; hem wyth & þe wylde after,
 Þroly þrublande in þronge, þrownen ful þykke. 270
 Bot Noe of vche honest kynde nem out an odde
 & heuened vp an auter & halȝed hit fayre,
 & sette a sakerfyse þer-on of vch a ser kynde,
 Þat wat; comly & clene, god kepe; non oþer.
 When bremly brened þose beste;, & þe breþe rysed, 275
 Þe savour of his sacrafyse soȝt to hym euen
 Þat al spede; & spylle; ; he spekes with þat ilke
 In comly comfort ful clos & cortays worde; :
 " Now Noe no more nel I neuer wary,
 Alle þe mukel mayny [on] molde, for no manne; synne;, 280

For I se wel þat hit is sothe, þat alle manneȝ wytteȝ
 To vnþryfte arn alle þrawen with þoȝt of her hertteȝ,
 & ay hatȝ ben & wyl be ȝet fro her barnage ;
 Al is þe mynde of þe man to malyce enclyned,
 For-þy schal I neuer schende so schortly at ones, 285
 As dysstrye al for maneȝ synne [in] dayeȝ of þis erþe.
 Bot waxeȝ now & wendeȝ forth & worþeȝ to monye,
 Multyplyeȝ on þis molde & menske yow bytyde.
 Se-souneȝ schal yow neuer sese of sede ne of heruest,
 Ne hete, ne no harde forst, vmbre ne droȝþe, 290
 Ne þe swetnesse of somer, ne þe sadde wynter,
 Ne þe nyȝt, ne þe day, ne þe newe ȝereȝ,
 Bot euer renne restleȝ rengneȝȝe þer-inne."
 Þerwyth he blesseȝ vch a best, & bytaȝt hem þis erþe.
 Þen watȝ a skyllȝ skyualde, quen scaped alle þe wylde ; 295
 Vche fowle to þe flyȝt þat fyþereȝ myȝt serue,
 Vche fysch to þe flod þat fynne couþe nayte,
 Vche beste to þe bent þat þat¹ bytes on erbeȝ ;
 Wylde wormeȝ to her won wryþeȝ in þe erþe
 Þe fox & þe folmarde to þe fryth wyndeȝ, 300
 Herttes to hyȝe heþe, hareȝ to gorsteȝ,
 & lyounȝ & lebardeȝ to þe lake-ryftes,
 Herneȝ & hauekeȝ to þe hyȝe rocheȝ ;
 Þe hole foted fowle to þe flod hyȝeȝ,
 & vche best at a brayde þer hym best lykeȝ ; 305
 Þe fowre frekeȝ of þe folde fongeȝ þe empyre.
 Lo ! suche a wrakful wo for wlatsum dedeȝ
 Parformed þe hyȝe fader on folke þat he made ;
 Þat he chysly hade cherished he chastysed ful harde²,
 In de-voydyngȝe þe vylanye þat venkquyst his þeweȝ. 310

¹ So in MS.² MS. *bardee*.

Destruction of Sodom.

[Lines 946—972.]

e god *in* his greme bygyme; on-lofte;
 an wedere; so wylde þe wynde; he calle;
 vropely vp-wafte & wrastled togeder,
 re half of þe folde, flytande loude. 315

e; clustered bytwene kesten vp torres,
 sik þunder-þrast þirled hem ofte.
 rueled adoun, ridlande þikke,
 flaunkes of fyr & flakes of soufre,
 nolderande smoke smachande ful ille, 320

oute Sodamas & hit syde; alle,
 o Gomorra þat þe grounde laused;
 and Syboym, þise ceteis alle faure,
 lled wyth þe rayn, rostted & breunned,
 layed þat folk þat *in* þose fees lenged; 325
 n þat þe helle herde þe hounde; of heuen
 ferlyly fayn, vnfolded bylyue.

barre; of þe abyme he barst vp at one;
 þe regioun to-rof *in* riftes ful grete,
 alle *in* lyttel cloutes þe clyffe; aywhere, 330
 leue; of þe boke þat lepes *in* twyyme.

e of þe brynston bi þat hit blende were,
 ees & her sydes sunkken to helle.
 wern þo grete rowtes of renkkes *withinne*,
 y wern war of þe wrake þat no wy;e achaped, 335
 omerly ;arm of jelling þer rysed;
 atered þe cloudes þat kryst myzt haf rawþe.

[Lines 1009—1051.]

roþun of a reche ros fro þe blake [pit],
 e *in* þe ayre & vselle; þer flowen,

¹ *sweyed*?

As a fornes ful of flot þat vpon fyr boyles, 340
 When bryzt brennande brondez ar bet þer an-vnder.
 Þis wat3 a vengauunce violent þat voyded þise places,
 Þat foundered hat3 so fayr a folk & þe folde sonkken.
 Þer faure citees wern set, nov is a see called,
 Þat ay is drouy & dym, & ded in hit kynde, 345
 Blo, blubrande, & blak, vnblyþe to neþe,
 As a stynkande stanc þat stryed synne,
 Þat euer of synne & of smach, smart is to fele ;
 Forþy þe derk dede see hit is demed euer more,
 For hit dede3 of deþe duren þere 3et. 350
 For hit is brod & boþemle3, & bitter as þe galle,
 & no3t may lenge in þat lake þat any lyf bere3,
 & alle þe costez of kynde hit combrez vchone ;
 For lay þer-on a lump of led & hit on loft flete3,
 & folde þer-on a lyzt fyþer & hit to founs synkke3. 355
 & þer [þat] water may walter to wete any erþe,
 Schal neuer greue¹ þer-on growe, gresse ne wod nawþer.
 If any schalke to be schent wer schowued þer-inne,
 Þa3 he bode in þat boþem broþely a monyth,
 He most ay lyue in þat lo3e in losyng euer-more, 360
 & neuer dry3e no dethe, to dayes of ende,
 And, as hit is corsed of kynde & hit cooste3 als,
 Þe clay þat clenges þer-by arn corsyes strong,
 As alum & alkan², that angré³ arn boþe,
 Soufre sour, & saundyuer, & oþer such mony ; 365
 & þer waltez of þat water in waxlokes grete,
 Þe spuniande⁴ aspaltoun þat spysere3 sellen ;
 & suche is alle þe soyle by þat se halues,
 Þat fel fretes þe flesch & festred⁵ bones.
 & þer ar tres by þat terne of traytours ; 370
 & þay borgoune3 & beres blome3 ful fayre,

¹ grene ?² alkatran ?³ augre = aigre ?⁴ spinnande ?⁵ festres ?

& þe fayrest fryt þat may on folde growe,
As orenges & oþer fryt & apple garnade;
Also red & so ripe & rychely hwed,
As any dom myzt device of dayntyng oute; 375
Bot quen hit is brused, oþer broken, oþer byten in twynne,
No worldeþ goud hit wyth-inne, bot wydowande¹ askes;
Alle þyse ar teches & tokenes to trow vpon ȝet,
& wittnesse of þat wykked werk & þe wrake after,
Þat oure fader forferde for fylþe of þose ledes. 380

¹ The MS. seems to read wyndowande.

XX.

SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GREEN KNIGHT.

From the same MS., and in the same dialect, as the *Alliterative Poems*.

[FYTTE THE FIRST.]

I.

Sipen þe sege & þe assaut watȝ sesed at Troye,
 Þe borȝ brittened & brent to brondez & askeȝ,
 Þe tulk þat þe trammes of tresoun þer wroȝt,
 Watȝ tried for his tricherie, þe trewest on erthe,
 Hit watȝ Ennias þe athel, & his highe kynde,
 Þat sipen depreced *prouinces*, & *patrounes* bicomē
 Welneȝe of al þe wele *in* þe west ileȝ,
 Fro riche Romulus to Rome ricchis hym swyȝe,
 With gret bobbaunce þat burȝe he biges vpon fyrst,
 & neuenes hit his aune nome, as hit now hat;
 Ticius to Tuskan [turnes], & teldes bigynnes;
 Langaberde *in* Lumbardie lyftes vp homes;
 & fer ouer þe French flod Felix Brutus
 On many bonkkes ful brode Bretayn he setteȝ,
 wyth wyȝne;

15

Where werre, & wrake, & wonder,
 Bi syȝeȝ hatȝ wont *þer-inne*,
 & oft boȝe blysse & blunder
 Ful skete hatȝ skyfted syȝne.

II.

Ande quen þis Bretayn watȝ bigged bi þis burn rych,
 Bolde bredden *þer-inne*, baret þat loȝden,

20

In mony turned tyme tene þat wroȝten;
Mo ferlyes on þis folde han fallen here oft
þen in any oþer þat I wot, syn þat ilk tyme.
Bot of alle þat here bult of Bretaygne kynges 25
Ay watȝ Arthur þe hendest, as I haf herde telle;
For-þi an aunter in erde I attle schawe,
þat a selly in siȝt summe men hit holden,
& an outrage awenture of Arthureȝ wondereȝ;
If ȝe wyl lysten þis laye bot on littel quile, 30
I schal telle hit, as-tit, as I in touȝn herde,
with tonge;
As hit is stad & stoken,
In stori stif & stronge,
With lel letteres loken, 35
In londe so hatȝ ben longe.

III.

þis kyng lay at Camylot vpon kryst-masse,
 With mony luffych lorde[s], ledez of þe best,
 Rekenly of þe rounde table alle þo rich breþer,
 With rych reuel oryzt, & rechles merþes; 40
 þer tournayed tulkes bi-tymeȝ ful mony,
 Iusted ful Iolilē þise gentyle kniȝtes,
 Syþen kayred to þe court caroles to make.
 For þer þe fest watȝ ilyche ful fiftē dayes,
 With alle þe mete & þe mirþe þat men coupe a-vyse; 45
 Such glaumande gle glorious to here,
 Dere dyn vp-on day, daunsyng on nyȝtes,
 Al watȝ hap vpon heȝe in halleȝ & chambrez,
 With lordez & ladies, as leuest hem þoȝt;
 With all þe wele of þe worlde þay woned þer samen, 50
 þe most kyd knyȝteȝ vnder krystes seluen,
 & þe louelokkest ladies þat euer lif haden,
 & he þe comlokest kyng þat þe court haldes;

For al wat3 þis fayre folk in her first age,
on stille;
þe hapnest vnder heuen,
Kyng hyjest mon of wyлле,
Hit were¹ now gret nye to neuen
So handy a here on hille.

IV.

Wyle nw-zer wat3 so 3ep þat hit wat3 nwe cummen, 60
 þat day double on þe dece wat3 þe douth serued,
 Fro þe kyng wat3 cummen with knyȝtes in to þe halle,
 Þe chauntre of þe chapel cheued to an ende;
 Loude crye wat3 þer kest of clerkeȝ & oþer,
 Nowel nayted o-newe, neuened ful ofte; 65
 & syþen riche forth rumnen to reche honde-selle,
 3eȝed ȝeres ȝiftes on hiȝ, ȝelde hem bi hond,
 Debated busyly aboute þo giftes;
 Ladies laȝed ful loude, þoȝ þay lost haden,
 & he þat wan wat3 not wroþe, þat may ȝe wel trawe. 70
 Alle þis mirþe þay maden to þe mete tyme;
 When þay had waschen, worþyly þay wenten to sete,
 Þe best burne ay abof, as hit best semed;
 Whene Guenore ful gay [wat3] grayped in þe myddes,
 Dressed on þe dere des, dubbed al aboute, 75
 Smal sendal bisides, a selure hir ouer
 Of tryed Tolouse, of Tars tapites in-noghe,
 þat weren enbrawdred & beten wyth þe best gemmes,
 þat myȝt be preued of prys wyth penyes to bye,
 in daye; 80
 Þe comlokest to discrye,
 Þer glent with yȝen gray,
 A semloker þat euer he syȝe,
 Soth moȝt no mon say.

¹ were in MS.

V.

Bot Arthure wolde not ete til al were serued, 85
 He wat3 so Ioly of his Ioyfnes, & sum-quat child gered,
 His lif liked hym lyzt, he louied þe lasse
 Auþer to lenge lye, or to longe sitte,
 So bisied him his 3onge blod & his brayn wylde;
 & also anoþer maner meued him eke, 90
 Þat he þur3 nobelay had nomen, he wolde neuer ete
 Vpon such a dere day, er hym deuised were
 Of sum auenturus þyng an vncoupe tale,
 Of sum mayn meruayle, þat he myzt trawe,
 Of¹ alderes, of armes, of oþer auenturus, 95
 Oþer sum segg hym bi-so3t of sum siker knyzt,
 To Ioyne wyth hym in iustying in Iopardé to lay,
 Lede lif for lyf, leue vchon oþer,
 As fortune wolde fulsun hom þe fayrer to haue.
 Þis wat3 [þe] kynges countenaunce where he in court
 were, 100
 At vch farand fest among his fre meny,
 in halle;
 Þer-fore of face so fere,
 He stjtle3 stif in stalle,
 Ful 3ep in þat nw-3ere, 105
 Muche mirthe he mas with alle.

VI.

Thus þer stondes in stale þe stif kyng his-seluen,
 Talkkande bfore þe hy3e table of trifles ful hende;
 There gode Gawan wat3 grayþed, Gwenore bisyde,
 & Agrauayn a la dure mayn on þat oþer syde sittes, 110
 Boþe þe kynges sister sunes, & ful siker kni3tes;
 Bischoþ Bawdewyn abof bi-gine3 þe table,

¹ Of of in MS.

& Ywan, Vryn son, ette wit hym^seluen ;
 Þise were diȝt on þe des, & derworþly serued,
 & siþen mony siker segge at þe sidbordeȝ. 115
 Þen þe first cors come with crakkyng of trumpes,
 Wyth mony baner ful bryȝt, þat þer-bi henged,
 Nwe nakryn noyse wiȝþ þe noble pipes,
 Wylde werbles & wyȝt wakned lote,
 Þat mony hert ful hiȝe hef at her towches ; 120
 Dayntes dryuen þer-wyȝth of ful dere metes,
 Foysoun of þe fresche, & on so fele disches,
 Þat pine [were] to fynde þe place þe peple bi-forne
 For to sette þe syluener¹, þat sere sewes halden,
 on clothe ; 125
 Iche lede as he loued hym-selue
 Þer laght wiȝth-outen loþe ;
 Ay two had disches twelue,
 Good ber, & bryȝt wyn boþe.

VII.

Now wyl I of hor seruise say yow no more, 130
 For vch wyȝe may wel wite no wont þat þer were ;
 An oþer noyse ful newe neȝed biliue,
 Þat þe lude myȝt haf leue liflode to cach.
 For vneþe watȝ þe noyce not a whyle sesed,
 & þe fyrst cource in þe court kyndely serued, 135
 Þer hales in at þe halle dor an aghlich mayster,
 On þe most on þe molde on mesure hyȝhe ;
 Fro þe swyre to þe swange so sware & so pik,
 & his lyndes & his lymes so longe & so grete,
 Half etayn in erde I hope þat he were. 140
 Bot mon most I algate mynn hym to bene,
 & þat þe myriest in his muckel þat myȝt ride ;
 For of bak & of brest al were his bodi sturne,

¹ syluener (?)—dishes.

A grene hors gret & þikke,
 A stede ful stif to strayne,
 In brawden brydel quik,
 To þe gome he wat3 ful gayn.

IX.

Wel gay wat3 þis gome gered in grene,
 & þe here of þe¹ hed of his hors swete;
 Fayre fannand fax vmbe-foldes his schulderes;
 A much berd as² a busk ouer his brest henges,
 Þat wyth his hizlich here, þat of his hed reches,
 Wat3 enesed al vmbe-torne, a-bof his elbowes,
 Þat half his armes þer vnder were halched in þe wyse
 Of a kyngez capados, þat closes his swyre.
 Þe mane of þat mayn hors much to hit lyke,
 Wel cresped & cemmed wyth knottes ful mony,
 Folden in wyth fildore aboute þe fayre grene,
 Ay a herle of þe here, an oper of golde
 Þe tayl & his toppyng twynnen of a sute,
 & bounden boþe wyth a bande of a bryzt grene,
 Dubbed wyth ful dere stonez, as þe dok lasted,
 Syþen þrawen wyth a þwong a þwarle knot alofte,
 Þer mony bellez ful bryzt of brende golde rungen.
 Such a fole vpon folde, ne freke þat hym rydes,
 Wat3 neuer sene in þat sale wyþ syzt, er þat tyme,
 with yze;

He loked as layt so lyzt,
 So sayd al þat hym syze,
 Hit semed as no mon myzt,
 Vnder his dyntte3 dryze.

X.

Wheþer hade he no helme ne hawb[e]rgh nauper,
 Ne no pysan, ne no plate þat pented to armes,

¹ MS. reads bis.² as as in MS.

SIR GAWAYNE AND THE GREEN KNIGHT. 227

schafte, ne no schelde, to schwne ne to smyte, 205
his on honde he had a holyn bobbe,
grattest *in* grene, when greueȝ ar bare,
ax *in* his oþer, a hoge & vn-mete,
tos sparþe to expoun *in* spelle quo-so myȝt;
le of an elnȝerde þe large lenkþe hade, 210
yn al of grene stele and of golde hewen,
burnyst bryȝt, *with* a brod egge,
l schapen to schere as scharp rasores;
le of a stif staf þe sturne hit bi-grypte,
utȝ waunden wyth yrn to þe wandeȝ ende, 215
igrauen *with* grene, *in* *gracons*¹ werkes;
lapped aboute, þat louked at þe hede,
after þe halme halched ful ofte,
tryed tasseleȝ þerto tacched *in*-noghe,
tounȝ of þe bryȝt grene brayden ful ryche. 220
þel heldeȝ hym *in*, & þe halle entres,
de to þe heȝe dece, dut he no woþe,
d he neuer one, bot heȝe he ouer loket.
st word þat he warp, "wher is," he sayd,
ouernour of þis gyng? gladly I wolde 225
segg *in* syȝt, & *with* hym-self speke
raysoun."

To knyȝteȝ he kest his yȝe,
& reled hym vp & doun,
He stemmed & con studie, 230
Quo walt þer most renoun.

XI.

vatȝ lokyng on lenþe, þe lude to be-holde,
h mon had meruayle quat hit mene myȝt,
hapel & a horse myȝt such a hwe lach,
we grene as þe gres & grener hit semed, 235

¹ *gracious* ?

Den grene aumayl on golde lowande bryzter ;
 Al studied þat þer stod, & stalked hym nerre,
 Wyth al þe wonder of þe worlde, what he worch schulde.
 For fele sellyeȝ had þay sen, bot such neuer are,
 For-þi for fantoum & fayryȝe þe folk þere hit demed ; 240
 Þer-fore to answere watȝ arȝe mony aþel freke,
 & al stouned at his steuen, & ston-stil seten,
 In a swoghe sylence þurȝ þe sale riche
 As al were slypped vpon slepe so slaked hor loteȝ
 in hyȝe ; 245

I deme hit not al for doute,
 Bot sum for cortaysye,
 Bot let hym þat al schulde loute,
 Cast vnto þat wyȝe.

XII.

Penn Arþour bifore þe hiȝ dece þat auenture byholdeȝ, 250
 & rekenly hym reuerenced, for rad was he neuer,
 & sayde, "wyȝe, welcum iwys to þis place,
 Þe hede of þis ostel Arthour I hat ;
 Liȝt luflych adoun, & lenge, I þe praye,
 & quat-so þy wylle is, we schal wyt after." 255
 "Nay, as help me," quoth þe hapel, "he þat on hyȝe
 syttes,

To wone any quyle in þis won, hit watȝ not myn ernde ;
 Bot for þe los of þe lede is lyft vp so hyȝe,
 & þy burȝ & þy burnes best ar holden
 Stifest vnder stel-gere on stedes to ryde, 260
 Þe wyȝtest and ȝe worþyest of þe worldeȝ kynde,
 Preue for to play wyth in oþer pure laykeȝ ;
 & here is kydde cortaysye, as I haf herd carp,
 & þat hatȝ wayned me hider, i-wyis, at þis tyme.
 ȝe may be seker bi þis braunch þat I bere here, 265

I passe as *in* pes, & no plyzt seche;
 had I founded *in* fere, *in* fezyng wyse,
 aue a hauberghe at home & a helme bope,
 schelde, & a scharp spere, schinande bryzt,
 le oþer weppenes to welde, I wene wel als, 270
 for I wolde no were, my wedez ar softer.
 if þou be so bold as alle burnez tellen,
 wyl grant me godly þe gomen þat I ask,
 bi-ryzt."

Arthour con onsware, 275
 & sayd, "syr cortays knyzt,
 If þou craue batayl bare,
 Here faylez þou not to fyzt."

XIII.

ay, frayst I no fyzt, *in* fayth I þe telle,
 arn aboute on þis bench bot berdlez chylder; 280
 I were hasped *in* armes on a heze stede,
 re is no mon me to mach, for myztez so wayke.
 þy I craue *in* þis court a crystemas gomen,
 hit is ȝol & nwe ȝer, & here ar ȝep mony;
 any so hardy *in* þis hous holdeȝ hym-seluen, 285
 so bolde *in* his blod, [&] brayn *in* hys hede,
 dar stifly strike a strok for an oþer,
 chal gif hym of my gyft þys giserne ryche,
 ax, þat is heuē *in*-nogh, to hondele as hym lykes,
 I schal bide þe fyrst bur, as bare as I sitte. 290
 any freke be so felle to fonde þat I telle,
 æ lyztly me to, & lach þis weppen,
 uit clayme hit for euer, kepe hit as his auen,
 I schal stonde hym a strok, stif on þis flet.
 ȝ þou wyl diȝt me þe dom to dele hym an oþer, 295
 barlay;

& ȝet gif hym respite,
 A twelmonyth & a day;
 Now hyȝe, & let se tite
 Dar any her-inne oȝt say."

300

XIV.

If he hem stowned vpon fyrst, stiller were þanne
 Alle þe hered-men in halle, þe hyȝ & þe loȝe;
 Þe renk on his rounce hym ruced in his sadel,
 & runisch-ly his rede yȝen he reled aboute,
 Bende his bresed broȝez, blycande grene, 305
 Wayued his berde for to wayte quo-so wolde ryse.
 When non wolde kepe hym with carp he coȝed ful hyȝe,
 Ande rimed hym ful richley, & ryȝt hym to speke:
 "What! is þis Arþures hous," quoth þe haȝel þenne,
 "Þat al þe rous rennes of, þurȝ ryalmes so mony? 310
 Where is now your sourquydrye & your conquestes,
 Your gryndel-layk, & your greme, & your grete wordes?
 Now is þe reuel & þe renoun of þe rounde table
 Quer-walt wyth a worde of on wyȝes speche;
 For al dares for drede, withoute dynt schewed!" 315
 Wyth þis he laȝes so loude, þat þe lorde greued;
 Þe blod schot for scham in-to his schyre face
 and lere;

He wex as wroth as wynde,
 So did alle þat þer were,
 Þe kyng as kene bi kynde,
 Þen stod þat stif mon nere.

320

XV.

Ande sayde, "haȝel, by heuen þyn askyng is nys,
 & as þou folȝ hatȝ frayst, fynde þe be-houes;
 I know no gome þat is gast of þy grete wordes.
 Gif me now þy geserne, vpon godeȝ halue,

325

schal bayþen þy bone, þat þou boden habbes."
 tly lepeþ he hym to, & lazt at his honde;
 feersly þat oþer freke vpon fote lyztis.
 v hatz Arthure his axe, & þe halme grypeþ, 330
 turnely stureþ hit aboute, þat stryke with hit þoȝt.
 stif mon hym bifore stod vpon hyzt,
 re þen ani in þe hous by þe hede & more;
 th sturne schere¹ þer he stod, he stroked his berde,
 ryth a countenaunce dryȝe he droȝ doun his cote, 335
 more mate ne dismayd for hys mayn dinteȝ,
 any burne vpon bench hade broȝt hym to drynk
 of wyne,
 Gawan, þat sate bi þe quene,
 To þe kyng he can enclyne, 340
 "I be-seche now wíth saȝeȝ sene,
 Þis melly mot be myne."

XVI.

olde ȝe, worpilych lorde," quoth Gawan to þe kyng,
 d me boȝe fro þis benche, & stonde by yow þere,
 I wyth-oute vylanye myȝt voyde þis table, 345
 at my legge lady lyked not ille,
 olde com to your counseyl, bifore your cort ryche.
 meþink hit not semly, as hit is soþ knawen,
 such an askyng is heuened so hyȝe in your sale,
 ȝe ȝour-self be talenttyf to take hit to your-seluen,
 il mony so bolde yow aboute vpon bench sytten, 351
 vnder heuen, I hope, non haȝer er of wylle,
 better bodyes on bent, þer baret is rered;
 n þe wakkest, I wot, and of wyt feblest,
 est lur of my lyf, quo laytes þe soþe, 355
 for as much as ȝe ar myn em, I am only to prayse,
 bounté bot your blod I in my bodé knowe;

¹ chere?

& syþen þis note is so nys, þat noȝt hit yow falles,
 & I haue frayned hit at yow fyrst, foldeȝ hit to me,
 & if I carp not comlyly, let alle þis cort rych 360
 bout blame."

Ryche to-geder con roun,
 & syþen þay redder alle same,
 To ryd þe kyng wyth croun,
 & gif Gawan þe game. 365

XVII.

þen comaunded þe kyng þe knyȝt for to ryse;
 & he ful radly vp ros, & ruchched hym fayre,
 Kneled doun bifore þe kyng, & cacheȝ þat weppen;
 & he luflyly hit hym laft, & lyfte vp his honde,
 & gef hym goddeȝ blessing, & gladly hym biddes 370
 þat his hert & his honde schulde hardi be boþe.
 "Kepe þe cosyn," *quoth* þe kyng, "þat þou on kyrf sette,
 & if þou redeȝ hym ryȝt, redly I trowe
 þat þou schal byden þe bur þat he schal bede *after*."
 Gawan gotȝ to þe gome, *with* giserne in honde, 375
 & he baldly hym bydeȝ, he bayst neuer þe helder.
 þen carpeȝ to *syr* Gawan þe knyȝt in þe grene,
 "Refourme we oure forwardes, er we fyrrer passe.
 Fyrst I [h]eþe þe, haþel, how þat þou hattes,
 þat þou me telle truly, as I tryst may?" 380
 "In god fayth," *quoth* þe goode knyȝt, "Gawan I hatte,
 þat bede þe þis buffet, quat-so bi-falleȝ *after*,
 & at þis tyme twelmonyth take at þe anoper,
 Wyth what weppen so þou wylt, & wyth no wyȝ elles
 on lyue." 385

þat oper onswareȝ agayn,
 "Sir Gawan, so mot I þryue,
 As I am ferly fayn,
 þis dint þat þou schal dryue."

XVIII.

Bi gog," *quoth* þe grene knyzt, "syr Gawan, me lykēs, 390
 þat I schal fange at þy fust þat I haf frayst here;
 & þou hatz redily rehersed, bi resoun ful trwe,
 clanky al þe couenaunt þat I þe kynge asked,
 iaf þat þou schal siker me, segge, by þi trawþe,
 þat þou schal seche me þi-self, where-so þou hopes 395
 may be funde vpon folde, & foch þe such wages
 As þou deles me to day, bifore þis douþe ryche."
 'Where schulde I wale þe," *quoth* Gawan, "where is þy
 place?

I wot neuer where þou wonyes, bi hym þat me wrozt,
 Ne I know not þe, knyzt, þy cort, ne þi name. 400
 Bot teche me truly þer-to, & telle me howe þou hattes,
 & I schal ware alle my wyt to wyzne me þeder,
 & þat I swere þe for soþe, & by my seker trawþe."
 'Þat is in-nogh in nwe-ȝer, hit nedes no more,"
Quoth þe gome in þe grene to Gawan þe hende, 405
 'Gif I þe telle trwly, quen I þe tape haue,
 & þou me smopely hatz smyten, smartly I þe teche
 Of my hous, & my home, & myn owen nome,
 þen may þou frayst my fare, and forwardez holde,
 & if I spende no speche, þenne spedeþ þou þe better, 410
 For þou may leng in þy londe, & layt no fyrre,
 bot slokes;

Ta now þy grymme tole to þe,
 & let se how þou cnokeþ."

"Gladly *syr*, for soþe,"

Quoth Gawan; his ax he strokes. 415

XIX.

The grene knyzt vpon grounde grayþely hym dresses,
 A littel lut *witþ* þe hede, þe lere he diskouereþ,

His longe louelych lokkeȝ he layd ouer his croun,
 Let þe naked nec to þe note schewe. 420
 Gauan gripped to his ax, & gederes hit on hyȝt,
 Þe kay fote on þe folde he be-fore sette,
 Let hit down lyȝtly lyȝt on þe naked,
 Þat þe scharp of þe schalk schyndered þe bones,
 & schrank þurȝ þe schyire grece, and scade hit in twyne,
 Þat þe bit of þe broun stel bot on þe grounde. 426
 Þe fayre hede fro þe halce hit [fel] to þe erþe,
 Þat fele hit foyned wyth her fete, þere hit forth roled;
 Þe blod brayd fro þe body, þat blykked on þe grene;
 & nawþer faltered ne fel þe freke neuer-þe-helder, 430
 Bot styȝly he start forth vpon styf schonkes,
 & ru[n]yschly he raȝt out, þere as renkkeȝ stoden,
 Laȝt to his luffly hed, & lyft hit vp sone;
 & syȝen boȝeȝ to his blonk, þe brydel he cachcheȝ,
 Steppeȝ in to stel-bawe & strydeȝ alofte, 435
 & his hede by þe here in his honde haldeȝ;
 & as sadly þe segge hym in his sadel sette,
 As non vnhap had hym ayled, þaȝ hedleȝ now¹,
 in stedde;
 He brayde his bluk² aboute, 440
 Þat vȝly bodi þat bledde,
 Moni on of hym had doute,
 Bi þat his resounȝ were redde.

XX.

For þe hede in his honde he haldeȝ vp euen,
 To-ward þe derrest on þe dece he dresseȝ þe face, 445
 & hit lyfte vp þe yȝe-lyddeȝ, and loked ful brode,
 & meled þus much w^{it}h his muthe, as ȝe may now here.
 "Loke, Gawan, þou be grayþe to go as þou hetteȝ,
 & layte as lelly til þou me, lude, fynde,

¹ MS. ho we = he were ?² blunk ?

As þou hatȝ hette *in* þis halle, herande þise knyȝtes; 450
 To þe grene chapel þou chose, I charge þe to fotte,
 Such a dunt as þou hatȝ dalt disserued þou habbeȝ,
 To be ȝederly ȝolden on nw-ȝeres morn;
 Þe knyȝt of þe grene chapel men knowen me mony;
 For-þi me for to fynde if þou fraysteȝ, fayleȝ þou neuer, 455
 Þer-fore com, *oper* recreaunt be calde þe be-houes."
 With a runisch rout þe rayneȝ he torneȝ,
 Halled out at þe hal-dor, his hed *in* his hande,
 Þat þe fyr of þe flynt flaȝe fro sole houes.
 To quat kyth he be-com, kn[e]we non þere, 460
 Neuer more þen þay wyste *fram* queþen he watȝ wonnen;
 what þenne?

Þe kyng & Gawen þare,
 At þat grene þay laȝe & greme,
 ȝet breued watȝ hit ful bare, 465
 A meruayl among þo menne.

XXI.

Þaȝ Arþer þe hende kyng at hert hade wonder,
 He let no semblaunt be sene, bot sayde ful hyȝe
 To þe comlych quene, wyth cortays speche,
 "Dere dame, to day demay yow neuer; 470
 Wel by-commes such craft vpon crīstmasse,
 Laykyng of enterludeȝ, to laȝe & to syng.
 Among þise, kynde caroles of knyȝteȝ & ladyeȝ;
 Neuer-þe-lece to my mete I may me wel dres,
 For I haf sen a selly, I may not for-sake." 475
 He glent vpon *syr* Gawen, & gaynly he sayde,
 "Now *syr*, heng vp þyn ax, þat hatȝ *in*-nogh hewen."
 & hit watȝ don abof þe dece, on doser to henge,
 Þer alle men for meruayl myȝt on hit loke,
 & bi trwe tytel þer-of to telle þe wonder. 480
 Þenne þay boȝed to a borde þise burnes to-geder,

þe kyng & þe gode knyzt, & kene men hem serued
Of alle dayntygez double, as derrest myzt falle,
Wyth alle maner of mete & mynstralcie boþe;
Wyth wele walt þay þat day, til worþed an ende,
in londe.

485

Now þenk wel, syr Gawan,
For woþe þat þou ne wonde
Þis auenture forto frayn,
þat þou hatz tan on honde.

490

XXI.

THE ROMANCE OF WILLIAM AND THE WERWOLF.

ABOUT A. D. 1360.

Nothing is known concerning the author of the English *Romance of William and the Werwolf* except that he translated his work from the French at the command of Humphrey de Bohun, Earl of Hereford and nephew to King Edward II, who died A. D. 1361. The poem in its English form is supposed to have been written about the year 1360. The dialect is *Midland* (Shropshire). The following extract is taken from *The Ancient Romance of William and the Werwolf*, edited by Sir F. Madden for the Early English Text Society, London 1832.

[Pages 1—15.]

þat bifel in þat forest þere fast by-side,
 he woned a wel old cherl þat was a couherde,
 þe fele winteres in þat forest fayre had kepud
 his nenes ken of þe cuntré as a comen herde,
 þus it bi-tide þat time, as tellen oure bokes. 5
 þe cowerd comes on a time to kepen is bestes,
 at by-side þe borw þere þe barn was inne.
 þe herd had wiþ him an hound his hert to lizt,
 þe to bayte on his bestes wanne þai to brode went;
 þe herde sat þan with hound aþene þe hote sunne, 10
 þat ȝif fully a furlong fro þat fayre child,
 þat stand kyndely his schon, as to here craft falles,
 þat while was þe werwolf went aboute his praye,
 þat behoued to þe barn to bring as he miȝt.
 þat child þan darked in his den dernly him own, 15
 was a big bold barn, ȝ breme of his age,

For spakly speke it coupe tho ȝ spedeliche to wawe;
 Lovely lay it a-long in his lonely denne,
 ȝ buskede him out of þe buschys, þat were blowed grene
 ȝ leved ful lovely, þat lent grete schade, 20
 ȝ briddes ful Bremely on þe bowes singe,
 What for melodye þat þei made in þe mey sesoun.
 Þat litel child listely lorked out of his cave,
 Faire floures for to seche þat he bifore him seye,
 ȝ to gadere of þe grasen þat grene were ȝ fayre; 25
 ȝ whan it was outwent so wel hit him liked
 Þe savour of þe swete sesoun ȝ song of þe briddes,
 Þat [hit] ferde fast aboute floures to gadere,
 ȝ layked him long while to lesten þat merþe.
 The couherdes hound þat time, as happe bytidde, 30
 Feld foute of þe child and fast þider fulwes,
 ȝ sone as he it seiȝ, soþe for to telle,
 He gan to berke on þat barn and to baie it hold,
 Þat it wax neiȝ of his witt, wod for fere,
 And comsed þan to crye so kenly and schille, 35
 ȝ wepte so wonderfast, wite þou for sothe,
 Þat þe son of þe cry com to þe couherde evene,
 Þat he wist witerly it was þe voys of a childe.
 Than ros he up radely ȝ ran þider swiþe,
 ȝ drow him toward þe den bi his dogges noyce; 40
 Bi þat time was the barn for bere of that hounde,
 Drawe him in to his den ȝ darked þer stille,
 ȝ wepte evere as it wolde awede for fere;
 ȝ evere þe dogge at þe hole held it at abaye
 ȝ whan þe kouherd com þidere he koured lowe, 45
 To bihold in at þe hole whi his hound berkyd.
 Þanne of-saw he ful sone þat semliche child,
 Þat so loveliche lay ȝ wep in þat loþli cave
 Cloþed ful komly for ani kud kinges sone,
 In gode cloþes of gold agreþed ful riche, 50

Wiþ perrey and pellure pertelyche to þe riȝttes.
 Þe cherl wondred of þat chaunce ȝ chastised his dogge,
 Bad him blinne of his berking, ȝ to þe barn talked,
 Acoyed it to come to him, ȝ clepud hit oft,
 ȝ foded it wiþ floures ȝ wiþ faire by-hest, 55
 ȝ hiȝt it hastely to have what it wold ȝerne,
 Appeles ȝ alle þinges þat childern after wilnen;
 So for to seiȝ al þe soþe so faire þe cherl glosed,
 Þat þe child com of þe cave and his crynge stint.
 Þe cherl ful cherli þat child tok in his armes, 60
 ȝ kest hit ȝ clipped ȝ oft crist þonkes,
 Þat hade him sent þo sonde, swiche prey to finde.
 Wiȝtliche wiþ þe child he went to his house,
 And bitok it to his wif tiȝtly to kepe;
 A gladere wommon under god no miȝt go on erþe, 65
 Þan was the wif wiþ þe child, witow for soþe.
 Sche kolled it ful kindly ȝ askes is name,
 ȝ it answered ful sone ȝ seide William y hiȝt,
 Þan was þe god-wif glad ȝ gan it faire kepe,
 Þat it wanted nouȝt þat it wold have 70
 Þat þei ne fond him as faire as for here state longed,
 ȝ þe beter be ȝe sure, for barn ne had þei none
 Brouȝt forþ of here bodies, here bale was þe more.
 But soþly þai seide þe child schuld weld al here godis,
 Londes and ludes, as eyer, after here lif dawes; 75
 But fram þe cherl and þe child nou chaunge we oure tale,
 For i wol of þe werwolf a wile nou speke.

Whanne þis werwolf was come to his wlonk denne,
 ȝ hade brouȝt bilfoder for the barnes mete,
 Þat he had wonne wiþ wo, wide-wher aboute, 80
 Þan fond he nest ȝ non eiȝ for nouȝt nas þer leved.
 ȝ whan þe best þe barn missed so balfully he ginneþ,
 Þat alle men upon molde no miȝt telle his sorwe,
 For *reuliche gan he rore*, ȝ rente al his hide,

ȝ fret oft of þe erþe ȝ fel down on swowe, 85
 ȝ made þe most dool þat man miȝt devise.
 ȝ as þe beste in his bale þer aboute wente
 He fond þe feute al fresh, where forþ þe herde
 Hadde bore þan barn beter it to ȝeme;
 Wiȝtly þe werwolf þan went bi nose, 90
 Evene to þe herdes house, ȝ hastely was þare.
 Pere walked he aboute þe walles to winne insiȝt,
 ȝ at þe last lelly a litel hole he findes,
 Pere pried he in prively, ȝ partiliche biholdes
 Hou hertily þe herdes wif hules þat child, 95
 -ȝ hou fayre it fedde ȝ fetisliche it baþede,
 ȝ wrouȝt wiþ it as wel, as ȝif it were hire owne.
 Þanne was þe best bliþe inou for þe barnes sake,
 For he wist it schold be warded wel þan at þe best,
 ȝ hertily for þat hap to heveneward he loked, 100
 ȝ þrolliche þonked god mani þousand siþes
 ȝ seþþen went on is way whider as him liked,
 But whiderward wot i never, witow forsoþe.
 Ak nowþe ȝe þat arn hende haldes ow stille,
 ȝ how þat best þerwe bale was brouȝt out of kinde, 105
 I wol you telle, as swithe, trewly the sothe.
 Werwolf was he non wox of kinde.
 Ac komen was he of kun þat kud was ful nobul,
 For þe kud king of Spayne was kindely his fader,
 He gat him, as god gaf grace, on his ferst wyve, 110
 ȝ at þe burþ of þat barn þe bold lady deyde.
 Sipþen þat kud king so bi his conseyl wrouȝt
 Anoþer wif þat he wedded, a worchipful ladi,
 Þe princes douȝter of Portingale, to prove þe soþe,
 But lelliche þat ladi in ȝouþe hadde lerned miche shame, 115
 For al þe werk of wiche-craft wel ynouȝ che couȝþe,
 Nede nadde ȝhe namore of nigramauncy to lere,
 Of coninge of wicheckcraft wel ynouȝ ȝhe couȝde.

as þat bold quene of burnes yclepud.
 rst child was fostered fayre as it ouȝt, 120
 ȝ ladies it lovely to kepe,
 .t frely barn fayre for to wexe.
 ; moder on a time, as a mix, þouȝt
 how fetis it was, ȝ freliche schapen,
 ouȝt sche þroly þat it no schuld never, 125
 ; king þer, as þe kinde eyre,
 nges first sone were þer alive ;
 sche stifly, as stepmoderes wol alle,
 y a despit to here stepchilderen ;
 ; foure-schore unneþe findestow on gode. 130
 ; hadde þat quene take hire to rede,
 t barn in bale botles for ever,
 ; huld wiȝtli in þis world never weld reaume ;
 t anon sche made of so grete strengþe,
 nens of charmes, þat evel chaunche hire tide. 135
 e þat womman þer wiȝt hadde þat worli child
 oynted þe childe wel al abowte,
 t werwolf wiȝtly þer-after ;
 g of man so mysse hadde ȝhe schaped,
 welt he after as wel as to-fore ; 140
 er likenes þat longeþ to man-kynne,
 werwolf, ne walt he never after.
 is witty werwolf wiste him so schaped,
 was bi þe craft of his kursed stepmoder,
 ie went away he wold, ȝif he miȝt, 145
 sum wicked torn, what bitidde after ;
 outhoute bod, he braydes to þe quene,
 so hetterly to have hire astrangeled,
 h was neiȝ diȝt, to deme þe soþe,
 gan sche crie so kenely ȝ lowde, 150
 es ȝ miȝthi men manliche to hire come,
rusten þe best, nad he be þe liȝttere,

ȝ fled away þe faster in to ferre londes,
 So þat partely in to Poyle he passed þat time,
 As þis fortune bifel þat i told of bifore ;
 Þus was þis witty best werwolf ferst maked,
 But now wol i stint a stounde of þis sterne best
 ȝ tale of þe tidy child þat y of told ere.

* * * * *

Leue lordes now listenes of þis litel barn,
 Þat þe kinde kowherde wif keped so fayre ;
 ȝhe wist it as wel or bet as ȝif it were hire owne,
 Til it big was ȝ bold to buschen on felde,
 ȝ couþe ful craftily kepe alle here bestes,
 ȝ bring hem in þe best lese, whan hem bi-stode nede,
 ȝ wited hem so wisly þat wanted him never one.
 A bowe also þat bold barn bigat him þat time,
 ȝ so to schote under þe schawes scharplyche he lerned,
 Þat briddes ȝ smale bestes wiþ his bow he quelles,
 So plenteousliche in his play þat pertly to telle,
 Whanne he went hom eche niȝt wiþ is drove of bestis,
 He com himself ycharged wiþ conyng ȝ hares,
 Wiþ fesauns, ȝ feldfares, and oþer foules grete,
 Þat þe herd, ȝ his hende wif, ȝ al his hole meyné,
 Þat bold barn wiþ his bowe by þat time fedde ;
 ȝ ȝit hadde fele felawes in þe forest eche day,
 ȝong bold barnes þat bestes also keped,
 ȝ bliþe was eche a barn ho best miȝt him plese,
 ȝ folwe him for his fredom ȝ for his faire þewes,
 For what þing Willam wan a day wiþ his bowe,
 Were it feþered foul, or foure foted best,
 Ne wold þis William never on wiþ-hold to him-selve,
 Til alle his felawes were ferst feffed to here paie ;
 So kynde ȝ so corteys comsed he þere,
 Þat alle ledes him lovede þat loked on him ones,
 ȝ blessedden þat him bare ȝ brouȝt in-to þis worlde,

anhed ȝ murþe schewed þat child evere.
 after on a time, as tellus oure bokes,
 barn his bestes blyþeliche keped,
 perour of Rome rod out for to hunte,
 forest feiþely for to telle ; 190
 menskful meyné, þat moche was ȝ nobul ;
 ap, þat þei founde ful sone a grete bor,
 wiþ hound ȝ horn harde alle sewede ;
 vt entred in a wey evene to attele
 uttenet þat bore, ȝ þe abaie seþþen, 195
 marked he is way ȝ so manly he rides,
 wies were went, ne wist he never whider ;
 ram his men, feþly for to telle,
 ne of hound ne miȝt he here sowne,
 r living lud leste was he one. 200
 on his stif stede a sty forþ þanne takes,
 after his houndes, oþer horn schille ;
 er a werwolf riȝt bi þat way þenne,
 r a gret hert, as þat god wold,
 m þurth chaunce þere þe child pleide, 205
 kowherdes bestes i carped of bifore.
 þanne hastely þat huge best folwed,
 is is stede miȝt strecche on to renne ;
 he com by þat barn ȝ aboute loked,
 ȝ þe wilde hert were aweye boþe, 210
 rist in þis world weré þei were bicomē,
 ard he schuld seche to se of hem more ;
 oiheld he aboute, ȝ þat barn of-seye,
 ow fetys it was, ȝ freliche schapen ;
 it of seg ne sawe he never are, 215
 of lykame, lik him nas none,
 d a semblant þat ever he say wiþ eiȝyen,
 wend witerly for wonder of þat child,
 it were of feyrye, for fairenes þat it welt,

ȝ for þe curteys cuntenaunce þat it kudde þere.

Riȝtly þenne þemperour wendes him evene tille.
 Þe child comes him agayn, ȝ curtesliche him gretes,
 In hast þemperour hendely his gret yng him ȝeldes,
 And, anon-riȝttes after, askes his name,
 ȝ of what kin he were kome komanded him telle.
 Þe child þanne soberliche seide, " Sir at ȝoure wille,
 I wol ȝow telle, as-tyt, trewely alle þe soþe,
 William sire, wel y wot, wiȝes me calles ;
 I was bore here fast bi, by þis wodes side ;
 A kowherde, sire, of þis kontrey is my kynde fader,
 And my menskful moder is his meke wive ;
 Þei han me fostered ȝ fed faire to þis time,
 ȝ here i kepe is kyn as y kan on dayes ;
 But sire, by crist, of my kin know i no more."
 Whan þemperour hade herd holly his wordes,
 He wondered of his wis speche, as he wel miȝt,
 ȝ seide, " þow bold barn bilive i þe praye,
 Go calle to me þe cowherde þow clepus þi fadere,
 For y wold talk [wiþ] him tiȝinges to frayne."
 " Nay sire by god," quap þe barn, " be ȝe riȝt sure."
 " Bi crist" [quop þemperour], " þat is krowned heye ki
 heven,

For me no harm schal he have, never in his live,
 Ac peraventure þurth goddis [grace] to gode may it tu
 For-þi bring him hider, faire barn, y preye."
 " I schal sire," seide þe child, " for[þ]y sauflliche y hop
 I may worche on ȝour word to wite him fro harm."
 " ȝa saflliche," seide þemperour, " so god ȝif me ioie."
 Þe child wi[ȝ]tly þanne wende, wiþ-oute ani more,
 Comes to þe couherdes hows, ȝ clepud him sone,
 For he feiȝ[þ]liche wen[de] þat he his fader where,
 ȝ seide þan " swete sir, s[o] ȝou cristel help,
 Gop yond to a gret lord þat gayly is tyred,

t frek, for soþe, þat i have seie,
 s wiȝtli wiþ þou to speke;
 e goþ til him swiþe, lest he agreved wex." 255
 " seide þe couherde, " seidestow i was here?"
 s," seide þe child, " but he swor formest,
 have no harm; but hendely for gode.
 i com speke wiþ him ȝ passe aȝein sone."
 ching, forþ goþ wiþ þe gode child, 260
 mperour þei etteleden sone;
 on-riȝt, as he him of-seie,
 i þe couherde ȝ curteysly seide,
 ne felawe be þi feiȝþ, for no þing ne wonde,
 mperour, so þe crist help?" 265
 crist," quaþ þe couherde, " þat king is of heven,
 et so hardi to neȝh him so hende,
 have him seie so me wel tyme!"
 seide þemperour, " þe soþe for to knowe
 ilk weiȝh, i wol wel þou wite; 270
 Rome to riȝtleche y weld,
 erde i þe coniure ȝ comande att alle,
 ng þat þou most in þis world lovest,
 ie tiȝtly truly þe soþe,
 old barn be lelly þin owne, 275
 of oþer kin, so þe Crist help."
 omsed to quake, for kare and for drede,
 rist witerly þat he was his lorde,
 s hert be-þou[3]t ȝif he him gun lye,
 stely perceyue, pertilich him þou[3]t; 28
 v, as-tyt, he told him þe soþe,
 fond in þat forest þere fast biside,
 mly cloþing for any kinges sone,
 w ok, þurth help of his dogge;
 ie hade him fed ȝ fostered vii winter. 285
 ide þemperour, " y con þe gret thonke,

þat þou hast [seid] me þe soþe of þis semly childe,
 ʒ tine schalt þou nouȝt þi trawayle, y trow at þe last,
 Ac wend schal it wiþ me witow for soþe ;
 Min hert so harde wilnes to have þis barne, 290
 þat i wol in no wise þou wite it no lenger."
 Whan þemperour so sayde, soþe for to telle,
 ʒe couherde was in care, i can him noþing white ;
 Ac witerly dorst he nouȝt werne þe wille of his lord,
 But graunted him goddeli, on godis holy name, 295
 For to worchen his wille, as lord wiþ his owne.
 Whan William, þis worþi child, wist þe soþe,
 And knew þat þe cowherde was nouȝt his kinde fader,
 He was wiȝtliche awondered ʒ gan to wepe sore,
 ʒ seide saddely to him-self sone þer-after : 300
 " A ! gracious gode god, þouȝ grettest of alle !
 Moch is þi mercy, ʒ þi miȝt, ʒ þi menske, ʒ þi grace !
 Now wot i never in þis world of wham y am come,
 Ne what destené me is diȝt, but god do his wille !
 Ac wel y wot witerly, wiþoute ani faile, 305
 To þis man ʒ his meke wif most y am holde,
 For þei ful faire han me fostered ʒ fed a long time,
 þat god for his grete miȝt al here god hem ȝeld !
 Bot not y never what to done to wende þus hem fro,
 þat han al kindenes me kyd, ʒ y ne kan hem ȝelde." 310
 " Bi stille barn," quaf þemperour,— " blinne of þi sorwe,
 For y hope þat hal þi kin hastely here after [may be kud] ;
 ʒif þou wolt ȝeue þe to gode, swiche grace may þe falle,
 þat alle þi frendes fordedes faire schalstow quite." 314
 " ʒa sire," quaf þe couherde, " ʒif crist wol þat cas may tyde.
 ʒ god lene him grace to god man to worþe."
 ʒ þan, as-tit, to þe child he tauȝt þis lore,
 ʒ seide, " þou swete sone, seþþe þou schalt hennes wende,
 Whanne þou komest to kourt among þe kete lordes,
 ʒ knowest alle þe kuppes þat to kourt langes, 320

Bere þe boxumly ȝ bonure, þat ich burn þe luve;
 Be meke ȝ mesurabul, nouȝt of many wordes;
 Be no tellere of talis, but trewe to þi lorde,
 ȝ prestely for pore men profer þe ever
 For hem to rekeñe wiþ þe riche in riȝt ȝ in skille; 325
 Be feiȝtful ȝ fre, ȝ ever of faire speche,
 ȝ servisabul to þe simple, so as to þe riche
 ȝ felawe in faire manere, as falles for þi state,
 So schaltow gete goddes love ȝ alle gode mennes.
 Leve sone þis lessoun me lerne my fader, 330
 þat knew of kourt þe þewes, for kourteour was he long,
 ȝ hald it in þi hert, now i þe have it kenned,
 þe bet may þe bi-falle, þe worse bestow nevere."
 þe child weped al-way wonderliche fast,
 But þemperour had god game of þat gomes lore, 335
 ȝ comand[ed]e þe couherde curtesli ȝ fayre
 To heve up þat hende child bihinde him on his stede.
 ȝ he so dede deliverly, þough him del þouȝt,
 ȝ bikenned him to crist, þat on croice was peyned.
 Þanne þat barn, as bilive, bygan for to glade, 340
 þat he so realy schuld ride, ȝ redeli as-swithe
 Ful curteisle of þe couherde he cacc[h]es his leve,
 ȝ seppen seyde, " swete sire i beseche ȝou nowþe,
 For godes loue gretes ofte my godelych moder,
 þat so faire haþ me fed ȝ fostered til nowþe, 345
 ȝ lellyche, ȝif our lord wol þat i liif have,
 Sche ne schal nouȝt tyne hire travayle, treuly for soþe;
 ȝ gode sire, for godes love, also greteþ wel oft
 Alle mi freyliche felawes, þat to þis forest longes,
 Han pretilyche in many places pleide wiþ ofte; 350
 Hugonet and huet, þat hende litel dwery,
 ȝ abelot, ȝ martynet, hugones gaie sone,
 ȝ þe cristen akarin, þat was mi kyn fere,
 ȝ þe trewe kinnesman, þe payenes sone,

ȝ alle oȝer frely felawes þat þou faire knowes, 355
 þat god mak hem gode men for his mochel grace.
 Of þe names þat he nemned þemperour nam hede,
 ȝ had gaynliche god game, for he so grette alle
 Of his compers þat he knew so curteysliche ȝ faire;
 ȝ þan bekenned he kouherde [to] Crist ȝ to al halwes¹, 360
 ȝ busked forþ wiþ þat barn, blive on his gate.
 Þe kouherde kayred to his house, karful in hert,
 And neiȝ to barst he for bale, for þe barnes sake.
 ȝ whan his wiif wist, wittow for soþe,
 How þat child from here-warde was wente for ever more, 365
 Þer nis man, on þis mold, þat miȝt half telle
 Þe wo ȝ þe weping þat womman made;
 Sche wolde have sleie hire-self þere soply as blive,
 Ne hæde þe kind kouherde confortd here þe betere,
 ȝ pult hire in hope to have gret help þer-of after. 370

¹ MS. reads *bal alwes*.

XXII.

WILLIAM LANGLANDE.

A. D. 1362.

According to tradition, Langlande, or Longlande, was a native of Cleobury Mortimer, in Shropshire. He is supposed to have been a monk near the Malvern Hills (Worcestershire), where he composed his great poem entitled *The Vision of Piers Ploughman* (or, as it is expressed in Latin, *Visio Willhelmi de Petro Ploughman*), which was most probably written shortly after the plague which ravaged England A. D. 1361-2. It is an allegorical poem, or series of poems, in which the author satirizes the vices and abuses of the age, the degeneracy of the prelates and priests, political corruptions, the avarice and rapacity of the nobility, and the oppression of the poor by the rich.

The dialect is *Southern*, with *Midland* peculiarities. The extracts from *Piers Ploughman* have been copied expressly for the present work from the Vernon MS. in the Bodleian Library.

From the Vision of Piers Ploughman.

In a somer sesun
Whon softe was þe sonne,
I shop me into a schroud
A scheep as I were
In habite of an hermite 5
Unholy of werkes,
Wende I wydene in þis world
Wondres to here ;
Bote in a Mayes morwynyge
On Malverne hules 10
Me bifel a ferly,
A feyrie me þouhte.

I was weori of wandringe,
 And wente me to reste
 Undur a brod banke 15
 Bi a Bourne syde;
 And as I lay and leonede,
 And lokede on þe watres,
 I slumberde in a slepyng,
 Hit sownede so murie. 20
 Þenne gon I meeten
 A mervelous swevene,
 Þat I was in a wilderness,
 Wuste I never where,
 And as I beo-heold in to the Est 25
 An-heiȝ to þe sonne,
 I sauh a tour on a toft
 Wonderliche i-maked¹,
 A deop dale bineoþe,
 A dungun þerinne, 30
 With deop dich and derk
 And dredful of siht.
 A ffeir feld ful of folk
 Fond I þer bitwene,
 Of alle maner of men, 35
 Þe mene and þe riche,
 Worchinge and wondringe,
 As þe world askeþ.
 Some putten hem to the plouȝ,
 And pleiden hem ful seldene, 40
 In eringe and in sowynge
 Swonken ful harde,
 Þat monie of þeos wasturs
 In glotonye distruen.
 And summe putten hem to pruide, 45

¹ MS. reads *i-makeþ*.

Apparaylde hem þerafter
 In cuntenaunce of cloþinge,
 Queinteliche degyset.

To preyere and to penaunce
 Putten heom monye, 50
 For þe love of ur Lord
 Liveden ful harde,
 In hope for to have
 Hevene-riche blisse;
 As ancre and hermytes 55
 That holden hem in heore celles,
 Coveyte not in cuntré
 To carien aboute,
 For non likerous lyfode
 Heore licam to plese. 60

And summe chosen chaffare;
 To cheeven þe better,
 As hit semeþ to ure siht
 þat suche men scholden.
 And summe murþes to maken, 65
 As munstrals cunne.

Bote japers and jangelers,
 Judas children,
 Founden hem ffantasyes,
 And fooles hem maaden, 70
 And habbeþ wit at heor wille
 To worchen, ȝif hem luste.
 þat Poul precheþ of hem
 I dar not preoven it heere;
Qui loquitur turpiloquium 75
 Hee is Luciferes hyne.

Bidders and beggers
 Faste aboute eoden,
 Til heor bagges and heor balies

Weren faste i-crommet;	80
Ffeyneden hem for heore foode,	
Fouȝten atte alle.	
In glotonye, God wot,	
Go heo to bedde,	
And riseþ up wiþ ribaudye,	85
Þis Roberdes knaves;	
Sleep and sleuȝþe	
Suweþ hem evere.	
Pilgrimes and palmers	
Plihten hem togedres,	90
Ffor to seche seint Jeme,	
And seintes at Roome.	
Wenten forþ in heore wey,	
Wiþ mony wyse tales,	
And hedden leve to lyȝen	95
Al heore lif tyme.	
Grete lobres and longe	
Þat loþ weore to swynke,	
Cloþeden hem in copes,	
To beo known for breþren;	100
And summe schopen to hermytes,	
Heore ese to have.	
I ffont ¹ þere ffreres,	
Alle þe ffoure ordres,	
Prechinge þe peple	105
For profyt of heore wombes;	
Glosynge þe gospel,	
As hem good likeþ;	
For covetyse of copes,	
Constreueþ hit ille.	110
For monye of þis maistres	
Mowen clopen hem at lyking,	

¹ For *fond*.

For monye and hire marchaundie
Meeten oft togedre.

Seppe charité haþ be chapmon, 115

Cheef to shriven lordes,

Mony ferlyes han bifalle

In a fewe ȝeres ;

But holychirche biginne

Holde bet togedere, 120

Þe moste mischeef on molde

Mounteþ up faste.

Þer prechede a pardoner,

As he a prest were ;

And brouht up a Bulle 125

With Bisschopes seies,

And seide that himself mihte

A soylen hem alle,

Of ffalsnesse, and ffastinge,

And of vouwes i-broken. 130

Þe lewede men likede him wel,

And leeveþ his speche ;

And comen up knelynge

And cusseden hise Bulle.

He bouchede hem with his Brevet, 135

And blered heore eighen,

And rauhte wiþ his Ragemon

Ringes and broches.

Weore þe Bisschop i-blesset,

And worþ boþe his eres, 140

Heo scholde not be so hardi

To deceyve so þe peple.

Save hit nis not bi þe Bisschop

Þat the boye precheþ ;

Bote þe parisch prest and he 145

Departed[e] þe selver,

þat have schulde þe pore parisschiens
 3if þat heo ne weore.

Parsones and parisch prestes,
 Playneþ to heore Bisschops,
 þat heore parisch haþ ben pore
 Sepþe þe pestilence,
 And askeþ leve and lycence
 At Londun to dwelle,
 And singe þer for simonye,
 For selver is swete.

150

155

þer hoveþ an hundret
 In houves of selk,
 Seriauns hit semeþ
 To serven atte Barre,
 Pleden for pons
 And poundes þe lawe;
 Not for love of ur Lord
 Unloseth heore lippes ones.
 þow mihtest beter meten þe myst
 On Malverne hulles,
 þen geten a mom of heore mouþ,
 Til moneye weore schewed.

160

165

I sauh þe Bisschops bolde,
 And Bachilers of divyn
 Bicoomes Clerkes of a Counte
 þe kyng for to serven.
 Erchedekenes and Dekne,

170

þat Dignité haven
 To preche þe peple
 And pore men to feede,
 Beon lopen to Londun
 Bi leve of heore Bisschopes
 To ben Clerkes of þe Kynges Benche,
 þe cuntré to schende.

175

180

Barouns and Burgeis,
 And Bondemen also,
 I sauh in þat semble,
 As ȝe shul heren heraftur :
 Bakers, bochers, 185
 And breusters monye ;
 Masons, minours,
 And mony oper craftes.
 Dykers and delvers,
 Þat don heore dedes ille, 190
 And driveþ forþ þe longe day
 With *Deu vous save, dam Emme*.

Cookes and heore knaves
 Cryen, " Hote pies, hote !
 Goode gees and grys ! 195
 Go we, dyne, gou we !"
 Taverners to hem
 Tolde þe same tale,
 Wiþ good wyn of Gaskoyne,
 And wyn of Oseye, 200
 Of Ruyn and of Rochel,
 Þe Rost to defye.

Passus Primus de Visione.

What þis mountein bemeneþ
 And þis derke dale,
 And þis feire feld ful of folk, 205
 I schal ow schewe.

A lovely ladi on leor,
 In linnene i-cloþed,
 Com adoun from þe loft,
 And clepte me feire, 210
 And seide, " Sone, slepest þou ?
 Sixt þou þis peple,
 Al hou bisy þei ben

Aboute þe mase?
 Þe moste parti of þe peple
 Ðat passeþ nou on eorþe,
 Haven heo worschupe in þis world,
 Kepe þei no betere;
 Of oþer hevene þen heer
 3eveth þei no tale."

215

Ich was a-ferd of hire fface,
 Ðauh heo feir weore;
 And seide, "Merci, madame,
 What is þis to mene?"

220

"Ðis Tour and þis Toft," quop heo,
 "Treuþe is þere inne;

225

And wolde þat 3e wrou3ten,
 As his word techep!

Ffor he is ffader of ffei,
 Ðat formed ow alle

Boþe wiþ ffel and wiþ fface,
 And 3af ow fyve wittes,
 Forte¹ worschupen him,
 While 3e beoþ heere.

230

And for he hihte þe eorþe

To serven ow uchone,

235

Of wollene, of linnene,

To lyflode at neode,

In mesurable maner

To maken ow at ese;

And comaundet of his cortesy

240

In comune þreo þinges;

Heore nomes beþ needful,

And nempnen hem I þenke,

Bi Rule and bi Resun;

Rehersen hem her-aftur.

245

¹ For *for to*.

“ Þat on cloþing is,
 From chele ow to save ;
 And þat oþur mete at meel
 For meseise of þiselven ;
 And drink whon þow druizest ; 250
 But do hit not out of resun,
 Þat þou weore þe worse
 Whon þou worche scholdest.

“ Dreede dilitable drinke,
 And þou schalt do þe bettre. 255
 Measure is medicine,
 Þauh þow muche ȝeor[n]e.
 Al nis not good to þe gost
 Þat þe bodi lykeþ,
 Ne lyfode to þi licam 260
 Þat leof is to þe soule ;
 Leef not þi licam
 For lyzere him techen,
 Þat is þe wikkede wor[l]d
 Þe to bitraye. 265

For þe ffend and þi ffesch
 Folewen to gedere
 And schenden þi soule,
 Seo hit in þin herte ;
 And for þou scholdest beo war, 270
 I wisse þe þe bettre.”

“ Madame, merci !” quap I,
 “ Me likeþ wel þi wordes ;
 Bote þe moneye on þis molde
 Þat men so faste holden, 275
 Tel me to whom
 Þat Tresour appenden.”

“ Go to þe gospel,” quap heo,
 “ Þat God seiþ himselven ;

Whon þe peple him aposede
 Wiþ a peny in þe Temple,
 3if heo schulden worschupe
 Þerwiþ Cesar heore kyng.

"And he asked of hem,
 Of whom spac þe lettre,
 And whom þe ymage was lyk
 Þat þer inne stod.

" 'Cesar,' þei seiden,
 'We seop wel uchone.'

"Þene '*Reddite*,' quap God,
 'Þat to Cesar falleþ,
Et quæ sunt Dei Deo,'
 Or elles do 3e ille;
 For Rihtfoliche Resoun
 Schulde rulen ou alle,
 And kuynde Wit be Wardeyn
 Oure Weolþe to kepe,
 And tour of ur tresour,
 To take hit at nede,
 For husbondrie and he
 Holden to gedere."

Þenne I fraynede hire feire,
 For him þat hire made,
 "Þat down in þat deope dale,
 Þat dredful is of siht,
 What may hit mene, madame,
 Ich þe biseche?"

"Þat is þe Castel of care," quod heo;
 "Hose¹ comeþ þer-inne
 Mai Banne þat he born was,
 To Bodi or to soule.
 Þer-inne Woneþ a Wiht

¹ For two-so.

ƿat Wrong is i-hote,
 Ffader of ffalsnes,
 He foundede him selven. 315

Adam and Eve
 He eggede to don ille;
 Counseilede Caym
 To cullen his Broþer;
 Judas he Japede 320

Wiþ þe Jewes selver,
 And on an ellene treo
 Hongede him after.
 He is a lettere of love,
 And lyȝeþ hem alle 325
 ƿat trusteþ in heor tresour;
 ƿer no truþe is inne."

þenne hedde I Wonder in my Wit
 What Wommon hit weore,
 ƿat suche wyse wordes 330
 Of holy writ me schewede;
 And halsede hire on þe heiȝe nome,
 Er heo þeonne ȝeode,
 What heo weore witerly
 ƿat techeþ me so feire. 335

"Holi churche Icham," quap heo,
 "þou ouhtest me to knowe;
 Ich þe undurfong furst,
 And þi feiþ þe tauȝte;
 þow brouȝtest me borwes 340
 My bidding to worche,
 And to love me leelly
 While þi lyf durede."

þenne knelede I on my kneos,
 And creȝed¹ hire of grace; 345

¹ For *creyed* or *creied*.

And preiede hire pitously
 To preye for ur sunnes,
 And eke to teche kuyndely
 On Crist to bi-leeve,
 þat Ich his wille mihte worche 350
 þat wrouhte me to mon.
 "Tech me to no Tresour,
 Bote tel me þis ilke,
 Hou I may save my soule,
 þat seint art i-holde." 355

"Whon alle tresour is i-trized," quod she,
 "Treue is þe Beste;
 I do hit on *Deus caritas*,
 To deeme þe soþe,
 Hit is as derworþe a drurie 360
 As deore God him selven.
 For hose trewe of his tonge,
 Telleþ not elles,
 Doþ his werkes þerwiþ,
 And doþ no mon ille, 365
 He is accounted to þe gospel
 On-grounde and on-lofte,
 And eke i-liknet to ur Lord,
 Bi seint Lucus wordes.
 Clerkes þat knowen hit, 370
 Scholde techen hit aboute,
 For cristene and uncristene
 Him cleymeþ uchone.

"Kynges and knihtes
 Scholde kepen hem bi Reson, 375
 And Rihtfuliche Raymen
 þe Realmes abouten,
 And take trespassours,
 And bynden hem faste,

Til treuþe hedde i-termynet 380
 Þe trespass to þe ende.
 Ffor David in his dayes
 He dubbede knihtes,
 Dude hem swere on heor swerd
 To serve truþe ever; 385
 Ðat is þe perte profession
 Ðat apendep to knihtes;
 And not to faste a ffriday
 In ffyve score 3eres,
 But holden wiþ hem and wiþ heore 390
 Ðat asken þe treuþe,
 And leven for no love
 Ne lacching of 3iftus.
 And he þat passeþ þat poynt
 Is *apostata* in þe ordre. 395
 “But Crist kyngene kyng
 Knyghted ten¹,
 Cherubin and Seraphin,
 And al þe foure ordres,
 And 3af hem maystrie and miht, 400
 In his maiesté,
 And tauzte þorw þe Trinité
 Treuþe for to knowen;
 And beo boxum at his biddynge,
 He bad hem not elles. 405
 “Lucifer wiþ legiouns
 Lerede hit in hevene;
 He was lovelokest of siht
 Aftur ur Lord,
 Til he brak boxumnes 410
 Þorw bost of him selven;
 “Þenne fel he wiþ his felawes

¹ These two lines not in V. MS.

And fendes bicomē
 Out of hevene in to helle
 Hobleden faste, 415
 Summe in þe eir, and summe in þe eorþe,
 And summe in helle deope;
 Bote Lucifer louwest
 Liȝþ of hem alle,
 For pruide þat he put out, 420
 His peyne haȝ non ende.
 And alle þat wrong worchen,
 Wende þei schulen,
 After heore deȝ day
 And dwellen wiȝ þat schrewe. 425
 "Ac heo þat worchen þat word,
 þat holi writ techeȝ,
 And endeȝ as Ich er seide
 In profitable werkes,
 Mouwen be siker þat heore soules 430
 Schullen to hevene,
 Þer Treuþe is in Trinité,
 And corouneȝ hem alle.
 For I sigge sikerli,
 Bi siht of þe textes, 435
 Whon alle tresor is i-triȝet,
 Treuþe is þe beste;
 Lereȝ hit þis lewed men,
 For lettrede hit knoweȝ,
 þat treuþe is tresour 440
 Triedest on eorþe."

"Yit have I no kuynde knowing," quod I.

"Þou most teche me betre,

Bi what Craft in my Corps

Hit cumseȝ, and where." 445

"Þou dotest daffe," quap heo,

"Dulle are þi wittes;
 Hit is a kuynde knowynge,
 Þat kenneþ þe in herte,
 For to love þi Lou[e]rd 450
 Levere þen þi selven,
 No dedly sunne to do,
 Dyȝe þauȝ þou scholdest;
 Þis I trouwe beo treuþe,
 Hose con teche þe betre. 455

"Loke þou suffre him to seye,
 And seþþe teche hit forþer;
 For þus techen us his word;
 Worch þou þer-aftur;
 Þat Love is þe levest þing 460
 Þat ur Lord askep.
 And eke þe playnt of pees
 Prechet þe þin harpe:
 Þer þou art murie at þi mete
 Whon me biddeþ þe ȝedde. 465
 For bi kuynde knowynge in herte
 Cumse þer a-ffitte.

"Þat ffalleþ to þe ffader
 Þat formede us alle;
 He loket on us wiþ love, 470
 And lette his sone dye
 Mekeliche for ure misdede,
 Forte amende us alle.
 And ȝit wolde he hem no wo
 Þat wolde him þat pyne, 475
 But mekeliche wiþ mouþe
 Merci he bysouȝte,
 To have pité on þat peple
 Þat pynede him to deþe.

"Þer þou miht seon ensauple 480

In þiself one,
 Hou he was mihtful and meke,
 Þat merci gon graunte
 To hem þat heengen him heiȝe
 And his herte þurleden.

485

“For-þi I rede þe, mihtful of mayn
 Be meke of þi wordes,
 For þe same mesure þat ȝe meten,
 Amis oþer elles,
 ȝe schul be weyen þer-wiþ
 Whon ȝe wenden hennes.

490

“For þauȝ ȝe ben trewe of tonge
 And treweliche winne,
 And eke as chast as a child
 Þat in chirche wepeþ,
 Bote ȝe liven trewely
 And eke love þe pore,
 And such good as God sent
 Treweliche parten,
 ȝe nave no more merit
 In masse ne in houres,
 Þen Malkyn of hire maydenhod
 Þat no mon desyreþ.

495

500

“For James þe gentel
 Bond hit in his Book,
 Þat Treuþe wiþouten ffeȝ
 Is febelore þen nouȝt,
 And ded as a dore-nayl,
 But þe deede folewe.
 Chastité wiþouten charité
 Wite þou forsoþe;
 Is as lewed as a Laumpe
 Þat no liht is inne.

505

510

“Moni chapeleyns ben chast,

But Charité is aweye; 515
 Beo no men hardore þen þei
 Whon heo beoþ avaunset,
 Unkuynde to heore kun,
 And to alle cristene
 Chewen heore charité, 520
 And chiden after more;
 Such charité wipouten chastité
 Worþ claymed in helle.
 For þeos beþ wordes i-writen
 In þe Ewangelye, 525
*Date, et dabitur vobis*¹,
 For-þi I seye, as I seide
 Bi siht þe textes,
 Whon alle tresor is i-trizet
 Treuþe is þe beste." 530

From the Passus Secundus de Visione.

Now ffals and ffauvel
 Fareþ forþ to gedere,
 And Meede in þe middel,
 And al þe meyné aftur.
 I have no while to telle 535
 Þe tayl þat hem folweþ;
 Of so mony maner men
 þat on molde liven
 Bote gyle was for-goere,
 And gilede hem alle. 540
 Soþnesse sauh hem wel,
 And seide bote luyte,
 Bote prikede on his palfrey,
 And passede hem alle,
 And com to þe kynges Court, 545

¹he V. MS. here abruptly terminates with the words "*for I dele ow alle.*"

And Conciencie tolde;
 And Conciencie to þe kyng
 Carpede hit aftur.

"Now, be Crist," quod þe kyng,
 "ȝif I mihte chacche
 Ffals oper ffauwel,
 Or eny of his ffeeres,
 I wolde be wreken on þis wrecches
 Þat worchen so ille,
 And don hem hongen bi þe hals,
 And al þat hem mayntenen;
 Schal never non uppon molde
 Meyntene þe leste,
 But riht as þe lawe lokeþ,
 Let fallen of hem alle."

And comaunde þe cunstable
 Þat com at þe furste,
 To a-tache þe Traytours,
 For eny Tresour,
 Ich hote ȝe ffetre ffals faste
 For eny kunnes ȝiftus,
 And gurdeþ of gyles hed,
 Let him go no forþer;
 And bringeþ Meede to me
 Maugre hem alle."

Symonye and Sivile
 I seende hem to warne,
 Þat holichirche for hem
 Worþ harmet for evere;
 And ȝif ȝe chacche lygere
 Let him not askape
 To ben set on þe pillori
 For eny preyere.

Dreede at þe door stood,

And þe dune herde, 580
 And wihtliche wente,
 To warne þe ffalse,
 And bad him faste to fle,
 And his feeres eke.

þen ffals for fere 585
 Fleih to þe ffreeres,
 And gyle doþ him to go,
 A-gast for to dyȝe;
 Bote marchaundes metten wiþ hym
 And maaden him to abyden, 590
 Bi-souȝten him in heore schoppes
 To sullen heore ware,
 Apparayleden him as a prentis
 þe peple for to serve.

Lijtliche Lyȝere 595
 Leop away þennes,
 Lurkede thorw lones,
 To-logged of monye.
 He nas nouȝwher welcome,
 For his mony tales, 600
 Bote over al i-hunted,
 And hote to trusse,
 Pardoners hedden pité,
 And putten him to house.
 Wosschen him and wrongen him, 605
 And wounden him in cloutes,
 And senden him on Sonendayes
 Wiþ seales to churches,
 And ȝaf pardun for pons
 Pound-mele aboute. 610

þis leornden þis leches,
 And lettres him senden,
 For to ben wiþ hem
 Watres to loke.

Spicers speeken wip him, 615
 To aspien heore ware;
 For he kennede him in heore craft,
 And kneuz monye gummess.

Munstrals and messagers
 Metten wip him ones, 620
 And wip heoden him half a 3er
 And ellevene wykes.

Ffreres wip feir speches
 Fetten him penness,
 For knowynge of comers 625
 Kepten him as a ffrere;
 Bote he hap leve to lepen out,
 As ofte as him lykeþ,
 And is welcome whon he wole,
 And wonen wip hem ofte. 630

And alle fledden for fere,
 And flowen into huirnes;
 Save Meede þe mayden,
 No mon dorste abyde.
 But trewely to telle, 635
 Heo tremblede for fere,
 And eke wepte and wrong hire hondess
 Whon heo was atachet.

From the Passus Tertius de Visione.

Now is Meede þe mayd i-nomen
 And no mo of hem alle, 640
 Wip Beodeles and Baylyfs
 I-brouht to þe kyng.
 Þe kyng clepet a Cler[ke],
 I knowe not his nome,
 To take Meede þe mayden 645
 And maken hire at ese.

"Ichulle assayen hire myself,
 And sopliche aposen,
 What mon in þis world
 þat hire weore leovest. 650
 And ȝif heo worche be my wit,
 And my wil folewe,
 I schal forȝive hire þe gult,
 So me God helpe!"

Cortesliche þe clerk þo, 655
 As þe kyng hihte,
 Tok þe mayden bi þe middel
 And brouhte hire to chaumbre;
 Þer was murþe and munstralsye,
 Meede wiþ to plese. 660
 Heo þat woneþ at Westmunstre
 Worschipeþ hire alle,
 Gentiliche wiþ joye;
 Þe Justise soone
 Busked him in to þe bour 665
 Þer þe Buyrde was inne,
 Cumfortede hire kuyndely,
 And made hire good chere;
 And seide, "Mourne þou not, Meede,
 Ne make þou no serwe; 670
 For we wolen wysen þe kyng,
 And þi wey schapen,
 For alle Conciencie craft
 And Casten, as I trouwe."

Mildeliche þenne Meede 675
 Merciede hem alle
 Of heore grete goodnesse,
 And ȝaf þem uchone
 Coupes of clene Gold,
 And peces of selver, 680

Rynges wiþ Rubyes,
 And Richesses inouwe;
 Þenne tok þei leve
 Þise lordynges at Meede.
 Wiþ þat þer come Clerkes
 To Cumforte þe same.
 We biddeþ þe be bliþe;
 For we beoþ þin owne,
 Fforte worche þi wil,
 While ur lyf dureþ.

685

690

* * * * *
 Þenne com þer a confessour,
 I-copet as a ffrere;
 To Meede þe mayden
 Ful mekeliche he loutede,
 And seide ful softly,
 In schrift as hit weore,
 "Þauȝ ffals hedde folewed þe
 Þis ffistene winter,
 I schal asoyle þe myself
 For a summe of whete,
 And eke be þi Baude,
 And Bere wel þin ernde
 Among Clerkes and knihtes,
 Conciencie to falle."

695

700

Þenne Meede ffor hire misdede
 To þat mon knelede,
 And schrof hire of hir sunnes,
 Schomliche, I trouwe;
 Heo tolde him a tale,
 And tok him a noble,
 For to ben hire beodemon
 And hire Baude after.

705

710

Þenne he asoylede hire soone,

And to hire seide,
 "We han a wyndow in worching 715
 Wol stonden us ful heize,
 Woldustow Glaze þe Gable
 And grave þerinne þi nome,
 Siker schulde þi soule ben
 For to dwellen in hevene." 720

"Wuste I þat," quoth þe wommon,
 Þer nis nouþer windou ne Auter
 Þat I ne schulde maken oþer mende
 And my nome write
 Þat uche mon schulde seye 725
 Ich were suster of house."

Bote God to alle good folk
 Such gravyng defendet,
 An seiþ *Nesciat sinistra,*
Quid faciat dextra. 730
 Lete not þi luft hond
 Late ne raþe
 Beo war what þi riht hond
 Worcheþ or deleþ.

Meires and maistres, 735
 And 3e þat beoþ mene
 Bitwene þe kyng and þe comuns
 To kepe þe lawes,
 As to punisschen on pillories
 Or on pynnyng stoles, 740
 Brewesters, Bakers,
 Bochers and Cookes,
 For þese be men uppon molde
 Þat most harm worchen
 To þe pore people 745
 Þat al schal a-buggen;
 Þei punisschen þe peple

Priveliche and ofte,
 And rechep þow Regatorie,
 And Rentes hem buggeþ,
 Wiþ þat þe pore peple
 Schulde puten in heore wombe.
 For toke þei on trewely,
 Þei timbrede not so hye,
 Ne bouzte none Borgages,
 Beo 3e certeyne.

750

755

Bote Meede þe mayden
 Þe meir heo bi-souzte
 Of alle suche sullers
 Selver to taken
 Or presentes wiþouten pons,
 As peces of selver,
 Rynges wiþ Rubyes,
 Þe Regratour to favere;
 "For my love," quod þe ladi,
 "Love hem wel uchone,
 And soffre hem to sulle
 Sum del aȝeyn Resoun."

760

765

Bote Salamon þe sage
 A sarmoun he made,
 To amende meires
 And men þat kepeþ þe lawe;
 And tolde hem þis teeme,
 Þat I wol telle nouþe,
Ignis devorabit tabernacula eorum
qui libenter accipiunt munera.

770

775

Among þis lewede men
 Þis Latin amounteþ,
 Þat ffuir schal falle
 And brenne atte laste
 Þe houses and þe homes

780

Of hem þat desyreþ

For to have ȝiftes

In ȝouþe or in elde.

Þe kyng com from counseyl,

785

And cleped aftur Meede,

And of sente hire aswiþe

Seriauns hire to fette,

And brouȝte hire to boure

Wiþ blisse and wiþ joye.

790

Corteisliche þe kyng

Cumseþ to telle,

To Meede þe mayden

Melodyes wordes :

"Qweynteliche," quop þe kyng,

795

"Wrount hastou ofte,

Bote worse wroutest þou never

Þen whon þou fals[e] toke.

Ac I forȝive þe þis gult,

And graunte þe my grace ;

800

Hennes to þi deþ day

Do so no more."

"Ichave a kniht hette Concience,

Com late from biȝonde ;

ȝif he wilne þe to wyf,

805

Wolt þou him have ?"

"Ȝe, lord," quop þat ladi,

"Lord forbeode hit elles !

Bote Ich holde me to oure heste,

Honge me sone."

810

Þenne was Concience i-clepet

To comen and apeeren

To-fore þe kyng and his Counsel,

Clerkes and opere.

*Kneolyng*e Concience

815

To þe kyng loutede.

“Woltou wedde þis wommon,” quod þe kyng,

“ʒif I wol assente?

Heo is fayn of þi felawschupe,

For to beo þi make.”

820

“Nay!” quap Conciencie to þe kyng,

“Crist hit me forbeode!

Er Ich wedde such a wyf,

Wo me bityde!

Heo is frele of hire flesch,

825

Ffikel of hire tonge,

Heo makeþ men misdo

Moni score tymes;

In trust of hire tresour

Teoneþ ful monye.”

830

* * * * *

“Sisours and Sumpnours,

Suche men hire preisen;

Schirreves of schires

Weore schent ʒif heo nere;

Heo doþ men leosen heore lond

835

And heore lyves after;

And leteþ passe persons,

And payeþ for hem ofte,

And ʒeveþ þe Jayler Gold

And grotes to gedere,

840

To unffetere þe ffalse

And fleo where hem lykeþ;

Heo takeþ þe trewe bi þe top

And tiʒeþ him faste,

And hongep him for hate

845

þat harmede nevere.

Heo þat ben curset in cons[is]torie

Counteþ hit not at a Russche;

For heo Copeþ þe Comissarie,
And Coteþ þe Clerkes.

850

Heo is asoyled as sone
As hire self lykeþ;

“ Heo may as muche do
In a mooneþ ones,

As ure secre seal

855

In seven score dayes.

Heo is privé wiþ þe pope,
Provisours hit knowen;

Sir Simonie and hire sel

Asselen the Bulles.

860

Heo blessedede the Bisschopes,
Douȝ þat þei ben lewed;

Provendrerres, persuns,

Preostes heo maynteneþ.

Þer heo is wel wiþ þe kyng,

865

Wo is þe Reaume;

Ffor heo is fflaverable to ffals,

And fouleþ Treuþe ofte.

“ Barouns and burgeis

Heo bringeþ to serwe,

870

Heo Buggeþ wiþ heore Juweles

Ur Justises heo schendeþ,

Heo lihþ aȝeyn þe lawe

And letteþ so faste,

Þat feiþ may not han his forþ

875

Hir florins gon so þikke;

Heo ledeþ þe lawe as hire luste

And love dayes makeþ;

Þe Mase for a Mene mon

Þauȝ he mote evere,

880

Lawe is so lordlich

And loþ to maken eende;

Wiþouten presentes or pons
 Heo pleseþ ful fewe.
 Clergye and Covetise
 Heo Coupleþ to gedere.
 Þis is þe lyf of þe ladi;
 Ur Lord ȝive hire serwe!
 And alle þat meynteneþ hire,
 Ur Lord ȝive hem care!
 Ffor pore may have no pouwer
 To pleyne, þauȝ hem smerte.
 Such a Mayster is Meede
 Among Men of goode."

Passus Quintus de Visione, ut supra.

Þe kyng and his knihtes
 To þe Churche wenten
 To heere Matyns and Masse
 And to þe Mete aftur.
 Þene wakede I of my wink,
 Me was wo wiþ alle,
 Þat I nedde sadloker i-slept,
 And i-seȝe more.
 Er I a ffurlong hedde i-fare
 A ffeyntise me hente,
 Þat fforþer miht i not a fote
 For defaute of sleep,
 I sat softeliche a-doun,
 And seide my beoleeve,
 And so I blaberde on my Beodes,
 Þat brouhte me aslepe.
 Þen sauh I mucche more
 Þen I beofore tolde,
 Ffor I sauh þe ffeld ful of ffolk,
 Þat ich of bifore of schewede,

And Conciene wiþ a Crois 915
 Com for to preche;
 He preide þe peple
 Have pité of hem selve
 And preuede þat þis pestilences
 Weore for puire synne, 920
 And þis soupwesterne wynt,
 On a saterday at even,
 Was a perteliche for pruide,
 And for no poynt elles;
 Piries and Plomtres 925
 Weore passchet to þe grounde,
 In ensaumple to Men
 Þat we sholde do þe better;
 Beches and brode okes
 Weore blowen to þe eorþe, 930
 And turned upward þe tayle,
 In toknyng of drede
 Þat dedly synne or domesday
 Schulde fordon hem alle.

* * * * *

Þenne ron Repentaunce, 935
 And Rehersed his teeme;
 And made William to weope
 Water wiþ boþe his eȝen.
 Pernel Proud-herte
 Platte hire to grounde, 940
 And lay longe ar heo lokede
 And to ur ladi criede,
 And beohiȝte to him
 Þat us alle maade,
 Heo wolde unsouwen hire smok, 945
 And setten þer an here,
Forte sayten hire fflsch

Dat ffrele was to synne.
 "Schal never liht herte me hente,
 Bote holde me lowe
 And suffre to be mis-seid,
 And so dude I never;
 And nou I con wel meke me,
 And merci beseche,
 Of al þat Ichave i-had
 Envye in myn herte."

* * * * *

Envye wip hevi herte
 Asket aftur schrift,
 And gretliche hisustus
 Biginneþ to schewe.
 As pale as a pelet,
 In a palesye he seemede;
 I-cloped in a Caurimauri,
 I coupe him not discreve,
 As a leek þat hedde i-lezen
 Longe in þe sonne,
 So lokede he wip lene chekes
 Lourede he foule.
 His Bodi was Bolled,
 For wrappe he bot his lippes,
 Wropliche he wrong his fust,
 He þouzte him a-wreke
 Wip werkes or wip wordes,
 Whon he seiȝ his tyme.
 Venim or vernisch
 Or vinegre, I trouwe,
 Walleþ in my wombe
 Or waxeþ, ich wene.
 I ne mihte mony day don
 As a mon ouhte,

Such wynt in my wombe
Waxeþ er I dye.

“Ichave a neihȝebor me neih,
I have annyzed him ofte,
Ablamed him behynde his bak 985
To bringe him in disclaundre
And peired him bi my pouwer
I-punished him ful ofte;

Bilowen him to lordes
To make him leose selver, 990
I-don his ffrendes ben his fon
Wiþ my false tonge;
His grase and his good hap
Greveþ me ful sore.

Bitwene him and his meyné 995
Ichave i-mad wrapþe
Boþe his lyf and his leome
Was lost þorw my tonge.

Whon I mette him in þe market
þat I most hate, 1000
Ich heilede him as hendely,
His frend as I weore;

He is douȝtiore þen I,
I dar non harm don him;
Bote hedde I maystrie and miht, 1005
I morþerde him for evere.

“Whon I come to þe church,
And knele before þe Roode,
And scholde preiȝe for þe peple
As þe pres[t] us techen, 1010

þenne I crie uppon my knes
þat Crist ȝive hem serwe,
þat hap i-bore awei my Bolle
And my brode schete.

"From þe Auter I turne
 Myn eije, and biholde 1015
 Hou Heyne haþ a new Cote,
 And his wyf anoper.
 Þene I wussche hit weore myn,
 And al þe web after. 1020
 Of his leosinge I lauhwe,
 Hit likeþ me in myn herte;
 Ac for his wynnyng I wepe,
 And weile þe tyme;
 I deme men þat don ille, 1025
 And ȝit I do wel worse.
 For I wolde þat uch a wiht
 In þis world were mi knave.
 Þus I live loveles,
 Lyk a luper dogge; 1030
 Þat al my brest Bolleþ,
 For bitter of my galle.
 May no suger so swete
 Dryve hit from myn herte?
 Ne no *diopendion* 1035
 A-swagen hit unneþe
 ȝif schri[f]t schulde hit þenne swopen out
 A gret wonder hit were.
 "Ȝus rediliche," quod Repentaunce,
 And Radde him to goode: 1040
 "Serw for heore sunnes
 Saveþ men ful monye."
 "Icham sori," quod Envye,
 "I ne am but seldene oþer,
 And þat makeþ me so mad, 1045
 For I ne may me venge."
 Þenne com Covetyse,
 I couþe him not discreve,

So hungri and so holewe
Sire Hervi him loket. 1050
He was bitel brouwed,
Wiþ twei blered eȝen
And lyk a leþerne pors
Lullede his chekes,
In a toren Tabart 1055
Of twelve wynter Age;
But ȝif a lous coupe lepe,
I con hit not i-leve
Heo scholde wandre on þat walk,
Hit was so þredbare. 1060
 " Ichave ben covetous," quod þis Caityf,
 " I be-knowe hit heere,
 For sum tyme I servede
 Simme atte Noke,
 And was his pliht prentys 1065
 His profyt to loke.
 " Ffurst I leornede to lyȝe,
 A lessun or tweyne;
 And wikkedliche for to weie
 Was myn oþer lessun; 1070
 To Winchester and to Wych
 Ich wente to þe ffeire,
 Wiþ mony maner marchaundise,
 As my mayster hihte.
 Bote nedde þe grace of gyle 1075
 I-gon among my ware,
 Hit hedde ben unsold þis seven ȝer,
 So me God helpe!
 " Þenne I drouȝ me among þis drapers,
 My Donet to leorne, 1080
 To drawe þe lyste wel along,
 Þe lengore hit semede;

Among þis Riche Rayes
 Lerne I a Lessun,
 Brochede hem wiþ a pak-neelde, 1085
 And pletede hem to-gedere,
 Putte hem in a pressour,
 And pinnede hem þer Inne,
 Til ten ȝerdes oþer twelve
 Tolden out þrettene. 1090

“And my wyf at Westmunstre
 Þat wollene cloþ made;
 Spak to þe spinsters
 For to spinne hit softe;
 Þe pound þat heo peysede 1095
 A quatrū more peisede
 Þen myn Auncel dude,
 Whon I weyede treuþe.

“I bouhte hire barly
 Heo breuh hit to sulle, 1100
 Peni ale and piriwhit
 Heo pourede to-gedere,
 For laborers and louh folk
 Þat liven be hem-selven.

“Þe Beste in þe Bed-chaumbre, 1105
 Lay bi þe wowe;
 Hose Bummede þerof
 Bouȝte hit þer after,
 A Galoun for a Grote,
 God wot no lasse! 1110
 Whon hit com in Cuppe-mel,
 Such craftes me usede.

Rose þe Regratour
 Is hire rihte name;
 Heo haþ holden hoxterye 1115
 Þis Ellevene wynter,

Bote I swere nou,
 Dat sunne wol I lete,
 And never wikkedliche weye,
 Ne fals chaffare usen ; 1120
 Bote weende to Walsyngham,
 And my wyf also,
 And bidde þe Rode of Bromholm
 Bring me out of dette."

* * * * *

A þousent of Men þo 1125
 Prongen to-geders,
 Weopyng and weylyng
 For heore wikkede dedes,
 Crizinge upward to Crist,
 And to his clene moder, 1130
 To have grace to seche seint treuþ
 God leve þei so mote.

Bote þer were fewe men so wys
 Dat coupe þe wei þider.
 Bote bustelyng forþ as bestes 1135
 Over valeyes and hulles ;
 Til was late and longe
 Dat þei a leod metten,
 Apparayled as a Palmere
 In Pilgrimes wedes. 1140
 He bar a bordun i-bounde
 Wiþ a brod lyste,
 In a weyebondes wyse
 I-wriþen aboute ;
 A Bagge and a Bolle 1145
 He bar bi his syde ;
 An hundred of ampoules
 On his hat seeten,

Signes of Synay,
 And Schelles of Galys, 1150
 Moni Cros on his cloke,
 And keizes of Rome,
 And þe vernicle bi-fore,
 For men schulde knowe,
 And seo be his signes 1155
 Whom he souht hedde.
 Þis ffolk fraynede him feire,
 From whenne þat he coome.
 "Ffrom Synay," he seide,
 "And from þe sepulcre; 1160
 In Bep̄leem and Babiloyne,
 I have ben in boþe;
 In Ynde and Assye,
 And in monye oþer places.
 3e mouwe seo be my signes, 1165
 Þat sitteþ on myn hat,
 Þat I have walked ful wyde
 In weet and in druye,
 And souht goode seyntes
 For my soule hele." 1170
 "Knowest þou ouht a Corseynt,
 Men calleþ seynt Treuþe?
 Coust þou wissen us þe wey,
 Wher þat he dwelleþ?"
 "Nay, so God glade me!" 1175
 Seide þe gome þenne,
 "Sauh I nevere Palmere,
 Wiþ pyk ne wiþ schrippe,
 Such a seint seche
 Bote now in þis place." 1180
 "Peter!" quod a plouz Mon,
 And putte forþ his hed,

"I knowe him as kuyndeliche
 As Clerk doþ his bokes;
 Clene Concience and Wit 1185
 Taughte me to his place,
 And dude enseure me seþþe
 To serve him for ever,
 Boþe to sowen and to setten,
 While I swynke mihte. 1190
 I have ben his felawe
 Þis fiftene wynter,
 Boþe i-sowen his sed,
 And suwed his beestes,
 And eke i-kept his Corn, 1195
 I-caried hit to house,
 I-dyket and i-dolven,
 I-don what he hihte,
 Wiþinnen and wiþouten
 I wayted his profyt. 1200
 Þer nis no laborer in þis leod
 Þat he loveþ more.
 For þauh I sigge hit my self,
 I serve him to paye;
 I have myn hure of him wel, 1205
 And operwhile more.
 He is þe presteste payere
 Þat pore men habbeþ;
 He wiþhalt non hyne his huire,
 Þat he hit naþ at even. 1210
 He is as lough as a lomb,
 Lovelich of speche;
 And ȝif ȝe wollen i-wite
 Wher þat he dwelleþ,
 I wol wissen on þe wey 1215
Hom to his place."

Passus Sextus de Visione, ut supra.

[For] kuynde wit wolde
 þat uche mon wrouhte,
 Wiþ techinge or wiþ tilynge,
 Or travaylynge of hondes; 1220
 Actyf lyf or contemplatyf
 Crist wolde hit alse.
 For so seiþ þe Sauter
 In Psalm of *Beati omnes*,
 He þat get his fode her 1225
 Wiþ travaylinge in Treuþe,
 God giveþ him his blessing
 þat his lyflode so swynkeþ.
 "Yit I preye þe," quod Pers,
 "Par charité, zif þou conne 1230
 Eny lyf of leche Craft,
 Lere hit me, my deore;
 For summe of my servauns,
 Beoþ seke oþer while,
 Of alle þe wike heo worcheþ not, 1235
 So heor wombe akeþ."
 "I wot wel," quod Hunger,
 "What seknesse hem eileþ;
 þei han maunget over muche,
 þat makeþ hem grone ofte. 1240
 Ac Ich hote þe," quod Hunger,
 "An þou þin hele wylne,
 þat þou drynke no dai
 Til þou have dynet sumwhat.
 Ete not, Ich hote þe, 1245
 Til hunger þe take,
 And sende þe sum of his sauce
 To saver þe þe betere;

Keep sum till soper tyme,
 And ffaste þou not to longe, 1250
 And Rys up ar appetyt
 Habbe i-ȝeten his fulle.
 Let not sir surfet
 Sitten at þi Bord.
 And ȝif þou diȝete þe þus, 1255
 I dar legge boþe myn eres,
 Þat ffisyk schal his forred hod
 For his lyflode sulle,
 And eke his cloke of Calabre,
 Wiþ knappes of gold, 1260
 And beo ffayn, be my ffeip!
 His ffishyk to lete,
 And leorne to labre wiþ lond,
 Leste lyflode ffaile.
 Þer beoþ mo lyȝers þen leches, 1265
 Ur Lord hem amende!
 Þey don men dyȝen þorwȝ heor drinke,
 Er destenye wolde."
 "Bi seint Poul!" quod Pers,
 "Þeos beoþ prophitable wordes! 1270
 Þis is a loveli lesson,
 Ur Lord hit þe for-ȝelde!"
 Wend þou whon þi wille is,
 Wel þe beo for ever.
 "I beo-hote þe!" quod Hungur, 1275
 "Heonnes nul I wende,
 Er I hav i-dynet bi þis day,
 And i-dronke boþe."
 "I have no peny," quod Pers,
 "Poletes to bugge, 1280
 Nouþer gees ne grys,
 Bote twey grene cheeses,

And a few Cruddes and Craym,
 And a þerf Cake,
 And a lof of Benes and Bren
 I-Bake for my children;
 And I sigge, bi my soule!
 I have no salt Bacon,
 Ne no Cokeneyes, bi Crist!
 Colopus to maken.

1285

1290

“Bot I have porettes and percyl
 And mony Col plontes,
 And eke a Cou and a Calf,
 And a Cart Mare
 To drawe a-feld my donge,
 Whil þe drouhþe lasteþ;
 Bi þis lyflode I mot lyven
 Til Lammasse tyme.
 Bi þat, Ich hope forte have
 Hervest in my Croft,
 Þenne may I dihte þi dyner,
 As þe deore lykeþ.”

1295

1300

Al þe pore peple
 Pesecoddes fetten,
 Bake Benes in Bred
 Þei brouhten in heor lappes,
 Chibolles Cheef mete
 And ripe chiries mony,
 And proferde Pers þis present
 To plese with Hungur.

1305

1310

Honger eet þis in haste,
 And asked aftur more.
 Þenne þis folk, for fere,
 Fetten him monye,
 Porettes and peosen,
 For þei him plese wolden.

1315

From þat tyme þat þulke weore eten

Take he schulde his leve

Til hit to heruest hizede.

Þat newe corn com to chepynge.

1320

þenne was þat folk fayn,

And fedde Hunger ȝeorne,

Wiþ goode Ale, and glotonye,

And gart him to slepe.

And þo nolde þe wastor worche,

1325

But wandren aboute,

Ne no beggere eten Bred

That Benes inne coome,

But Coket and Cler-matin,

An[d] of clene whete;

1330

Ne non halfpeny Ale

In none wyse drynke,

Bote of þe Beste and þe Brouneste

Þat Brewesters sullen.

Laborers þat have no lond

1335

To lyven on bote heore honden,

Deyne not to dyne a day

Niht olde wortes;

Mai no peny ale hem paye,

Ne no pece of Bacun,

1340

Bote hit weore ffresh fflessch

Or elles ffisch i-ffrizet,

Boþe Chaud and plus chaud,

For Chele of heor mawe.

Bote he beo heihliche i-huret,

1345

Elles wol he chide,

Þat he was werkmon i-wrouȝt

Warie þe tyme;

And Corse ȝerne þe kyng,

And al his Counseil aftur,

1350

Suche lawes to loke
Laborers to chaste.
Ac while Hunger was mayster heer,
Wolde þer non chyde,
Ne strive azeyn þe statues, 1
So steorneliche he lokede.
I warne þou, alle werkmen,
Wynneþ while ȝe mowe,
Hunger hiderward azeyn
Hizeþ him ȝeorne.
He wole a-wake þorw watur
þe wastours alle;
Er ffyve ȝer ben folfult,
Such ffamyn schal aryse,
þorw fflodes and foul weder,
Ffruites schul fayle,
And so seiþ Saturnes,
And sente us to warne.

XXIII.

JOHN DE WYCLIFFE.

A. D. 1324-1384.

John Wycliffe was born at the village of Hipswell, near Richmond, Yorkshire, about the year 1324, and died at the vicarage of Lutterworth, (Leicestershire), A. D. 1384. He was the first Englishman who undertook a complete version of the Scriptures in his native tongue. This great work is supposed to have been completed about the year 1380. Wycliffe was the author of many religious treatises written in English, among which may be mentioned a *Harmony of the Gospels* and the *Apology* for the Lollards.

The Gospel of St. Mark is taken from *The Holy Bible in the Earliest English Versions made from the Latin Vulgate, by John Wycliffe and his Followers*, edited by the Rev. J. Forshall and Sir F. Madden. Oxford, University Press, 1850, 4 vols. 4to.

Here Bygynneth the Gospel of Mark.

CAP. I.

ÞE bigynnyng of þe gospel of Jhesu Crist, þe sone of 1
God. ∴ As it is writun in Ysaie, þe prophete, Lo! I sende 2
myn angel bifore þi face, þat schal make þi weye redy bifore
þee. ∴ Þe voyce of oon cryinge in desert, Make 3e redy 3
þe weye of þe Lord, make 3e his papis riȝtful. ∴ Jhon 4
was in desert baptisyng, and prechinge þe bapty[m] of
penaunce, in to remiscion of synnes. ∴ And alle men of 5
Jerusalem wenten out to him, and al þe cuntre of Judee;
and weren baptisid of him in þe flood of Jordan, know-
lechinge her synnes. ∴ And John was clopid wiþ heeris 6
of camelis, and a girdil of skyn abowte his leendis; and he

eet locustus, and hony of þe wode, and prechide, seyinge, ⁊
 7 A strengere þan I schal come aftir me, of whom I knelinge
 am not worþi for to vndo, *or vnbynde*, þe þwong of his
 8 schoon. ⁊ I haue baptisid ȝou in water; forsoþe he shal
 9 baptise ȝou in þe Holy Goost. ⁊ And it is don in þoo
 dayes, Jhesus came fro Nazareþ of Galilee, and was baptisid
 10 of Joon in Jordan. ⁊ And anoon he styinge vp of þe
 water, sayȝ heuenes openyd, and þe Holy Goost cummyng
 11 doun as a culuere, and dwellynge in hym. ⁊ And a voys
 is maad fro heuenes, ꝑou art my sone loued, in þee I hane
 12 plesid. ⁊ And anon þe Spirit puttide hym in to desert. ⁊
 13 And he was in desert fourty dayes and fourty niztis, and
 was temptid of Sapanas, and was wiþ beestis, and angelis
 14 mynystriden to hym. ⁊ Forsoþe aftir þat Joon was taken,
 Jhesus came in to Galilee, prechinge the gospel of þe kyng-
 15 dam of God, ⁊ and seiynge, For tyme is fulfillid, and þe
 kyngdam of God shal come niz; forþinke ȝee, *or do ȝe*
 16 *penaunce*, and bileue ȝee to þe gospel. ⁊ And he passynge
 bisidis þe see of Galilee, say Symont, and Andrew, his
 brother, sendynge nettis into þe see; soþely þei weren
 17 fishers. ⁊ And Jhesus seide to hem, Come ȝee after me;
 18 I shal make ȝou to be maad fishers of men. ⁊ And anoon
 19 þe nettis forsaken, þei sieden hym. ⁊ And he gon forþ
 pennes a litil, say James of Zebede, and Joon, his broþer,
 20 and hem in þe boot makynge nettis. ⁊ And anoon he
 clepide hem; and Zebede, her fadir, left in þe boot wiþ
 21 hirid seruauntis, þei sieden hym. ⁊ And þei wenten
 forþ in to Cafarnaum, and anoon in þe sabotis he gon
 22 yn into þe synagoge, tauȝte hem. ⁊ And þei wondreden
 on his techynge; soþely he was techynge hem, as hauynge
 23 power, and not as scribis. ⁊ And in þe synagoge of hem
 24 was a man in an vnclene spirit, and he criede, ⁊ seyinge,
 What to vs and to þee, þou Jhesu of Nazareþ? haste þou
 cummen bifore þe tyme for to destroye vs? Y woot þat

art þe holy of God. ⁊ And Jhesus þretenyde to hym, 25
 inge, Wexe dowmb, and go out of þe man. ⁊ And þe 26
 lene goost debrekynge hym, and cryinge wiþ grete vois,
 ite away fro hym. ⁊ And alle men wondriden, so þat 27
 souȝten togidre amonge hem, seyinge, What is þis
 ge? what is þis newe techyng? for in power he com-
 dith to vnclene spiritis, and þei obeyen to hym. ⁊ And 28
 tale, *or tyþing*, of hym wente forþ anoon in to al þe
 tree of Galilee. ⁊ And anoon þei goynge out of þe 29
 agoge camen in to þe hous of Symont and Andrew, wiþ
 ies and Joon. ⁊ Sopely and þe modir of Symontis wif 30
 in feueris restide, *or lay*; and anoon þei seien to hym
 iir. ⁊ And he cummynge to, reride hir up, þe hond of 31
 taken, and anoon þe feuere left hire, and she mynstride
 hem. ⁊ Forsoþe þe euenynge maad, whenne þe some 32
 ite doun, þei brouȝten to hym alle hauynge yuel, and
 ynge deuellis. ⁊ And al þe cite was gaderid at þe gate. ⁊ 33
 1 he helide many þat weren traueilide with dyuers 34
 is, and he castide out many deuellis, and he suffride hem
 for to speke, for þei knewen hym. ⁊ And in þe 35
 rewynge ful erly he rysynge, gon out, wente in to desert
 e, and preiede þere. ⁊ And Symont sude hym, and þei 36
 weren wiþ hym. ⁊ And whanne þei hadden founden 37
 2, þei seiden to hym, For alle men seeken þee. ⁊ And 38
 seiþ to hem, Go we in to þe nexte townes and citees,
 and þere I preche, for to þis þing I came. ⁊ And he 39
 prechyng in þe synagogis of hem, and in alle Galilee,
 castynge out fendis. ⁊ And a leprous man cam to hym, 40
 :chyng hym, and, þe knee folden, seide, Ȝif þou wolt,
 maist clense me. ⁊ Forsoþe Jhesus, hauynge mercy on 41
 1, streiȝt out his hond, and, touchynge hym, seiþ to
 1, I wole, be þou maad clene. ⁊ And whanne he hadde 42
 le, anoon þe lepre partide away fro hym, and he is
isid. ⁊ And he þretenyde to hym, and anoon he putte 43

44 hym out, ∴ and seiþ to hym, Se þou, sei to no man; but
go, shewe þee to þe princis of prestis, and offre for þi
clensynge þo þingis þat Moyses badde, in to witnessynge
45 to hem. ∴ And he, gon out, biganne to preche, and diffame,
or pupliche, þe word, so þat now he miȝte nat opynly go
in to þe citee, but he wiþ out forþ in deserte placis; and
þei camen to gidre to hym on alle sydis. ∴

CAP. II.

1 And eft he entride in to Capharnaum, after eiȝte dayes. ∴
2 And it is herd, þat he was in an hous, and many camen
togidre, so þat it tok nat, neþer at the ȝate. And he spac
3 to hem a word. ∴ And þere camen to hym men bryngynge
4 a man sike in palesie, þe whiche was borun of foure. ∴ And
whanne þei miȝte nat offre hym to hym for þe cumpanye
of peple, þei maden þe roof nakid, wher he was; and
makyng opyn, þei senten down þe bedd, in whiche þe
5 sike man in palasie lay. ∴ Soþely whanne Jhesus say þe
feisþ of hem, he seiþ unto þe sike man in palasie, Sone,
6 þi synnes ben forȝouen to þee. ∴ Forsoþe þere weren
summe of þe scribis sittynge and þenkyng in her hertis, ∴
7 What spekist he þus? He blasfemeth; who may forȝeue
8 synnes, no-but God alone? ∴ Þe whiche þing anon
known by þe Holy Goost, for þei þouȝten so wiþ-inne
hem-self, Jhesus seiþ to hem, What þenken ȝee þese þingis
9 in ȝoure hertis? ∴ What is listere for to sei to the sike
man in palasie, Synnes ben forȝouen to þee, or for to sei,
10 Ryse, take þi bed, and walke? ∴ Soþely þat ȝee wite
þat mannes sone haþ powere in erþe to forȝeue synnes,
11 he seiþ to þe sike man in palasie, ∴ I sei to þee, rise
12 up, take þy bed, and go in to þin house. ∴ And anon
he roos vp, and, þe bed taken vp, he wente bifore alle
men, so þat alle men wondriden, and honouriden God,
13 seyinge, For we sayen neuer so. ∴ And he wente out

eftsone to þe see, and al þe cumpanye of peple cam to
 hym; and he tauȝte hem. ∴ And whenne he passide, he 14
 say Leui Alfey sittynge at þe tolboþe, and he seiþ to hym,
 Sue þou me. And he rysynge suede hym. ∴ And it is 15
 don, whenne he sat at þe mete in his hous, many publicanys
 and synful men saten togidre at þe mete wiþ Jhesu and
 his disciplis; soþely þere weren manye þat foleweden hym. ∴
 And scribis and Pharisees seeyinge, for he eet wiþ pupli- 16
 canys and synful men, seiden to his disciplis, Whi ȝoure
 maister etip and drinkip wiþ puplicanys and synners? ∴
 Dis þing herd, Jhesus seiþ to hem, Hoole men han no 17
 nede to a leche, but þei þat han yuele; forsoþe I cam
 not for to clepe iuste men, but synners. ∴ And disciplis 18
 of Joon and þe Pharisees weren fastynge; and þei camen,
 and seien to hym, Whi disciplis of Joon and of Pharisees
 fasten, but þi disciplis fasten nat? ∴ And Jhesus seiþ to 19
 hem, Wheþer þe sonnys of weddyngis mown faste, as long
 as þe spouse is wiþ hem? Hou longe tyme þei han þe
 spouse wiþ hem, þei mowe nat faste. ∴ Forsoþe dayes 20
 shulen come, whenne þe spouse shal be taken away fro
 hem, and þanne þei shulen faste in þoo days. ∴ No man 21
 sewep a pacche of rude, *or newe*, cloþe to an old cloþe,
 ellis he takip away þe newe supplement, *or pacche*, and a
 more brekyng is maad. ∴ And no man sendip newe wyn 22
 in to oolde botelis, *or wyne vesselis*, ellis the wyn shal berste
 þe wyn vesselis, and þe wyn shal be held out, and þe wyne
 vesselis shulen perishe. But newe wyn shal be sent in to
 newe wyn vesselis. ∴ And it is don eftsoone, whanne þe 23
 Lord walkide in the sabotis by þe cornes, and his disciplis
 bigunnyn to passe forþ, and plucke eris. ∴ Soply þe 24
 Pharysees seiden, Loo! what don þi disciplis in sabotis, þat
 is nat leueful. ∴ And he seiþ to hem, Radde ȝee neuere 25
 what Dauyth dide, whanne he hadde neede, and he hungride,
 and þei þat weren wiþ hym? ∴ Hou he wente in to þe 26

hous of God, vndir Abiaþar, prince of prestis, and eete
 loouys of proposicioun, þe whiche it was nat leeful to ete,
 no-but to prestis alone, and he ȝaue to hem þat weren wiþ
 27 hym. :- And he seide to hem, þe sabote is maad for man,
 and nat a man for þe sabote; and so mannys sone is lord
 also of the saboth. :-

CAP. III.

1 And he entride eftsoone in to the synagoge, and þer was
 2 a man hauynge a drye hond. :- And þei aspieden hym, if
 3 he helide in sabopis, for to accuse hym. :- And he seiþ to
 4 þe man hauynge a drye honde, Ryse in to the mydil. :- And
 he seiþ to hem, Is it leueful to do wel in þe sabopis, or
 yuele? for to make a soule saaf, wheþer to lese? And þei
 5 weren stille. :- And he biholdynge hem aboute wiþ wraþe,
 hauynge sorwe vpon the blyndnesse of her herte, seiþ to
 þe man, Holde forþ þin honde. And he helde forþ,
 6 and þe honde is restorid to hym. :- Sopely Pharisees
 goynge out anoon, maden a counseil wiþ Herodyans aȝains
 7 hym, hou þei shulden lese hym. :- Forsope Jhesus wiþ
 his disciplis wente to þe see; and myche cumpanye from
 8 Galilee and Judee sude hym, :- and fro Jerusalem, and
 fro Ydume, and biȝendis Jordan, and þei þat aboute Tyre
 and Sydon, a grete multitude, heerynge þe þingis þat he
 9 dide, camen to hym. :- And Jhesus seiþ to his disciplis,
 þat þe litil boot shulde serue hym, for þe cumpanye of
 10 peple, lest þei oppressiden hym; :- sopely he helide many,
 so þat þei felden fast to hym, þat þei shulden touche hym
 11 Forsope hou many euere, hadden soris, *or woundis*, :- and
 vnclene spiritis, whenne þei seien hym, felden down to hym,
 12 and crieden seyinge, þou art þe sone of God. :- And
 gretely he manasside hem, þat þei shulden nat make hym
 13 opyn, *or known*. :- And he stynging into an hil, clepide to
 14 hym whom he wolde; and þei camen to hym. :- And

he made, þat þere weren twelue wiþ hym, and þat he
 schulde sende hem for to preche. :- And he ȝaue to hem 15
 power of heelynge sicknessis, and of castynge out fendis. :-
 And to Symount he putte name Petre, :- and James of 16
 Zebede and Joon, the broþer of James, and he putte to 17
 hem names Boonerges, þat is, þe sones of þondrynge; :-
 and Andrew and Philip, and Barþolomewe and Maþew, 18
 and þomas and James Alfey, and þadee and Symount
 Cananee, :- and Judas Scarioþ, þat bitraide hym. :- And þei 19
 comen to an hous, and þe cumpanye of peple came togidre 20
 eftsoone, so þat þei miȝte not neþer ete breed. :- And 21
 whanne his *kynnesmen* hadden herdde, þei wenten out for
 to holde hym; sothely þei seiden, for he is turnyd in to
 wodenesse. :- And þe scribis þat camen doun fro Jerusalem, 22
 seiden, For he haþ Belsebub, and for in þe prince of
 deuels he castiþ out fendis. :- And, hem gadrid togidre, 23
 he seide to hem in parablis, Hou may Saþanas caste out
 Saþanas? :- And if a rewme be departide in itself, þe ilke 24
 rewme may not stonde. :- And if an hous be disparpoilid on 25
 it-self, þilke hous may not stonde. :- And if Saþanas haþ 26
 risen aȝeins hym-self, he is disparpoilid, and he shal not
 mowe stonde, but haþ an ende. :- No man, gon in to a 27
 stronge mannes hous, may take away his vessels, no-but he
 bynde firste the stronge man, and thanne he shal diuersly
 rauiſhe his hous. :- Trewly I seie to ȝou, for alle synnes and 28
 blasphemyes, by whiche þei han blasfemed, shulen be for-
 ȝouen to þe sones of men. :- Soþely he þat shal blasfeme 29
 aȝeins þe Holy Gost, shal not haue remissioun in to with
 outen eend, but he shal be gilty of euerlastynge trespass. :- For 30
 þei seiden, He haþ an unclene spirit. :- And his modir 31
 and breþeren comen, and þei stondynge wiþ-oute forþ,
 senten to hym, clepyng hym. :- And a cumpany sat 32
 aboute hym; and þei seien to hym, Lo! þi modir, and
 þi breþeren wiþ-uten forþ seken þee. :- And he answer- 33

yngre to hem seiþ, Who is my modir and my breþeren? :-
 34 And biholdyngre hem aboute, þat saten in þe cumpas of
 35 hym, he seiþ, Lo! my modir and my bretheren. :- Forsoþ
 who þat doþ þe will of God, he is my brother, and my
 sister, and modir. :-

CAP. IV.

1 And eft Jhesus bigan for to teche at the see; and myche
 cumpany of peple is gedrid to hym, so þat he styngre in to
 a boot, sat in þe see, and al þe cumpany of peple was
 2 aboute þe see, on þe lond. :- And he tauȝte hem in parablis
 many þingis. And he seide to hem in his techyngre,
 3 Heere ȝee. :- Loo! a man sowynge goþ out for to sowe. :-
 4 And þe while he sowiþ, an oþer seed felde aboute þe
 wey, and briddis of heuene, *or of the aire*, camen, and eeten
 5 it. :- Forsoþe an oþer felde doun on stony placis, wher it
 had[de] nat myche erþe; and anoon it sprong vp, for it
 6 hadde nat depnesse of erþe. :- And whenne þe sunne rose
 vp, it welwide for heete, and it dried vp, for it hadde not
 7 roote. :- And an oþer felde doun into þornes, and þornes
 8 stieden vp, and strangliden it, and it ȝaue not fruyt. :- And
 an oþer felde doun in to good lond, and ȝaue fruyt, styngre
 vp, and wexinge; and oon brouȝte þritty fold, and oon
 9 sixtyfold, and oon an hundridfold. :- And he seide, He
 10 þat haþ eris of heeryng, heere. :- And whenne he was
 singuler, *or by hym self*, þe twelue þat weren wiþ hym
 11 axiden hym for to expowne þe parable. :- And he seide
 to hem, To ȝou it is ȝouen for to knowe þe mysterie, *or*
pryuite, of þe kyngdam of God. Sopely to hem þat ben
 12 wiþ-oute forþ, alle þingis ben maad in parablis, :- þat
 þei seyngre se, and se nat, and þei heeryngre heere, and
 vnderstonde not; þat sum tyme þei be conuertid, and
 13 synnes be forȝouen to hem. :- And he seiþ to hem,
 Witen not ȝee þis parable? and howe ȝee shulden knowe

alle parabis? ∴ He þat sowiþ, sowiþ a word. ∴ These 14
 soply ben þat aboute þe weye, where þe word is sowun; 15
 and whenne þei han herd, anoon comeþ Saþanas, and
 takiþ away þe word þat is sowun in her hertis. ∴ And 16
 also þese ben þat ben sown on a stoon, þe whiche whanne
 þei han herd þe word, a-noon taken it wiþ ioye; ∴ and þei 17
 han nat roote in hem-silf, but þei ben temporal, *that is, lasten*
a lityl tyme; afterward tribulacioun sprongen vp, and per-
 secucioun for þe word, anoon þei ben sclaudrid. ∴ And 18
 þere ben oþer þat ben sowun in þornis; þese it ben,
 þat heeren þe word, and myseise of þe world, ∴ and 19
 disseit of richessis, and oþer charge of coueitise entrynge
 ynne, strangulen þe word, and it is maad wiþ-outen fruyt. ∴
 And þese it ben þat ben sowun on good lond, þe whiche 20
 heren þe word, and taken, and maken fruyt, oon þritti-
 fold, oon sixti-fold, and oon an hundrid. ∴ And he seide 21
 to hem, Wher a lanterne come, þat it be put vndir a bushel?
 wher not, þat it be put vpon a candil stike? ∴ Forsope 22
 þer is no þing hid, þat shal not be maad opyn; neþer ony
 þing is preuy, þe whiche shal not come in to apert. ∴ If 23
 ony man haue eeris of heryng, heere he. ∴ And he seide to 24
 hem, Se ȝee what ȝee heeren. In what mesure ȝee meten,
 it shal be meten to ȝou, and be kast to ȝou. ∴ Sopely it 25
 shal be ȝouen to hym þat haþ, and it shal be taken away
 from hym þat haþ not, also þat þat he haþ. ∴ And he 26
 seide, So þe kingdom of God is, as if a man caste seed in to
 þe erþe, ∴ and *he* slepe, and *it* ryse vp in niȝt and day, and 27
 brynge forþ seed, and wexe faste, þe while he wote not. ∴
 Forsothe þe erþe by his owne worchyng makith fruyt, 28
 first an erbe, *or grene corn*, afterward an eere, afterward ful
 fruyt in the ere. ∴ And whanne of it-silf it haþ brouȝt 29
 forþ fruyt, anoon he sendiþ a sikil, *or hook*, for rype corn
 comeþ. ∴ And he seide, To what þing shulden we likene 30
 þe kyngdom of God? or to what parable shulen we com-

31 parisoune it? ∴ As a corn of seneueye, þe which whann
 it is sowun in þe erþe, is lesse þan alle seedis þat ben in
 32 erþe; ∴ and whanne it is bredd, *or quykened*, it styȝeþ vp
 in to a tree, and is maad more than alle wortis, *or erbis*; and
 it shal make grete braunchis, so that briddis of heuene mowe
 33 dwelle vndir the shadewe þer-of. ∴ And in many siche
 34 parablis he spac to hem a word, as þei miȝten heere; ∴ soþely
 he spak not to hem wiþ-uten parable. Forsope he ex-
 pounyde to his disciplis alle þingis on-sidis hond, *or by hem*
 35 *self*. ∴ And he seiþ to hem, in þat day, whenne euenyng
 36 was maad, Passe we aȝeinward. ∴ And þei leeuynge þe
 cumpanye of peple, taken hym, so þat he was in þe boot;
 37 and oþer bootis weren wiþ hym. ∴ And a greet storme
 of wynd is maad, and sente wawis in to þe boot, so þat
 38 þe boot was ful. ∴ And he was in þe hyndir part of
 þe boot, slepyng on a pilewe. And þei reysen hym,
 and seien to hym, Maistre, perteneþ it nat to þee, þat
 39 we perishen? ∴ And he rysynge vp, manasside to þe
 wynd, and seide to þe see, Be stille, wexe doub. And
 40 þe wynd ceeside, and greet pesiblenesse is maad. ∴ And
 he seiþ to hem, What dreden ȝee? Nat ȝit han ȝee feiþ?
 And þei dredden wiþ greete dreed, and seiden to eche oþer,
 Who, gessist þou, is þis? for þe wynd and þe see obeysen
 to hym.

CAP. V.

1 And þei camen ouer þe wawe of þe see into þe cuntree
 2 of Genazareth. ∴ And anoon a man in vnclene spirit ran
 3 out of a biryel, to hym goynge out of þe boot. ∴ Þe
 whiche man hadde an hous in graues, *or biriels*, and nether
 4 wiþ chaynis ne miȝte eny man bynde hym. ∴ For oft
 tymes he bounden in stockis and chaynes, hadde broken þe
 chaynes, and hadde brokun þe stockis to smale gobetis, and
 5 no man miȝte daunte, *or make tame*, hym. ∴ And euer more,
 niȝt and day, in biriels and hillis, he was cryng, and betyng

hym-silf wiþ stoonen. ∴ Sopely he seyng Jhesus afer, ran, 6
 und worshipide hym. ∴ And he cryinge wiþ greet voice, 7
 seide, What to me and to þee, þou Jhesu, þe sone of
 God hieste? I conioure þee bi God, þat þou tourmente
 not me. ∴ Forsoþe Jhesus seide to hym, Þou vnclene 8
 spirit, go out fro þe man. ∴ And Jhesus axide hym, What 9
 name is to þee? And he seiþ to hym, A legioun is name
 o me; for we ben manye. ∴ And he preide hym myche, 10
 þat he shulde nat put hym out of þe cuntreie. ∴ Forsoþe 11
 here was þere aboute þe hill a flock of hoggis lesewyng
 n feeldis. ∴ And þe spiritis preieden Jhesu, seyinge, 12
 sende vs into hoggis, þat we entre into hem. ∴ And 13
 noon Jhesus grauntide to hem. And þe vnclene spiritis
 entriden in to the hoggis, and wiþ greet bire, *or haste*, þe
 loc was cast doun in to þe see, to tweyne þousynde, and
 hei ben strangelid in þe see. ∴ Sopely þei þat fedden 14
 hem, fledden, and tolden in to þe citee, and in to þe feeldis;
 and þei wenten out, for to see what was don. ∴ And þei 15
 kamen to Jhesu, and þei seen hym þat was traueilid of
 a fend, sittynge clopid, and of hoole mynde; and þei
 ireden. ∴ And þei tolden to hem, þat sayen, hou it was 16
 don to hym þat hadde a fend, and of þe hoggis. ∴ And 17
 þei bygunnen for to preie hym, þat he shulde go away fro
 her coostis. ∴ And when he stiede in to a boot, he þat was 18
 traueilid of þe deuyl, bygan to preye hym, þat he shulde be
 wiþ hym. ∴ Soply Jhesus resceyued hym nat, but seiþ 19
 to hym, Go þou in to þin hous to þine, and telle to hem,
 þou many þingis þe Lord haþ don to þee, and hadde
 mercy of þee. ∴ And he wente forþ, and bigan for to 20
 preche in Decapoly, *that is, a cuntree of ten citees*, how manye
 þingis Jhesus hadde don to hym; and alle men wondriden. ∴
 And whanne Jhesus hadde stiede in to þe boot eftsoone 21
 ouer þe see, myche cumpanye of peple cam togidre to hym,
 and was aboute þe see. ∴ And oon of þe princis of 22

synagogis, by name Jayrus, cam, and seyinge hym, fel down
 23 at his feet, :- and preiede hym myche, seyinge, For whi my
 douȝter is in þe laste þingis; come þou, putte þin hond
 24 on hire, þat she be saaf, and lyue. :- And he wente forþ wip
 hym, and myche cumpanye of peple suede hym, and op-
 25 presside hym. :- And a womman þat was in þe flux of
 26 blood twelue ȝere, :- and hadde suffride many þingis of ful
 many lechis, and spendid alle hir þingis, and no-þing pro-
 27 phitide, but more hadde worse, :- whanne she hadde herd of
 Jhesu, she cam in þe cumpanye byhynde, and touchide
 28 his cloþ. :- Soþly she seide, For if I shal *hym* touche or his
 29 cloþ, I shal be saaf. :- And anoon þe welle of blood is
 dried vp, and she felide in body þat she was helid of þe
 30 wound, *or sikenesse*. :- And anoon Jhesus knowynge in
 hym-silf þe vertu þat was gon out of hym, he, turned to
 31 the cumpenye, seiþ, Who touchede my cloþis? :- And his
 disciplis seiden to hym, Þou seest þe cumpenye pressinge
 32 þee, and seist þou, Who touchide me? :- And Jhesus
 lokide aboute, for to see hir þat hadde don þis þing. :-
 33 Forsoþe þe womman dredinge and quakyng, witynge þat
 it was don in hir, cam, and fel down bifore him, and seide
 34 to hym al treuþe. :- Forsoþe Jhesus seide to her, Douȝtir,
 þi feiþ hath maad þee saf; go in pees, and be saf fro þi
 35 sykenes. :- ȝit him spekyng, messengeris camen to þe
 prince of *the* synagoge, seyinge, For þi douȝtir is deed;
 36 what traueilist þou þe maistir fersere? :- Forsoþe þe
 word herd þat was seide, Jhesus seiþ to þe prince of þe
 37 synagoge, Nyle þou drede, oonly byleue þou. :- And he
 resceyuede not ony man to sue him no-but Petre, and
 38 James, and John, þe broþer of James. :- And þei camen
 in to þe hous of þe prince of þe synagoge. And he siȝ
 39 noyse, and men wepinge and weilinge moche. :- And he
 gon yn, seiþ to hem, What ben ȝee troublid, and wepyn?
 40 *Þe* wenche is not deed, but slepiþ. :- And þei scorneden

him. Forsoþe alle kast out, he takip þe fadir and modir of þe wenche, and hem þat weren wip him, and þei entren yn, where þe wenche lay. ∴ And he holdinge þe 41 hond of þe wenche, seiþ to hir, Tabita, cumy, þat is interpretid, *or expounid*, Wenche, to þee I seie, rise þou. ∴ And anon þe wenche roos, and walkide; soþly she was 42 of twelue zeer. And þei weren abaischt wip greet stoneyinge. ∴ And he comaundide to hem greetly, þat no man 43 schulde wite it. And he comaundide to ȝiue to hir for to ete. ∴ And Jhesus gon out þennis, wente in to his owne 1 cuntree; and his disciplis folwiden him. ∴

CAP. VI.

And þe saboþ maad, Jhesus bigan for to teche in a 2 synagoge. And manye heeringe wondriden in his techinge, seyinge, Of whennis to þis alle þese þingis? and what is þe wysdom þat is ȝouun to him, and suche vertues þe whiche ben maad by his hond? ∴ Wher þis is not a smyþ, 3 *or carpenter*, þe sone of Marie, þe broþer of James and Joseph and Judas and Symound? wher and his sistris ben nat here with vs? And þei weren sclaudrid in him. ∴ And Jhesus seide to hem, For a prophete is not wip-uten 4 honour, no-but in his owne cuntree, and in his hows, and in his kyn. ∴ And he myȝte not make þere ony vertu, no- 5 but heelde a fewe sike men, þe hondis put to. ∴ And he 6 wondride for þe vnbileue of hem. And he wente aboute castelis in enuyrown, techinge. ∴ And he clepide twelue, and 7 bigan for to send hem bi tweyne; and ȝaf to hem power of vnclene spiritis, ∴ and comaundide hem, þat þei schulde 8 not take ony þing in þe weye, no-but a ȝerd oonly, not a scrippe, not bred, neiþer money in þe girdil, ∴ but schoon 9 wip sandalies, *þat ben opyn aboue*, and þat þei weren not clopid wip tweie cootis. ∴ And he seide to hem, Whidir 10 euere ȝee *schulen entre* in to an hous, dwelle ȝe þere, till ȝe

- 11 gon out þennis. :- And who euere schulen not resseyue,
 ne heere 3ou, 3e goynge out fro þennes shake away þe
 12 powdre fro 3oure feet, in to witnessinge to hem. :- And
 þei goynge out, prechiden, þat men schulden do þe-
 13 naunce. :- And þei castiden out many fendis, and anoyntiden
 with oyle manye syke men, and þei weren heelid. :-
 14 And kyng Eroude herde, forsoþe his name was maad opyn,
 and he seide, For Johne Baptist haþ risun aȝen fro deed
 15 men, and therfore vertues worchen in hym. :- Sopely
 opere seiden, For it is Ely; but opere seiden, For it is a
 16 prophete, as oon of prophetis. :- Þe whiche þing herd,
 Eroude seiþ, Whom I haue bihedid, John, þis haþ risun fro
 17 deed men. :- Forsope þe ilke Eroude sente, and held
 Joon, and bond him in to prisoun, for Erodias, þe wyf of
 18 Philip, his broþer; for he hadde weddid hir. :- Soply
 Johne seide to Eroude, It is not leefful to þee, for to haue
 19 þe wyf of þi broþer. :- Erodias forsope leide aspies to
 20 þe him, and wolde sle him, and miȝte not. :- Soply Eroude
 dredde John, witinge him a iust man and hooly, and kepte
 21 herde hym. :- And whanne a couenable day hadde fallun,
 Eroude in his birþe day made a soupere to þe princis, and
 22 tribunys, and to þe firste, *or gretteste*, of Galilee. :- And
 whanne þe douȝter of þilke Erodias hadde entrid yn, and
 lepte, and pleside to Eroude, and also to men restynge, þe
 kyng seide to þe wenche, Axe þou of me what þou wolt,
 23 and I schal ȝyue to þee. :- And he swoor to hir, For what
 euere þou schalt axe, I schal ȝyue to þee, þouȝ þe half of
 24 my kyngdom. :- Þe whiche, whanne sche hadde gon out
 seide to hir modir, What schal I axe? And she seide, Þe
 25 heed of John Baptist. :- And whanne she hadde entrid
 anon wiþ haste to þe kyng, she axide, seyinge, I wole þat
 anon thou ȝyue to me in a dische the heed of John
 26 Baptist. :- And þe kyng was sorry for þe oob, and for

men sittinge to-gidere at mete he wolde not hir be maad
 sory; :- but a manuellere sent, he comaundide þe heed of 27
 John Baptist for to be brouzt. And he bihedide him in þe
 prison, :- and brouzte his heed in a dische, and ȝaf it to 28
 þe wenche, and þe wench ȝaf to hir modir. :- Þe which 29
 þing herd, his disciplis camen, and token his body, and
 puttiden it in a buriel. :- And apostlis comynge to-gidere 30
 to Jhesu, tolden to hym alle þingis, þat þei hadden don,
 and tauzt. :- And he seiþ to hem, Come ȝe by ȝou-selue 31
 in to a desert place; reste ȝe a litel. Forsoþ þere weren
 manye þat camen, and wenten aȝen, and þei hadden not
 space for to ete. :- And þei stizynge in to boot, wenten in 32
 to a desert place by hem-selue. :- And þei syȝen hem 33
 goynge away, and manye knewen, and goynge on feet fro
 alle citees, þei runnen to-gidere þidir, and came bifore
 hem. :- And Jhesus goynge out syȝ moche cumpanye, and 34
 hadde mercy on hem, for þei weren as scheepe not hauynge
 a shepherde. And he bigan for to teche hem manye
 þingis. :- And whanne moche our was maad now, his 35
 disciplis camen nyȝ, seyinge, Þis place is desert, and now
 þe our hap passid; :- leeue hem, þat þei goynge in to 36
 þe nexte townes or vilagis, bye to hem metis whiche þei
 schulen ete. :- And he answeyng seip to hem, ȝyue ȝe to 37
 hem for to ete. And þei seiden to hym, Goynge bye we
 loues wiþ two hundrid pens, and we schulen ȝyue to hem
 for to ete. :- And he seiþ to hem, Hou many loues han 38
 ȝe? Go ȝe, and se. And whanne þei hadden knowun, þei
 seien, Fyue, and two fyschis. :- And he comaundide to 39
 hem, that þei schulden make alle men sitte to mete aftir
 cumpenyes, vpon greene hey. :- And þei saten down by 40
 parties, by hundridis, and fyfties. :- And þe fyue looues 41
 taken, and two fyschis, he biholdynge in to heuene, blesside,
 and brak loouis, and ȝaf to his disciplis, þat þei schulden
 putte bifore hem. And he departide two fyschis to alle; :- and 42

43 alle eeten, and weren fillid. ∴ And þei token þe relyues of
 broken mete, twelue coffyns full, and of þe fyschis. ∴
 44 Soþli þei that eeten, were fyue þousynd of men. ∴ And
 45 anon he constreynede his disciplis for to stize vp in to a
 boot, þat þei schulden passe bifore him ouer þe see to
 46 Bethsayda, þe while he lefte þe peple. ∴ And whanne he
 47 hadde left hem, he wente in to an hil, for to preie. ∴ And
 whanne euenyng was, þe boot was in þe myddil see, and he
 48 aloone in the lond; ∴ and he syȝ hem trauelinge in row-
 ynge; soþli þe wynd was contrarie to hem. And aboute
 þe fourþe waking of þe nyȝt, he wandrynge on þe see
 49 cam to hem, and wolde passe hem. ∴ And þei, as þei
 syȝen him wandrynge on þe see, gessiden [him] for to be
 50 a fantum, and creiden; ∴ forsoþ alle syȝen hym, and þei
 weren disturblið. And anon he spak wiþ hem, and seide
 51 to hem, Triste ȝe, I am; nyle ȝe drede. ∴ And he cam vp
 to hem in to þe boot, and the wynd ceesside. And þei
 52 more wondriden wiþ-ynne hem; ∴ for þei vndirstoden not
 53 of þe looues; soþli her herte was blyndid. ∴ And whanne
 þei hadden passid ouer þe see, þei camen in to þe lond
 54 of Genazarep, and setten to londe. ∴ And whanne þei
 55 hadden gon out of þe boot, anon þei knewen him. ∴ And
 þei rennyng þurȝ al þat cuntree, bigunnen to bere aboute
 in beddis hem þat hadden hem yuele, where þei herden him
 56 be. ∴ And whidur euere he entride yn to vilagis and townes,
 or in to citees, þei puttiden syke men in stretis, and preieden
 him, þat þei schulden touche eiþer þe hem of his cloþ; and
 how manye euere touchiden him, weren maad saf. ∴

CAP. VII.

1 And Pharisees and summe of scribis comynge fro Jeru-
 2 salem, camen to-gidere to him. ∴ And whanne þei hadden
 seyn summe of his disciplis ete breed wiþ comune hondis,
 3 *that is, not waischun*, þei blamyden. ∴ Forsoþ Pharisees and

lle Jewis eten not, no-but þei waisschen ofte her hondis,
 oldinge þe tradiciouns, *or statutis*, of eldere men. :- And 4
 ei turnynge aȝen fro chepyng, eten not, no-but þei ben
 maichun; and manye othere þingis ben, þat ben takun
 o hem for to kepe, waichingis of cuppis, and cruetis, and
 f vessels of bras, and of beddis. :- And Pharisees and 5
 cribis axiden him, seyinge, Whi gon not þi discipulis aftir þe
 radicioun of eldere men, but wiþ comyne hondis þei eten
 red? :- And he answeringe seide to hem, Ysaie propheciede 6
 vel of ȝou, ypocritis, as it is writun, Þis peple worschipp
 ne with lippis, forsoþe her herte is fer fro me; :- in veyn 7
 rewli þei worschpen me, techinge doctryns and preceptis
 of men. :- Forsoþ ȝe forsakinge þe maundement of God, 8
 olden þe tradiciouns of men, waichingis of cruetis, and
 cuppis; and manye oþere þingis lyke to þes ȝe don. :- And 9
 he seide to hem, Wel ȝe han maad þe maundement of God
 roȝde, þat ȝe kepe ȝoure tradicioun. :- Forsoþ Moyses seide, 10
 Worschipe þi fadir and þi modir; and he þat schal curse
 fadir or modir, by deef deie he. :- Sopli ȝe seyen, If a man 11
 schal seye to fadir or to modir, Corban, þat is, What euere ȝifte
 is] of me, [it] schal profite to þee; :- and ouer ȝe suffren not 12
 im do ony þing to fadir or modir, :- brekyng þe word of God 13
 y ȝoure tradicioun, þat ȝe han ȝouun; :- and ȝe don manye 14
 þere suche þingis. And he eftsoone clepyng to þe cumpanye
 of peple, seide to hem, ȝe alle heere me, and vndirstonden. :-
 Jo þing wiþ-uten man is entringe in to him, þat may defoule 15
 im; but þo þingis þat comen forþ of man, þo it ben þat
 defoulen a man. :- Forsoþ if ony man haue eeris of heeringe, 16
 leere he. :- And whanne he hadde entrid in to an hous, fro 17
 e cumpany of peple, his disciplis axiden him þe parable. :-
 And he seiþ to hem, So and ȝe ben vnprudent, *or vnwysse*. 18
 Vndirstonden ȝe not, for al þing wiþoute-forþ entringe in to
 a man, may not defoule him? :- for it haþ not entrid into his 19
 herte, *but in to þe wombe*, and byneþe it goþ out, purgyng

20 alle metis. :- Sopli he seide, For þe þingis þat gon out of a
 21 man, þo defoulen a man. :- Forsop fro wiþynne, of þe herte
 of men comen forþ yuele þouztis, auoutries, fornicaciouns,
 22 mansleyngis, :- þeftis, couetises, *or ouer hard keepyng of goodis*,
 wickednesses, gyle, vnchastite, yuel yze, blasphemyes, pride,
 23 folye. :- Alle þes yuelis fro wiþynne comen forþ, and defoulen
 24 a man. :- And Jhesus risynge þennis, wente in to þe endes of
 Tyre and Sidon. And he gon in to an hows, wolde no man
 25 wite; and he miȝte not dare, *or be priuy*. :- Sopli a womman,
 anon as sche herde of him, which wommanis douȝtir hadde
 26 an vnclene spirit, entride, and fel down at his feet. :- Sopli þe
 womman was heþene, of þe generacioun of Sirefen. And she
 preide him, þat he wolde caste out a deuel fro hir douȝtir. :-
 27 Þe which seide to hir, Suffre þou þe sones be fulfild first; it
 is not good to take þe bred of sones, and sende to houndis. :-
 28 And she answeride, and seide to him, Forsope, Lord; for-
 whi and litle welpis eten vndir þe bord, of þe crummes of
 29 children. :- And Jhesus seiþ to hir, For þis word go, þe fend
 30 is went out of þi douȝtir. :- And whanne she hadde gon hom,
 she fond þe wenche sittinge on þe bedd, and þe deuel gon
 31 out fro hir. :- And eftsoone Jhesus goynge out fro þe endis,
or coostis, of Tire, cam þurȝ Sidon to þe see of Galilee, þat is
 32 bitwixe þe myddil endis of Decapoleos. :- And þei leeden to
 him a deaf man and doumb, and preieden him, þat he putte
 33 to him þe hond. :- And he takynge him asydis fro þe cum-
 panye, sente his syngris in to his litle eeris; and spetinge
 34 towchide his tunge. :- And he biholdynge in to heuene, sor-
 35 wide wiþynne, and seiþ, Effeta, þat is, Be þou openyd, :- And
 anon his eeris weren openyd, and þe bond of his tunge is un-
 36 bounden, and he spak riȝtly. :- And he comaundide to hem,
 þat þei schulden seye to no man; forsop how moche he co-
 37 maundide to hem, so moche more þei prechiden more, :- and
 by þat þe more þei wondriden, seyinge, He dide wel alle þingis,
 and deaf men he made to heere, and doumbe for to speke.

CAP. VIII.

þo dayes, whanne moche cumpenye of peple was wip 1
 1, and hadde not what þei schulden ete, his disciplis ga-
 to gidere, he seiþ to hem, :- I haue rewþe on þe cum- 2
 e of peple, for loo! now þe þridde day þei susteynen,
 yden me, and han not what þei schulen ete; :- and if I 3
 hem fastinge in to her hous, þei schulen faile in þe
 ; forsoþe summe of hem camen fro fer. :- And disciplis 4
 eriden to him, Wherof a man schal mowe fille hem wip
 :s here in wildirnesse? :- And he axide hem, How manye 5
 :s han 3e? Þe whiche seiden, Seuene. :- And he co- 6
 idide þe cumpanye to sitt[e] down on þe erþe. And he
 ige seuene looues, and doynge þankynges, brak, and
 o his disciplis, þat þei schulden putte forþ. And þei
 1 forþ to þe cumpany. :- And þei hadden a fewe smale 7
 s; and he blesside hem, and comaundide for to be put
 :- And þei eeten, and ben fulfid; and þei token vp þat 8
 of relyf, *or smale gobatis*, seuene leepis. :- Forsop þei þat 9
 1, weren as foure þousand of men; and he lefte hem. :-
 anon he wente vp in to a boot, wip his disciplis, and 10
 in to þe partis of Dalmamytha. :- And Pharisees wenten 11
 and bigunnen to seke, *or axe*, wip him, axynge a tokene
 m fro heuene, temptinge hym. :- And he sorwynghe wip- 12
 in spirit, seiþ, What sekij þis generacioun a tokene?
 ly I seie to 3ou, if a tokene schal [not] be 3ouun to þis
 racioun. :- And he leeuynge hem, wente vp eftsoone in 13
 boot, and wente ouer þe see. :- And þei forȝaten to take 14
 1, and þei hadden not wip hem no-but o loof in þe boot. :-
 he comaundide to hem, seyinge, Se 3e, and be 3e war of 15
 urdowȝ of Pharisees, and sourdowȝ of Eroude. :- And þei 16
 en oon to another, seiynge, For we han not breed. :- Þe 17
 h þing knowun, Jhesus seiþ to hem, What þenke 3e, for
 n not breed? 3it 3e knowen not, ne vndirstonden; ȝit

18 3e han 3oure herte blyndid. :- 3e hauynge y3en, seen not, and
 19 3e hauynge eeris, heeren not; neþer 3e han mynde, :- whanne I
 brak fyue looues in to fyue þousande, and hou manye coffyns
 ful of brokene mete 3e token vp? Ðei seyn to him, Twelue. :-
 20 Whanne and seuene looues in to four þousande of men, how
 many leepis of brokene mete 3e token vp? And þei seyn,
 21 Seuene. :- And he seide to hem, How vndirstonden 3e not
 22 3it? :- And þei comen to Bethsayda, and þei bryngen to him
 a blynd man, and preieden hym, þat he schulde touche him. :-
 23 And þe hond of þe blynd marr takun, he ledde him out of þe
 streete, and spetynge in to his y3en, his hondis put to, he
 24 axide him, if he sy3 ony þing. :- And he biholdinge, seiþ, I
 25 se men as trees walkynge. :- Aftirward eftsoones he puttide
 hondis on his y3en, and he bigan for to se, and he is re-
 26 storid, so þat he sy3 clerely alle þingis. :- And he sente him
 in to his hous, seyinge, Go in to þi hous; and if thou schalt
 27 go in to þe streete, seye to no man. :- And Jhesus entride yn
 and his disciplis in to þe castels of Sezarie of Philip. And in
 þe weye he axide his disciplis, seiynge to hem, Whom seyn
 28 men me for to be? :- Ðe whiche answeriden to hym, seiynge,
 Summe, John Baptist; opere *seyn*, Helye; but opere *seyn*, as
 29 oon of þe prophetis. :- Ðanne he seiþ to hem, But whom seye
 3e me for to be? Petre answeringe, seiþ to him, Ðou ert
 30 Crist. :- And he þretenyde hem, þat þei schulden nat seie to
 31 ony man of him. :- And he bigan for to teche hem, for it
 bihouep mannis sone suffre manye þingis, and to be reproued
 of þe hizeste prestis, and of eldere men, and scribis, and to
 32 be slayn, and aftir þre dayes, for to rise a3en. :- And he spak
 playnli þe word. And Petre takynge him, bygan for to blame
 33 him. :- Ðe which turnyd, seyng his disciplis, manaside Petre,
 seiynge, Go aftir me, Saþanas; for þou sauerist not þo þingis
 34 þat ben of God, but þo þingis þat ben of men. :- And þe cum-
 panye of peple gederid, wiþ his disciplis, he seide to hem, If
 ony man wole sue me, denye he him-self, and take he his

cros, and sue he me. :- Soply who so wole make his soule, 35
that is, his lyf, saf, he schal leese it; forsoþe he þat schal
 leese his soule, *that is, his lyf*, for me and þe gospel, schal
 mak it saf. :- Sopli what profiteþ it a man, if he wyne al þe 36
 world, and do peyringe to his soule? :- or what chaungyng 37
 schal a man ȝyue for his soule? :- Forsop who þat schal 38
 kno[w]leche me, and my wordis in þis generacioun auoutresse,
 and mannis sone schal knowleche him, whanne he schal
 come in þe glory of his fadir, wiþ his aungels. :- And he seide 39
 to hem, Treuly I seie to ȝou, for þer ben summe of men
 standinge here, þe whiche schulen not taste deep, til þei sen
 þe rewme of God comyng in vertu.

CAP. IX.

And aftir sixe dayes Jhesus took Petre, and James, and 1
 John, and lediþ hem by hem selue aloone in to an hiȝ hil;
 and he is transfigurid byfore hem. And his clopis ben 2
 maad schynnyng and white ful moche as snow, and which
 maner clopis a fullere, *or walkere of cloþ*, may not make white
 on erþe. :- And Helye with Moyses apperide to hem, and þei 3
 weren spekyng wiþ Jhesu. :- And Petre answeringe seiþ 4
 to Jhesu, Maistir, it is good for vs for to be here; make we
 here þre tabernaclis, oon to þee, oon to Moyses, and oon to
 Helye. :- Sopli he wiste not what he schulde seie; forsoþe 5
 þei weren agast by drede. :- And þer is maad a cloude 6
 schadewinge hem; and a voys cam of þe cloude, seyinge,
 Þis is my mooste deereworþe sone, heere ȝe him. :- And anon 7
 þei biholdinge aboute, syȝe no more any man, no-but Jhesus
 oonly wiþ hem. :- And hem comyng down fro þe hil, he 8
 comaundide hem, þat þei schulde not telle to any man þo
 þingis þat þei hadde seyn, no-but whanne mannis sone haþ
 risun fro deede *spiritis*. :- And þei heelden þe word at hem 9
 silf, sekyng what [this] schulde be, whanne he hath risun fro
 deede. :- And þei axiden him, seyinge, What þerfore seyn 10

- Pharisees and scribes, for it bihoueþ Helye for to come first.:-
- 11 Þe which answeringe seiþ to hem, Whanne Helye schal come first, he schal restore alle þingis; and hou it is writun in to mannis sone, þat he suffre many þingis, and be despisid.:-
- 12 But I seie to ȝou, for and Helye is comun, and þei diden to him what euere þingis þei wolden, as it is writun of him.:-
- 13 And he comynge to his disciplis, syȝ a greet cumpany
- 14 aboute hem, and scribes axynge wiþ hem.:- And anon al þe cumpanye seyng Jhesu, was astoneyed, and þei dreden; and
- 15 þei rennyng to, greeten him.:- And he axide hem, What
- 16 seken ȝe among ȝou?:- And oon of þe cumpany answeringe seide, Maistir, I haue brouȝt to þee my sone hauynge an
- 17 vnclene spirit;:- þe which wher euere he schal take hym, hirtiþ him, and he froþiþ, *or vomeþ*, and betiþ to gidere wiþ teep, and wexiþ drye. And I seide to þi disciplis, þat þei
- 18 schulden caste hym out, and þei myȝten not.:- Þe which answeringe to hem seide, A! þou schrewid generacioun and out of bileue, hou longe schal I be at ȝou, how longe schal I
- 19 suffre you? Brynge ȝe hym to me.:- And þei brouȝten hym to. And whanne he hadde seyn him, anon þe spirit troublede him; and he cast down in to þe erþe, was walewid
- 20 froþinge.:- And he axide his fadir, Hou moche of tyme it
- 21 is, siþen þis þing fel to him?:- And he seiþ, Fro childhod; and ofte he haþ sent him and in to fier and in to watir, þat he schulde leese him; but and if þou maist ony þing, help
- 22 vs, hauynge mercy on us.:- Sopli Jhesus seiþ to him, If þou maist bileue, alle þingis ben possible to a man bileuynge.:-
- 23 And anon the fadir of þe child crijnge wiþ teeris seide,
- 24 Lord, I bileue; help þou myn vnbileuefulness.:- And whanne Jhesus hadde seyn þe company of peple rennyng to-gidere, he manaside to þe vnclene spirit, seyng to him, Þou deaf and dounb spirit, I comaund þee, go out fro him, and entre
- 25 not more in to him.:- And he crijnge, and moche to-breidynge him, wente out fro him; and he is maad as deed, so

þat manye seiden, þat he was deed. :- Forsoþ Jhesus holdynge 26
 his hond, lifte vp him; and he roos. :- And whanne he hadde 27
 entrid in to an hous, his disciplis axiden him priuely, Whi
 myzten not we caste hym out? :- And he seyde to hem, Dis 28
 kynde in no þing may go out, no-but in preier and fastinge. :-
 And þei gon fro þennis, wenten forþ in to Galile; and he 29
 wolde no man wite. :- He tauȝte his disciplis, and seide to 30
 hem, For mannus sone schal be bitrayed in to þe hondis
 of men, and þei schulen sle him, and he slayn, on þe þridde
 day shal rise aȝen. :- And þei knewen not þe word, and 31
 dredden for to axe him. :- And þei camen to Cafarnaum. 32
 Which whenne he was in þe hous, axide hem, What tretiden
 ȝe in þe weie? :- And þei weren stille; sopli þei disputiden 33
 among hem in þe weie, who of hem schulde be more. :- And 34
 he sittinge clepide þe twelue, and seiþ to hem, If any man
 wole be þe first among ȝou, he schal be þe laste, and mynys-
 tre of alle. :- And he takinge a childe, ordeynede him in þe 35
 myddil of hem; whom whanne he hadde byclippid, he seiþ
 to hem, :- Who euere schal receyue oon of suche children in 36
 my name, he receyueþ me; and who euere receyueth me,
 he receyueþ not me aloone, but him þat sente me. :- John 37
 answeride to him, sayinge, Maistir, we syȝen sum oon for to
 caste out fendis in þi name, þe which sueþ not vs, and we
 han forbedun him. :- Sopli Jhesus seiþ to him, Nyle ȝe forbede 38
 him; þer is no man þat doþ vertu in my name, and may
 soone speke yuele of me. :- Forsoþe he þat is not aȝens vs, 39
 is for vs. :- Sopli who euere schal ȝyue drynke to ȝou a cuppe 40
 of cold watir in my name, for ȝe ben of Crist, treuly I seie
 to ȝou, he schal not leese his mede. :- And who euere schal 41
 sclandre oon of þes litle bileuynges in me, it is good to him
 þat a mylne stoon of assis were don aboute his necke, and
 [he] were sent in to þe see. :- And if þin hond sclandre þee, 42
 kitt it away; it is good to þee feble to entre in to lyf, þan
 hauynge twey hondis go in to helle, in to flier þat neuere schal

43 be quenched, :- where þe worm of hem deieþ not, and þe fier
 44 is not quenched. :- And if þi foot slaundre þee, kitt it of; it
 is good to þee for to entre crokid in to euerlasting lyf, þan
 hauynge twey feet to be sent in to helle of fier, þat neuer
 45 schal be quenched, :- where þe worm of hem deieþ not, and þe
 46 fier is not quenched. :- Þat if þin y3e slaundre þee, cast it
 out; it is good to þee for to entre gogil y3ed in to rewme of
 God, þan hauynge twey y3en for to be sent into helle of fier. :-
 47 where þe worm of hem deieþ not, and þe fier is not quenched. :-
 48 Forsop euery man schal be saltid, *or maad sauori*, wiþ fier,
 49 and euery slayn sacrifice schal be sauorid wiþ salt. :- Salt is
 good þing; þat if salt be vnsauori, in what þing schulen 3e
 make it sauori? Haue 3e salt in 3ou, and haue 3e pees
 among 3ou. :-

CAP. X.

1 And Jhesus risynge up fro þennis, cam in to þe endis of
 Jude ouer Jordan; and eftsoones þe cumpanyes of peple
 camen to-gidere to him, and as he was wont, eftsoone he
 2 tau3te hem. :- And Pharisees comynge ny3, axiden him, If it
 be leefful to a man for to leeuē, *or forsake*, his wyf? tempt-
 3 inge him. :- And he answeringe seiþ to hem, What comaun-
 4 dide Moyses to 3ou? :- Þe whiche seiden, Moyses suffride to
 5 write a libel of forsakinge, and to forsake. :- To whom Jhesus
 answeringe seiþ, To þe hardnesse of 3oure herte Moyses
 6 wroot to 3ou þis precept. :- Forsope fro þe bigynnyng of
 creature God made hem male and female; and he seide, :-
 7 For þis þing a man schal leeuē fadir and modir, and schal
 8 clefe to his wif, :- and þei schulen be tweyne in o fleisch.
 9 And so now þei ben not tweyne, but o fleisch. :- Þerfore þat
 10 þing þat God ioynede to-gidere, no man departe. :- And
 eftsoone in þe hows his disciplis axiden him of þe same
 11 þing. :- And he seiþ to hem, Who euere schal leeuē his wyf,
 12 and wedde anoþer, he doþ auoutrie vpon hir. :- And if þe
 wyf schal leeuē hir hosebonde, and be weddid to anoþer,

þ auoutrie. ∴ And þei offriden to him litle children, 13
schulde touch hem; soþeli disciplis þretenyden to men
∴ Whom whanne Jhesus hadde seyn, he baar heuye, 14
orþili, and seiþ to hem, Suffre 3e litle children for to
o me, and forbede 3e hem not, forsoþ of suche is þe
m of God. ∴ Treuli I seie to 3ou, who euere schal not 15
þe kyngdom of God as þis litle child, he schal not
to it. ∴ And he biclippinge hem, and puttinge hondis 16
em, blesside hem. ∴ And whanne Jhesus was gon out 17
weye, o man rennyng bifore, þe kne bowid, preiede
iynge, Goode maistir, what schal I do, þat I receyue
tinge lyf? ∴ Forsoþe Jhesus seide to him, What seist 18
good? No man [is] good, no-but God aloone. ∴ Þou 19
noven þe comaundementis, do þou non auoutrie, sle
le not, seie not fals witnessinge, do no fraude, wor-
þi fadir and modir. ∴ And he answeringe seiþ to him, 20
; I haue kept alle þese þingis fro my 3ouþe. ∴ Soþli 21
biheld him, and louyde hym; and he seide to him,
failþ to þee; go þou, selle þou what euere þingis þou
nd 3yue to pore men, and þou schalt haue tresour in
; and come, sue þou me. ∴ Þe which maad sorwful 22
word, wente away mornynge, forsoþ he was hauynge
ossesciouns. ∴ And Jhesus biholdinge aboute, seiþ to 23
isciplis, How hard þei þat han money schulen entre in
yngdom of God. ∴ Forsoþe þe disciplis weren stoneyed 24
wordis. And Jhesus eftsoone answeringe seiþ to hem,
sones, how hard þing it is, men tristyng in richessis
entre in to þe kyngdom of God. ∴ It is lijter, *or esyer*, 25
l for to passe þorw a nedlis yze, þan a riche man for
in to þe kyngdom of God. ∴ Whiche wondriden more, 26
at hem selue, And who may be maad saf? ∴ And 27
biholdinge hem, seiþ to hem, Anentis men it is im-
e, but not anemptis God; for alle þingis ben possible
tis God. ∴ And aftirward Petre bigan for to seye to 28

- 29 him, Loo ! we han left alle þingis, and han sued þee. :- Jhesus
 answeringe seiþ, Treuli I seie to þou, þer is no man þat schal
 leeue hous, or breþeren, or sistris, or fadir, or modir, or
 30 sones, or feeldis for me and for þe gospel, :- þe which schal not
 taken an hundridfold so moche now in þis tyme, housis, and
 breþeren, and sistris, and modris, and sones, and feldis, wiþ
 persecuciouns, and in þe world to comynge euerlasting lyf. :-
 31 Forsoþ many schulen be, þe firste þe laste, and þe laste þe
 32 firste. :- Forsoþe þei weren in þe weye stiþynge to Jerusalem;
 and Jhesus wente bifore hem, and þei wondriden, and folow-
 inge dredden. And eftsoone Jhesus takinge to twelue, bygan
 33 to seye to hem, what þingis weren to come to him. :- For lo !
 we stiþen to Jerusalem, and mannus sone schal be bitrayed
 to þe princes of prestis, and to scribis, and to eldere men;
 and þei schulen dampne him by deef, and þei schulen bytake
 34 him to heþene men. :- And þei schulen scorne him, and
 byspeete him, and beete him; and þei schulen sle him, and
 35 in þe þridde day he schal ryse agen. :- And James and Jon,
 Zebedees sones, camen nyȝ to him, seyinge, Maistir, we
 36 wolen, þat what euere we schulen axe, þou do to vs. :- And
 37 he seide to hem, What wolen ȝe þat I do to þou ? :- And þei
 seiden, ȝyue to us, þat we sitten þat oon at þi riȝthalf, and þe
 38 toþir at þe left, in þi glorie. :- Forsoþe Jhesus seiþ to hem,
 ȝe witen not what ȝe schulen axe; mown ȝe drynke þe
 cuppe, þe which I am to drynke, or be waischun wiþ þe bap-
 39 tym, in which I am baptisid ? :- And þei seiden to him, We
 mown. Sopli Jhesus seiþ to hem, Treuli ȝe schulen drynke
 þe cuppe þat I drynke, and ȝe schulen be waischun wiþ þe
 40 baptytm, in which I am baptisid; :- sopli for to sitte at my
 riȝthalf or lefthalf is not myn to ȝyue to þou, but to which it
 41 is ordeyned. :- And þe ten heeringe hadden endignacioun of
 42 James and John. :- Sopli Jhesus clepinge hem, seiþ to hem,
 ȝe witen, þat þei þat semen, *or ben seyn*, to haue princehed of
folkis, lordschipen, *or ben lordis*, of hem, and þe princes of

hem han power of hem. :- Forsop it is not so in 3ou, but who 43
 euere schal wolle be maad more, schal be 3oure mynystre, :-
 and who euere schal wolle be þe firste in 3ou, schal be 44
 seruauant of alle. :- Forwhi and mannissone cam not, þat it 45
 schulde be mynystrid to him, but þat he schulde mynystre,
 and 3yue his soule, *or lyf*, redempcioun, *or a3en-bi3yng*, for
 manye. :- And þei camen to Jerico; and him goynge forþ 46
 fro Jerico, and his disciplis, and a ful moche cumpany of
 peple, þe sone of Tyme, Barþymeus, blynd, saat bisydis þe
 weye beggyng. :- Þe which whanne he hadde herd, for it is 47
 Jhesus of Nazareþ, bigan to crie, and seye, Jhesu, þe sone of
 Dauib, haue mercy on me. :- And manye þretnyden hym, þat 48
 he schulde be stille; and he criede moche more, Jhesu, þe
 sone of Dauib, haue mercy on me. :- And Jhesu stondinge 49
 comaundide hym for to be clepid; and þei clepiden þe
 blynde man, seiynge to him, Be þou of betere herte, ryse vp,
 he clepiþ þee. :- Þe which, his cloþ cast away, sturtinge cam 50
 to him. :- And Jhesu answeringe seide to him, What wolt 51
 þou I schal do to þee? Þe blynde man seide to him, Maistir,
 þat I se. :- Sopli Jhesus seide to him, Go þou, þi feiþ haþ maad 52
 þee saaf. And anon he sy3, and sude him in þe weye. :-

CAP. XI.

And whanne Jhesus cam ny3 to Jerusalem and to Betanye, 1
 to þe mount of Olyete, he sendiþ two of his disciplis, and
 seiþ to hem, :- Go 3e in to þe castel þat is a3ens 3ou; and anon 2
 3e entrynge in þidur schulen fynde a colt tyed, on þe which
 non of men sat 3it; vnbynde 3e, and bryng him. :- And if 3
 ony man schal seiþ ony þing to you, seiþ 3e, þat he is nede-
 ful to þe Lord, and anon he schal leue him hidur. :- And 4
 þei goynge forþ, founden a colt bounden byfore þe 3ate wiþ-
 outeforth, in þe meeting of tweye weyes; and þei vnbounden
 him. :- And summe of men stondinge þere seiden to hem, 5
 What don 3e, vnbyndinge þe colt? :- And þei seiden to hem, 6

- 7 as Jhesus comaundide to hem; and þei lesten hem. :- And
 þei brouzten þe colt to Jhesu, and þei puttiden to him her
 8 cloþis, and Jhesus sat upon him. :- Forsoþe manye strewiden
 her cloþis in þe weye, soþeli opere men kittiden bowis, *or*
 9 *braunchis*, fro trees, and strewiden in þe weye. :- And þei þat
 wenten bifore, and þat sueden, cryeden, seyinge, Osanna,
 10 blessid is he þat comeþ in þe name of þe Lord; :- blessid þe
 kyngdom þat comeþ of oure fadir Dauþ; Osanna in hiztees. :-
 11 And he entride in to Jerusalem, in to þe temple; and alle
 þingis seyn aboute, whanne þe our was now euenyng, he
 12 wente in to Betanye, wiþ twelue. :- And anoþer day, whanne
 13 he wente out of Betanye, he hungride. :- And whanne he
 hadde seyn a fyge tree afer hauynge leeuys, he cam, if hap-
 pily he schulde fynde ony þing þerynne; and whanne he
 cam to it, he fond no þing, out-taken leeuys; for it was no
 14 tyme of fygis. :- And Jhesus answeringe seide to it, Now no
 more wiþ-uten ende ony man ete fruyt of þee. And his
 15 disciples herden; and þei camen to Jerusalem. :- And whanne
 he hadde entrid in to þe temple, he bigan for to caste out
 men sellinge and biggyng in þe temple; and he turnyde
 vpsodoun þe boordis of chaungeris, and þe chaieris of men
 16 sellinge culueris; :- and he suffride not, þat ony man schulde
 17 bere a vessel þurȝ þe temple. :- And he tauȝte hem, seyinge,
 Wher it is not writun, For myn hous schal be clepid þe
 hous of preiyng to alle folkis? forsoþ ȝe han maad it a den
 18 of þeues. :- Þe which þing herd, þe princes oȝ prestis and
 scribis souȝten hou þei schulde leese him; forsoþ þei dreden
 hym, for al þe cumpanye of peple wondride on his teching. :-
 19 And whanne euenyng was maad, he wente out of þe citee. :-
 20 And whanne þei passiden eerly, þei syȝen the fige tree maad
 21 drye fro þe rootis. :- And Petre hauynge mynde, seide to him,
 Maistir, lo! þe fyge tree, whom þou cursedist, haȝ dried vp. :-
 22 And Jhesus answering seiþ to him, Haue ȝe þe seiþ of God; :-
 23 *treuli* I seiȝe to ȝou, þat who euere seiþ to þis hill, Take, and

sende in to þe see; and doutiþ not in his herte, but bileueþ, for what euere he schal seye, be it maad, it schal be maad to him. :- Þerfore I seie to 3ou, alle þingis what euere þingis 3e 24 preiynge schulen axe, bileue 3e þat 3e schulen take, and þei schulen come to 3ou. :- And whanne 3e schulen stonde for 25 to preie, for3yue 3e, if 3e han ony þing aȝens ony man, þat und 3oure fadir þat is in heuenes, for3yue to 3ou 3oure synnes. :- Ðat if 3e schulen not for3yue, neiþer 3oure fadir þat is in 26 heuenes, schal for3yue 3ou 3oure synnes. :- And eftsoone þei 27 amen to Jerusalem. And whanne he walkide in to þe emple, þe hijeste prestis, and scribis, and eldere men camen iiz to him, and sei[d]en to him, :- In what power doist þou 28 es þingis? or who 3af to þee þis power, þat þou do þes þingis? :- Forsoþe Jhesus answeringe seiþ to hem, And I schal axe 3ou 29 o word, and answer 3e to me, and I schal seie to 3ou, in what power I do þes þingis. :- Wheþer was þe bapty[m] of John 30 of heuene, or of men? answer 3e to me. :- And þei þouȝten 31 wiþ-inne hem selue, seiynge, If we schulen seie of heuene, he schal sei to vs, Whi þerfore bileuen 3e not to him; :- if 32 we schulen seie of men, we dreden þe peple; for alle men hadden John, for he was verily a prophete. :- And þei answer- 33 inge seyen to Jhesu, We witen neuere. And Jhesu answeringe seiþ to hem, Neiþer I seie to 3ou, in what power I do þes þingis. :-

CAP. XII.

And Jhesus bigan to speke parably, *or in parablis*. A 1 man plauntide a vineȝerd, and puttide aboute an hegge, and dalf a lake, and bildide a tour, and hirede it to erþe tilieris, and wente forþ in pilgrymage; :- and sente to þe erþe tilieris 2 in tyme a seruaunt, þat he schulde receyue of þe fruyt of þe vineȝerd at þe erþe tilieris. :- Þe whiche beten him takun, 3 and leften him voyde. :- And eftsoone he sente to hem 4 anoþer seruaunt, and þei woundiden him in þe heed, and ponscheden wiþ chidingis, *or reprouyngis*. :- And eftsoone he 5

sente anoþer, and þei slown him, and opere mo, betynge
 6 summe, but sleynge opere. :- Þerfore 3it he hauynge a sone
 most dereworþ, and to hem he sente him þe laste, seyinge,
 For by hap þei schulen schame my sone, *or drede wiþ rau-*
 7 *rence.* :- Forsoþe þe tenauntis seyden to hem self, *or to gidere,*
 Þis is þe eier; come 3e, sle we him, and þe eritage schal be
 8 oure. :- And þei takynge him, castiden out wiþoute þe vyne-
 9 3erd, and slown. :- Þerfore what schal the lord of þe vyne-
 3erd do? He schal come, and leese þe tenauntis, and 3yue
 10 þe vyne3erd to opere. :- Wher 3e han not rad þis scripture,
 Þe stoon þe which men bildinge han dispisid, þis is maad in
 11 to þe heed of þe corner? :- Þis þing is maad of þe Lord, and
 12 is wondirful in oure y3en. :- And þei sou3ten for to holde him,
 and þei dreden þe cumpanye of peple; sopli þei knewen for
 to hem he seide þis parable; and him left, þei wenten away. :-
 13 And þei senden to him summe of þe Farisees and Erodians,
 14 for to take hym in word. :- Þe whiche comynge seyn to hym,
 Maistir, we witen for þou ert soþfast, and reckist not of ony
 man; soply neiþer þou seest in to face of man, but þou
 techist þe wey of God in treuþe. Is it leefful for to 3yue tri-
 15 bute to Cesar, or we schulen not 3yue? :- Þe whiche witinge
 her priuey falsnesse, seiþ to hem, What tempten 3e me?
 16 brynge 3e to me a peny, þat I se. :- And þei offriden to him.
 And he seiþ to hem, Whos is þis ymage, and þe in wrytinge?
 17 Þei seien to him, Cesaris. :- Forsoþe Jhesus answeringe seiþ
 to hem, Þerfore 3elde 3e to Cesar þat ben of Cesar, and to
 God þo þingis þat ben of God. And alle wondriden on him. :-
 18 And Saducees, þat seyen no resurecioun to be, camen to
 19 him, and axiden him, seyinge, :- Maistir, Moysees wroot to vs,
 þat if þe broþer of a man were deed, and lefte a wyf, and
 lefte not sones, his broþer take his wyf, and reyse vp seed to
 20 his broþir. :- Þerfore seuene briþeren weren; and þe firste
 21 took a wyf, and is deed, no seed left. :- And þe secunde took
 hir, and he is deed, and neiþer þis lefte seed. And þe þridde

∴ And seuene tooken hir, and lefte not seed. And þe 22
 man þe laste of alle is deed. ∴ Þanne in þe resureccioun, 23
 ne þei schulen rise aȝen, whos wyf of þese schal sche be?
 seuene hadden hir [to] wyf. ∴ And Jhesus answeringe 24
 to hem, Wer ȝe erren not þerfore, not knowinge þe
 turis, noþer þe vertu of God? ∴ Forsoþe whanne þei 25
 en rise aȝen fro deed *men*, neiþer þei wedden, noþer ben
 id, but þei schulen be as aungels of God in heuenes. ∴
 of deed men, þat þei rysen aȝein, han ȝe not rad in þe 26
 of Moyses, on þe bousche, hou God seide to him,
 ge, I am God of Abraham, and God of Ysaac, and
 of Jacob? ∴ He is not God of deede men, but *God* of 27
 ige men; þerfore ȝe erren moche. ∴ And oon of þe 28
 is, þat hadde herd hem sekyng to gidere, cam niȝ, and
 ge þat he hadde wel answerid hem, axide hym, which
 e firste maundement of alle. ∴ Jhesus answeride to him, 29
 e firste of alle comaundementis is, Heere, Israel, þe Lord
 od is oon; ∴ and þou schal[t] loue þe Lord þi God of 30
 herte, and of al þi soule, and of al þi mynde, and of al
 tu, *or myȝte*. Þis is þe firste maundement. ∴ Forsoþe þe 31
 ide is lyk to þis, þou schalt loue þi neiȝebore as þi silf.
 s non opir maundement more þan þese. ∴ And þe scribe 32
 to him, Maister, in treuþe þou has wel seid; for o God
 d þer is non, out-taken him; ∴ and þat he be loued of al 33
 , and of al þouȝt, *or mynde*, and of al vndirstondinge,
 f al þe soule, and of al strengþe, and to loue the neiȝe-
 as him silf, is more þan alle brend offringis and sacri-
 ∴ Jhesus forsoþe seyinge þat he hadde answerid wysely, 34
 to him, þou ert not fer fro þe kyngdom of God. ∴ And 35
 no man durste axe him. And Jhesus answeringe seide,
 ige in þe temple, þerfore how seyn scribis, Crist for to
 sone of Dauid? ∴ To whom Dauid him silf seide in þe 36
 y Gost, þe Lord seide to my lord, Sitte on my riȝthalf,
 utte þin enemyes þe stool of þi feet. ∴ þerfore Dauid him 37

self seiþ him a lord, and wherof is he his sone? And moche
 38 cumpany gladli herde him. ∴ And he seide to hem in his
 teching, Be 3e war of scribis, þat wolen wandre in stoolis,
 39 and be salutid in chepinge, ∴ and sitte in synagogis in þe
 40 firste chaires, and þe firste sitting places in soperis; ∴ þe
 whiche deuouren þe housis of widewis, vndir colour of long
 41 preier; þei taken lenger dom. ∴ And Jhesus sittinge aȝeins
 þe treserie, biheld hou þe cumpany of peple caste money
 in to þe tresorie; and manye riche castiden many þingis. ∴
 42 Sopli whanne o pore widowe hadde comen, sche sente tweye
 43 mynutis, þat is, a ferþing. ∴ And his disciplis clepid to gidere,
 he seiþ to hem, Treuly I seie to 3ou, for þis pore widowe
 44 sente more þan alle, þat sente in to þe tresorie. ∴ Sopli alle
 sente of þat þing þat was plenteuous to hem; but þis of hir
 myseste sente alle þingis þat she hadde, al hir lyfode.

CAP. XIII.

1 And whanne he wente out of þe temple, oon of his dis-
 ciples seiþ to him, Maistir, bihold, what maner stoones, and
 2 what manere bildingis. ∴ And he answeringe seiþ to him,
 Seeste þou alle þes greete bildingis? þer schal not be left a
 3 stoon vpon a stoon, þe which schal not be destroyed. ∴ And
 whanne he sat in þe mount of Olyuete aȝens þe temple, þei
 axiden hym by hem silue, Petre, and James, and John, and
 4 Andrew, ∴ Seie þou to vs, whanne þes þingis schulen be maad,
 and what tokene, whanne alle þes þingis schulen bigynne for
 5 to be endid. ∴ And Jhesus answeringe bigan for to seie to
 6 hem, Se 3e, þat no man disceyue 3ou; ∴ for many schulen
 come in my name, seiynge, For I am; and þei schulen dis-
 7 ceyue manye. ∴ Sopli whanne 3e schulen heere batels and
 opyniouns of bateils, drede 3e not; forsoþe it bihoueþ þese
 8 þingis for to be don, but not 3it anon þe ende. ∴ For folk schal
 rise vpon folk, and rewme vpon rewme, and erþe mouyng
 schal be by places and hungur; bigynnyngis of sorwis

xen] þese þingis.:- Sopli se 3e 3ou silf, for þei schulen take 9
 u in counceils, and 3e schulen be beten in synagogis; and
 : schulen stonde bifore kyngis and domes-men for me, in
 : witnessing to hem.:- And in to alle folkis it bihoueþ first 10
 : gospel for to be prechid.:- And whanne þei schulen lede 11
 u bitrayinge, nyle 3e þenke what 3e schulen speke, but
 eke 3e þat þing þat schal be 3ouen to 3ou in þat our; sopli
 ben not spekinge, but þe Hooly Gost.:- Forsoþe a broþer 12
 hal bitraye þe broþer in to deep, and þe fadir þe sone, and
 nes schulen ryse to gidre azens fadris and modris, and
 mysche hem by deep. :- And 3e schulen be in hate to alle 13
 en for my name; but he þat schal susteyne in to þe ende,
 s schal be saf.:- Forsoþe whanne 3e schulen se þe abhomy- 14
 cioun of discomfort, stondinge wher it owiþ not; vndir-
 onde he þat rediþ; þanne þei þat be in Judee, flee in to
 llis.:- And he þat is aboue þe roof, come he not down in to 15
 : hous, neiþer entre he, þat he take any þing of his hows; :-
 d he þat schal be in þe feeld, turne not azen byhynde for 16
 : take his cloþ.:- Sopli wo to hem þat ben wiþ childe, and 17
 : rischinge in þo dayes.:- Perfore preie 3e, þat þei ben not 18
 on in wyntir.:- Forsoþ þe ilke dayes of tribulacioun schulen 19
 e suche, whiche manere weren not fro þe bygynnyng of
 eature, þe which God made, til now, neiþer schulen be. :-
 nd no-but þe Lord hadde breiggid þo dayes, al fleisch, 20
 - *mankynde*, hadde not be saf; but for þe chosene whom
 e chees, þe Lord haþ breigged [þe] dayes, *or maad schort*.:-
 nd þanne if ony man schulde seie to 3ou, Lo! here is Crist, 21
 o! there, beleue 3e not.:- For fals Cristis and fals prophetis 22
 : schulen ryse vp, and schulen 3yue tokenes and grete wondris,
 : disceyue, if it may be don, 3he, þe chosene.:- Perfore se 3e; 23
 o! I haue bifore seid to 3ou alle þingis.:- But in þo dayes, 24
 tir þat tribulacioun, þe sunne schal be maad derk, and þe
 one schal not 3yue hir schynyng,:- and sterris of heuenes 25
 hal be fallinge down, and vertues þat be in heuenes, schulen

26 be mouyd.:- And þanne þei schulen se manniss sone comynge
 27 in cloudis of heuene, wiþ greet vertu and glorie.:- And þanne
 he schal sende his aungels, and schal gedre his chosene fro
 foure wyndis, fro þe loweste þing of erþe vnto þe hizeste þing
 28 of heuene.:- Forsoþe of þe fyge tree lerne 3e þe parable.
 Whanne now his braunche schal be tendre, and leeuys ben
 29 sprongen out, 3e witen for somer is in þe nexte.:- So and
 whanne 3e schulen se alle þese þingis ben maad, wite 3e, þat
 30 it is in þe nexte in þe doris.:- Treuly I seye to you, for þis
 generacioun schal not passe away, til alle þese þingis be don.:-
 31 Heuene and erþe schal passe, forsoþe my wordis schulen not
 32 passe.:- Treuly of þat day or our no man woot, neþir aungelis
 33 in heuene, neþer þe sone, no-but þe fadir.:- Se 3e, wake 3e,
 34 and preie 3e; soþli 3e witen not, whanne tyme is.:- For as a
 man þe which gon fer in pilgrimage, lefte his hous, and ȝaf
 to his seruauantis power of euery work, and comaundide to þe
 35 porter, þat he schulde wake.:- Perfore wake 3e, forsoþe 3e
 witen not, whanne þe lord of þe hous comeþ, in þe euentide,
 36 or in þe mydnyȝt, or kockis crowynge, or morwynge;:- lest
 37 whanne he schal come sudenly, he fynde ȝou slepyng.:- For-
 soþe þat þat I seie to ȝou, I seie to alle, Wake 3e.

CAP. XIV.

1 Forsoþe pask and þe feeste of þerf looues *withouten sour-*
dow was aftir þe secunde day. And þe hizeste prestis and
 scribis souȝten, hou þei schulden holde him wiþ gile, and sle.:-
 2 Soþli þei seiden, Not in þe feeste day, lest perauenture noyse
 3 were maad in þe peple.:- And whanne he was at Betanye, in
 þe hous of Symount leprous, and restid, a womman comynge,
 hauynge a box of precious oynement spikanard; and the box
 4 brokun, helde out on his heed.:- Forsop þer weren summe
 beringe vnworþily, or *heuyli*, wiþ-ynne hem silf, and seyinge,
 5 Wherto is þis loss of oynement maad?:- For þis oynement
 myȝte haue be sold more þan for þre hundrid pens, and be

un to pore men. And þei groyneden in to hir. Soplⁱ 6
 esus seide, Suffre hir; what be 3e heuy to hir? she haþ
 ougt good work in me. For euer more 3e schulen haue 7
 re men wiþ 3ou, and whanne 3e schulen wolle, 3e mown
 wel to hem; forsoþ 3e schulen not euermore haue me. 8
 ie dide þat þat she hadde; sche bifore cam for to anoynte
 y body into buriynge. Treuli I seie to 3ou, where euere 9
 gospel schal be prechid in al þe world, and þat þis wom-
 an haþ done, schal be told in to mynde of hir. And Judas 10
 ariop, oon of þe twelue, wente to þe hizeste prestis, þat he
 hulde bitray him to hem. Þe whiche heerynge ioyeden, 11
 d bihizten hem to 3yue him money. And he sougte how
 schulde bitraye him couenably. And þe firste day of 12
 rue loues, whenne pask was offrid, disciplis seyn to him,
 Thidir wolt þou we go, and make redy to þee, þat þou ete
 ask? And he sendiþ tweyne of his disciplis, and seiþ to 13
 em, Go 3e in to þe citee, and a man beringe a galoun of
 atir schal renne to 3ou, *or come azens 3ou*; suwe 3e him. 14
 nd whidir euere he schal entre, seye 3e to þe lord of þe
 ous, For þe maister seiþ, Wher is my fulfilling, *or etyng place*,
 here I schal ete pask wiþ my disciplis? And he schal shewe 15
 3ou a greet souping place strewid, and þere make 3e redy
 vs. And his disciplis wenten forþ, and camen in to þe 16
 tee, and founde as he hadde seid to hem; and þei maden
 dy pask. Soplⁱ euen maad, he cam wiþ twelue. And hem 17
 tinge at þe mete, and etinge, Jhesus seiþ, Treuli I seie to 18
 u, for oon of 3ou þat etiþ wiþ me, schal bitraye me. And 19
 i bigunnen for to be sori, and to seie, ech by hym silf,
 Heþer I? Þe which seiþ to hem, Oon of twelue þat puttiþ 20
 þe hond wiþ me in þe plater. And soplⁱ mannⁱs sone goþ, 21
 it is writun of him; forsoþ wo to þat man, bi whom mannⁱs
 ne schal be bitrayd. It were good to him, if þat ilke man
 dde not be borun. And hem etinge, Jhesus took bred, 22
 d blessinge brak, and 3af to hem, and seiþ, Take 3e; þis

23 is my body. :- And þe cuppe takun, he doynge gravis ʒaf to
 24 hem, and alle drunkun þerof. :- And he seiþ to hem, Þis is
 my blood of þe newe testament, þe which schal be shedd out
 25 for manye. :- Treuly I seie to ʒou, for now I schal not drynke
 of þis fruit of vyne, til in to þat daye whanne I schal drynke
 26 it newe in þe rewme of God. :- And þe ympne, *or heriynge*,
 27 seid, þei wenten out in to þe hil of Olyues. :- And Jhesus seiþ
 to hem, Alle ʒe schulen be sclaundrid in me in þis nyȝt; for
 it is writun, I schal smyte þe schepherde, and þe scheep of
 28 the floc schulen be disparplid. :- But aftir that I schal ryse
 29 aȝen, I schal go bifore ʒou in to Galilee. :- Forsoþ Petre seiþ
 30 to him, And if alle schulen be sclaundrid, but not I. :- And
 Jhesus seiþ to him, Treuly I seie to þee, for þou to day bifore
 þe cok in þis nyȝt twyes ʒyue vois, pries þou ert to denye
 31 me. :- And he spak more, And if it hihoue me to dye to gidere
 32 wiþ þee, I schal not denye thee. :- Sopli and lyk manere alle
 seiden. And þei camen in to a place, to whom þe name
 Gepsamany. And he seiþ to his disciplis, Sitte ʒe here, þe
 33 while I preie. :- And he takij Petre and James and John wiþ
 34 him, and bigan for to drede, and to heuye. :- And he seiþ to
 hem, My soule is sorwful til to þe deep; susteyne ʒe, *or abide*
 35 ʒe, here, and preie ʒe wiþ me. :- And whanne he hadde gon
 forth a litel, he felde down on þe erþe, and preiede, þat, if
 36 it myȝte be, þe our schulde passe fro him. :- And he seide,
 Fadir, alle þingis ben possible to þee, turne fro me þis
 37 cuppe; but not þat I wole, but þat þat þou. :- And he cam,
 and fond hem slepynge. And he seiþ to Petre, Symount,
 38 slepist þou? myȝtist þou not wake wiþ me oon our? :- Wake
 ʒe, and preie ʒe, þat ʒe entre not in to temptacioun; forsoþe
 39 þe spirit is redy, but þe fleisch syk. :- And eftsoone he goynge
 40 preiede, þe same word seyinge. :- And he turnyd aȝen eftsoone,
 fond hem slepynge; sopli her yȝen were greuyd. And þei
 41 knewen not, what þei schulden answer to him. :- And he cam
 þe þridde tyme, and seiþ to hem, Slepe ʒe now, and reste

3e; soþli it sufficiþ. Þe our comeþ; loo! mannis sone schal
 be bitrayed in to hondis of synful men.: Ryse 3e, go we; 42
 loo! he þat schal bytraye me is ny3.: And, 3it him spekinge, 43
 Judas Scarioþ, oon of þe twelue, cam, and wiþ him moche
 cumpeny wiþ swerdis and stauēs, sent fro þe hiȝeste prestis,
 and scribis, and fro þe eldere men.: Forsoþe þe traitour 44
 hadde ȝouun to hem a tokene, seyinge, Whom euere I schal
 kisse, he it is; holde 3e him, and lede 3e warly, *or queyntely.*:
 And whanne he cam, anon he cominge to him, seiþ, Maistir; 45
 and he kisse him.: And þei layden hondis in to him, and 46
 heelden him.: Soþli oon of men stondinge aboute, ledinge 47
 out a swerd, smot þe seruauñt of þe hiȝeste prest, and kitte
 of to him an eere.: And Jhesus answeringe seiþ to hem, As 48
 to a þef 3e han gon out wiþ swerdis and stauēs, for to take
 me?: Forsoþ day by day I was at ȝou, techinge in þe temple, 49
 and 3e heelden not me; but þat þe scripturis be fulfillid.: 50
 Þanne him forsakun, alle his disciplis fledden.: Soþli sum 51
 ȝong man, clopid wiþ lynnen cloþ on þe bare, suede him;
 and þei heelden him.: And þe lynnen cloþ forsakun, he nakid 52
 fleiȝ away fro hem.: And þei ledden Jhesu to þe hiȝeste prest. 53
 And all camen to gidere in to oon, þe prestis and þe scribis
 and eldere men.: Forsoþ Petre suede him afer til wiþ-ynne 54
 in to þe halle of þe hiȝeste prest. And he sat wiþ þe myny-
 stris, and warmyde him at þe fier.: Forsoþe þe hiȝeste prestis, 55
 and al þe counceil, souȝten witnessinge aȝens Jhesu, þat þei
 schulen ȝyue him to deēþ; neþer þei founden.: Soþli manye 56
 seiden fals witnessinge aȝens him, and þe witnessingis weren
 not couenable.: And summe risynge souȝten fals witnessing 57
 aȝens hym, seyinge,: For we han herd him seiynge, I schal 58
 vñdo þis temple maad wiþ hondis, and aftir þe þridde day I
 schal bilde a noper not maad wiþ hondis.: And þe witnessing 59
 of hem was not couenable.: Forsoþe þe hiȝeste prest rysinge 60
 vp in to þe myddel, axide him, seyinge, Answerist þou not
 ony þing to þo þingis þat ben put to þee of þese? : Soþli he 61

was stille, and no þing answeride. Eftsoone þe hijest prest axide him, and seide to him, Ert þou Crist, þe sone of blessid
62 God? Sopli Jhesus seide to him, I am; and 3e schulen se
mannis sone sittinge on þe riȝt half of þe vertu of God, and
63 comynge in cloudis of heuene. Forsop þe hijest prest, kit-
64 tinge his clopis, seiþ, What ȝit desyren we witnessis? 3e han
herde blasphemye. What semeþ to ȝou? Þe whiche alle
65 condempneden him for to be gilty of deef. And summe
bigunnen for to bispitte him, and to hide his yȝen, and
smyte him wiþ boffatis, and seie to him, Prophecie þou.
66 And þe mynystres beeten him wiþ strokis, *or boffatis*. And
whanne Petre was in þe halle byneþen, oon of þe hand
67 maydens of þe hijest prest cam. And whanne sche hadde
seyn Petre warmynge him, sche biholdinge him seiþ, And
68 þou wast wiþ Jhesu of Nazareþ. And he denyede, seyinge,
Neþir I woot, neþer I haue knowun, what þou seist. And he
69 wente forþ bifore þe halle; and anon þe cok song. Eftsoone
forsoþe whanne a noþer hand mayde hadde seyn him, she
bigan for to seie to men stondinge aboute, For þis is of hem.
70 And he eftsoone denyede. And aftir a litil, eftsoone þei þat
stooden nyȝ, seiden to Petre, Verily þou ert of hem, forwhi
71 and þou ert of Galilee. Sopli he bigan for to curse and
72 swere, For I knowe not þis man, whom 3e seyn. And anon
eftsoones þe cok song. And Petre biþouȝte on þe werd þat
Jhesus hadde seid to him, Bifore þe cok synge twyes, pries
1 þou schalt denye me. And he bigan for to wepe. And
anon þe morwe maad, þe hijeste prestis, makinge counceil
wiþ þe eldere men, and scribis, and al þe counceil, byndinge
Jhesu, led den, and bitoken to Pilat.

CAP. XV.

2 And Pilat axide him, Art þou kyng of Jewis? And he
3 answeringe seiþ to him, Þou seyst. And þe hijeste prestis
4 accusiden him in manye þingis. Pilat forsoþe eftsoone axide

him, seyinge, Pou answerist not ony þing? Seest þou, in
 how manye þingis þei accusen þee? Forsoþe Jhesus more 5
 so þing answeride, so þat Pilat schulde wondre. Forsoþ by 6
 a solemne day he was wont to leue to hem oon bounden,
 whom euere þei axiden. Forsoþ þere was he þat was seid 7
 Barabas, þat was boundun wiþ sleeris of men, and þat hadde
 don manslauȝtre in seducioun, *that is, debaat in cytee.* And 8
 whanne þe cumpany hadde stiȝe vp, he bigan for to preye,
 as he euermore dide to hem. Sopely Pilat answeride to 9
 hem, and seide, Wolen ȝe I leue to ȝou þe kyng of Jewis? Sopli
 he wiste, þat þe hizeste prestis hadden taken him by 10
 enuy. Forsoþe þe bischopis stireden þe cumpenye of peple, 11
 þat more he schulde leue to hem Barabas. Forsoþ eftsoone 12
 Pilat answeringe seiþ to hem, What þerfore wolen ȝe I schal
 do to þe kyng of Jewis? And þei eftsoone crieden, Crucifie 13
 hym, *or put hym on the cros.* Forsoþ Pilat seide to hem, 14
 Sopli what of yuel haþ he don? And þei crieden more,
 Crucifie him. Sopli Pilat willinge for to do ynow to þe 15
 peple, lefte to hem Barabas, and bitook to hem Jhesu,
 smyten, *or betun*, wiþ scourgis, þat he schulde be crucified. Forsoþe
 knyztis ledden him wiþynne, in to þe floor of þe 16
 moot halle, and clepiden to gidere al þe cumpenye of knyztis,
 and clopiden him wiþ purpur. And þei foldinge a corowne 17
 of þornes, puttiden to him; and bigunnen for to greet him, 18
sayinge, Hail, þou kyng of Jewis. And þei smyten his heed 19
 wiþ a reede, and bispatten him; and puttinge her knees þei
 worshipiden him. And astir þat þei hadden scornyd him, 20
 þei vnclopiden him fro purpur, and clopedyn him wiþ his
 clopis, and ledden him, þat þei schulde crucifie him. And 21
 þei constreyneden sum man passynge forþ, Symount of Sy-
 renen, comynge fro þe town, þe fadir of Alysandre and Rufe,
 þat he schulde take his cross. And þei ledden him in to a 22
 place Golgoþa, þat is interpretid, *or expowned*, þe place of
 Caluarie. And þei ȝauen him for to drynke wyn meddelid 23

- 24 wiþ myrre, and he took not.∴ And þei crucifynge him de-
 partiden his cloþis, sendinge lot, who schulde take what.∴
 25 Forsop it was þe þridde our, *that men clepen vndrun*, and þei
 26 crucifieden him.∴ And þe title of his cause was writun, Jhesus
 27 of Nazareþ, kyng of Jewis.∴ And þei crucifen wiþ him twey
 28 þeues, oon at þe riȝthalf, and oon at his lefthalf.∴ And þe
 prophecie is fulfild þat seiþ, And he is gesside, *or ordeyned*,
 29 wiþ wickide men.∴ And passinge forþ þei blasfemyden him,
 mouynge her heedis, and seyinge, Fy3! þou þat distroyest
 30 þe temple of God, and in þre dayes aȝen bildest it;∴ þou
 31 comynge down fro þe cros, make þi self saf.∴ Also and þe
 hizeste prestes scornynge him, ech to oþer, wiþ scribis,
 seiden, Crist, kyng of Ysrael, maade oþere men saf, he maye
 32 not saue him silue.∴ Come he down now fro þe cross, þat
 we se, and bileue. And þei þat weren crucified wiþ him,
 33 puttedyn wrong, *or fals repref*, to him.∴ And þe sixte our,
or mydday, maad, derknessis ben maad vpon al þe erþe til in
 34 to þe nynþe our, *that is, noon*.∴ And in þe nynþe our Jhesus
 criede wiþ greet vois, seyynge, Heloy, Heloy, lamazabatany,
 þe which interpretid is, My God, my God, whi, *or wherþo*,
 35 hast þou forsake me?∴ And summe of men standinge aboute
 36 heeringe seiden, Lo! he clepiþ Hely.∴ Sopli oon rennynge,
 and fillinge a sponge wiþ vynegre, and puttinge aboute to a
 reede, ȝaue him drynke, seyinge, Suffre ȝe, se we, if Hely
 37 come for to do hym down.∴ Forsop Jhesus, a greet vois sent
 38 out, deiede, *or sente out the brep*.∴ And þe veil of þe temple
 is kitt in to tweyne fro þe hizeste til to down, *or bynethe*.∴
 39 Forsop centurio seynge, þe which stood euene aȝenst, for so
 crijnge he hadde deied, seiþ, Verrili, þis man was Goddis
 40 sone.∴ Sopli þere weren and oþere wymmen biholdinge fro
 after, among whiche was Mary Mawdeleyn, and Mari of
 41 James the lasse, and modir of Joseph, and Salome.∴ And
 whanne Jhesus was in Galilee, þei folowiden him, and myn-
 ystriden to him, and manye oþere wymmen, þat to gidere

eden vp wiþ him to Jerusalem.∴ And whanne euentyd 42
 ; now maad, for it was þe euentyd bifore þe saboþ,∴ Joseph 43
 Armapie, þe noble decurioun, *that hadde ten men vndir*
 ; cam, þe which and he was abidinge þe rewme of God;
 l hardily he entride in to Pilat, and axide þe body of Jhesu.∴ 44
 soþe Pilat wondride, if he hadde now deied.∴ And cen- 45
 o axid to, *or brouzt to*, he axide him, if he were now
 d; and whanne he hadde knowun of centurio, he ȝaf þe
 ly of Jhesu to Joseph.∴ Sopli Joseph byinge him linnen 46
 þ, and doynge him down, wlappe in þe linnen cloþ, and
 tide in a newe sepulcre þat was hewen in a stoon, and
 ewid to a stoon at þe mouþ of the sepulcre.

CAP. XVI.

Marie Mawdeleyn forsoþe, and Marie of Joseph biheelden, 47
 ere he was putt.∴ And whanne þe saboþ hadde passid, 1
 rie Mawdeleyn, and Marie of James, and Salome bouzten
 ementis, þat þei comynge schulden anoynte Jhesu ∴ And 2
 eerly in oon of woke dayes, þei camen to þe sepulcre, þe
 ne now sprungen vp.∴ And þei seiden to gidere, Who 3
 al turne aȝen to vs þe stoon fro þe dore of þe sepulcre?∴
 d þei biholdinge syȝen þe stoon walewid away, forsoþ it 4
 s ful greet.∴ And þei goynge yn into þe sepulcre syȝen a 5
 g oon, hilid wiþ a whit stoole, sittinge at þe riȝt half; and
 weren abaist, *or greelli aferd*.∴ Þe which seiþ to hem, 6
 le ȝe drede; ȝe seken Jhesu of Nazareþ crucified; he haþ
 in, he is not heere; lo! þe place where þei puttiden him.∴
 t go ȝe, seye ȝe to his disciplis, and to Petre, for he schal 7
 byfore ȝou in to Galilee; þere ȝe schulen se him, as he
 le to you.∴ And þei goynge out fledden fro þe sepulcre; 8
 soþe drede and quakyng hadde assaylid hem, *or gon*
to hem, and to no man þei seiden ony þing, forsoþ þei
 dden.∴ Soply Jhesus, rysinge erly in þe first day of þe 9
 uke, *apperide firste* to Mary Mawdeleyn, of whom he

- 10 hadde cast out seuene deuelis.:- She goynge tolde to hem
 11 þat weren wiþ him, *hem* weylinge and wepynge.:- And þei
 heeringe þat he lyuede, and was seyn of hir, bileueden not.:-
 12 Soþli after þes þingis tweyne of hem wandringe, he is
 schewid in an oþer lyknesse, *or figure*, to hem goynge in
 13 to a toun. :- And þei goynge toolden to opere, neþir þei
 14 bileuyden to hem. :- Forsoþ at þe laste, hem enleuene rest-
 inge, Jhesus apperide to hem, and reprouyde þe vnbileue
 of hem, and þe hardnessse of herte, for þei bileuyden not to
 15 hem, þat hadden seyn him to haue risun fro deede.:- And
 he seide to hem, 3e goynge in to al þe world, preche þe
 16 gospel to ech creature.:- He þat schal bileue, and schal be
 baptisid, *or cristenyd*, schal be sauýd; soþli he þat schal
 17 bileue not, schal be dampned.:- Forsoþ þese tokenes schulen
 sue hem, þat schulen bileue. In my name þei schulen cast
 18 out fendis; þei schulen speke wiþ newe tungis;:- þei schulen
 do away serpentis; and if þei schulen drynke ony venym,
or deedli þing, that bryngtþ deef, it schal not noye hem.
 Þei schulen putte hir hondis vpon sike men, and þei schulen
 19 haue wel.:- And soþli þe Lord Jhesu, aftir þat he hadde spoke
 to hem, is takun vp in to heuene, and sittip on þe riȝthalf
 20 of God. :- Soþli þei gon forþ prechiden euerywhere, the
 Lord worchinge wiþ, and conferminge þe word wiþ signes
 folowinge.

Here endiþ þe gospel of Mark.

XXIV.

JOHN DE TREVISA.

A. D. 1387.

John Trevisa was a native of Cornwall, but resided chiefly in Gloucestershire, being vicar of Berkeley, and chaplain to Thomas Lord Berkeley. He is said to have been the author of an English version of the Old and New Testaments ; of which, however, nothing is now known.

His best-known work is a translation of *Higden's Polychronicon*, which was completed in A. D. 1387. It was printed by Caxton in 1482, with a continuation of the narrative from 1357 to 1460.

The first volume of a complete edition of *Higden's Polychronicon*, with Trevisa's translation, has been published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, but as the English MS. selected for that edition is not, philologically, a very important one, the contemporary MS. Tiberius D. VII. (collated with Harl. MS. 1900) in the Southern dialect has been resorted to for the following extracts.

The second extract, *The Norman Invasion*, exhibits more of the translator's provincialisms than are apparent in the former one ; and may be advantageously compared with Robert of Gloucester's narrative of this event (p. 62) in the same dialect.

I.

Description of Britain.

As Fraunce passeþ Britayn, so Brytain passeþ Irlond yn fayr weder ȝ nobleté, bute noȝt yn helpe ; for þis ylond ys best to brynge forþ tren, ȝ fruyt, ȝ roperon, ȝ oþere bestes, ȝ wyn groweþ þer-ynne in som places. Þe lond haþ plenté of foules ȝ of bestes, of dyvers manere kinde ; þe lond ys plentuos ȝ þe se also ; þe lond ys noble, copious, ȝ ryche of

noble welles, ȝ of noble ryvers wiþ plenté of fysch. Þar ys gret plenté of smal fysch ȝ of eeles, so þat cherles in som place feedeþ sowes wiþ fysch. Þar buþ ofte ytake dolphyns, ȝ se-calves, ȝ balenes, (gret fysch, as hyt were of whaales kunde) ȝ dyvers manere schyl-fysch, among þe whoche schyl-fysch buþ moskles þat habbeþ wijynne ham margey perles of al manere colour of¹ huȝ², of rody ȝ red, of purple ȝ of bluȝ³, ȝ specialych ȝ moost of whyte. Þar ys also plenté of schyl-fysch þat me dyep wiþ fyn reed; þe rednes þer-of ys wondre fayr ȝ stable, ȝ steyneþ nevere wiþ cold ne wiþ heete, wiþ weete ne wiþ drythe, bote evere þe elþer þe hu ys þe veyrer; þar buþ also salt welles ȝ hoothe welles, þer-of eorneþ stremes of hoot bapes, to-deled in dyvers places acordyng for man ȝ womman, ȝ for al maner age, ȝong ȝ olde.

Basilius seiþ þat þe water þat eorneþ ȝ passeþ by veynes of certyn metayl takeþ in hys course gret heete. Þys ylond ys plentuous of veynes of metayls, of bras, of yre, of leed, of tyn, ȝ of selver; also yn þis ylond, under þe torf of þe lond, ys good marl yfounde. Þe thryft of þe fatnes dryeþ hymself þerynne, so þat evere þe þykkeþ þe feeld ys ymarled þe betre corn hyt wol bere. Þer ys also anoþer maner whyt marl, þe lond ys þe betre four score ȝer þat þerwiþ ys ymarled.

Yn þis ylond groweþ a ston þat hatte gagates; ȝef me axeþ hys feyrnesse—⁴a ys blak as gemmes buþ; ȝef me axeþ hys kunde—a brenneþ yn water ȝ quencheþ in oyle; ȝef me axeþ hys myȝt—ȝif a ys yfroted ȝ yhat a⁵ holdeþ what hym neyȝheþ; ȝef me axeþ hys goodnes—hyt heeleþ þe dropesy ȝ⁶ hyt be ydrongke; ytend in þe fuyr hyt fereþ away serpentes; ȝef hys ys hat hyt holdeþ what hym neyȝheþ, as succuus a ston þat so hatte.

Þar buþ scheep þat bereþ good wolle; þar buþ meny hertes ȝ wylde bestes, ȝ fewe wolves, þerfore scheep buþ þe more

¹ Harl. MS. reads *and bewe*.

² For *bu* or *bew*.

³ For *blu* or *blewe*.

⁴ Harl. MS. reads *be*.

⁵ Harl. MS. has *it*.

⁶ For *an*.

sykerlyche, wipoute kepynge ylefte yn þe foold; ʒ yn þis ylond also buþ meny cites ʒ tounes faire, noble, ʒ ryche; meny gretē ryvers ʒ stremes wiþ gret plentē of fysch; meny fayre wodes ʒ gretē wiþ wel meny bestes, tame ʒ wyldē. Þe eorþe of þat lond ys copious of metayl oor ʒ of saltē welles; of quareres of marbel, of dyvers manere stones, of reed, of whyt, of nasche, of hard, of chalk, ʒ of whyt lym; þar ys also whyt cley ʒ reed for to make of crokkes ʒ steenes ʒ oþer vessel, ʒ barnd tyyl to hele wiþ hous ʒ churches, as hyt were in þe oþer Samia þat hatte Samos. Also Flaundres loveþ þe wolle of þis lond, ʒ Normandy þe skynnes ʒ þe fellys; Gaskuyn þe yre ʒ þe leed; Irlond þe oor ʒ þe salt; al Europa loveþ ʒ desyreþ þe whytē metayl of þis lond.

Brytayne haþ ynow of al matyr þat neodeþ bugge ʒ sulle, oþer ys needfol to mannes use; þar lakkeþ nevere salt ʒ yre, þarfore a versefyour in hys metre preyseþ þis lond in þis manere :—

Engelond ys good lond fruytfol of þe wolle, bote a kornere! Engleond fol of pley! freomen wel worþy to pleye! freomen, freo tonges, þe hertē freo! Freo buþ alle þe leden; here hond ys more freo, more betre þan here tonge.

Also Engelond hyzt of lond, ‘flour of londes al aboute;’ þat lond ys fol payd wiþ fruyt ʒ good of hys ounē. Straange men þat neodeþ þat lond wel eftē releueþ; whan hongur greueþ, þat lond al men such feedeþ; þat lond ys good ynow; wondur moche fruyt bereþ ʒ corn; þat lond ys wel at eese, as long as men lyueþ in peese. Est ʒ west al lond knoweþ havnes ryzt wel of Engelond; here schyppes foondes ʒ ofte helpeþ meny londes. Þar mete, þar monay men habbeþ more comyn alway, for heer þat creftes-men wol gladlyche ʒeue ʒyftes yn lond ʒ yn strond. Wel wyde men spekeþ of Engelond. Lond [of] hony, mylk, chyse! þis lond schal bere þe pryse as al londes ryzt. Þis ylond haþ neode to noone; al londes mot seeche help neodes of þis alone of lykyng

þer woon. Wondrye myȝt Salomon the rychesse þat þar ys an ; ȝerne wolde Octavian.

In Brytayne buȝ hootē welles wel arayed ȝ yhyȝt to þe use of mankunde. Maystere[sse] of þulke welles ys þe gret spyryt of Minerva. Yn hys hous fuyr duyreþ alwey þat never chaungeþ into askes, bote þar þe fuyr slakeþ hyt chaungeþ yn to stony clottes.

Yn Brytayne buȝ meny wondres, noþeles foure buȝ most wonderfol. Þe furste ys at Pectoun þar bloweþ so strong a wynd out of þe chenes of þe eorþe þat hyt casteþ up aȝe cloþes þat me casteþ yn. Þe secunde ys at Stonhenge, bysydes Salesbury, þar gretē stones ȝ wondur huge buȝ arered an hyȝ, as hyt were ȝates, so þat þar semeþ ȝates yset apon oþerē ȝates ; noþeles hyt ys noȝt clerlych yknowe noþer parceyvet houȝ ȝ wharfore a buȝ so arered ȝ so wonderlych yhonged. Þe þridde ys at Sherdhol þar ys gret holwenes undur eorþe ; ofte meny men habbeþ ybe þerynne ȝ ywalked about wiþynne ȝ yseye ryvers ȝ streemes, bote nowhar conneþ hy fynde non ende. Þe feurþe ys þat reyn ys yseye arered up of þe hulles, ȝ anon yspronge aboute in þe feeldes. Also þer ys a gret pond þat conteyneþ þre score ylondes covenable for men to dwelle ynne, þat pound ys by-clypped aboute wiþ sixscore rooches ; apon everych rooch ys an egle hys nest ; and þre score ryvers eorneþ into to þat pound and non of ham alle eorneþ into þe se bot on. Þar ys a ponnd yclosed aboute wiþ a wal of tyyl ȝ of ston ; yn þat pound men wascheþ ȝ baþeþ wel ofte, and everych man feeþeþ þe water hoot oþer cold ryȝt as a wol hymself. Þar buȝ also salte welles fer fram þe se ȝ buȝ salt al þe woke long forto Saturday noon, and fersche fram Saturday noon forto Mone-day. Þe water of þis welles whanne hys ysode turneþ into smal salt, fayr ȝ whyyt. Also þar ys a pond þe water þer-of haȝ wondur worchynge, for þey al an ost stood by þe pond ȝ turnede þe face þyderward þe water wolde drawe vyolentlyche

toward þe pond ȝ weete al here cloþes; so scholde hors be drawe yn þe same wyse, bote-ȝef þe face ys awayward fram þe water þe water noyep noȝt. Þer ys a wel non stream eorneþ þarfram noþer þerto, and ȝet four maner fysch buþ ytake þar-ynne. Þat welle ys bote twenty foot long ȝ twenty foot brood ȝ noȝt deop, bote to þe kneo, and ys yclosed wiþ hyȝe bankkes in everych syde.

Yn þe contray aboute Wynchestre ys a den; out of þat den alwey blowep a strong wynd, so þat no man may endure for to stonde tofore þat den. Þar ys also a pond þat turnep tre into yre ȝ hyt be þer-ynne al a ȝer; and so tren buþ yschape into whetstones.

Also þer ys yn þe cop of an hul a buryel; everych man [þat] comeþ ȝ metep þat buriel a schal fynde hyt evene ryȝt of hys ounne meete, ȝ ȝef a pylgrym oþer eny wery man kneoleþ þer-to, anon a schal be al fersch and of werynes schal he feele non nuy. Fastȝ by þe ministre of Wynburney, þat ys noȝt fer fram Bathe, ys a wode þat bereþ moche fruyt. ȝef þe tren of þat wode falle into a water oþer grounde [þat] þar ys nyȝ ȝ lygge þar al a ȝer þe tren teorneþ ynto stoones. Under þe cité of Chestre eorneþ þe ryver Dee, þat now to-deleþ Engeland ȝ Wales; þat ryver everych monthe chaungeþ his fordes, as men of þe contray telleþ, ȝ leveþ ofte þe chanel. Bote wheþer þe water drawe more toward Engeland oþer toward Wales, to what syde þat hyt be þat ȝer, men schal habbe þe wors ende ȝ be overset, ȝ þe men of þe oþer syde schal habbe þe betre ende, ȝ be at here above. Whanne þe water chaungeþ, so hys cours hyt bodeþ such happes. Þis ryver Dee eorneth ȝ comeþ out of þe lake þat hatte Pimblimere. Yn þe ryver is gret plenté of samon, nopeles in the lake ys never samon yfounde.

Tak heede how gret lyȝt ȝ bryȝtnesse of God hys myldenes haþ byschyne Englysche men seȝþthe þat hy turnede furst to ryȝtfol byleve; so þat of no men yn on provynce buþ

yfounde so meny hole bodies of men after here deef yn lyknes of everlestyng þat schal be after þe day of doom, as hyt wel semeþ in þis holy seintes, Etheldred, Edmund þe kyng, Elphege 7 Cuthbert. Y trowe þat hyt ys ydo by special grace of God Almyzty, for þe nacion þat ys yset, as hyt were, wiþoute þe worlde scholde take heed to duyryng of bodyes withoute corrupcion 7 rotyng, and be þe more bold 7 studefast for to tryste on þe fynal arysyng of dede bodyes for to leste evere more after þe day of doome. . . .

De incolarum linguis.

As hyt ys yknowe hou3 meny people buþ in þis ylond, þer buþ also of so meny people longages 7 tonges; noþeles Walschemen 7 Scottes þat buþ noȝt ymelled wiþ oþere nacions holdeþ wel nyȝ here furste longage 7 speche. Bote ȝet Scottes, þat were some tyme confederat 7 wonede wiþ þe Pictes, drawe somewhat after here speche. Bote þe Flemynges þat woneþ in þe west syde of Wales habbeþ yleft here straunge speche 7 spekeþ Saxonlych ynow. Also Englysche men þeyȝ hy hadde fram þe bygynnyng þe maner speche, Souþeron, Norþeron, 7 Myddel speche (in þe myddel of þe lond) as hy come of þe maner people of Germania; noþeles, by comyng 7 mellyng fyrst with Danes 7 afterward wiþ Normans, in meny þe contray longage ys apeyred, 7 som useþ strange wlaifyng, chyteryng, harryng 7 garryng 7 grisbiting. Þis apeyryng of þe burþe-tonge ys bycause of twey þinges,—on ys for chyldern in scoles aȝenes þe usage and manere of al oþere nacions buþ compelled for to leve here oun longage, 7 for to construe here lessons 7 here þingis a Freynsch 7 habbeþ supþe þe Normans come fyrst into Engeland. Also gentilmen children buþ ytaugt for to speke Freynsch fram tyme þat a buþ yrokke in here cradel, 7 conneþ speke 7 pleye wiþ a child hys brouch; and uplondysche men wol lykne hamsylf to gentile men 7

andep wiþ gret bysynes for to speke Freynsch for to be
nore ytold of.

Þys manere was moche y-used tofore þe furste moreyn ȝ
s seþthe somdel ychaunged, for John Cornwal, a maystere
f gramere, chaungede þe lore in gramere scole, ȝ con-
truccion of Freynsch into Englysch; ȝ Richard Pencryche
urnede þat manere techynge of hym, ȝ oþere men of Pen-
cryche; so þat þe ȝer of oure Lord, a þousond þre hondred,
oure score ȝ fyve of þe secunde kyng Richard after þe con-
quest nyne, in al þe gramere scoles of Engelond childern
eueþ Freynsch ȝ construeþ ȝ lurneþ an Englysch, ȝ habbeþ
ær-by avauntage in on syde ȝ desavauntage yn anoþer;
here avauntage ys þat a lurneþ here gramere yn lasse tyme
þan childern were ywoned to do—disavauntage ys þat now
children of gramere scole conneþ no more Frensch þan can
here lift heele, ȝ þat ys harm for ham, ȝ a scholle passe þe
se ȝ travayle in strange londes, ȝ in meny caas also. Also
gentil men habbeþ now moche yleft for to teche here chil-
dern Freynsch. Hyt semeþ a gret wondur houȝ Englysch þat
ys þe burþ-tonge of Englyschemen ȝ here ounne longage
ȝ tonge ys so dyvers of soon¹ in þis ylond, ȝ the longage of
Normandy ys comlyng of anoþer lond, ȝ haþ oȝ manere
soon among al men þat spekeþ hyt aryȝt in Engelond.
Noþeles þer ys as meny dyuers manere Frensch yn þe rem
of Fraunce as ys dyvers manere Englysche in þe rem of
Engelond.

Also of þe forseyde Saxon tonge þat ys deled a þre, ȝ ys
abyde scarslyche wiþ feaw uplondysche men ȝ ys gret wondur,
for men of þe est wiþ men of þe west, as hyt were under
þe same part of heyvene, acordeþ more in sounynge of
speche þan men of þe norþ wiþ men of þe souþ; þefore hyt
ys þat Mercii, þat buþ men of myddel Engelond, as hyt were
parteners of þe endes, undurstondeþ betre þe syde longages,

¹ For soun.

Norþeron and Souþeron, þan Norþern 7 Souþern undurstondeþ oþþer oþer.

Al þe longage of þe Norþhumbres, 7 specialych at 3orke, ys so scharp, slyttynge, 7 frotynge, 7 unschape þat we Souþeron men may þat longage unneþe undurstonde. Y trowe þat ys bycause þat a buþ ny3 to strange men 7 aliens þat spekeþ straungelyche, 7 also bycause þat þe kynges of Engelond woneþ alwey fer fram þat contray, for a buþ more yturnd to þe souþ contray; 7 3ef a goþ to þe norþ contray a goþ wiþ gret help 7 strengthe. Þe cause why a buþ more in þe souþ contray þan in þe Norþ may be [for] betre cornlond, more people, more noble cytes, 7 more profytable havenes.

II.

The Norman Invasion.

WHANNE Harold was yset op in þe kyngdom he¹ þo3te no3t on þe covenantes þat were ymade bytwene hym 7 William; he huld hym-sylf discharged of þe oþ, vor William hys dou3ter þat he hadde yspoused was ded wyþinne age of wedlok, and also vor William was occupyed wyþ werres in londes þat were ny3 hym.

Bote William warnede hym of cove-naunt ybroke 7 mellede manas wyþ prayers. Harold seyde þat a nyse folly cove-naunt scholde no3t be yholde, 7 nameliche þe byhest of oþere menne kyngdom, wyþoute comyn assent of alle þe senatours; þare² a lewede oþ scholde be ybroke, namelyche while hyt was compelled to be yswore vor nede in a nedfol tyme.

In þe menetyme William arayeþ al þat nedeþ vor þe journey 7 geteþ assent of þe lordes of hys lond, and purchaseth favour of Alisaunder þe pope, wyþ a baner þat hym was sent.

¹ MS. 7.

² þat 7

Dues were þe causes why Duc William axede ȝ chalengede Englonð aȝenes Harold:—þe deþ of Alvredus þat was hys cosyn, þe sone of Emma on Alvredus, hadde yproc[u]red his deth; þe secunde þe exilyng of Robert Archebyschop of Canturbury; þe þrydde cause was, vor kyng Edward hadde byhote duc William þat a scholde be kyng after hym ef he dyede wyþoute chyldern; ȝ Harold was yswore to volvulle þat byheste.

þe lordes of Normandy consaylede among hemsylf what was beste to do of þys journey; ȝ William þat was the duc hys sewer, þe sone of Osbert, consaylede to leve and vorsake þe journey, boþe vor scarsté of vyzyng ȝ vor stryngþe, hardynes ȝ sturnnes ȝ cruwelnes of enemyes. þe opere lordes were glad here-of ȝ potte here answere ȝ here wordes oppon þes William hys mouþ, al as he wolde sygge, Whanne he com tovore þe duc he seyde that he was redy to þe journey ȝ alle þe opere lordes; þanne myzte noȝt þe lordes wyþdrawe vor schame.

Whanne duc William ȝ hys men were longe ytaryed in Seynt Valeric hys haven, vor þe wynd was aȝenes ham, þe pupel grucchede ȝ seyde þat hyt was a wodnes to chalange by stryngþe opere menne lond, ȝ namelyche while God strof aȝenes ham, ȝ God moste graunte ham good wynd ef hy scholde seyle. Duc William made brynge out Seynt Valericus hys holy body ȝ sette hym þer-oute vor to have wynd. Anone lykyng wynde vulde þe seyles.

þanne duc Willam cam toward Englonð, after Michelmasse day ȝ londede at Hastyng in a plas þat hatte Pevenese. In his goynge out of hys schyp a slod wyþ hys o voot ȝ stykede in þe sond; ȝ þe knyȝt þat was nexte criede to him anon ȝ seyde:—‘Now Ser Erle þou holdest Englonð; þou schalt ryȝt neuliche be kyng.’ þanne he chargede þat hy scholde take no prayes, ȝ seyde þat a most spare þynges þat scholde be hys oun. And [he] lefte so vyftene dawes.

Harold com vram werre of Noreganes ⁊ hurde tyþynges hereof ⁊ hyede wel vast ⁊ hadde bote veawe knyȝtes aboute hym, vor he hadde ylost meny stalword men in þe rapere batayle, ⁊ he hadde noȝt ysent vor more help; and, þeyȝ a hadde, men were wroþe ⁊ wolde have wyþdrawe ham, vor hy moste have no part of þe prayes in þe batayle of Noreganes. Bote Harold sent vorþ spyes vor to aweyte ⁊ se þe numbere ⁊ þe stringþe of hys enymyes. Duc William touk þu[es spyes] and ladde ham aboute hys tentes ⁊ hys pavylons ⁊ vedde ham ryȝt realyche ⁊ sent ham to Harold aȝe.

Þanne hy tolde Harold tyþynges ⁊ seyde þat al þat were in duc William his ost were prustes, vor hy hadde þe chekes ⁊ boþe lyppes yschave. Englysche men usede þat tyme þe here of here overlyppes to-sched ⁊ noȝt yshore. 'Nay,' quaf Harold, 'hy beþ no prustes bote a beþ wel stalword knyȝtes.' Þanne quaf Gurth, Harold hys zungeste broþer;— 'why wolt þou unware vyȝte wyþ so meny orped men. We swore hym never non oþ; þanne hyt ys betere þat þou þat art yswore to hym wyþdrawe þe vor þe¹ a tyme ⁊ lete us þat beþ noȝt yswore vyȝte vor þe contray; ⁊ ef we habbeþ þe maystry wel hyt ys, ⁊ ef we beþ overcome þe cause ⁊ þe querel ys saf to þe.'

Ȝut duc William sent a mon to Harold ⁊ profede hym þre weyes :—Oþer þat a scholde leve þe kyngdom, oþer holde þe kyngdom of duc William ⁊ regne undyr hym, oþer hy tweyne scholde vyȝte eyþer wyþ oþer in þat querel, in syȝt of boþe osten, namelyche, while Kyng Edward was ded þat hadde ygraunted hym Englund, ef he dyede wyþoute heyr ⁊ by consayl ⁊ assent of Stigandus, þe archebyschop ⁊ of þe erles, Godwin ⁊ Siward, in token þare-of Godwin hys sone ⁊ hys newew were ysent to duc William. Bote Harold wolde noȝt assente to þe monk² hys message, bote seyde þat

¹ So in MS.² MS. mong.

use scholde be dereyned by dent of swerd, ȝ prayede
 ȝe þat God scholde deme bytwene ham tweyne.

ne þe osten in eyþer syde come to þe place of þe
 in þe day of Seynt Kalixt, þe pope, þe teþe day of
 er, in a Saturday, in þe plas þar þe Abbay of Batayl
 d, as we buþ enformed.

nyzt to-vore þe batayle Englysche men ȝaf ham to
 ȝ to drynke ȝ woke al nyzt. Erlyche amorwe votmen
 re axes made a gret stryngþe of schyldes ȝ sette ham
 lers ȝ hadde yhad þe meystry nadde þe Normans
 d to vle.

ig Harold stod on hys veet by hys baner wyþ his twey
 n (þat baner was afterward ysent to þe pope). Þe
 uns þe nyzt tovore þe batayle schrof ham of here
 ; ȝ were yhousled. Erlyche amorwe vootmen ȝ archers
 set in þe batayl ȝ þanne knyztēs, wyþ whynges in eyþer

: William confortd hys men to þe batayl ȝ was ware
 s haburjon was ytornd in ȝ out, ȝ amendede þat hap
 bourd ȝ seyde—'Þe stringþe of an erldom schal torne
 kyngdom.' Bote, ar þe scheltroms come togedders,
 þe Normans syde, þat hyzte Taillefer by hys name, cast
 vord ȝ pleyde to vore þe osten ȝ slouȝ a banyour of
 sche men þat came aȝenes hym, ȝ dede eft þe same of
 r ȝ so a slouȝ þe þrydde ȝ was yslawe hymself.

ne anone þe scheltroms smyte togedders wyþ Roland
 onge, þat was bygonne in þe Normans syde. Þe
 e durede vram undern of þe day to eveson[g] tyme,
 noþer party wolde wyþdrawe (bote þe duc hys archers
 here vorþ). Þanne þe duc made a token to hys men
 scholde feyne to vle, ȝ by þat weye Englysche men
 yggyled ȝ desarayed ham, as hyt were, vor to pursywe
 ese on here enmyes. Bote whanne Englysche men
 o out of aray þe Normans arayede ham efte ȝ tornede

aȝe oppon þe Englysche men þat were out of aray ȝ chasede ham in everyche syde. Atte laste Harold was yhyt wyþ an arewe ȝ loste hys on ye ȝ was yhurt on þe breyn ȝ vul don in þat plas, ȝ on of þe knyȝtes stykede hym in þe þyȝ whyle a lay þare; þarevore William potte þat knyȝt out of chevally, vor he hadde ydo an vnkunnyng dede. Þat day William loste þe þre beste hors þat he hadde, ȝ [hy] were ystyked ryȝt under hym; bote he bar hym so þat no blod com out of hys body.

Whanne þe victory was ydo, William buryede hys men þat were yslawe, ȝ grauntede hys enemyes to do þe same, who þat wolde, and sent Harold hys body to Harold hys moder wyþoute eny myde, as hue hadde yprayed; and hue buryede hym at Waltham in þe Abbay of Chanons þat Harold hadde yfounded.

Bote Girald Cambrensis in hys bok, þat hatte *Itenerarius*, wol mene þat Harold hadde meny woundes ȝ loste hys lyft ye wyþ a strok of an arewe ȝ was overcome ȝ scapede to þe contray of Chester ȝ lyvede þar holyliche, as me troweþ, an anker hys lyf in Seynt James celle vaste by Seynt Johan hys cherche ȝ made a gracyous ende, ȝ þat was yknowe by hys laste confessyon; ȝ þe comyn fame in þat cyté acordeþ to þat sawe.

XXV.

GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

1328—1400.

Chaucer was born in London, about the beginning of the reign of Edward III, in the year 1328, and died A.D. 1400; and was buried in Westminster Abbey.

Chaucer's writings are very numerous, but his most famous and best-known work is *The Canterbury Tales*, written about 1390.

His chief minor poems comprise the following:

- (a) *The Court of Love*; *The Assembly of Fowls*; *The Cuckow and the Nigbtigale*; *The Flower and the Leaf*; (written in the earlier period of the poet's life).
- (b) *Chaucer's Dream*; *The Book of the Duchess*; *The Romaunt of the Rose*; *The House of Fame*; (middle period).
- (c) *Troilus and Creseide*; and *The Legend of Good Women*; (later period).

The prose works of Chaucer are (besides a portion of the *Canterbury Tales*), *The Boke of Consolacion of Philosophie*, translated from Boethius' *De Consolatione Philosophiae*; *The Testament of Love*; and a *Treatise on the Astrolabe*.

The present extracts are copied, with some few corrections and additions, from MS. Harleian 7334 (collated throughout with Lansdowne MS. 851) by the editor of the present work.

I.

The Pardoner's Tale.

IN Flaundres whilom was a companye
Of 3onge folkes, that haunted[en] folye,
As ryot, hasard, stywes, and tavernes;
Wher as wip lutes, harpes, and gyternes,

They daunce and play at dees boþe day and night, 5
 And ete also, and drynk over her might,
 Thurgh which þay doon þe devyl sacrifice
 Wipinne þe develes temple, in cursed wise,
 By superfluité abhominable.
 Her othes been so greet and so dampnable, 10
 That it is grisly for to hie hem swere.
 Our blisful Lordes body þay to-tere;
 Hem þoughte Jewes rent him¹ nought y-nough;
 And ech of hem at oþeres synne lough.
 And right anoon þer come tombesteris, 15
 [Fetis and smal, and 3onge fruytester[i]s,
 Singers wiþ harpes, baudes, wafer[er]es,
 Whiche þat ben verray þe develes officeres,
 To kyndle and blowe þe fuyr of leccherie,
 þat is anexid unto glotonye. 20
 The holy wryt take I to my witnesse,
 That luxury² is in wyn and dronkenesse.
 Lo, how that dronken Loth unkyndely
 Lay by his doughtres tuo unwityngly,
 So dronk he was he niste what he wrought[e]. 25
 Herodes, who-so wel þe story sought[e]³,
 Whan he of wyn was repleet at his fest[e]⁴,
 Right at his oughne table 3af his hest[e]⁴
 To sle þe baptist Johan ful gilteles.
 Seneca seiþ a good word⁵ douteles; 30
 He seiþ he can no difference fynde
 Bituyx a man that is out of his mynde,
 And a man þe which is dronkelewe;

¹ MS. *hem*.² Lansd. MS. 851, *lycherie*.³ Lansd. MS. reads as follows:—*And þerefore sore repente him ouhte.**Herodes, who so wil þe story secþe,**Þere maie 3e leren 7 be ensample secþe.*⁴ From Lansd. MS. 851.⁵ Lansd. MS. has *Senec seiþe the good wordes*.

But that woodnes, fallen in a schrewe¹,
Persevereth lenger þan doth dronkenesse. 35

O glotonye, ful of corsidnesse;
O cause first of oure confusioun,
O original of oure dampnacioun,
Til Crist had[de] bought us² wiþ his blood agayn!
Lo[keth], how dere, schortly for to sayn, 40

About was first þis cursed felonye;
Corrupt was al þis world for glotonye.
Adam our fader, and his wyf also,
Fro Paradys to labour and to wo
Were dryven for þat vice, it is no drede. 45

For whils þat Adam fasted, as I rede,
He was in Paradis, and whan þat he
Eet of the fruyt defendit of a tre,
He was out cast to wo and into peyne.
O glotony, wel ought us on þe pleyne! 50

O, wist a man how many maladyes
Folwith of excesse and of glotonyes,
He wolde be þe more mesurable
Of his diete, sitting at his table.
Allas! þe schorte prote, þe tendre mouþ, 55

Makeþ þat Est, West, North and South,
In erþe, in ayer, in watir, man to swynke,
To gete a sely glotoun mete and drynke.
Of þis matier, O Poul, wel canstow trete.
Mete unto wombe, and wombe [ek] unto mete 60

Schal God destroyen boþe, as Powel saiþ.
Allas! a foul þing is it by my faiþ
To say þis word, and fouler is þe dede,
Whan men so drynken of þe whyt and rede³,

¹ The correct reading perhaps, is, *But woodnes, þat is fallen in a schrewe.*

² e Lansd. MS. reads *Bot wodenes [þat] is false in a schrewe.* ³ MS. out.

Lansd. MS. *When men so drenken of þe white ȝ of þe rede.*

That of his þrote he makijþ his privé 6;
 Thurgh pilke cursed sperfluité.
 Thapostil wepyng saiþ ful pitously,
 Ther walkith many, of which þou told have I,
 I say it now wepyng with pitous vois,
 Thay are¹ enemys of Cristes croys, 70
 Of which þe ende is deth, wombe is her God.

* * * * *

How gret cost and labour is þe to fynde!
 These cokes how þey stamp, and streyn, and grynde,
 And torne substaunce into accident,
 To fulfille þy licorous talent²! 75
 Out of the harde boones gete þay
 The mary³, for þay caste nouȝt away
 That may go þurgh þe golet softe and soote;
 Of spicery and levys, barke and roote,
 Schal ben his sause maad to his delyt 80
 To make him have a newe appetit.
 But certes he þat haunteþ suche delices,
 Is deed þer whiles þat he lyveþ in vices.
 A licorous þing is wyn, and dronkenesse
 Is ful of stryvyng and of wrecchednesse. 85
 O dronke man, disfigured is þi face,
 Sour is þi breþ, foul artow to embrace;
 And þurgh þi dronken nese⁴ sowneþ þe soun⁵,
 As though thou seydest ay, Sampsoun, Sampsoun;
 And ȝit, God wot, Sampson drank never wyn. 90
 Thow fallist, as it were a stiked swyn;
 Thy tonge is lost, and al þin honest cure,
 For dronkenes is verray sepulture
 Of mannes witt and his discrecioun,

¹ Lansd. MS. *þere ben*.

² Lansd. MS. *To fulfil al &c.*

³ Lansd. MS. reads *mery*.

⁴ MS. reads *dronkenesse*.

⁵ Lansd. MS. reads *And þorube þi drongen nose semeþe þi wouna*.

In whom þat drynk haþ dominacioun. 95
 He can no counseil kepe, it is no drede.
 Now¹ keep ȝow from þe white and from þe rede,
 [And] namely fro þe white wyn of Leepe,
 That is to selle in Fleetstreet or in Chepe.
 This wyn of Spayne crepith subtilly 100
 In oþer wynes growyng faste by,
 Of which þer riseth such fumosit ,
 That whan a man hath dronke draughtes þre,
 And wenep þat he be at hom in Chepe,
 He is in Spayne, right at þe toun of Lepe, 105
 Nought at the Rochel, ne at Burdeaux toun;
 And þanne wol[e] þai say, Sampsoun, Sampsoun,
 But herken, lordyngs, o word, I ȝou pray,
 That alle þe soverayn actes, dar I say,
 Of victories in þe Olde Testament, 110
 Þorugh² the verray God omnipotent
 Were doon in abstinence and in prayere;
 Lokith the Bible, and þer ȝe may it hier.
 Loke Atthila þe grete conquerour,
 Deyd in his sleep, with schame and dishonour, 115
 Bleedyng ay at his nose in dronkenesse;
 A captayn schuld ay lyve in sobrenesse.
 And over al this, ayse ȝow right wel,
 What was comaunded unto Lamuel;
 Nought Samuel, but Lamuel say I. 120
 Redith the Bible, and fyndep expresly
 Of wyn ȝevyng to hem þat han justice.
 No more of þis, for it may wel suffice.
 And now I have i-spoke of glotonye,
 Now wil I ȝow defende hasardrye. 125
 Hasard is verray moder of lesynges,
 And of deceipt, and cursed forsweringes;

¹ MS. *Ne*² MS. *That þorugh.*

Blaspheme of Crist, manslaughter, and wast also
Of catel, and of tyme ; [and] forthermo¹

It is reproef, and contrair to honour, 130

For to be halde a comun hasardour.

And ever þe heyer he is of astaāt,

The more is he holden desolaat².

If þat a prince use hasardrie,

In alle governance and policie 135

He is, as by comun opinioun,

Holde þe lasse in reputacioun.

Stilbon, þat was iholde a wis embasitour,

Was sent into Corinthe with gret honour

Fro Lacidome, to make hir alliaunce ; 140

And whan he³ cam, him happede par chaunce,

That alle þe grettest þat were of þat lond

Playing atte hasard he hem fond.

For which, as soone as [þat]⁴ it mighte be,

He stal him hoom aȝein to his contré, 145

And saide ther, 'I nyl nouȝt lese my name,

I nyl not take on me so gret diffame,

ȝow for to allie unto noon hasardoures.

Sendeþ som oþer wise embasitoures,

For by my troupe, me were lever dye, 150

Than I ȝow scholde to hasardours allye.

For ȝe, þat ben so glorious in honoures,

Schal not allie ȝow with hasardoures,

As by my wil, ne as by my treté.'

This wise philosophre þus sayd he. 155

Lo eek how þat þe king Demetrius

The king of Parthes, as þe [book] saith us,

Sent him a paire dees of gold in scorn,

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *ȝ of oþer mo.*
ȝbalden is be dissolaȝe.

² MS. *bim.*

³ Lansd. MS. reads *þe more*
⁴ Supplied from the Lansd. MS.

For he had used hasard þer to-forþ;
 For which he hield his gloir and his renoun 160
 At no valieu or reputacioun.

Lordes may fynde oþer maner play
 Honest y-nough to dryve away þe day.

Now wol I speke of oþes fals and grete
 A word or tuo, as oþer bookes entrete. 165

Gret swering is a þing abhominable,
 And fals swering is more reprovable.
 The hyhe God forbad sweryng at al,
 Witnes on Mathew, but in special
 Of sweryng saith the holy Jeremye, 170

Thou schalt say soth þin oþes, and not lye;
 And swere in doom, and eek in rightwisnes;
 But ydel sweryng is a cursednes.

Bihold and se, þer in þe firste table *
 Of hihe Goddes heste honourable, 175

How þat þe secounde heste [of him] is þis;
 Tak not in ydelne[s] his¹ name amys.

Lo, he rather forbedith such sweryng,
 Than homicide, or many a corsed þing.
 I say as by order þus it stondith; 180

This knoweth he þat þe hestes understondeth.
 How þat þe second hest of God is that.
 And forþermore, I wol þe telle a[l] plat,

That² ve[n]gance schal not parte fro his hous,
 That of his othes is outrageous. 185

‘By Goddes precious hert, and by his nayles,
 And by þe blood of Crist, þat is in Hayles,
 Seven is my chaunce, and also cink and tray!

By Goddis armes, and þou falsly play,
 This daggere schal þurgh þin herte goo!’ 190

This fruyt comeþ of þe bicchid³ boones tuo,

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *my*.

² MS. *The*.

³ Lansd. MS. *becched*.

Forswering, ire, falsnes, homicide.

Now for the love of Crist þat for us dyde,

Levith þoure othis, boþe gret and smale.

But, sires, now wol I telle forþ my tale.

195

These riottoures þre, of which I þou telle,

Longe erst þan prime rong of eny belle,

Were set hem in a tavern for to drynke ;

And as þay sat[te], þay herd a belle clinke

Biforn a corps, was caried to þe grave ;

200

That oon of hem gan calle unto his knave,

'Go bet,' quop he, 'and axe redily,

What corps is þat, [þat] passeth her forþby¹;

And loke þou report his name wel.'

'Sire,' quod he, 'but þat nedep never a del ;

205

It was me told er ȝe com heer tuo houres ;

He was; pardy, an old felaw of ȝoures,

And sodeinly he was i-slayn to night ;

Fordronk as he sat on his bench upright,

Ther com a privé thef, men clepen Deth,

210

That in þis contré al þe peple sleth ;

And with his spere he smot his hert a-tuo,

And went his way wiþoute wordes mo.

He hap a þousand slayn þis pestilence.

And, maister, er ȝe come in his presence,

215

Me thinkeþ þat it is ful necessarie,

For to be war of such an adversarie ;

Beþ redy for to meet him evermore.

Thus thaughte me my dame, I say nomore.'

'By seinte Mary!' sayde þe taverner,

220

'The child saip soþ; for he hap slayn þis ȝeer,

Hens over a myle, wiþinne a gret village,

Boþe man and womman, child, [and hyne], and page;

I trowe his habitacioun be þere.

¹ Lansd. MS. reads What corps it is þat passeth forþ[e] by.

To ben avysed gret wisdom it were, 225
 Er þat he dede a man þat dishonour.
 ‘Ȝe, Goddis armes!’ quod þis ryottour,
 ‘Is it such peril with him for to meete?
 I schal him seeke by way and eek by strete,
 I make avow to Goddis digne boones! 230
 Herkneþ, felaws, we þre ben al oones;
 Let ech of us hold up his hond to other,
 And ech of us bycome operes broþer,
 And we wil slee þis false traitour Deth;
 He schal be slayne, [he] that so many sleeth, 235
 By Goddis digneté, er it be night!’
 Togideres han þese þre here trouþes plight
 To lyve and deye ech of he[m] wiþ oper,
 As þough he were his oughne sworne¹ brother.
 And up þai startyn, al dronke in þis rage, 240
 And forþ þai goon towards þat village,
 Of which þe taverner haþ spoke biforn,
 And many a grisly oth þan han þay sworn,
 And Cristes blessed body þay to-rent[e],
 Deth schal be deed, if þat þey may him hent[e]. 245
 Right as þay wolde have torned over a style,
 Whan þai han goon nought fully [half] a myle,
 An old man and a pore with hem mette.
 This olde man ful mekely hem grette,
 And saide þus, ‘Lordynges, God ȝow se!’ 250
 The proudest of þe ryotoures þre
 Answerd aȝein, ‘What? carle, wiþ hard[e] grace²,
 Why artow al for-wrapped save þi face?
 Why lyvest þou [so longe] in so gret age³?’
 This olde man gan loke on his visage 255
 And saide þus, ‘For þat I can not fynde
 A man, þough þat I walke[d] into Inde,

Gyrwhitt reads *boren*. ² MS. reads *wiþ meschaunce*. ³ MS. gret an age.

Neiper in cité noon, ne in village,
 That wol chaunge his zoupe for myn age;
 And þerfore moot I have myn age stille 260
 As longe tyme as it is Goddes wille.
 And Deth, allas! ne wil not have my lif.
 Thus walk I lik a resteles caytif,
 And on the ground, which is my modres gate,
 I knokke with my staf, erly and late, 265
 And saye, 'Leeve moder, let me in.
 Lo, how I wane, fleisch, and blood, and skyn.
 Allas! whan schuln my boones ben at rest?
 Moder, with þow wil¹ I chaunge my chest,
 That in my chamber longe tyme haþ be, 270
 3e, for an haire clout to wrap in me².
 But 3et to me sche wil not do þat grace,
 For which ful pale and welkid is my face.
 But, sires, to þow it is no curtesye
 To speke unto an old man vilonye, 275
 But he trespass in word or elles [in] dede³.
 In holy writ 3e may your-self wel rede,
 Aþens an old man, hoor upon his hede,
 3e scholde arise; wherefor I yow rede,
 Ne doth unto an old man more harm now, 280
 Namore than 3e wolde men dede to þow
 In age, if that 3e may so long abyde.
 And God be with þou, wherso 3e go or ryde!
 I moot go þider as I have to goo.
 'Nay, olde cherl, by God! þou schalt not so,' 285
 Sayde þat oper hasardour anoon;
 Thou partist nouȝt so lightly, by seint Johan!
 Thou spak right now of þat⁴ traitour Dep,
 That in þis contre alle oure frendes slep;

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *wold*. ² Lansd. MS. reads *wrappe me*. ³ Lansd.
 MS. reads *Bot be trespass in worde, eyþer in dede*. ⁴ Lansd. MS. reads *þille*.

Have her my trouth, as þou art his aspye; 290
 Tel wher he is, or elles þou schalt dye,
 By God and by þat holy sacrament!
 For sople þou art oon of his assent
 To slene¹ us 3onge folk, þou² false theef.
 'Now, sires, þan if þat 3ow be so leef 295
 To fynde Deþ, torn up þis croked way,
 For in þat grove I laft him, by my fay,
 Under a tree, and þer he wil abyde;
 Ne for 3our bost he nyl him no þing hyde.
 Se 3e þat ook? right þer 3e schuln him fynde. 300
 God save 3ow, þat bought a3ein mankynde,
 And 3ow amend.' Þus sayde þis olde man.
 And everich of þese riotoures ran,
 Til þay come to þe tre, and þer þay founde
 Of florins fyn of gold y-coyned rounde, 305
 Wel neygh a seven bussshels, as hem³ thought[e].
 No lenger þanne after Deth[e] þay sought[e];
 But ech of hem so glad was of þat sight[e],
 For þat þe florens so faire were and bright[e],
 That doun þai sette hem by þat precious hord. 310
 The 3ongest of hem spak þe firste word.
 'Breþeren,' quod he, 'takeþ keep what I schal say[e];
 My witte is gret, pough þat I bourde and play[e].
 This tresour haþ fortune to us given
 In mirth and jolyté our lif to lyven, 315
 And lightly as it comth, so wil we spende.
 Ey, Goddis precious dignité! who wende
 To day, þat we schuld have so fair a grace?
 But might[e] þis gold be caried fro þis place
 Hom to myn hous, or ellis unto 3oures, 320
 (For wel I wot þat þis gold is nougt oures),
 Than were we in heyh felicité.

¹ MS. reads *schewe*.² MS. reads *þe*.³ MS. *me*.

But trewely by day it may not be;
 Men wolde say that we were þeves stronge,
 And for oure tresour doon us for to honge. 325
 This tresour moste caried be by night[e]
 As wysly and as slely as it might[e].
 Wherfore I rede, þat cut among us alle
 Be drawe, and let se wher þe cut wil falle;
 [And] he þat hæþ þe cut, wiþ herte bliþe 330
 Schal renne to þe toun, and þat ful swithe,
 To bring us bred and wyn ful prively;
 And tuo of us schal kepe subtilly
 This tresour wel; and if he wil not tarie,
 Whan it is night, we wol þis tresour carie 335
 By oon assent, þer as us likeþ best.'

That oon of hem þe cut brought in his fest,
 And bad hem drawe and loke wher it wil falle;
 And it fel on the 3ongest of hem alle;
 And forþ toward þe toun he went anoon. 340
 And al-so soone as he was agoon,
 That oon of hem spak [þus] unto þat oþer;
 'Thow wost wel þat þou art my sworne broþer,
 Thy profyt wol I telle þe anoon.
 Thow wost wel þat our felaw is agoon, 345
 And her is gold, and þat ful gret plenté,
 That schal departed be among us þre.
 But naþeles, if I can schape it so,
 That it departed were bitwix us tuo,
 Had I not doon a frendes torn to þe?' 350
 That oþer answerd, 'I not how þat may be;
 He wot wel þat þe gold is wiþ us tway[e].
 What schulde we þan do? what schuld we say[e]?'
 'Schal it be counsail?' sayde þe ferste schrewe,
 'And I schal telle þe in wordes fewe 355
 What we schul doon, and bringe it wel aboute.'

unte,' quod þat oþer, 'wiþoute doute,
 by my trouþe I wil the nought bywray[e].'¹
 'w,' quod þe first[e], 'þou wost wel we ben tway[e],
 wo of us schuln strenger be þan oon. 360
 |, whanne he is sett, and þat anoon,
 as [þough] thou woldest with him pleye;
 | schal ryf him thurgh þe sydes tweye,
 [that] þou strogelest wiþ him as in game,
 with þi dagger loke þou do þe same; 365
 an schal al þe gold departed be,
 þre frend, bitwixe þe and me;
 may we [boþe] oure lustes al fulfille,
 slay at dees right at our owne wille.¹
 us accorded ben þese schrewes twayn, 370
 þe þridde, as þe herd[e] me sayn.
 s þongest, which þat wente to þe toun,
 st in hert he rollith up and doun
 beaute of þe florins newe and bright[e];
 'ord!' quod he, 'if so were þat I might[e] 375
 al þis gold unto my self alloone,
 is no man þat lyveþ under þe troone
 þat I, þat schulde lyve so mery as I.'
 the last þe feend, oure enemy,
 his thought, þat he schuld[e] poysoun beye, 380
 which he mighte sle his felaws tweye.
 hy, þe feend fond him in such lyvyng,
 he had[de] leve to sorwe him to brynge.
 s witterly was his [ful] entent[e]
 in hem boþe, and never to repent[e]. 385
 outh he goþ, no lenger wold he tary[e],
 e toun unto a potecary[e],
 prayde him þat he him wolde selle
 poysoun, þat he might his rattis quelle.

¹ MS. *gold*.

And eek þer was a polkat in his hawe, 390
 [Þat], as he sayde, his capouns had i-slawe;
 And said he wold him wreke, if þat he might[e].
 On vermyn, þat destroyed him by night[e].
 Thapotecary answerd: 'And þou schalt have
 A ping þat, also God my soule save, 395
 In al þis world þer nys no creature,
 That ete or dronk had of þis confecture,
 Nought but þe mountaunce of a corn of whete,
 That he ne schuld his lif anoon for-lete;
 3e, sterve he schal, and þat in lasse while, 400
 Than þou wilt goon a paas not but a myle,
 The poysoun is so strong and violent.'
 This cursed man hap in his hond i-hent
 This poysoun in a box, and sins¹ he ran
 Into the nexte stret unto a man, 405
 And borwed him large botels þre;
 And in þe two his poysoun poured he;
 The þrid he keped[e] clene for his drynke,
 For al þe night he schop him for to swynke
 In caryng the gold out of þat place. 410
 And whan þis riotour, with sory grace,
 Hath² fillid with wyn his [grete]³ botels þre,
 To his felaws aȝein repaireth he.

What nedith it [therof] to sermoun³ more?
 For right as þay had[de] cast his deth bifore, 415
 Right so þay han him slayn, and pat anoon.
 And whan þis was i-doon, þan spak þat oon:—
 'Now let us drynk and sitte, and make us mery
 And sippen we wil his body bery.'
 And afterward it happed him par cas, 420
 To take the botel þer þe poysoun was,
 And drank, and ȝaf his felaw drink also,

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *sepen*.² MS. *bad*.³ MS. reads *sermoun* *it*.

For which [anon] þay sterved[e]¹ boþe tuo.
 But certes I suppose þat Avycen²
 Wrot never in canoun, ne in non fen, 425
 Mo wonder sorwes of empoisonyng,
 Than hadde þese wrecches tuo here endyng.
 Thus endid been þese homicides tuo,
 And eek þe fals empoysoner also.
 O cursed synne ful of cursednesse! 430
 O traytorous homicidy! O wikkednesse³!
 O glotony, luxurie, and hasardrye⁴!
 Thou blasphemour of Crist with vilanye,
 And oþes grete, of usage and of pride!
 Allas! mankynde, how may it bytyde, 435
 That to þy creatour, which þat þe wrought[e],
 And wip his precious herte-blood þe bought[e],
 Thou art so fals and so unkynde, allas!
 'Now, goodmen, God forþeve þow þour trespas;
 And ware yow fro the synne of avarice.' 440

The Prioress Tale.

O LORD, oure Lord, þy name how merveylous
 Is in þis large world i-sprad! (quod sche)
 For nought oonly þy laude precious
 Parformed is by men of heih degre,
 But by mouthes of children þy bounté 445
 Parformed is, [for] on oure brest soukyng
 Som tyme schewe þay þin heriyng.
 Wherefore in laude, as I best can or may,
 Of þe and of þy white lily flour,
 Which þat þe bar, and is a mayde alway, 450
 To telle a story I wil do my labour;
 Nought þat I may encresce þoure honour,

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *storuen*. ² Harl. MS. reads *Amycen*. ³ Lansd. MS.
 ds *O trayteres homicideres*. ⁴ Lansd. MS. reads *O luxurie*, *O basardye*.

For sche hir silf is honour and [þerto] roote
Of bounté, next hir Sone, and soules boote.

O modir mayde, o mayde mooder fre ! 455
O bussch unbrent, brennyng in Moises sight[e],
That ravysshedest doun fro þe deité,
Thurgh þin humblesse, þe gost þat in the alight[e];
Of whos vertu, he in þin herte pight[e],
Conceyved was þe Fadres sapience; 460
Help me to telle it in þy reverence.

Lady, þi bounté, and þy magnificence,
Thy vertu and þi gret humilité,
Ther may no tonge expres in no science;
For som tyme, lady, er men pray[e] to þe, 465
Thow gost biforn of þy benignité,
And getist us þe light, þurgh þy prayere,
To gyden us þe way to þy Sone so deere.

My connyng is so weyk, o blisful queene,
For to declare þy grete worþinesse, 470
That I may not þis in my wyt susteene;
But as a child of twelf month old or lesse,
That can unneþes eny word expresse,
Right so fare I, and þerfor I þou pray[e],
Gydeþ¹ my song, þat I schal of þow say[e]. 475

Ther was in Acy, in a greet citee,
Amonges Cristen folk a Jewerye,
Susteyned by a lord of þat contre,
For foul usure, and lucre of felonye, 480
Hateful to Crist, and to his compaignye;
And þurgh þe strete men might[e] ride and wende,
For it was fre, and open at everich ende.

A litel scole of Cristen folk þer stood
Doun at þe forþer end, in which þer were

¹ MS. reads *Endith*.

Children an heep y-comen of Cristen¹ blood, 485
 That lered in þat scole, 3er by 3ere,
 Such maner doctrine as men used[e] þere;
 This is to say, to synge[n] and to rede,
 As smale childer doon in her childhede.

Among þese children was a wydow sone, 490
 A litel clergeoun, þat seve 3er was of age,
 That day by day to scole was his wone;
 And eek also, wherso he saugh þymage
 Of Cristes moder, had he in usage,
 As him was taught, to knele adoun, and say[e] 495
 His *Ave Maria*, as he goþ by þe way[e].

Thus hap þis widow hir litel child i-taught
 Oure blisful lady, Cristes moder deere,
 To worschip ay, and he forȝat it nought;
 For cely child wil alway soone leere. 500
 But ay whan I remembre of þis matiere,
 Seint Nicholas stont ever in my presence,
 For he so ȝong to Crist dede reverence.

This litel child, his litel book lernynge,
 As he sat in þe scole in his primere, 505
 He *O alma redemptoris* herde synge,
 As children lerned her antiphonere;
 And as he durst, he drough him² ner and neere,
 And herkned ever þe wordes and þe note,
 Til he þe firste vers couþe al by rote. 510

Nought wist he what þis Latyn was to say[e],
 For he so ȝong and tender was of age;
 But on a day his felaw gan he pray[e]
 To expounne him þe song in his langage,
 Or telle him what þis song was in usage; 515
 This prayd he him to construe and declare,
 Ful often tyme upon his knees bare.

¹ MS. *cristes*.² MS. *bem*.

His felaw, which þat elder was þan he,
 Answerd him þus: 'Þis song, I have herd seye,
 Was maked of our blisful lady fre, 520
 Hire to saluen, and eek hire to preye
 To ben our help and socour whan we deye.
 I can no more expoune in this matere;
 I lerne song, I can no more gramer[e].'

'And is þis song i-maad in reverence 525
 Of Cristes moder?' sayde þis innocent;
 'Now certes I wol do my diligence
 To conne it al, er Cristemasse be went;
 Though þat I for my primer schal be schent,
 And schal be betyn þries in an hour, 530
 I wol it conne, our lady to honoure.'

His felaw taught him hom-ward prively
 From day to day, til he couþe it by rote,
 And þan he song it wel and boldely;
 Twyes on þe day it passed[e] þurgh his þrote, 535
 From word to word accordyng with the note,
 To scole-ward and hom-ward whan he went[e];
 On Cristes moder was set al¹ his entent[e].

As I have sayd, þurghout þe Jewrye
 This litel child, as he cam to and fro, 540
 Ful merily þan wold he synge and crie,
O alma redemptoris, evermo;

The swetnes hap his herte persed so
 Of Cristes moder, that to hir to pray[e]
 He can not stynt of syngyng by þe way[e]. 545

Oure firste foo, þe serpent Sathanas,
 That hath in Jewes hert his waspis nest,
 Upswal and sayde: 'O Ebreik peple, allas!
 Is þis a þing to ȝow þat is honest,
 That such a boy schal walken as him lest 550

¹ Lansd. MS. reads set was, and omits al.

In þoure despyt, and synge of such sentence,
Which is aȝens your lawes reverence?’

Fro þennesforth þe Jewes han conspired
This innocent out of þis world to enchace¹,
An homicide þerto han ȝe[t] þay hired. 555
That in an aley had a privé place;
And as þe childe gan forþby [for] to pace,
This false Jewe him hent, and huld ful faste,
And kut his þrote, and [in a pute him caste²].

I say in a wardrobe þay him þrew[e], 560
Wher as þe Jewes purgen her entraile.
O cursed folk! O Herodes al newe!
What may þour evyl entente þou availe?
Morthur wol out, certeyn it wil nought faile,
And namly þer þonour of God schuld[e] sprede; 565
The blood out criep on þour cursed dede.

O martir soudit³ to virginité,
Now maystow synge, folwyng ever in oon
The white lomb celestial, quod sche,
Of which þe grete evaungelist seint Johan 570
In Pathmos wroot, which seith þat þay [þat] goon
Bifore þe lamb, and synge a song al newe,
That never fleischly wommen þay [ne] knewe.

This pore widowe wayteþ al þis night,
After þis litel child, but he cometh nought; 575
For which as soone as it was dayes light,
With face pale, in drede and busy þought,
Sche haþ at scole and elles wher him sought;
Til fynally sche gan of hem aspye,
That he was last seyn in þe Jewerie. 580

With moodres pité in hir brest enclosed,
Sche goþ, as sche were half out of hir⁴ mynde,

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *cbase*.

² The Harl. MS. reads *and þrew him in*

e laste.

³ Lansd. MS. reads *soundede*.

⁴ Lansd. MS. omits *bir*.

To every place, wher sche haþ supposed
 By liklihedde hir child[e] for to fynde;
 And ever on Cristes mooder meke and kynde 585
 Sche cried, and atte laste þus sche wrought[e],
 Among þe cursed Jewes sche him sought[e].

Sche freyned, and sche prayed[e] pitously
 To every Jew þat dwelled in þat place,
 To telle hir, if hir child wente þer by; 590
 Thay sayden nay; but Jhesu of his grace
 ȝaf in hir þought, wiþinne a litel space,
 That in þat place after hir sone sche cryde,
 Wher as he was cast in a put bysyde¹.

O grete God, that parformedist þin laude 595
 By mouth of innocentz, lo, here þy might!
 This gemme of chastité, þis emeraude,
 And eek of martirdom þe ruby bright[e]!
 Ther he with þrote y-corve² lay upright[e],
 He *Alma redemptoris* gan to synge 600
 So lowde, þat al þe place bigan to ryng.

The Cristen folk, þat þurgh þe strete went[e],
 In comen, for to wonder upon þis thing;
 And hastily for the provost þay sent[e].
 He cam anon, wiþoute taryng, 605
 And heriede Crist, þat is of heven King,
 And eek his moder, honour of mankynde,
 And after þat þe Jewes let he bynde.

This child with pitous lamentacioun
 Up taken was, syngyng his song alway; 610
 And with honour of gret processoun,
 Thay caried him unto þe next abbay.
 His modir swownyng by þe beere lay;
 Unneþe might[e] þe poeple þat was there
 This newe Rachel bringe fro þe beere. 615

¹ Lansd. MS. omits as, and reads putte.

² MS. i-kut.

With torment and with schamful deth echon
 This provost doþ þese Jewes for to sterve,
 That of þis moerder wist, and þat anoon;
 He wolde no such cursednesse observe;
 Evel schal have, þat evyl wol deserve. 620
 Therfore with wilde hors he dede hem drawe,
 And after þat he heng hem by þe lawe.

Upon his beere ay lith þis innocent
 Biforn þe chief auter whiles þe masse last[e];
 And after þat, þabbot with his covent 625
 Haþ sped hem for to burie him ful fast[e];
 And whan þay halywater on him cast[e],
 3et spak þis child, whan spreynde was þe water¹,
 And song *O alma redemptoris mater*.

This abbot, which þat was an holy man, 630
 As monkes ben, or elles oughte be,
 This 3onge child to conjure he bigan,
 And sayd: 'O deere child, I halse þe,
 In vertu of þe holy Trinité,
 Tel me what is þy cause for to synge, 635
 Sith that þy þrote is kit at my semynge.'

'My þrote is kit unto my nekke-boon,'
 Sayde þis child, 'and as by way of kynde
 I schulde han ben deed long tyme agoon;
 But Jhesu Crist, as 3e in bookes fynde, 640
 Wol þat his glorie laste and be in mynde;
 And for þe worschip of his moder deere,
 3et may I synge *O alma* lowde and cleere.

'This welle of mercy, Cristes moder swete,
 I loved alway, as after my connynge; 645
 And whan þat I my lyf schulde leete,
 To me sche cam, and bad me for to synge
 This antym verrailly in my deyinge,

¹ Lansd. MS. reads *boly water*.

As þe have herd; and, whan þat I had[de] songe,
Me þought[e] sche layde a grayn under my tonge¹.

‘Wherfor I synge, and synge moot certeyne 651

In honour of þat blisful mayden fre,

Til fro my tonge taken is þe greyne.

And after þat þus saide sche to me:

‘My litil child, now wil I fecche þe. 655

Whan þat þe grayn is fro þi tonge i-take;

Be nought agast, I wol the nought forsake.’

This holy monk, this abbot him mene I,

His tonge out caught, and took away þe greyn;

And he ȝaf up þe gost ful softly. 660

And whan þe abbot hath þis wonder seyn,

His salte teres striken doun as reyn;

And gruf he fel adoun unto þe grounde,

And stille he lay, as he had[de] ben y-bounde.

The covent eek lay on þe payment[e] 665

Wepying and herying Cristes moder deere.

And after þat þay rise, and forþ þay went[e,]

And took away þis martir fro his beere,

And in a tombe of marble stoones cleere

Enclosed[e] þay þis litil body sweete; 670

Ther he is now, God lene us for to meete!

O ȝonge Hughe of Lyncoln; slayn also

Wiþ cursed Jewes (as it is notable,

For it nys but a litel while ago),

Pray eek for us, we synful folk unstable, 675

That of his mercy God so merciable

On us his grete mercy multiplie,

For reverence of his modir Marie. Amen.

¹ The metre would be improved by the following reading:—

Me þought a grayn sche layde &c.

XXVI.

JOHN GOWER.

A. D. 1325—1408.

John Gower, spoken of by his contemporary and friend Chaucer as the 'Moral Gower,' was a person of condition, being connected with a knightly family of Kent, and possessed of considerable property. He studied at Merton College, Oxford, and adopted the profession of the law.

Gower is the author of three well-known poetical works, the *Speculum Meditantis*, written in French; the *Vox Clamantis*, written in Latin; and the *Confessio Amantis*, in English (A. D. 1393). The *Confessio Amantis* has been several times printed,—by Caxton, in 1483; by Berthelet, in 1532; and by Pauli, in 1857. The following extracts, selected from the Fifth Book, are transcribed from Harl. MS. 3869 in the British Museum.

The Tale of the Caskets.

IN a cronique þis I rede,
Aboute a king, as moste nede,
Ther was of knyhtes and squiers,
Gret route and ek of officers:
Some of long time him hadden served 5
And þoghten þat þei have deserved
Avancement, and gon wiþoute;
And some also ben of þe route

That comen bot awhile agon	
And þei avanced were anon.	10
These olde men upon þis þing,	
So as þei dorst, aȝein þe king,	
Among hemself compleighen ofte;	
Bot þer is noþing seid so softe	
That it ne comp out ate laste.	15
The king it wiste, and als-so faste	
As he which was of hih prudence:	
He schop þerfore an evidence	
Of hem þat pleighen in þat cas,	
To knowe in whos defalte it was.	20
And wipinne his oghne entente	
That no man wist[e] what it mente,	
Anon he let tuo cofres make	
Of o semblance, and of o make,	25
So lich, þat no lif þilke þrowe	
That on mai fro þat oþer knowe,	
Thei were into his chambre broght,	
Bot no man wot why þei be wroght,	
And natheles þe king haþ bede	
That þei be set in privé stede,	30
As he þat was of wisdomes sih;	
As he þerto his time sih,	
Al prively, þat non it wiste,	
His oghne hondes þat o kiste	
Of fin gold and of fin perreie,	35
The which out of his tresorie	
Was take, anon he felde full,	
That oþer coffre of straw and mulle	
Wiþ stones meined, he felde also.	
Thus be þei fulle boþe tuo,	40
So þat erliche upon a day,	

He bad wiþinne, þer he lay,
 Ther scholde be to-fore his bed,
 A bord upset and faire spread :
 And þanne he let þe cofres fette, 45
 Upon þe bord and dede hem sette.
 He knew þe names wel of tho
 The which aȝein him grucch[de] so,
 Boþe of his chambre and of his halle;
 Anon he sende for hem alle, 50
 And seide to hem in þis wise :—
 Ther schal no man his happ despise :
 I wot wel ȝe have longe served
 And God wot what ȝe have deserved;
 Bot if it is along on me 55
 Of þat ȝe unavanced be,
 Or elles it belong on ȝou,
 The soþe schal be proved nou.
 To stoppe wiþ ȝoure evele word,
 Lo! hier tuo cofres on the bord. 60
 Ches which ȝou list of boþe tuo,
 And witeþ wel þat on of tho
 Is wiþ tresor so full begon,
 That if ȝe happe þerupon,
 ȝe schull be riche men for evere, 65
 Now ches and tak which ȝou is levere.
 Bot be wel war er þat ȝe take,
 For of þat on I undertake
 Ther is no maner good þerinne,
 Whereof ȝe mihten profit winne. 70
 Now goþ togedre on on assent,
 And takeþ ȝoure avisement;
 For, bot I ȝou þis dai avance,
 It stant upon ȝoure oghne chance,

Al only in defalte of grace;	75
So schal be schewed in þis place	
Upon þou alle wel afyn,	
That no defalte schal be myn.	
Thei knelen alle, and wiþ o vois,	
The king þei þonken of þis chois;	80
And after þat þei up arise	
And gon aside and hem avise;	
And ate laste þei acorde	
(Wherof her tale to recorde	
To what issue þei be falle).	85
A knyht schal speke for hem alle.	
He kneleþ doun unto þe king	
And seiþ þat þei upon þis þing,	
Or for to winne or for to lese,	
Ben alle avised for to chese.	90
Tho tok þis knyht a ȝerde on honde	
And goþ þere as þe cofres stonde,	
And wiþ assent of everichon	
He leiþ his ȝerde upon þat on,	
And seiþ þe king hou þilke same	95
Thei chese in reguerdoun be name,	
And preiþ him þat þei mote it have.	
The king which wolde his honour save,	
Whan he haþ herd þe commun vois,	
Haþ graunted hem here oghne chois,	100
And tok hem þerupon þe keie;	
Bot, for he wolde it were seiþe,	
What good þei have as þei suppose.	
He bad anon þe cofre unclose,	
Which was fulfild wiþ straw and stones!	105
Thus be þei served al at ones.	
This king þanne in [þe] same stede,	

Anon þat oþer cofre undede,
 Wheras þei sihen gret richness
 Wel more þan þei couþen gesse. 110
 Lo! seiþ þe kyng, nou mai 3e se
 That þer is no defalte in me;
 Forþi miself I wole aquite,
 And bereþ 3e 3oure oghne wite
 Of þat fortune haþ 3ou refused. 115
 Thus was þis wise king excused:
 And þei lefte of here evele speche,
 And mercy of here king beseche.

Aeson regains his Youth at the Hands of Medea.

JASON, which sih his fader old,
 Upon Medea made him bold, 120
 Of arte magique, which sche couþe,
 And preiþ hire, þat his fader 3ouþe
 Sche wolde make a3einward newe.
 And sche þat was toward him trewe,
 Behihte him, þat sche wolde it do, 125
 Whan þat sche time sawh perto.
 Bot what sche dede in þat matiere
 It is a wonder þing to hiere,
 Bot 3it for þe novellerie
 I þenke tellen a [gret] partie. 130
 Þus it befell upon a nyht,
 Whan þer was noght bot sterre-liht,
 Sche was vanyssht riht as hir liste,
 That no wyht bot hir-self it wiste,
 And þat was ate mydnyht tyde, 135
 The world was stille on every side,
 Wiþ open hed and fot al bare

Hir hir to-sprad sche gan to fare,
 Upon hir cloþes gert sche was
 Al specheles, and on þe gras, 140
 Sche glad forþ as an addre doþ.
 Non oþerwise sche ne goþ,
 Til sche cam to þe fresshe flod,
 And þere awhile sche wiþstod
 And þere sche torned hire aboute 145
 And thries ek sche gan doun loute;
 And in þe flod sche wette hir her,
 And þries on þe water þer
 Sche gaspeþ wiþ a drechinge onde,
 And þo sche tok hir speche on honde. 150
 Ferst sche began to clepe and calle
 Upward unto þe sterres alle;
 To wynd, to air, to see, to lond
 Sche preide; and ek held up hir hond
 To Echates (and gan to crie), 155
 Which is goddesse of sorcerie,
 Sche seide: 'Helpeþ at þis nede,
 And as ȝe maden me to spede,
 Whan Jason cam þe flees to seche,
 So helpe me now, I ȝow beseche.' 160
 Wiþ þat sche lokeþ and was war,
 Doun fro þe sky þer cam a char,
 The which dragons aboute drowe.
 And þo sche gan hir hed doun bowe,
 And up sche styh, and faire and wel 165
 Sche drof forþ boþe chare and whel,
 Above in þair among þe skyes;
 The lond of Crete and þo parties
 Sche soughte, and faste gan hire hye,
 And pereupon the hulles hyhe 170

Of Othrin & Olimpe also,
 And ek of oþre hulles mo,
 Sche fond and gadreþ herbes suote;
 Sche pulleþ up som be þe þe rote,
 And manye wiþ a knyf sche sherþ, 175
 And alle into hir char sche berþ.
 Thus whan sche haþ þe hulles sought,
 The flodes þer forȝat sche nought
 Eridian and Amphrisos,
 Peneie and ek Spercheidos; 180
 To hem sche wente and þer sche nom
 Boþe of þe water and of þe fom,
 The sond and ek þe smale stones,
 Whiche as sche ches out for þe nones,
 And of þe rede see a part, 185
 That was behovelich to hire art,
 Sche tok; and after þat aboute,
 Sche soughte sondri sedes oute,
 In feldes and in many greves,
 And ek a part sche tok of leues; 190
 But þing, which mihte hire most availe,
 Sche fond in Crete and in Thessaile.

In¹ daies and in nyhtes nyne,
 Wiþ gret traaille and wiþ gret peyne,
 Sche was pourveid of every piece, 195
 And torneþ homward into Grece.
 Before þe gates of Eson,
 Hir char sche let away to gon
 And tok out ferst þat was perinne,
 For þo sche þoghte to beginne 200
 Suche thing, as semeþ impossible
 And made hir selven invisible,

¹ The MS. has *þre*.

As sche þat was wiþ air enclosed
 And mihte of no man be desclosed ;
 Sche tok up turves of þe lond, 205
 Wiþoute helpe of mannes hond,
 Al heled wiþ þe grene gras,
 Of which an alter mad þer was
 Unto Echates, þe goddesse
 Of art magique and the maistresse ; 210
 And eft an oþer to invente,
 As sche whiche dede hir hole intende.
 Tho tok sche feld-wode and verveyne,
 Of herbes be noght betre tweyne,
 Of which anon wiþoute let 215
 These alters ben aboute set.
 Tuo sondry puttes faste by
 Sche made, and wiþ þat hastely
 A wether, which was blak, sche slouh,
 And out þerof þe blod sche drouh 220
 And dede into the pettes tuo ;
 Warm milk sche putte also þerto
 Wiþ hony meynd, and in such wise
 Sche gan to make hir sacrificse,
 And cried and preide forþ wiþal 225
 To Pluto þe god infernal,
 And to þe queene Proserpine.
 And so sche soghte out al þe line
 Of hem, þat longen to þat craft,
 Behinde was no name laft, 230
 And preide hem alle, as sche wel couþe
 To grante Eson his ferste youþe.
 This olde Eson broght forþ was þo,
 Awei sche bad alle oþre go
 Upon peril þat mihte falle, 235

And wiþ þat word þei wenten alle
 And leften þere hem tuo alone.
 And þo sche gan to gaspe and gone,
 And made signes manyon,
 And seide hir wordes þerupon; 240
 So þat wiþ spellinge of hir charmes
 Sche tok Eson in bothe hire armes,
 And made him for to slepe faste
 And him upon hire herbes caste;
 The bleeke wether þo sche tok 245
 And hiewh þe fleissh, as doþ a cok;
 On eijer alter part sche leide,
 And wiþ þe charmes þat sche seide
 A fyr doun fro þe sky alyhte,
 And made it for to brenne lyhte. 250
 And whan Medea sawh it brenne,
 Anon sche gan to sterte and renne
 The fyri aulters al aboute.
 Ther was no beste which goþ oute
 More wylde, þan sche semep þer. 255
 Aboute hir schuldres hyng hir her,
 As þogh sche were out of hir mynde
 And torned in anoper kinde.
 Tho lay þer certein wode cleft,
 Of which þe pieces now and eft 260
 Sche made hem in the pettes wete,
 And putte hem in the fyri hete,
 And tok þe brond wiþ al þe blase,
 And þries sche began to rase
 Aboute Eson, þer as he slepte. 265
 And eft wiþ water, which sche kepte,
 She made a cercle aboute him þries,
 And eft with fyr of sulphre twyes;

Ful many anoþer þing sche dede,
Which is noght writen in þis stede. 270
Bot þo sche ran so up and doun,
Sche made many a wonder soun;
Somtime lich unto þe cock,
Somtime unto þe laverock,
Somtime kacleþ as an hen, 275
Somtime spekeþ as don þe men.
And riht so as hir jargon strangeþ
In sondri wise hir forme changeþ,
Sche semeþ fai[r]e and no womman;
For wiþ þe craftes þat sche can 280
Sche was, as who seiþ, a goddessse,
And what hir liste, more or lesse,
Sche dede, in þe bokes as we finde,
That passeþ over mannes kinde;
But who þat wole of wondres hiere, 285
What þing sche wroghte in þis matiere,
To make an ende of þat sche gan,
Such merveil herde nevere man.
Apointed in þe newe mone,
Whan it was time for to done, 290
Sche sette a caldron on þe fyr,
In which was al þe hole atir,
Wheron þe medicine stod,
Of jus, of water and of blod,
And let it buile in such a plite, 295
Til þat sche sawh þe spume whyte;
And þo sche caste in rynde and rote
And sed and flour, þat was for bote,
Wiþ many an herbe and many a ston,
Wherof sche haþ þer manyon. 300
And ek Cimpheius, þe serpent,

To hire hap alle his scales lent,
 Chelidre hire gaf his addres skin,
 And sche to builen caste hem in,
 A[nd] part ek of þe horned oule, 305
 The which men hieren on nyhtes houles;
 And of a raven, which was told
 Of nyne hundred wynter old,
 Sche tok þe hed wiþ the bile;
 And as þe medicine it wile, 310
 Sche tok þer after þe bouele
 Of þe seewolf, and for þe hele
 Of Eson wiþ a thousand mo
 Of pinges, þat sche hadde þo,
 In þat caldron togidre, as blive, 315
 Sche putte and tok þanne of olyve
 A drie braunche hem wiþ to sterve,
 The which anon gan floure and bere
 And waxe al freissh and grene aȝein;
 Whan sche þis vertu hadde sein, 320
 Sche let þe leste drope of alle
 Upon þe bar[e] flor down falle;
 Anon þer sprong up flour and gras
 Where as þe drope falle was,
 And wox anon al medwe grene, 325
 So þat it mihte wel be sene.
 Medea þanne knewe and wiste
 Hir medicine is for to triste,
 And goþ to Eson þer he lay
 And tok a swerd was of assay, 330
 With which a wounde upon his side
 Sche made, þat þer out mai slide
 The blod wiþinne, which was olde
 And sek and trouble and fieble and cold.

Ful many anoþer þing sche dede,
 Which is noght writen in þis stede. 270
 Bot þo sche ran so up and down,
 Sche made many a wonder soun;
 Somtime lich unto þe cock,
 Somtime unto þe laverock,
 Somtime kacleþ as an hen, 275
 Somtime spekeþ as don þe men.
 And riht so as hir jargon strangeþ
 In sondri wise hir forme changeþ,
 Sche semeþ fai[r]e and no womman;
 For wiþ þe craftes þat sche can 280
 Sche was, as who seiþ, a goddesse,
 And what hir liste, more or lesse,
 Sche dede, in þe bokes as we finde,
 That passeþ over mannes kinde;
 But who þat wole of wondres hiere, 285
 What þing sche wroghte in þis matiere,
 To make an ende of þat sche gan,
 Such merveile herde nevere man.
 Apointed in þe newe mone,
 Whan it was time for to done, 290
 Sche sette a caldron on þe fyr,
 In which was al þe hole atir,
 Wheron þe medicine stod,
 Of jus, of water and of blod,
 And let it buile in such a plite, 295
 Til þat sche sawh þe spume whyte;
 And þo sche caste in rynde and rote
 And sed and flour, þat was for bote,
 Wiþ many an herbe and many a ston,
 Whereof sche haþ þer manyon. 300
 And ek Cimpheius, þe serpent,

To hire haþ alle his scales lent,
 Chelidre hire ȝaf his addres skin,
 And sche to builen caste hem in,
 A[nd] part ek of þe horned oule, 305
 The which men hieren on nyhtes houles;
 And of a raven, which was told
 Of nyne hundred wynter old,
 Sche tok þe hed wiþ the bile;
 And as þe medicine it wile, 310
 Sche tok þer after þe bouele
 Of þe seewolf, and for þe hele
 Of Eson wiþ a thousand mo
 Of þinges, þat sche hadde þo,
 In þat caldron togidre, as blive, 315
 Sche putte and tok þanne of olyve
 A drie braunche hem wiþ to sterve,
 The which anon gan floure and bere
 And waxe al freisshe and grene aȝein;
 Whan sche þis vertu hadde sein, 320
 Sche let þe leste drope of alle
 Upon þe bar[e] flor down falle;
 Anon þer sprong up flour and gras
 Where as þe drope falle was,
 And wox anon al medwe grene, 325
 So þat it mihte wel be sene.
 Medea þanne knewe and wiste
 Hir medicine is for to triste,
 And goþ to Eson þer he lay
 And tok a swerd was of assay, 330
 With which a wounde upon his side
 Sche made, þat þer out mai slide
 The blod wiþinne, which was olde
 And sek and trouble and fieble and cold.

And þo sche tok unto his us 335
Of herbes al þe beste jus
And poured it into his wounde,
That made his veynes fulle and sounde.
And þo sche made his wounde[s] clos
And tok his hand, and up he ros. 340
And þo sche gaf him drinke a drauhte,
Of which his zouþe aȝein he cauhte,
His hed, his herte and his visage
Lich unto twenty wynter age ;
Hise hore heres were away 345
And lich unto þe freisshe may,
Whan passed ben þe colde schoures,
Riht so recouereþ he his floures.

NOTES.

I.

English Version of Genesis and Exodus.

Page 1, line 1. *ger* = *yer* = year. In this poem an initial *g* often stands for *yb* or *y*, sometimes represented in Old English writers by the Saxon character ȝ. Compare *gunkeste* = youngest (p. 1, l. 3). *g* (final) = *gb* or *y* (Modern English *w*), as *sag* = *sagb* = *say* = saw. *g* before *t* = *ȝ* = *gb*, as *rigt* = right (p. 1, l. 13), *þbogie* = thought, *nogt* = *nought* = not, *sogt* = sought, *wrogt* = wrought (p. 2, ll. 22, 27, 28, 34). *g* before *-en* answers to the modern *w*, as *ogen* = *ozen* = own, *dragen* = drawn. In some few cases *g* before *-en* answers to *ai*, as *slagen*, O.E. *slawen* = slain. O.E. *bagel* = *hawel* = hail.

l. 2. *Quane* = *wbanne* = when (see l. 12). The Southern dialect never represents the A.S. *hw* (O.E. *hu*, Mod.E. *wh*) by *qu* or *qw*. It is exceedingly common in the Northumbrian dialect, and is often to be met with in the East and West Midland dialects.

l. 4. *Bricest of waspene* = brightest of form; *waspene* an error of the scribe, (who probably wrote from dictation,) for *wasteme*, A.S. *wæstm*: (1) growth, increase, fruit; (2) form, stature. The root of the word is probably the A.S. *weaxan*, to *wax*, grow, increase. Cp. Shakespeare's 'man of wax' = man of puberty, a man of full growth.

of witter wune = of good ability. *witter* = wise, skilful; still preserved in *wit*, *witty*, to *wit*, *wist*. The A.S. word answering to *witter* was *witol* = wise, knowing. O.E. *wytwol* (wit-ful), intelligent. *wune* = A.S. *wuna*, *gewuna*, practice, custom, use. Mod.E. *wont* from *wun-ian*, to *won*, dwell, inhabit, stay, exist.

l. 5. *breðere* = *breðer* = brethren. In O.E. we find *deȝter* = daughters, *þend* = hands.

l. 6. To his father he did discover and lay bare.

gan contracted from *bi-gan* (began) is often used as a *tense* auxiliary = did, as *gan love* = did love.

un-billen = O.E. *un-belle* = *un-bele* = un-cover. A.S. *bélan*, to cover, conceal, from whence *Hell* = the hidden place.

ll. 7, 8. He would (desired) that they should so conduct themselves that they should be well-behaved.

l. 7. *He sulde* = they should, *sulde* = *shulde* = should. In this poem an initial *s* (properly *ss*) = *sb*, as *soren* = *sboren* = shorn (p. 1, l. 13). *bem* = themselves. The personal pronouns are often used by O.E. writers for the compound forms.

te= = to conduct. A.S. *teōn* (pret. *teab*, pp. *ge-togen*), to tug, tow, draw, lead. The root is found in *wanton* = *wan-towen*, un-trained, wilful; and is connected with A.S. *tibtan*, to draw, whence our word *tight*.

l. 8. *wel-ðewed* = well-behaved. *ðewed* is from A.S. *þeau*, *beau*, a manner, habit, from *þeon*, to thrive, flourish. It exists in Mod. E. *thewes*.

l. 9. *for-ði* = for that (reason) = therefore, wherefore.

wexen wið gret nið = waxed in great envy = became very envious. *wið* = in; sometimes it = from. *nið* = A.S. *nīð*, *nīð*, wickedness, malice, strife. (Ger. *neid*, envy, spite), hence *nið-a*, a wicked wretch. O.E. *nīðing*, an abject, a vile fellow, a miser. In the North of England *niðing* is used for *sparing*.

l. 11. *nīðful* = envious; *bold* = bad. Cp. the modern use of the word forward.

l. 13. *soren* = shorn, cut, reaped. *Shear* has often the sense of to cut or reap, in O.E.

l. 14. And theirs (= their sheaves) there lay all before him.

Here = theirs, *it* = there; *it was* often = *there was*.

bem seems to be an error for *bim*.

P. 2, l. 16. *wurðeden* = honoured (*wurðed* in l. 18 is the pp.), from A.S. *wurðian*, to honour, hence Eng. *worship* = A.S. *wurð-scipe*, honour, O.E. *worþ-scipe*. The same root is seen in *worþ*, *worthy*.

frigti = frighty, fearful, timid.

l. 17. *sen* = seen = be seen, appear.

l. 20. *sulen* = *sbulen* = shall (pl.). *luten*, from A.S. *lutian*, to bow, incline, bow down to, do obeisance to. The O.E. *under-lout* = subject, servant. Cf. *under-lowton*, subijcio, subjecto; from *lowtyñ*, conquinisco, inclino, (Prompt. Parv.). In the North of England, to bow, in the rustic fashion, is still termed to *lout*. The modern word *lout*, originally a menial, contains the same root.

l. 21. *cbidden* = chode, pl. pret. See Grammatical Introduction, article Verb.

l. 22. *ðoge* = though, nevertheless; *siðe* = *siðen*, afterwards.

l. 24. *Hirdnesse* = herds. The root is the A.S. *beord*, *berd*, *bōrd*, flock; *berd*, wealth, treasure, board.

l. 25. *to dalen ebron* = to the vale of Hebron.

l. 28. *sogt* = sought, having sought.

l. 29. *fro feren kumen* = coming from afar (at a distance). *fro* = O. Norse *frá*, from, is still found in *forward* (= *froward*, O.E. *fraward*), *frowardness* *forward* in O.E. has often the same signification.

feren = a-far. O.E. *ferne* = *farne* = distant. A.S. *feorran*, far from; *feor* = O.E. *fer*, far. Chaucer uses the phrases *ferne balwes* = distant saints. *farē cart* = a distant cart. The affix *-en* denotes motion from, or to, as in O.E. *bennen*, *ibennen*, *wbanen* = *benn-e*, *ibenn-e*, *wbann-e* = hence, thence, whence.

kumen = *kumende* = coming. The rhyming of the present participle with the past participle or infinitive in *-en* is not uncommon.

l. 30. *on ros* = arose. In l. 31 the preposition is placed after the verb for the sake of the rhyme. *bem* is in the dative and not accusative case.

l. 30. *numen* = *nomen* = taken. The A.S. *niman*, to take, seize (pret. *nam*, O.E. *nom*), still exists in *numb*, *benumb*, *nimble*. A.S. *be-nyman*, to take, take away, deprive. North. Prov. Eng. *nim*, to steal, take up hastily. In O.E. *nomyn* = *numen* = numbered = taken with the palsy. 'I *benome*, I make lame or take away the use of one's lymbes.' *Je perclos* (Palsgrave). *Benomme* or *benombe* of one's lymbes, *perclus* (Palsgrave). This man is taken or *benomed* (Horman). See Promp. Parv. p. 358. *Nimble* = O.E. *nymyl* = handy or skilful in *taking*, and hence quick of limb, active.

l. 31. *Swilc* = such, in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries was the Northern and Midland form of the word. In the Southern dialect the *i* becomes *u*, the *l* is dropped, and the *c* is softened into *cb*. In earlier writers we find the form *swulcb*, from whence *swuch* and such. *Each* (O.E. *ilk*, *ucb*, *icb*, and *ecb*) and *wich* (O.E. *wilck*, *bwuch*) have undergone similar changes. *Such* or *swile* is a compound, being derived from *swa* (so) and *lic* (like); *wich* or *wilc* = *wba* (who) + *lic*; *each* or *ilk* = *æ* (one) + *lic*.

l. 32. They all counselled to slay him.

rædden, pl. pret. = advised, planned. A.S. *ræd*, counsel, advice, opinion; *ræddan*, to counsel, advise. Eng. *riddle* = A.S. *ræd-els*.

ll. 32, 33. *slo-n*, *slo* = slay. This is a Midland form for the Northern *sla* = slay = Southern *sle* for *slea*. A.S. *sleán* (pret. *slob*, pp. *slagen*), to strike, beat, kill. The root taking various forms is seen in sledge-hammer, A.S. *slege*, slaughter, O.E. *slagt* = *slaght*; A.S. *slege*, a slaying, O.N. *slatr*, slaughter. Cp. Ger. *schlagen*, to strike; *schlact*, battle; *schlachten*, to slay.

l. 34. *Oðer* = *otber* = or.

l. 35. *ðor-quiles* = there-whilst = whilst.

slep = slept: *lept*, *wep* were formerly written *lep*, *wep*, and belonged to the strong or irregular class of verbs.

l. 36. *ðisternesne* is an error for *cisternesne* = cistern, pit (Lat. *cisterna*).

l. 37. Yet let him be cast, naked and cold.

wurð is from *weorðan*, to be, to become. We have *weorðan* in the phrases 'wo *worþ* the day!' 'wo *worþ* the hour!' The verb was thus inflected in A.S. :—

Ind. Pres.	1. <i>weorðe</i> ,	2. <i>wyrst</i> ,	3. <i>wyrð</i> .
„ Pret.	1. <i>weard</i> ,	2. <i>wurde</i> ,	3. <i>wearð</i> .
„ Imper.	<i>weorð</i> .		

l. 38. What-so-ever his dreams may signify.

ow-en = *og-en*, pl. = ought (may be).

a-wold = in force, meaning (see *wold*, p. 3, l. 52). If *a-wold* were the inf. it would be written *a-wold-en* or *a-wold-e*. A.S. *wald*, power, dominion; *wealdan*, to rule, wield.

l. 39. *sor* = sorrowful. This refers of course to Reuben only.

l. 40. *drecen* = to delay, from A.S. *drécan*, to vex, trouble; and hence to hinder, delay, *dretch*. Wedgwood connects it with *dregs* and *drag*.

l. 41. *gede* = *yede* = went. The A.S. verb *gangan*, *gan*, to go, or *gang*, had the two preterites *geþong* and *eþode*. The substitute of *ie* or *ye* for the *eþ* has given rise to the form *yede* or *gede*.

l. 42. *erue* = A.S. *yrfe*, *erfe*, cattle, animals; also wealth, inheritance.

lewse = pasture. Prov. Eng. *leasowe*, *leese*. O.E. *leswen*, to pasture; from A.S. *læsu*, a pasture; *læsuan*, to pasture, feed.

l. 43. *red* = advice, counsel (see note to l. 32).

l. 44. *fulfilt of derne sped* = fulfilled in secret haste (speed).
For of we should perhaps read *on* = in; and instead of *derne* we might read *derue*, bold, wicked.

l. 45. *cbafare* = *cbap-fare* = chaffer, merchandise. A.S. *ceáp*, a bargain, sale; whence Eng. *cbeap*; *ceáp-an*, to buy. *ceáþian* = O.E. *cope*, buy, *cbeapen*.

l. 46. *spices-ware* = spices. Cp. *waters-ware*, collection of waters (see l. 72, p. 84). The A.S. *wáru*, *ware*, merchandise, is used as an affix in *bard-ware*, *iron-ware* (see l. 84, p. 4).

P. 3, l. 47. *gunne* = pl. did (see note to l. 6). *ten* = to go (see note to l. 7).

l. 50. *chapmen* = merchants (see note to l. 45).

l. 51. *wast* = *was* + *t* = was it.

l. 52. *storie* = should die. The A.S. *steorfan*; O.E. *sterue*, to die (pret. *stearf*; O.E. *starf*, *sterf*; pret. *ge-storfen*, O.E. *storven*), is the root of the Eng. *starve*, *starvation*. As early as 1340 *sterue* was used in the same sense as the modern verb 'to starve.'

wold = power (see note to l. 38).

l. 55. *ðbogte* = appeared, from the A.S. *þincan*, to seem, appear. It is used impersonally, as in *meþinks* = it appears to me.

swem = astonished, from the A.S. *swima*, a stupor, giddiness, O.N. *svimra*, to be dizzy. Cp. the expression 'a swimming in the head.'

l. 56. *wende* = *weened*, thought, supposed. A.S. *wēnan*, to think, *ween*.

slagen = slain (see note to l. 1, p. 1).

rem = cry. A.S. *bream*, din, wailing, clamour; *bremen*, to cry out, O.N. *rymia*, to bellow; *breima*, to resound.

l. 57. *Nile* = *ne* + *wile* = will not.

blinnen = cease, leave off. A.S. *blinnan* (pret. *blan*, pp. *blunnen*), from *bi* (= be) and *linnan*, to cease.

swilc sorue be cliued = such sorrow he endured. *cliued* seems to be = *cleaved*; but as the verb to cleave is generally used as a *strong verb*, it is probable that the reading is corrupt. Perhaps we ought to read *bim dreued* = troubled (afflicted) him. *cliued* and *liued* should be written *cliued[e]* and *liued[e]*, being preterites and not p. participles.

l. 59. *nomen* = *numen*, pret. pl. took (see note to l. 30, p. 2).

sruð = *sbrud* = shroud, clothing. Bailey explains *sbroud* as to cover, shelter. A.S. *scrud*, garment, clothing; *scrýðan*, to clothe.

l. 60. *ðe*, which. The A.S. *þe* (indeclinable) was used in all cases for *se* (m.), *seo* (f.), *þæt* (neut.), which.

mad = pp. made. Notice that the pret. would be *mad-e*.

im = him; *pruð* = pride, A.S. *prūt*, *prift*, *prūt*. O.E. *prute*, proud. The O.E. *ptrot*, *trut*, was an interjection of contempt, *Fy!* Ger. *trotz*, scorn. O.D. *prat*, arrogant.

l. 61. *He* is an error for *In*; *blod* = blood.

wenten = pret. pl. turned. A.S. *wend*, a turn, change; *wendan*, to go, proceed (pret. *wende*, Eng. *went*); whence O.E. *went*, a turning, course, way, road. We must connect *went* with *wind*; A.S. *windan*.

l. 62. *ðo* = *ða* = then, the root of *ibe-n*, *the-n-ce* = O.E. *þa-nne*, *þa-nn-es*. *rewli* = *rueful* = sorrowful, piteous. A.S. *rebu*, *brebu*; (1) grief, contrition; (2) *raw*, rear; *breðwan*, *breðsian*, to rue, grieve, repent; *breðwo-lic*, cruel, mournful; *breðwunes*, repentance.

lit = stain, spot. O.N. *lita*, to stain.

l. 63. *Sondere men* = messengers. The usual form is *sondes-men*, from the A.S. *sond*, *sand* or *sending*, mission, messenger.

l. 65. *boden*, pret. pl. *bad*. A.S. *beðdan* (3rd sing. *bȳt*, pl. *budon*, pret. *beað*, pp. *ge-boden*), to bid, offer. From this root we get *béd*, a prayer, request; *bydel*, Eng. *beadle*, a messenger, preacher (see note to l. 67, p. 3).

l. 66. *wede* = *weed* = garment. Cp. widow's *weeds*. Trench confounds the A.S. *wædd*, a garment, with *wædd*, herb, grass, weed.

l. 67. *Senten* = (pl. pret.) they sent.

bode = message, word. A.S. *bod*, *ge-bod*, command; *bod-a*, a messenger; *bodian*, to tell, preach (see note to l. 65, p. 3).

funden = pret. pl. found.

l. 69. *gret* = cried. A.S. *grétan*, *greetan* (pret. *grét*). North Prov. Eng. *greet*, to cry out, weep.

der = pl. *deer* = beasts, animals. A.S. *debr*, animal, wild beast; *deer* being originally a neuter noun, like *swine*, has no separate form for the plural.

l. 70. *swolgen* = swallowed. A.S. *swelgan*, *swilgan*, to swallow, *swill* (pret. *swealþ*, *swealg* = O.E. *swal*, *swol*; pp. *ge-swolegen*).

l. 71. *baigre* = sack-cloth. A.S. *bær*, hair; *bær-a*, cloth made of hair.

srid = *sbrouted* = clothed (see note to l. 59, p. 3).

l. 72. *grot* = bewailing, mourning. This substantive is formed from the verb *gretien*, to weep (see note to l. 69, p. 3).

sorge = sorrow. A.S. *sorb* = care, anxiety. The *g* has been softened down to *w*. Cp. *morrow*. A.S. *morgen*.

l. 74. *bertedin*, console; literally, to encourage. Cp. *berting*, consolation, encouragement (l. 76).

l. 75. *quat* = *quað* = quoth.

l. 76. *wrogt* = *wrougt* = worked. The same root occurs in *wright*.

l. 77. *sal* = *sbal* = shall.

ligten = *alight* = descend. A.S. *libtan*, *alibtan*, to alight, descend. Eng. to *light* upon a thing.

til = to. O.N. *tíl*, to. A.S. *tíl*, end, object. O.E. *tylle*, to lead, reach, touch. A.S. *tílian*, to procure, get, *till*.

l. 78. *grotten* = to greet, bewail (see note to l. 69, p. 3).

bale = destruction. A.S. *bealu*, *bealo*, bale, woe, evil; whence Eng. *bale*, *baleful*.

P. 4, l. 79. *sundri* = separate. A.S. *sunder* = separate, *asunder*; *sundor*, apart; *sundrian*, to separate; *sundrig*, *sundry*, separate.

stede = place. Eng. *stead*; Cp. home-*stead*, bed-*stead*. A.S. *stede*, *styde*.

O.E. *stude*, place, station; *stede*, stable, *steady* (*sted-ig*); *steadfast* (*sted-fæst*). The root of all these words is the A.S. *standan*, to stand.

l. 80. *seli* = good, blessed. A.S. *sæl*, time, opportunity, luck, happiness; *sæl*, prosperous, good; *sælig*, happy (Ger. *selig*), whence Mod. E. *silly*, originally harmless, guileless, simple.

reste dede = did rest.

l. 81. *stunden* = abode, passed the time. A.S. *stund*, a *stound*, space of time. O.E. *stound-mele*, at intervals. Ger. *stund*, an hour.

l. 82. *ðeden* = *eðen* = thence, O.N. *ðaðan*.

nam, took (see note to l. 30, p. 2).

l. 83. *skiuden* = (pret. pl.) *sbifted*, changed. Norse *skifta*, Dan. *skifte*, to change, shift.

l. 83. *fars* = A.S. *fær, faru*, journey, course, way. *faran*, to go (pret. *för*, pp. *ge-faren*). Cp. way-faring, wel-fare.

l. 84. *ledðen* = pret. pl. led.

ware = purchase, property, goods (see note to l. 46, p. 3).

l. 85. *stiward* = steward. O.N. *stíwardr*, from *stýð*. Norse *sti*, domestic occupation; *stia*, to be busy about the house, to take care of cattle. O.N. *stia*, sheep-house. Cp. Dan. *sti*, a sty.

l. 86. They made quickly covenant (bargain) of purchase.

swiðe = quickly. A.S. *swið*, strong; *swiðe*, very; *swiðan*, to strengthen.

bigetel = property, purchase; from A.S. *begeþtan*, *be-geþan*, to get, *begeþ*, obtain.

forward = covenant; from the A.S. *fore-word*, bargain.

l. 87. *So micel* = as much. A.S. *mycel, micel*, great, mickle. Other O.E. forms are *muchel, mocbel, moche* (whence Eng. much), and *mikel*.

fe = property, wealth. A.S. *feob* (Ger. *vieh*), cattle, money, riches, whence Eng. *fee*. Cp. Lat. *pecus*, cattle, and *pecunia*, money.

þem told = valued by them. The A.S. *tellan*, to tell, signifying to reckon, estimate; whence *tal*, number; *tale*, reckoning.

l. 88. They have bought for themselves. *þim* is probably an error for *þem* = them-selves.

l. 89. *trewið* = *troweth* = believes. A.S. *treowu, treowe*, trust, pledge, true (O.E. *trewe, trewes*); *treowe*, true; *treowian tráwian*, to trust, confide, *trou*; *treows-ian*, to give one's word, to bind; *treowð*, troth, truth.

wiwes = *wiues* = wife's.

l. 90. *baued* = *baueð* = has.

dempt = *demt* = deemed, doomed, condemned. A.S. *dem-a*, a judge; *deman*, to judge, deem, examine, doom; *dōm*, doom, trial. O.E. *demster, deemster*, judge.

bale = punishment (see note to l. 78, p. 4).

l. 91. *sperð* = fastened, shut up. Bailey has *spar*, to shut as a door. A.S. *sþarran*, to shut, Ger. *sperren*. Cp. Du. *sperre, spärre*, rod, rafter, bar, *spar*.

l. 92. *barðe*, an error for *barde*, hard, straitly.

l. 93. *stund* = time (see note to l. 81, p. 4).

l. 94. *prisuner* = the one who has the care of the prison, the jailor.

l. 95. *cbartre*, an error for *chwartre*. A.S. *cwart-ern*, a prison, a guard-house.

bi-tagt = handed over, assigned, entrusted to; from O.E. *bitecbe* or *bitah*.

A.S. *betæcan*, deliver to, *betake*, commit.

l. 96. *þo* = the. A.S. *þa*, the plural of the definite article.

prisunes = prisoners. Cp. O.E. *trumpes*, trumpeters; *buntes*, huntsmen.

bagt = *agt* = care, sorrow. Ger. *acbt*, care; *achten*, to mind. A.S. *eabtan*, to meditate.

l. 97. *Or* = *or*, either, or.

misdede = *misdeed*, fault, trespass.

on-sagen = *un-sage* = wicked speech. A.S. *sagu*, speech; *sagan, secgan*, to say; whence the Eng. *saw*, a saying, a proverb. O.E. *sooth-saw*, a true saying.

l. 98. *woren* = *wæren* = *weren*, were.

l. 99. *bed* = presented, offered (see note on l. 65, p. 3).

l. 101. *boðen onigt* = both in the night. *onigt* = *on nigt*, a night. The form *on* (o before a consonant) is preferred by Northern writers to *an* or *a*.

the corresponding Southern preposition. Cp. *o-fright* = *afright*, frightened, in the next line.

l. 102. And they became very sore afraid.

l. 103. *on sel* = a time, on a time. A.S. *sēl*, time (see note on l. 80, p. 4).

l. 105. He heard them mourn, he enquired wherefore.

freinde = *frainde* = enquired, asked. The A.S. *fregnan*, to enquire, was a strong verb, and made the pret. *frægn*, the pp. *frugnen*.

l. 106. *ogen awold* *ðat* = would cause that (see note on l. 38, p. 2).

P. 5, l. 110. The interpretation will depend on God.

reching = interpretation, is from the A.S. *recan*, say, tell, interpret; whence *reckon*.

l. 112. *waxen buges* = full-grown boughs (for *waxen*, see note on l. 9, p. 1). *buges* = boughs. A.S. *bob*, a bough; from *bugan*, *beogan*, to bend (pret. *beab*, *bedg*; pp. *ge-bogen*), whence Eng. *bow*, *bay*, *bay-window*; *buxum* = O.E. *bugb-som*, obedient, pliant.

ll. 113, 114. First it bloomed (flowered), and afterwards it bore the ripe *berries* (grapes), as I became aware (or perceived).

so = as, seems needed before *wurð*.

Orset = *arst* = *erst*, first. A.S. *ær*; O.E. *ar*, *er*, or, before, *ere* (superl. *ærest*, *ærost*, first).

l. 116. *ðbugte* = *ðozte* = appeared (see note on l. 55, p. 3).

wrong = wrung, squeezed; the pret. of *wringen*, to wring, squeeze.

l. 118. *als* = *al* + *se* = *al* + *swa*, as.

wun = wont, accustomed (see note on l. 4, p. 1).

l. 120. *beilnesse* = health, wholeness. A.S. *bēl-nes*, from *bēl*, *bāl*, whole. The Eng. *whole*, formerly written *bal* or *bol*, has no right to the *w*; *whole-some*, *heal* (A.S. *bēlan*, to heal), *healthis*, are from the same root. The O.E. word *belend* (A.S. *bēlend*) signified the healing one, the Saviour.

l. 125. Present my petition to Pharaoh.

berðne = *ernde* = errand, message. A.S. *ærend*, *ærende*, message, news.

l. 126. *wurðes don* = may be taken. *Do* is often used by O.E. writers in the following senses: (1) to cause, make; (2) to place, put.

l. 127. *kinde lond* = native land, the land of one's kin. A.S. *cynde*, natural; *cynd*, nature; from *cyn* = *kin*, race, *kindred*, *kind*; *cyn*, *akin*, Cp. the 'kindly (natural) fruits of the earth.' The O.E. *unkind* signifies unnatural, ungrateful.

l. 128. *wrigteleslike* = *wrigte-les-like*, innocently. A.S. *wrōbt*, an accusation, blame, fault; from *wrēgan*, to accuse, *bewray*.

l. 129. *bred-wrigte* = *bread-wright*, bread-maker, baker. *wrigte* (Eng. *wright*) is the A.S. *wyrbita*, a workman, artificer; from *wyrca* (pret. *worhte*, Eng. *wrought*), to work, still existing in *wheelwright*, &c.

liðeð, imp. listen. O.N. *blyða*, to listen; *blíod*, a sound, voice. Cp. A.S. *blystan*, to listen; O.N. *blust*, an ear.

l. 130. *bread-lepes* = bread-baskets. A.S. *leap*, basket, hamper. Prov. Eng. *leap*, a basket.

l. 133. *fugeles* = fowls. A.S. *fugol*, *flugol*, a bird; from *fleogan*, to fly. This shows that in *fowl* an *l* has been dropped, which is retained in the noun *fly* (A.S. *fleoqe*). Cp. Ger. *fliegen*, to fly; *wogel*, a bird.

lagt = seized from. A.S. *laccan*, *gelaccan*, to catch, seize, *latch*.

l. 135. *weren* = protect, guard, defend. A.S. *wærian*, *werian*, to defend, protect, keep off; *wárian*, to beware; from *wær*, cautious, wary, aware.

l. 136. *beren* = bear away.

l. 137. It were *liever* to me = I had rather.

l. 138. Of pleasant (lucky) dreams to tell the meaning.

eddi = A.S. *eddig*, blessed, happy; from *éad*, happiness.

rechen = tell (see note to l. 110, p. 5).

sweep = *swap* = *swop*, blow, force; and hence meaning.

l. 140. Be put (hung) on the cross, alas!

rode = A.S. *rôd*, cross, rood. Fris. *rode*, the gallows.

weila-wei = A.S. *wá-lá-wá*, well-a-way! well-a-day! *wá* = *woe*, sorrow, grief.

l. 141. *to-teren* = tear in pieces. *to* answers to the Lat. *dis-*, Ger. *zer-*. *to-break* (= A.S. *to-bræcan*, Lat. *dis-rumpere*) occurs in Eng. Bible, "all to-brake his head."

l. 142. That no money (wealth) be able to save thee.

agte = money. The plural *agtes*, moneys, occurs in l. 276, p. 10. A.S. *æbt* = property, cattle, possessions; from *agan*, to own.

mugen = *mogen* = be able. A.S. *magan*; whence Eng. *may*, *main*, *might*, &c.

P. 6, l. 143. It became true (was fulfilled) as Joseph had said.

soð = sooth, true, truth; as in Eng. *for-sooth*, *sooth-sayer*.

l. 146. *wið uten erd* = in a distant or foreign land. *uten* = distant, foreign. A.S. *ute*, without, out, abroad; *utan*, beyond.

erd = abode, dwelling-place. A.S. *eard*, country, region; *eardian*, to dwell, settle in; *eardung*, dwelling; *eardung-stow*, dwelling-place.

l. 149. *neet* = neat. A.S. *nyten*, *niten*, cattle, beast. O.N. *naut*, an ox; whence *neat-berd*. The meaning of the word is 'unintelligent,' from A.S. *nitan*, *ne-witan*, not to know.

l. 150. Every one very fat and large (great).

Euerilc, softened into *euerich*, is the origin of *every*. *ilc* = *icb* = *each*.

l. 151. *ðo* = those (see note to l. 96).

l. 152. Who brought (did) the fat (ones) to grief.

l. 153. *freten*, eaten; from *frete*, to eat. A.S. *fretan* (pret. *fræt*, pp. *gefreten*); whence Eng. *fret*, to rub, wear, consume. With this root is connected *fritter*, *fritters*, and *wart* (A.S. *wrat*), Du. *vraet*.

l. 157. On a rank (strong) bush and well-favoured (in full bloom).

tidi is used by Shakespeare in the sense of 'in good condition,' plump. In O.E. *tidi* has the sense of *timely*, good, beautiful, from A.S. *tīd*, time, *tīde*; whence *tīd-an*, to happen, *be-tide*. Cp. O. Swedish *tīdig*, beautiful.

l. 159. Withered (faded) and small, and drought-seized (struck).

welkede = faded. Ger. *welken*, to fade. A.S. *wealowian*, *wealwian*, to fade, wither.

drugte numen = drought (dryness)-taken (see note on l. 30, p. 2).

ll. 161, 162. To-gether they smote, and in a stound (second)

The fat ones thrust to the ground.

To-samen = together. A.S. (prefix) *sam* = together; *sama*, the same; *sam-nian*, to assemble.

ðrist þem, an error for ðristen, pl. thrust. A.S. þræstian, to twist, press.

l. 163. *abraid* = awoke; literally to start suddenly. A.S. *bredan*, *bregdan*, to weave, braid, gripe, drive. O.N. *bregða*, in addition to these meanings, signifies to change, to awake out of sleep, start: O.N. *bragð*, signifies a quick motion; whence the O.E. at a braid, at once, instantaneously. *Uþbraid*,

is, originally, to raise a sudden shout, to accuse. Bailey has the word *bread*, appearance, which may be compared with the Prov. E. *braid*, to pretend, resemble, from the O. N. *bragð*, gesture; *bragr*, habit; *at braga*, to imitate. Shakespeare uses *braid* for manners.

ðbogi = *thought*, anxiety, care. Cp. the phrase 'take no *thought*.'

l. 166. Who could explain the meaning of the dreams.

un-don = *un-do*, to discover, explain.

l. 168. *ðat* = what. O. E. writers use *iber* for *where*, then for *when*.

l. 171. *bogi*, seems to be an error for *sogi* = *sought*, looked for.

l. 174. *wold* = force, signification (see note on l. 38, p. 2).

P. 7, l. 178. *taumen* = show, make known. Du. *toonien*, to show.

l. 180. *fulsum-bed* = fulsome-head, abundance, plenteousness.

numen = passed. The O. E. *nime*, signifies to take the way, to go, pass.

l. 182. *nedful* = needful, necessitous, severe.

is = *bis* = them. This pronoun is used by Robert of Gloucester and Dan Michel of Kent. See Grammatical Introduction, article *Pronouns*.

l. 184. *rospen* = rasp, diminish. Du. *raspen*, to grate.

raken = consume. O. N. *raka*, to scrape; Sw. *raka*, to shave.

ll. 185, 186. I advise the king now here before (the famine)

To make barns and gather corn.

laðes = barns. Dan. *lade*, a barn.

ll. 187, 188. That thy folk be not surprised (taken unawares)

When the famine years are forth come (come to pass).

hungri = hungry, famine. The O. E. *bunger*, is often used for famine (see l. 209, p. 8). The Gothic *bugrian*, to hunger, suggests that A. S. *bugu*, little, scarce, is the root of the word.

l. 190. That became to him afterwards good fortune.

seli sped = happy speed, prosperity (see note on l. 80, p. 4).

ll. 191, 200. He gave Joseph his ring And his collar of gold for honour, And bad him all his land rule, And under him highest for to be; And bad him wield in his hand His folk, and wealth, and all his land. There was under him Potiphar And his wife, that him so *falsely* bore (witness) against. Joseph to wife his daughter took, Either now or formerly when she (first) became (known to him).

l. 192. *bege* = collar, is from the A. S. *beðgan*, *búgan*, to bend; *beab*, *beb*, *beag*, signifies a ring, bracelet, collar, crown.

wurðing = honour, worship (see note on l. 16, p. 2).

l. 198. *to-bar* = bore against, accused falsely.

l. 204. *geld* = requited, yielded. A. S. *gyld*, payment; also a *guild*, club; *gyldan* (pret. *geald*, pp. *galden*), to pay, *yield*.

l. 205. *fulsum* = ful-some, plenteous (see l. 180, p. 7).

faren = passed, gone; from *faren*, to go. A. S. *faru*, a journey, *fare*; *faran*, to go (pret. *for*, pp. *gefaren*).

l. 206. Joseph could (knew how to) make them aware beforehand.

l. 208. *ynug* = enough. A. S. *ge-nog*, sufficient. O. N. *nogr*, abundant.

P. 8, l. 210. *for-ðan* = for-that (reason), therefore.

l. 212. *bilef* = *bileaf* = remained. A. S. *belifan*, to remain, abide (pret. *belaf*, *beleaf*).

l. 213. *for nede sogt* = peaceable by necessity. *sogt* = *sagt*. A. S. *sabt*, peaceable; or perhaps *sogt* = *sought*, driven to seek (food) (see l. 217, p. 8).

l. 215. *luten* = did obeisance (see *luten*, l. 20, p. 2).

frigitlike = timidly, frightened-like; from *frigti*, timid, fearful (see l. 16, p. 2).

l. 216. *Anð*, an error for *and*.

mildelike = mildly, meekly. The Southern form of the adv. would be *mildelicbe*.

l. 217. *sondes* = messengers (see note on l. 63, p. 3).

l. 219. Joseph them knew perfectly in his mind. For *ben* read *hem*, them.

l. 220. Also he pretended (as) he knew them not. Read *so* or *also* before *be knew*.

l. 223. *came* should be *cume*, pl. come.

l. 227. *Oc* = A.S. *ac*, but.

sunen = sons.

l. 228. *doð es* = compels them (see *is*, them, in l. 182, p. 7). But *es* may be an error for *us*.

l. 230. *gure bering* = your bearing, behaviour.

ll. 231-234. How should one man, poor, forgotten, Such and so many sons beget? For seldom it betides (befalls) any king himself Such men to see of his offspring.

l. 237. *boten* = named, called. A.S. *bátan* (pret. *batte*), to call, name; *bátan* (pret. *bét*, *bebt*, pp. *báten*), to promise.

l. 239. *feið* = faith.

og = *ow* = owe.

l. 240. *eðen* = *beðen* = hence. O.N. *beðan*.

P. 9, l. 243. *for-dred* = afraid, in great dread; *for*, intensitive (Lat. *per-Ger. ver-*), as in *for-go*, *for-bid*, &c.

l. 244. *oc* = also. Dan. *og*, and.

ðburg = *ðurg* = through.

for-red = deceive. A.S. *for-rædan*, to miscounsel, deceive; from *ræd*, counsel (see note on l. 32, p. 2).

l. 246. *speren* (see note on l. 91, p. 4).

l. 248. *ton* = that one, the first, &c. So *toðer* = that other, the second.

l. 250. *To wedde* = for security, as hostage. A.S. *wed*, pledge, earnest; *weddian*, to bargain, contract, *wed*; *wed-lác*, wedlock.

l. 251. *on-on* = *anon* = in one (instant), immediately, at once.

l. 254. *bi-ment* = bemoaned, bewailed. A.S. *bemænan*, to bemoan; from *mænan*, to moan.

l. 256. *Wrightful* = guilty (see note on l. 128, p. 5).

l. 257. *sinigeden* = pl. pret. sinned. A.S. *singan*, to sin.

quilum or = awhile ere (before); *quil-um* = awhile, formerly. The *um*, as in O.E. *ferr-um*, afar, is the A.S. *ymbe*, O.E. *umbe*, *um*, around. *quilum* is sometimes written *umquile*.

l. 259. *uerneden*, pl. denied, refused. A.S. *wyrnan*, to warn, forbid, refuse, deny.

l. 260. *drege* = suffer. A.S. *dreogan* (pret. *dreag*, pp. *drogen*), to bear, suffer, work.

l. 261. Knew none of them in his mind.

Wende = weened.

bere non = none of them.

mod = mind. A.S. *mód*, mood. The O.E. *modi* (Eng. *moody*), signifies proud, exalted.

l. 266. *pilt* = thrust. O.E. *pult*; Dan. *putte*, to put, put into, put away.

- l. 268. *bunden*, pret. pl. *bound*. Cp. the phrase 'our *bounden* duty.'
- l. 271. *ouer-ðogt* = over-anxious, frightened.
- P. 10, l. 273. *sped* = speed, success.
- l. 274. *frigibed* = frighty-hood, fear (see l. 16, p. 2).
- l. 278. *bi-meneð* = bemoaneth (see note on l. 254, p. 9).
- l. 279. Very great sorrow is me become (befallen).
Wel, by O.E. writers, is used as an adv. = very.
- l. 280. *aren* = are. This part of the verb 'to be' is of Norse origin.
- l. 284. *Dead* = *deað* = death.
segeð = falleth, alighteth, cometh. A.S. *sigan*, to fall, to set; *sægan*, to cause to descend.
- l. 285. *bi-lewen* = *bi-leven* = remain (see *bilef*, note on l. 212, p. 8).
- l. 287. *us sal ben bard* = to us it shall be hard = it will go hard with us.
- l. 288. *no = ne* = not; like the Scotch *na*.
forward = covenant, agreement (see note on l. 84, p. 4).
- l. 289. *Wex derðe* = famine (dearth) came. *derðe* = *dearþ*. A.S. *deðre*, dear, precious. The O.E. *durpe*, *derpe* = value, worth.
- l. 290. *est* may be an error for *eft* = again.
bit = biddeth, commandeth.
- l. 291. *duren*, pl. dare. A.S. *dearan*, to dare: (1st pers. sing.) *dear*, (2nd pers. sing.) *dearst*; pl. *durron*, pret. *dorste*; Eng. *durst*.
- l. 293. *quan it is ned* = since it is necessary.
- l. 294. And (I) know no better plan.
can = know. A.S. *cunnan*: (1) *can*, (2) *cunne*, *canst*; pl. *cunnon*, pret. *cūðe* (Eng. could), pp. *ge-cūð*; Eng. *couth*, in *uncouth* = unknown, and hence strange.
- l. 296. That to them thereof there lack none.
wante, in O.E. often signifies 'to lack;' as in the modern phrase 'it *wants* so many to make up the number.'
- l. 299. *of dere pris* = of great price, of precious value (see note on l. 289, p. 10).
- l. 301. God grant him well disposed to be.
bunne, grant = A.S. *unnan*, to grant, give. This root still exists in the phrases 'he *owned* to having done it;' 'I have *owned* to it.' *own* has here nothing to do with the verb *owe*, but signifies *granted*, or *conceded* (see *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 547, p. 36).
eði-modes = *eði-moded* = easy-minded, well-disposed, kind. A.S. *eað*, easy; *eaðe*, easily; *eað-mōd*, easy-minded (see l. 138, p. 5).
- ll. 303, 304. Then took they forth *the* way right,
Till they were come into Egypt quickly.
ligt = *ligbt*, easily, quickly. Cp. the expression 'to get off *lightly*.'
- P. 11, l. 306. Natural thought in his heart was then.
ðag = *ða* = *ðo*, then.
- l. 307. *gerken* = to prepare. A.S. *gearcian*, to prepare, make ready. The Elizabethan writers employ the verb *yark* in the sense of 'to make up.'
- meten* = *mete* = meat. The *n* is added to the vowel-ending for the sake of the rhyme.
- l. 309. *biri* = a city. A.S. *byri*, *byrig*, *burb*, *burg* = Eng. *borough*. The *bury* is of frequent occurrence as an affix in local names; as Canter-bury, New-bury, &c. The French *bourg* is borrowed from the Teutonic dialects, whence Eng. *burgess*, Fr. *bourgeois*, a citizen.
- l. 310. *None of them had then cheerful countenances.*

l. 412. *dragen* = to draw (near), go to a place.
 l. 413. *timen* = prosper, fare well. A.S. *tima*, time; *ge-timian*, to happen, fall out (well).

l. 414. He bad *them* take carts and waggons (wains).

l. 417. *bet* = promised. A.S. *batan* (pret. *bet*, pp. *báten*), to command, promise (see note on l. 237, p. 8).

l. 418. *bet* = better. A.S. *bet*, better; *bétan*, to make better, amend, remedy; hence O.E. *beet*, kindle, or repair a fire. From the root *bet*, we get Eng. *boot*, *booty*, *bootless*. A.S. *bót*, *bótu*, boot, remedy, atonement. *to bóte* = to boot, with advantage, moreover.

l. 419. Joseph gave each of them two changes of raiment.

l. 423. Also many others there-to.

fele = many. A.S. *feala*, *fēla*, many.

l. 425. *wið semes fest* = loaded (fastened) with burdens. *seme* is the A.S. *seam*, a horse-load, *seam* (eight bushels.)

l. 428. And bad them hasten home quickly (see note on l. 401, p. 13).

l. 434. *greted* = greeteth (pret. *grette*). A.S. *grétan*, to salute, bid welcome. Du. *groeten*, to salute.

P. 15, l. 436. *cliuð* = cleaveth, adheres, clings. A.S. *clivan*, Du. *kleeven*, to stick to, adhere to.

l. 438. *Wel me*. *me* is the dative after the interjection *wel*. Cp. the use of the dative in the phrase 'woe is me.'

l. 440. 'That I have thus awaited such time, i. e. that I have lived to see this day.

ll. 441, 442. And I shall to my son go, And see (him) ere I from (this) world depart (see ll. 487, 488, p. 16).

cbare = *cbaren* = to depart. A.S. *cerre*, a turn, bending; *cerran*, to turn, pass over. Du. *keeren*, to turn. We retain this root in *a-jar* = *acbar*, on the turn. Gawain Douglas uses *on-cbar* for *ajar*. *cbar* is a turn of work; whence *cbar-woman*. "As the maid that milks, and does the meanest *cbares*."—Ant. and Cleop. iv. 13; v. 2.

l. 452. How many years be (are) on thee.

ll. 453-462. An hundred years and thirty more Have I endured (lived) in (the) world's woe, Yet (they) appear to me few Though I have passed them in woe, Since I began in world to be, Here in (a) strange land among mankind. So thinketh every wise man Who knoweth whereof mankind began, And who of Adam's guilt considereth, That he here in strange (foreign) lands dwelleth.

drogen, pp. of *dregen*. A.S. *dreógen* (pret. *dreag*, *dreob*, pp. *ge-drogen*), to suffer, endure, finish.

l. 455. *fo* = *fa* = few, A.S. *feawa*, *fea*; Goth. *faws*; Icelandic *fár(m)*, *fá(f)*, *fát(n)*.

l. 458. See note on l. 146, p. 6.

l. 461. *muneð* = considers. A.S. *munan*, *gemunan*, to consider. It is still retained in the expression 'mind what you are about.'

l. 462. *wuneð* = dwells. A.S. *wunian*, to dwell, inhabit; *wunung* = O.E. *woning*, a dwelling (see l. 469, p. 16).

l. 463. *wurðen wel* = fare well. A.S. *weorðan*, to become (see note on l. 37, p. 2).

l. 464. *seli mel* = good sustenance (meal).

P. 16, l. 468. *y-oten* = called (see note on l. 237, p. 8).

- l. 358. *ferden*, pl. went. A.S. *féran*, to go (pret. *ferde*); *ferd*, an expedition.
- l. 361. *agte* = owned. A.S. *agan*, to own.
- l. 365. This messenger overtaketh them quickly.
raðe = quickly. A.S. *bræð*, swift, quick; *bræð*, quick; whence *ratbe* (Milton), early; *rather*, sooner.
- l. 366. And accuses (calls after) *them* of injury and loss.
- ll. 367-370. Unhappy (wretched) men, what have ye done?
 Great misfortune is come upon you,
 For it is not hidden from my lord
 That one of you hath his cup stolen.
- l. 368. *vn-selðe* = *vn-selðe* = misery, grief. A.S. *un-sæl*, unhappy; *un-sælig* = *vn-seli* (l. 367, p. 12), miserable, wicked; *un-selð*, misery, adversity (see note on l. 80, p. 4).
- l. 369. *for-bolen* = concealed, hidden. A.S. *for-bélan*, to hide; *bélan* (pret. *bæl*, pp. *ge-belen*), to cover, hide.
- l. 370. *gure on* = one of you.
- P. 13, l. 371. *sikerlike* = confidently, boldly. O.E. *siker*, secure, safe. Ger. *sicher*; Fris. *sikur*.
- ll. 372-374. Upon whom thou findest it indeed,
 Let him be slain and let us again be driven
 Into thralldom (slavery) evermore to live.
witterlike = indeed, truly. *witter* signifies wise, true (see note on l. 4, p. 1; l. 382, p. 13).
- l. 375. *ransaken* = to search, *ransack*. Sw. *ransaka*, to search for stolen goods, from O.N. *rannr*, a house, and Sw. *söka*, to seek.
on and on = one and one, singly.
- l. 380. *reueli lote* = sorrowful cheer (see notes on l. 62, p. 3; l. 310, p. 11).
wep = O.E. *wop*, weeping. Cp. O.E. *gret* and *grot*, lamentation; *lop*, a leap.
- l. 382. *o wol* (= *wel*) *witter ðogt* = of very wise thought, of very keen perception, i. e. very discerning (see l. 372, p. 13).
- l. 387. Provided that thou spare Benjamin.
friðe = to protect. A.S. *freoðian*, to give peace or security; *freoðu*, peace, security.
- l. 388. *on treuwe min* = upon my promise (pledged troth).
- l. 392. *toðere* = others, pl. of *toðer* = *ðat oðer*, that other, the other.
- l. 393. *une-ðes* = scarcely, with difficulty. A.S. *un-eað*, uneasy; *uneaðe*, uneasily (see l. 301, p. 10).
e gret = *be-gret* = he wept (see l. 69, p. 3).
- l. 394. See l. 340, p. 12.
- l. 396. For your safety first hither brought.
beiðe = safety (see note on l. 120, p. 5).
- l. 397. *To*, an error for *two*.
- l. 398. Yet shall five fully be passed.
- l. 401. *Rapæð gu* = haste you. Du. *rap*, nimble. O.N. *rapa*, to hasten. Perhaps this is connected with Eng. *rap out* = utter with violence. Sw. *rapp*, a blow; Bavarian *rappen*, to snatch; Eng. *rap*.
- l. 402. And say (tell) him what (how great) are my pleasures (bliss).
- P. 14, l. 408. *Ilc bere* = each of them (see ll. 310, p. 11; 370, p. 12).
- l. 409. *kid* = made known. A.S. *cyðan*, to make known, declare, tell; *cyð*, knowledge. Cp. *un-couð*, unknown, and hence strange, rude (see l. 294, p. 10).
- l. 410. *wurð bi-tid* = had come about, had happened.

Cp. O.E. to *barrow*. Christ was said to *barrow* hell when, after His crucifixion, He delivered the souls of the righteous who had died and had been held captive by Satan since the beginning of world. From *bere*, an army, is derived the A.S. *bere-beorgan* (*beorgan* = to protect), lodge, *barbour* (O.E. *barborow*); whence *barbour* and *barbinger* = *barbour-ager*. Cp. *messenger*, from *message*; and *scavenger*, from *scavage*.

ll. 505, 506. That bier is led, this folk is quick, They went about (along) by Adad.

rad = A.S. *rád*, *ræd*, active, prepared, whence *ready*. Du. *rede*, plain, straight.

l. 506. *foren*, pret. pl. of *faren*, to go (see l. 205, p. 8).

l. 508. *bimening* = lamentation. A.S. *bemēnan*, to bewail; *mēnan*, to moan (see l. 254, p. 9).

l. 509. *numen*, pp. of *nimen*, to take, gone (taken the way).

l. 510. *flum* = river, stream. A.S. *flum*, Prov. Eng. *flem*, *flume*, a mill-stream. Norse *flauma*, to flow. The *m* is merely a suffix, the root being A.S. *flowan*, to run, *flow*.

l. 511. *ouer pharan* = *over faren*, to pass over; from *faren*, to go.

l. 512. *biriele* = tomb, sepulchre. A.S. *byrigels*, a sepulchre, *burial* (-place); from *byrgan*, to bury. Du. *berghen*, to hide; Ger. *bergen*, to conceal.

l. 518-522. Us he this message bad say, 'Our sin thou for him (for his sake) forgive, Provided that we under thee live.' They all fell there at his feet (literally to the feet to him), To beg (entreat) mercy and offer (the) oath (of fealty to him).

beden = *beden* = *bidden*, to entreat. A.S. *béd*, prayer. 'To bid one's *beads*' was to say one's prayers (see ll. 589, 591, p. 81); the *bead* being originally used for the purpose of helping the memory. Cp. *beadsman*, a petitioner; *bead-roll*, a list (of persons to be prayed for); *beadhouse*, an almshouse.

mæde = A.S. *mæð* = measure, moderation; *mæt*, modest, moderate; *metan*, to measure, *mete* (out).

bedden oc = offer oath. *oc* is an error for *ot* = *oþ* = oath, A.S. *aþb*.

l. 527. *sibbe* = kin, kindred, relations. A.S. *sib*, peace, kindred; whence *gossip* (= God-sib), which originally signified a godfather or godmother, *i. e.* one related in God by the ordinance of baptism.

P. 18, ll. 534, 535. Listen to it (my prayer), and promise it now,

That my petition be not forlorn (*lost* sight of).

Lested = *lesteð* = listen to. A.S. *blystan*, to hear, attend to; *blis*, hearing. O.N. *blust*, an ear.

l. 537. See l. 501, p. 17.

l. 538. Perhaps (since *red* = advice) we ought to read *God do ðe soule* [on] *seli-spæd* = May God place the soul in bliss (happy-speed) (see l. 190, p. 7).

l. 545. *to ful in wis* = *to ful twis* = very completely in sooth (indeed), *i. e.* fully.

l. 548. *lefful soules ned* = the need of precious souls. *lefful*, from *lef*, dear, signifies dear, precious.

l. 550. *engel tale* = English speech.

l. 552. May God help him (richly) effectually.

wel = A.S. *welig*, wealthy, rich; from *wel*, well.

mot = may. A.S. *mot*, may, can, *must*, ought (2nd pers. *most*, pret. *moste*).

l. 553. And preserve his soul from sorrow and tears (see l. 72, p. 3).

berge = preserve. A.S. *beorgan*, *bergan*, to protect, shelter; whence *barbour* (see note on l. 503, p. 17).

1. 472. *ending* = death.
 1. 473. *leue sune* = dear, beloved son.
 1. 474. *ðar-offe* = thereof.
munse, remember (see note on l. 461, p. 15).
 1. 475. That when it should be done with him, *i.e.* when he was dead.
 1. 477. And truly he there hath to him said.
 1. 479. So was (it) pleasing to him to be laid.
lif = *lef* = *lief*, pleasing, dear (see note on l. 327, p. 11).
 1. 480. *stille* = quietly, alone.
 1. 481. *bim* = to him.
eldere = elders. The more common form is *eldern*.
 1. 483. *grauen* = buried. A.S. *grafan*, to carve, dig; whence *grave*.
 1. 487. Or *ðan* = ere that.
off worlde = from the world.
 1. 492. *for-let* = left, departed. A.S. *forlætan*, to quit; from *lætan*, to allow, permit, let go, dismiss. Ger. *lassen*, to permit. The radical notion is to 'loosen'. Ger. (Prov.) *lass*, slow, slack. O.N. *latr*, slow; whence Eng. *late*, *lazy*, *loiter*, &c.
strif = strife, is used here for trouble.
 1. 493. Joseph caused his body to be honourably prepared (for burial).
licb = body. A.S. *lic*, *lice*, a corpse (Ger. *leiche*); whence *licb-wake*, the vigil held over a dead body; *licb-gate*, the gate where the corpse is set down on entering a churchyard to await the arrival of the minister.
geren = to set in order, prepare. A.S. *gearo*, *gearu*, ready, prepared; *yare* (Shakespeare); *gearwian*, *gyran*, to make ready, prepare; whence Eng. *gear*. (A.S. *gearwa*, preparation, clothing.) Wedgwood connects O.Fr. *garbe*, gracefulness, good fashion, Italian *garbo*, comeliness, behaviour, Eng. *garb* (originally signifying the *mode* of doing anything), fashion of dress, with the A.S. *gearwan*. Goth. *garawjan*, to prepare.
 1. 494. Wash and richly anoint.
smeren = to anoint, *smear*. A.S. *smeru*, fat, grease. O.N. *smör*, fat, butter. O.E. *smore*, or *smoor*, to daub. A.S. *smérian*, to smear (*smorian*, to suffocate). Du. *smeeren*. Ger. *schmieren*.
 1. 495. And spice-like (with spices) sweet to be scented.
smaken = to scent. A.S. *smæc*, taste, savour, *smack*; *smæccan* (Ger. *schmatzen*, O.N. *smatta*), to taste, smack the lips. Connected with this root are the Prov. Eng. *smouch*, a loud kiss; *smatch*, a taste; *smattering* (= O.E. *smackering*).
 1. 496. And Egypt's folk kept a vigil for him.
bi-waken = bewaked; from *waken*, to keep a vigil, or *watch*. A.S. *wæcan*, to watch.
 P. 17, l. 501. *gatte* = granted. A.S. *geatan*; O.N. *geta*, to grant.
 1. 502. *feres* = companions. A.S. *fera*, *gefera*, a companion; from *feran*, to go, journey. Cp. O.E. *play-fere*, a play-fellow.
 1. 503. *wopnede* = armed (weaponed). A.S. *wæpn*, a weapon; *wæpened-mann*, a male; *wæpen-getæc*, a *wæpen-take* or hundred (so called because the inhabitants within such districts were taught the use of arms).
wis of beren = wise, skilful in armed expeditions (skilful in conducting expeditions).
beren = army, expedition. A.S. *bere*, an army, troop; *berian*, *bergian*, to act as an army, to ravage; whence to *barry* (Sc. *berry*, rob, spoil), *barrowing*;

Cp. O.E. to *barrow*. Christ was said to *barrow* hell when, after His crucifixion, He delivered the souls of the righteous who had died and had been held captive by Satan since the beginning of world. From *bere*, an army, is derived the A.S. *bere-beorgan* (*beorgan* = to protect), lodge, *barbour* (O.E. *barborow*); whence *barbour* and *barbinger* = *barbour-ager*. Cp. *messenger*, from *message*; and *scavenger*, from *scavage*.

ll. 505, 506. That bier is led, this folk is quick, They went about (along) by Adad.

rad = A.S. *rád*, *ræd*, active, prepared, whence *ready*. Du. *rede*, plain, straight.

l. 506. *foren*, pret. pl. of *faren*, to go (see l. 205, p. 8).

l. 508. *bimening* = lamentation. A.S. *bemēnan*, to bewail; *mænan*, to moan (see l. 254, p. 9).

l. 509. *numen*, pp. of *nimen*, to take, gone (taken the way).

l. 510. *flum* = river, stream. A.S. *flum*, Prov. Eng. *flem*, *flume*, a mill-stream. Norse *flauma*, to flow. The *m* is merely a suffix, the root being A.S. *flowan*, to run, *flow*.

l. 511. *ouer pbaran* = *ouer faren*, to pass over; from *faren*, to go.

l. 512. *biriele* = tomb, sepulchre. A.S. *byrigels*, a sepulchre, *burial* (-place); from *byrgan*, to bury. Du. *berghen*, to hide; Ger. *bergen*, to conceal.

l. 518-522. Us he this message bad say, 'Our sin thou for him (for his sake) forgive, Provided that we under thee live.' They all fell there at his feet (literally *to the feet to him*), To beg (entreat) mercy and offer (the) oath (of fealty to him).

beðen = *beden* = *bidden*, to entreat. A.S. *béd*, prayer. 'To bid one's *beads*' was to say one's prayers (see ll. 589, 591, p. 81); the *bead* being originally used for the purpose of helping the memory. Cp. *beadsman*, a petitioner; *bead-roll*, a list of persons to be prayed for; *beadhouse*, an almshouse.

meðe = A.S. *mæð* = measure, moderation; *mæt*, modest, moderate; *metan*, *metan*, to measure, *mete* (out).

bedden *oc* = offer oath. *oc* is an error for *ot* = *op* = oath, A.S. *atb*.

l. 527. *sibbe* = kin, kindred, relations. A.S. *sib*, peace, kindred; whence *gossip* (= God-sib), which originally signified a godfather or godmother, *i. e.* one related in God by the ordinance of baptism.

P. 18, ll. 534, 535. Listen to it (my prayer), and promise it now,
That my petition be not forlorn (*lost sight of*).

Lested = *lesteð* = listen to. A.S. *blystan*, to hear, attend to; *blíst*, hearing. O.N. *blust*, an ear.

l. 537. See l. 501, p. 17.

l. 538. Perhaps (since *red* = advice) we ought to read *God do ðe soule* [on] *seli-spæd* = May God place the soul in bliss (happy-speed) (see l. 190, p. 7).

l. 545. *to ful in wis* = *to ful iwis* = very completely in sooth (indeed), *i. e.* fully.

l. 548. *lefful soules ned* = the need of precious souls. *lefful*, from *lef*, dear, signifies dear, precious.

l. 550. *engel tale* = English speech.

l. 552. May God help him (richly) effectually.

weli = A.S. *welig*, wealthy, rich; from *wel*, well.

mot = may. A.S. *mot*, may, can, *must*, ought (2nd pers. *most*, pret. *moste*).

l. 553. And preserve his soul from sorrow and tears (see l. 72, p. 3).

berge = preserve. A.S. *beorgan*, *bergen*, to protect, shelter; whence *barbour* (see note on l. 503, p. 17).

l. 554. *pine* = pain. A.S. *pinan*, Du. *pijne*, pain; *pijnen*. O.N. *pina*, to torture. Ger. *pein*, pain; whence Eng. to pine.

l. 556. God grant them in His bliss to live joyfully.

lene = grant. Many editors of O.E. works print *leue* (=leve, give leave to), for *lene*, as if from A.S. *lefan*, to permit; *lene* is from *lænan*, to give, lend.

spilen = A.S. *spilian*, semi-Saxon, *spilen*, to divert oneself. O.H.Ger. *spil*, sport, joy.

II.

The Owl and the Nightingale.

P. 19, l. 1. *one* = *ane* = a (see ll. 2, 4, p. 19).

l. 2. *supe* = *suipe* = *suipe*, very.

disele = secret. A.S. *digelian*, to hide; *digel*, *digle*, secret. Bosworth connects it with *deagan*, to steep, wet, *dye*.

bale = A.S. *bal*, a hiding-place, connected with *bele*, to cover. It is generally considered as = Prov. Eng. *bale*, hole, hollow.

ll. 3, 4. I heard hold great talk An owl and a nightingale.

l. 5. *plait* = *plaid*, *pleading*, debate. Fr. *plaid*, suit at law; *plaidier*, to sue, *plead*; whence Eng. *plea* (see l. 12, p. 19).

l. 6. *lud* among = loud at intervals. *lud* = A.S. *blud*, loud; O.N. *blíod*; Ger. *laut*, sound.

ll. 7, 8. And each against (the) other swelled (out with wrath, anger),
And let out all that evil mood.

wole = evil. A.S. *wól*, plague; *wæl*, slaughter.

l. 9. *custe* = habits. O.N. *kostr*, habits, character; probably connected with A.S. *ceosan*. Du. *kiesen*, *kieren*, to choose; O.E. *kire*, choice, custom.

l. 10. *alre-worste* = the worst of all. *alre* is the gen. pl. of *al*, all; in later English this became *al-d-re*, *al-d-er* and *al-th-er*.

bi wuste = they *wist*, knew.

l. 11. *bure* and *bure* = Fr. *bure á bure* = tête á tête, in company with, together (Coleridge). More probably *bure* and *bure* = at intervals, alternately; from the A.S. *buru*, for a time.

of opers songe = of (each) other's song.

l. 12. *bolde*, pl. pret. held.

P. 20, l. 14. *burne* = corner. A.S. *birne*, angle, corner, *born*.

brecbe = brake, woody glen. This word has puzzled Marsh and Coleridge, who have suggested *beech*.

l. 15. *up* = *upe* = upon.

l. 16. *blosme i-noze* = enough (abundance) of blossoms (flowers). A.S. *blasma*, a bloom, flower; *inoze* = enough (adj. pl. agreeing with *blosme*).

l. 17. If hegge (A.S. *beg* is masc.) be considered as fem., *ore* = *anre*, one; otherwise it = *ane*, one, as in ll. 2, 4.

l. 18. *I-meind* = *i-menged* = mingled, mixed. A.S. *mengian*, to mix; *ming*, *ming-le*.

spire (O.N. *spira*, Dan. *spire*) = sprout, twig. O.E. *spyre*, 'the sharp seed of corn that springs from the ground.' Prov. E. *spire*, a young tree, a *spire*. O.N. *spír*, point, top.

sagge = A.S. *sæg*, *sedge*.

l. 19. She was the more joyful on account of (for) the twigs.
rise = branch, twig. A.S. *bris*, Dan. *riis*, branch, spray.

l. 20. And sang in notes of many kinds.

a = an = in. *a* is used before consonants; *an* before vowels.

vele cunne = of many kinds, diverse, various.

wise = guise, mode. Ger. *weise*, mode, way.

l. 21. It seemed that it were the tone.

Dreim. A.S. *dream* = song, melody, music, joy; *dreman*, to play, rejoice.
 Dan. *drum*, a booming sound. Drayton speaks of a *drumbling* tabor; whence Eng. *drum*, to *drum*.

l. 22. *þau* = *þa3* = though.

be refers to *dreim* which is masc.

ll. 23, 24. It seemed better (rather) that it were shot from harp, &c.

l. 26. When the owl sang her(self) at times (intervals).

l. 27. *bi-growe* = *begrowen*, overgrown.

l. 28. It was the dwelling-place of the owl.

þare = of the (gen. fem.).

earding-stowe = dwelling-place (see *erd* in *Gen. and Ex.*, l. 146, p. 6).

ll. 29-32. The nightingale saw her, And beheld her and looked over, And thought very contemptibly of the owl, For one holdeth her loathsome and foul.

lodlicb = A.S. *lād-lic* = hateful; *lād*, evil, harm; *lād*, hateful, evil; *lādian*, to loathe; Du. *leed*, Ger. *leid*, grief, evil.

l. 33. *Unwiȝt* = coward, caitiff; from O.E. *wight*; O.Sc. *wicht*; Sw. *wig*, brave, active.

fleo = *fleo* = flee. Cp. *so* = *seo* = see (l. 34).

l. 35. *wole lete* = foul (vile) voice. A.S. *leoð*, song. Coleridge explains it by *face* (see *lote*, l. 310, p. 11).

l. 36. *for-lete* = leave off, forsake. A.S. *for-lētan*, to quit.

l. 37. *borte* = *beorte* = heart.

at-flīþ = becomes faint; literally, flutters, fleeth away.

falt = faltereth, faileth. Coleridge treats *falt* as if = *faileþ*, fails. I take it to be the 3rd pers. sing. of *falte*, to *falter*. O.N. *fatra*, to bungle; Dan. *faute*, to fail; Sp. *falta*, to fail.

ll. 38-40. When thou art pressed (near) to me I would rather spit (be sick) than sing Of thy foul cackling (chattering).

luste = *liste* = it were pleasing. The root exists in *listless*, *lust*, *lusty*, &c.

303elinge = *gagging*. Sw. *gaggen*, to stutter. The same root seems to exist in *gag* (O.E. *gaggyn*, to strain by the throat, suffocate), *goggle*, *jog*, to shake.

l. 41. The owl refrained (kept silence) until evening.

þos = *þeos*, fem. this.

fort = *forte* = *for-to*, until. We find this form used as late as 1387.

l. 42. *leng* = longer. In A.S. we find *leng* and *lengre*. Cp. *bet* and *betre*.

bileve = remain (quiet) (see *bi-lewen*, *Gen. and Ex.* l. 285, p. 10).

l. 44. That wellnigh she lost her breath.

fnast = breath (or windpipe) (see l. 210, p. 45). O.E. *fnaste*, to breathe.

A.S. *fnast*, puff, blast, rage; *fnastiað*, windpipe. It is probably connected with A.S. *fnæsung*, a sneezing; from *næse*, nose. (The dilation of the nostrils is a well-known sign of anger.) Cp. *s-neeze*, *s-nore* (to make noises through the nose).

at-schet = was expended, spent; from A.S. *æt*, from, away; *sceotan*, to shoot, dart (pret. *sceat*). The preterite *sset* = shot, is used by Robert of Gloucester. In another part of this poem, l. 1621, we have *at scbote*, destroyed (by a shot). Coleridge derives *at-schet* from A.S. *scedan*, to hurt, scathe, and makes it signify *burst*.

l. 45. *warp* = utter; literally, to throw out. A.S. *weorpan* (pret. *wearp*, pp. *geworpen*); Ger. *werfen*, to cast, turn; whence *mould-warp*, a mole (i. e. a caster up of mould or earth), *wbarf*, *warped*, &c.

l. 46. *Hu þinche* = *Hu þinç þe* = How seems it thee? what do you think?

P. 21, l. 47. *West* = *wost* = knowest.

l. 48. *writeling*. Coleridge renders it 'trills in a song.' A.S. *wriðan*, to writhe, twist.

l. 49. Often thou causest me offence (indignation).

grame = A.S. *gram*, furious, fierce; *grama*, anger, wrath; *gramian*, to anger. Cp. A.S. *grim*, fury, rage; *grima*, a ghost; *grom*, fierce. Du. *grimmen*, to snarl, grin; whence Eng. *grim*, *grumpy*, *grumble*.

l. 50. *tone* = *teone* = *tene*, pain, wrong, injury. A.S. *teon*, *teona*, injury; *teonan*, *tynan*, to anger, incense. It is probably connected with A.S. *tyndan*, *tendan*, to kindle, Prov. Eng. *tende*; whence Eng. *tinder*.

l. 51-54. If I held thee in my power, So betide it that I might! An (if) thou wert out of thy branches, Thou shouldest sing in another (different) manner.

note = A.S. *notu*, power, possession; *notian*, to use, possess.

l. 56. *loki* = enclose, guard. A.S. *locan*, to shut, close. The O.E. *loke*, *loki*, signifies (1) to keep close, guard; (2) to conclude, decide. Cp. O.E. *lokinge*, custody, care.

bare = grove. A.S. *bearu*, grove. Norse *barr*, tree; whence *bar* and *s-par*.

l. 57. *blete* = *blede* = foliage. A.S. *blæd*, leaf, *blade* (of grass).

l. 58. *reche* = care, reck. A.S. *rec*, care; *recan* (pret. *rohte*, O.E. *roghte*), to take care; *recce-leas*, reckless.

l. 60. *segge* = (subj.) mayest say.

ll. 61, 62. I know that thou art cruel (unmild, savage, fierce) With those that may not from thee shield (themselves).

l. 63. *tukest* = annoys, harrasses. A.S. *tucian*, to punish, torment.

wrope (adv.) is the A.S. *wrāðe*, fiercely, furiously; from *wrað*, wrath, anger.

uwele = A.S. *yfele*, evilly, badly; from *yfel*, evil, vile. The *u* represents *y* as in O.F. *bul* = *bil* = *bill*, &c.

l. 64. *fugele* = fowls, birds.

l. 65. *fuel-kunne* (dat. after *loþ*) = *fuzel-kunne*, fowl-kind, birds.

l. 66. *alle bo* = *alle beo* = they all.

bonne = *bonne* = hence.

l. 67. *bi-schricþeþ* = shriek or scream at. *schirchþeþ* = *sbrieketþ*, screecheth. *schirbe* is a softened form of *skrike*; Swed. *skrika*, to cry; whence *screech* and *sbriek*.

bi-gredet = hoot, call after. A.S. *grædan*, to cry, call, say. O.E. *grede* (sb.), cry, voice; *grede*, to cry, murmur, grumble; whence *greed*, and *greedy* (Goth. *gredags*, hungry), originally a crying for food.

l. 69. *ek forþe* = even; *em-forth* (used by Chaucer) would be a better reading.

solve = very, is the definite form (after the article) of *self*.

mose = hedge-sparrow. A.S. *māse*, a tit-mouse.

l. 70. *Hire þonkes* (gen. absolute) = with her will, willingly. A.S. *þonc*, þanc, thank, will.

to-fose = hurt, injure. A.S. *teosu*, *teso*, hurt, injury; probably connected with *tease*; A.S. *tæsan*, to annoy, assault.

l. 73. *swore* = *sweora*, neck. A.S. *sweora*, *swira*, neck; O.E. *swire*, *suere*.

ll. 75-78. Thine eyes are coal-black and broad,
Right as they were painted with woad;
Thou starest as if thou wouldst bite
All that thou mightest with claws smite.

l. 78. *mist* = *mizt* = mightest.

l. 80. *owl* = awl. A.S. *æl*, *awel*, fork, awl.

l. 84. *mesbe* = (mash, s-mash) beat, tear in pieces. Sw. *mäska*.

l. 85. *i-cundur* = more like. A.S. *gecynde*, natural (see *kinde* l. 127, p. 5), and *cunde*, nature (l. 89, p. 22).

l. 86. That sitteth at the mill under the wheel. Coleridge leaves *cogge* unexplained in his Glossarial Index. It seems to signify a *ubseel*, *cog*. Sw. *kugge*, an individual prominence in an indented wheel.

l. 87. *fule wigte* = foul creatures. *wigte* = A.S. *wibt*, creature, animal, thing, *wight*.

l. 89. *sittest* is to be pronounced *sist*.

l. 94. Thou feedest them on a very foul food.

l. 95. *þos word* = *þeos word* = these words. *word* in A.S. is plural as well as singular.

aʒaf = uttered, gave out.

l. 96. *tale* = argument, being feminine, requires *þare*, the fem. of the definite article.

l. 98. Right as (if) one were touching a shrill harp.

grulde = to shake (if the true reading), may be from the Du. *grillen*, to shiver, tremble. Coleridge suggests A.S. *grillan*, to provoke, the original meaning of which was to shiver; whence O.E. *grille*, cold, shivering. For *grulde*, I would suggest *glude* = *glewde*, from A.S. *gleowian*, *gliwian*, to play on an instrument, sing; whence Eng. *glee*.

schille = shrill. O.N. *skryla*, to cry in a high note. Low Du. *scrall*, harsh, sharp. The form *schille* is very common in early English. It is formed by metathesis from *sbrille*, the secondary form being *schirille*, and by loss of the *r* we get *schille*. The Sc. *skirl*, signifies to cry with a shrill voice.

ll. 99-104 are parenthetical; it is the nightingale who is now represented as speaking.

l. 99. *luste* = listened.

l. 100. *noþer-ward* = *neoper-ward* = downwards. A.S. *niðer-weard*, *neoðer-ward*, from *neoðe*, down, *neðer*, below, still existing in *be-neath*, *nethermost*.

l. 101. *to-swolle* = *to-swolze* = exceedingly swollen, enraged. Cp. *i-swolze*, swollen, l. 102, p. 22.

i-bolze = puffed up, swollen with rage. A.S. *belgan*, to enrage, make angry. Sw. *bulna*, to swell, *bulge*. The O.E. *bollen*, or *bolnen*, is used by Wicliffe, and exists in *bole*, the round stem of a tree, and *bowl*.

l. 103. *i-war* = A.S. *ge-wær*, wary, cautious, *aware*.

l. 104. *a bisemar* = in scorn, mockery. A.S. *bi-smér*, mockery, reproach; from *smére*, fat; *smérian*, to besmear; *bismérian*, to insult, mock.

l. 106. *Whi naltu* = *wbi ne wilt thou* = why wilt thou not? why don't you? So *nile* 3e often means *don't you*, do not.

flon = *fleon* = flee.

l. 107, 108. And see which of us two be

Of brighter hue, of fairer colour (complexion).

l. 109. *No þu bapest* = *bast thou not*? Daniel Rogers uses *no is*, is it not so? So the O.E. *no shalt thou*, shalt thou not?

l. 110. *Ne kepich* = *Ne kepe ich* = I care not. I have no fear; *kepen* = *keep* guard, take care, take note of. As a noun, *kep* = care, in phrase 'take *kep*,' to take care.

P. 23, l. 112. Thou twingest therewith as doth a (pair of) tongs.

tuengst = twingest. Dan. *twinge*, to twinge.

tonge = *tongs*. A.S. *tange*. The pl. *tangen*, or *tongen*, is not uncommon in O.E. writers.

ll. 113, 114. Thou thoughtest as do those like thee,

With fair words to deceive me.

i-like or *i-liche* = compeers; from the A.S. *ge-lic*, like.

bi-swike = deceive, mock. A.S. *bi-swican*, to deceive, from *swic*, deceit, treachery; *swica*, a traitor; *swican*, to deceive; *swicdom*, fraud, deceit (see ll. 118, 119, p. 23).

noide = *ne wolde* = would not.

raddest = advisedest; see l. 116, where *misraddest* = misadvisedest (see *red* in l. 43, p. 2, and *for-rede*, l. 243, p. 9, and *unrede*, l. 117, p. 23, folly, want of wisdom).

l. 117. Shame on thee for thy wickedness!

l. 118. *Un-urozten*. Coleridge accepts this as a correct reading, and explains it by *undone*, *destroyed*; but the meaning is evidently the reverse. The sense which best suits the context is *uncovered*, *revealed*, *made known*. The verb *werke*, to work, makes the pp. *urozt*, and not *urozten*. The correct reading is *un-urozen* = *uncovered*, disclosed; from A.S. *unwreon*, to reveal; *wreon*, to cover (pret. *wreab*, pp. *ge-urogen*), whence Eng. *rig*, *beuray*.

l. 120. *bud*, imp. hide.

woze = wrong, wickedness. A.S. *wob*: (1) a bending, turning; (2) error, wrong, perversity. *Awkward* contains the same root. A.S. *a-wob*, awry. O.S. *awub*, (the *a* = *af* = off); whence gawk and gawky; *woze* is sometimes written *wow* (see l. 378, p. 74).

l. 121. *spene* = *swene* = *schewen*, to shew, exhibit.

l. 123. *bete* = hate. A.S. *bête*, hate; whence A.S. *bétel*, O.E. *batil*, fierce.

l. 124. *ope* = open, apparent.

under-ȝete = understood. A.S. *under-gitan*, to perceive, discover. Cp. A.S. *andget*, the understanding. O.E. *get*, mode, fashion.

l. 125. *un-wrenche* = evil designs, tricks. A.S. *unwrenc*, vice (disingenuousness), *wrence*, a trick. The O.E. *wrenche*, is often used (as it was no doubt originally) in a good sense = art, device.

l. 126. *war* = wary (see l. 103, p. 22).

blenche = to avoid, *flinch*. Hamlet: "If he do *blench*, I know my course."

l. 127. *to briste* = very bold. A.S. *brist*, bold, daring; *bristian*, dare, presume.

l. 128. *liste* = wiles, craft. A.S. *list*, perhaps connected with Du. *leest*, form, make (Eng. shoemaker's *last*). Ger. *leisten*, model, form.

l. 134. *un-werste* = *un-wreste* = wicked. A.S. *unwrest*, weak, wicked; *wæst*, good. O.N. *bres*, spirited.

l. 135. *fo we on* = take we on, let us proceed. *fo* = *fob*, take. A.S. *fōn*, to take (pret. *feng*, pp. *ge-fongen*); whence *fangs*, *finger*.

l. 136. *wisdom*. Wright prints *ilome*, which is an adv. = frequently; Stevenson gives the reading *isome*, peaceably.

l. 140. *Plaidi mid foze* = plead (debate) with (mutual) consent. *foze* = A.S. *fog*, agreement; from *fegan*, to join; *gefeig*, rule.

l. 141. *bure eifer* = each of us.

l. 142. *skille* = skill, prudence, wisdom. O.N. *skil*, separation, discrimination; Dan. *skille*, to sever; A.S. *scylan*, to distinguish, divide.

l. 143. *Pu schal us seme*. The printed edition (and the MS.) exhibit this reading; but as the O.E. *ib* and *w* are often confounded in MSS., the correct reading may be *Wu schal us deme*, &c., i. e. Who shall arbitrate for us, that can and will decide equitably between us: *seme* = arbitrate; A.S. *seman*, arbitrate, judge.

P. 24, l. 146. *baref* = *barf* = need. A.S. *pearf*, need, want; *pearfa*, poor; *pearfan*, *purfan*, to need.

l. 149. *gleu* = A.S. *glectw*, skilful.

l. 150. *unþeu* = vice (see l. 8, p. 1).

l. 153. *schede* = distinguish, separate. A.S. *sceadan*, Ger. *scheiden*, to divide. It still exists in water-*shed*, *shedding* of hair. Bailey has *shead*, to distinguish.

l. 154. *buster* = A.S. *þeoster*, darkness. Ger. *finster*, dimness; A.S. *þeoster-nes*, darkness.

l. 158. *wile* = *one while*, a while, at one time, formerly (see l. 155, p. 24). *breme* = stern, severe. The literal meaning of *breme* is fiery, raging, eager; from *breunen*, to burn, as *brimstone*, burning-stone. Cp. Du. *brenen*, to burn with desire; Fris. *brimme*, to roar.

l. 159. *lof* = *leof* = dear. The meaning of the line is And dear to him were the nightingale.

l. 160. *gente and smale* = gentle and small.

l. 161. *suþe acoled* = very much cooled down.

l. 162. He is not for thee befooled.

l. 164. *legge* = (subj.) should lay.

buve = *abuve* = above.

l. 165. *queme* = please. A.S. *cweman*, to please, delight; from *cwiman*, to come. The Eng. *wbim*, is probably from the same source.

l. 167. *bim* = himself.

ripe = of mature judgment.

fastrede = inflexible, impartial, firm in counsel. A.S. *fæst-ræd*, constant, firm, bold (see *red*, l. 43, p. 2).

ll. 168, 169. *lust bim* = pleaseth him.

l. 170. He will go in (the) right way.

l. 172. *aiware* = everywhere.

l. 177. *afere* = to frighten, *afear*.

l. 178. *i-bere* = *bere* = voice, sound, noise.

P. 25, l. 179. *schirchest* = shriekiest (see l. 67, p. 21).

3ollest = yellest. A.S. *galan* (pret. *gol*, pp. *ge-galen*); O.N. *gala*, to sing; A.S. *gala*, a nightingale.

fer = mate, companion (see l. 502, p. 17).

l. 180. *grislich*. A.S. *grislic*, horrible, grisly; from *a-grisan* (pret. *agros*), to dread, fear. Ger. *grausen*, to shudder.

l. 181. *snepe* = foolish. O.N. *snǫpr*, foolish (Coleridge). *snepe*, from the Fris. *snope*, *snubbe*, to reprove sharply, Eng. *snub*. O.E. *snaipe*, to reprove, would seem to mean 'worthy of reproof.' Cp. N. Prov. Eng. *sneap*, to snub.

l. 185. *schuniet* = shuns. A.S. *scunian*, to shun, avoid. The O.E. *schunien* (*sbonnen*), signifies also to *above*, draw aside; whence Eng. *sbunt*.

l. 187. *þat is lof misdede* = that misdeed (wickedness) is dear to, *i.e.* that loves wickedness.

l. 190. *of-toned* = very apgry, vexed; from *teone*, anger (see l. 50, p. 21). *of*, as a prefix, has an intensitive meaning, like *for* in *forgive*, *forbreak*.

l. 192. *galegale* = chatterer; more literally a wanton licentious talker; from *gál*, wanton, and *galan*, to sing, talk (see note on l. 179, p. 25).

l. 194. *spale* = a turn, change, rest. Cp. the expression 'a *spell* of work,' 'a fresh *spell*.'

l. 196. *mine þroze* = my turn. *þroze* = A.S. *þrab*, *þrag* (O.E. *þrowe*), time, season, space, opportunity.

l. 198. *a-wreke* = avenged. A.S. *wrēcan* (pret. *wrǣc*, pp. *ge-wrecen*), revenge, punish, *wreak*, exile; whence *wræc-a*, an exile, *wretch*.

l. 199. *bi-telle* = excuse, defend.

l. 200. *spelle* = fable (as in phrase *ealdra cwenas spell*, old wives' fables). A.S. *spell*, O.N. *spjall*, discourse, rumour, language. A.S. *spellian*, to declare, relate. This root still exists in *gospel*.

l. 201. *bude* = hide.

l. 202. *nich ne nai* = a strong expression of denial or disapproval; to *nikke nay*, is to deny strongly. *nich* seems to be A.S. *nic* = *ne*, not, and *ic*, I, not I.

l. 203. *lust* = *lustetb* = listeneth.

l. 208. *biþte* = A.S. *bibt*, hope, delight; *biþtan*, to rejoice,

l. 210. *scende* = to reprove, blame. A.S. *seond*, O.E. *sbonde*, shame, disgrace; *scendan*, to shame, disgrace, *sbend*.

P. 26, l. 213. *foþle* = birds; the dative after the adj. *loþ*, hateful.

l. 214. *floþ* = *fleoþ* = flieth.

þuwele = underwood. A.S. *þufe*, twig, branch.

l. 215. *bi-cbermet* = chirpeth about, or around. A.S. *cyrn*, noise, O.E. *cberme*, *cbarne*, hum, noise of birds (see l. 221, p. 26), whence 'a *cbarne* of goldfinches' = a flock of those birds.

l. 217. *Me is lof* = I had rather (see l. 183, p. 25).

l. 220. *mersbe* = A.S. *merse*, marsh, fen, bog; probably connected with *mere*, a lake, pool, sea, *meer*.

l. 222. *schirme* = fight, contest. Fr. *escrimer*, to fence. O.E. *skirmen*, to fight. Dan. *skjerm*, defence. Du. *scherm*, a screen; *schermen* to defend.

l. 223. *folþe* = followeth. A.S. *folgian* to follow. Bosworth connects it with *folc*, people, folk.

l. 224. *fliþt* = flieth; *lat* = letteth.

l. 227. *rorde* = *reorde* = voice, singing. A.S. *reord*, *reard*, reason, language; *reordian*, to speak.

þoning = confused noise, din. A.S. *þuning*, noise. The printed text reads *woning* = *wonying*, which means *whining*; but the reading and meaning here given suits the context much better; for further on, l. 234, the owl says his voice is like the sound of a *great born*. The root of *þoning* is seen in A.S. *þunnan*, to din, thunder; whence *thunder*, O.E. *thoner*. Cp. Ger. *donner*, thunder; Norse *duna*, to thunder; Eng. *din*, *s-tun*.

l. 230. *fulle dreme* = full note (see l. 21, p. 20).

stefne = voice. A.S. *stefen*, *stemn*, voice, sound, message.

l. 233. *un-orne* = rude. A.S. *unbrne*, vigorous, bold. *unornelske*, rudely, occurs in *Havelok the Dane*, l. 1941.

l. 240. *soþþe* = *seopþe* = afterwards; from A.S. *sið*, late, lately; *sið-ða*, *sið-ðan*, *seoðða*, afterwards, since. *Since* is from the O.E. *sinnes*, from *sin*, a contraction of *sið-ðan*. Cp. Low Ger. *sint*, and Du. *sinds*, since.

won = *bwon* = *bwan*, when.

l. 241. *sipe* = time. A.S. *sið*, path, way, turn, time; *siðan*, times. *Þridde sipe*, third time.

l. 242. *adiþte* = *digþte* = adapt, order, prepare. Ger. *dichten*, A.S. *dibtan*, to set in order, dispose; *dibt*, a disposing.

P. 27, l. 243. *iso* = *iseo* = see.

vorre = *veorre* = afar (see l. 29, p. 2).

l. 244. *dai-rim* = break of day. A.S. *dæg-rim*, day-dawn.

l. 246. *note* = good, benefit, labour. A.S. *notu* (see l. 51, p. 21).

l. 252. *swikeþ* = ceaseth. A.S. *swican*, to cease.

l. 253. *adunest* = dinnest, stunniest. A.S. *dyne*, thunder, din; *dynian*, to thunder, din.

l. 254. *þas monnes earen* = the ears of the man.

þar = where. O.E. *þat* often signifies *what*.

l. 256. *me ne telþ of þar* = one esteemeth not thereof.

l. 257. *murþe* = mirth. A.S. *myrbð*, pleasure, from *myrg*, pleasure. O.E. *murgen*, make merry (see l. 261, p. 27, l. 357, p. 107).

l. 258. That she shall (*murþe* is fem.) please very badly.

l. 262. *þinche wel un-murie* = appear doleful (unmerry, unpleasant).

l. 263. *over un-wille* = beyond what is desirable, or wished for. A.S. *on-will*, desirable.

l. 264. *aspille* = spill, spoil. A.S. *spillan*, destroy, spoil. Low Ger. *spillen*, to spill, waste.

l. 267. *godbede* = goodness, good-bead.

l. 268. *unmeþe* = want of moderation. A.S. *unmæte* (see *mæðe*, l. 522, p. 17). *over-dede* = excess, *over-deed*, over-doing.

l. 270. *At-bold* = *atbeold* = restrained; from *at* (A.S. *æt*) and *bolden*, to hold.

l. 272. *alegge* = call in question, confute. A.S. *a-leccan*, lay down, bring forth reasons, *allay*, suppress; *leccan* (O.E. *ligge*), to lay, place.

P. 28, l. 275. *of-þuste*, pret. of *ofþenke* = repent. O.E. *for-thinke*.

l. 276. *so for-voþþ i-ladde* = led so far, i.e. carried so far.

l. 277. *oferd* = afraid. A.S. *of-færed*, very frightened, affrighted.

l. 280. *hardelicþe* = hardily, boldly.

l. 281. With his foe beareth (putteth on) a bold face.

l. 282. *areþe* = fear. A.S. *earþ*, *earg*, idle, timid; *yrþð*, fear; *yrþðo*, sloth. *areþ*, in l. 285, signifies fearful, afraid. The root still exists in *arcb*, sly, mischievous (Ger. *arg*, bad), *arrant*, as if *arw-and*, from O.E. *arwe*, bad + *and*, the ending of the imperfect participle.

l. 286. *of-bore* = forbear. Cp. *of-þinke*, *of-ferd* (ll. 275, 277, p. 28).

bareþ = *baret* = debate, contest, quarrel. O.N. *baratta*.

l. 291. Thou singest as doth a hen in the snow.

l. 293. *þomere* = sorrowful. A.S. *geomor*, grim, sad; *geomrian*, to groan, bewail. Prov. Eng. *yammer*.

l. 297. *forbernest* = burnest greatly, art burnt up, consumed.

onde = A.S. *anda*, malice.

l. 300. *un-wille* = A.S. *un-willa*, unpleasant; *willa*, pleasure.

l. 301. *Grucbing* = murmuring. Fr. *groucher*, O.E. *grucbe*, to grieve, murmur, complain; whence Eng. *grudge*.

luring = luring. Du. *loeren*, to frown; Low Ger. *luren*, to look displeased.

boþ = *beoþ* = are.

rade = present, ready.

ll. 305, 306. He cared (*recked*) not though companies were mingled (huddled together) by heads and hair, i. e. were fighting and pulling one another by the hair.

P. 29, l. 307. *þire* (fem. dat.), thy.

l. 314. And rejoiceth against (on account of) my coming (see *bizt*, l. 208, p. 25).

l. 318. *þu bit wite* = thou may know it.

l. 319. *Bid* = *bit* = biddeth.

l. 321. *rude* = *rode* = complexion. A.S. *rude*; Low Ger. *rood*, redness; whence *ruddy*.

l. 324. *Skentinge* = a merry song. O.E. *skente*, to amuse, delight. O.N. *skemta*.

l. 326. Thou hast returned answer as thou besoughtest (desired).

bi-cloped = *bi-cleoped*, from A.S. *cleopian*. O.E. *clepe*, to cry, call; Scotch *clep*, to tattle. Chaucer uses *clappe*, to boast, praise.

bede is the 2nd pers. pret. of *biddan*, to entreat. Cp. *speke* = *spakest*, (l. 330, p. 29).

l. 328. *ar* = before (the same as *or*, in l. 358, p. 12).

unker = of us two. A.S. *uncer*.

l. 332. Thou twittest me as to my meat (food).

atutest = *at-witest* = reproachest. A.S. *æt-witan*, reproach, from *wite*, punishment (O.E. *wite*, blame); *witan*, *witian*, to punish, blame.

l. 335. *attercoppe* = A.S. *attercoppa*, a spider. It signifies literally poison-cup, from *attor*, *atter*, poison, and *cuppa*, a cup. *Cob-web* (O.E. *capweft*), retains the last syllable only of the original word. In some of the Teutonic dialects the spider is called a *koppe*, on account of its carrying a bag. The O. Sw. *kopp*, signifies a bee.

fule vlize = foul (nasty) flies; *vlize* = *vlizen* (A.S. *fleogan*).

P. 30, l. 337. Among (in) the crevices of the hard bark.

volde = *fold*, bend, crevice. A.S. *feald*, a fold.

ll. 338, 339. Yet I can do much good service, For I can guard men's dwellings.

wike, in ll. 338, and 340, signifies service, office, duty. A.S. *wyce*. In the Ormulum we find *wikenn*, office, duty, charge, while Layamon uses *wikenares*, ministers, attendants. *wike*, in l. 329, signifies a dwelling; A.S. *wic*, a dwelling-place, castle, bay (cp. *wich*, as an element in local names); *wician*, to dwell.

l. 343. *at* should be written *atte* or *ate*.

derne = dark. A.S. *dearn*, dark; *dyrnian*, to hide.

l. 345. To cleanse it from the foul mouse.

l. 347. *i-vo* = *i-fo* = to take, seize (see l. 125, p. 23).

l. 349. To desire other dwelling-place.

yernen = A.S. *geornian*, to desire, *yearn*; *georn*, desirous, eager; *georne*

eagerly, earnestly, O.E. *ȝerne*; whence Eng. *earnest*. See l. 362, p. 30, where *ȝorne* = *ȝerne*, has the meaning of intently, earnestly.

l. 350. *tron* = *treon* = trees.

l. 351. *noþing blete* = not at all despicable. *blete*, wretched, miserable. A.S. *bleat* (Sc. *blate*), miserable.

l. 353. That ever continueth (standeth) alike blooming (flourishing).

i-blowe = *i-blouen* = blown (as in 'a full-blown rose'). A.S. *blōwian*, to bloom, blow, flourish; whence *blossom*, and *bloom*.

l. 354. *bis bou* = *bis beow*, refers to the ivy, and signifies its hue, colour, appearance.

vor-lost = *for-leoseþ* = to lose, lose wholly.

l. 355. When it snoweth nor when it freezeth.

l. 356. *i-bold* = A.S. *ge-beald*, residence, *bold*; from *ge-bealdan*, *bealdan*, to keep, preserve, *bold*.

l. 361. Was wellnigh out of patience become, *i.e.* had nearly lost all command of herself.

P. 31, l. 377. Than all that ever thy kin (species) could (were able to do).

l. 382. *fundeþ* = endeavours to go, seeks. A.S. *fundian*, to endeavour to find, go forward. The O.E. *funden* also signifies to go, walk.

l. 385. *ginneþ* = *beginneþ* = do. It is here used as a *tense* auxiliary, and the pret. *gan* (corrupted into *can* and *con*) = did (see l. 6, p. 1).

l. 389. *bi-ȝete* = beget, obtain (see *bi-ȝetel*, l. 86, p. 4).

l. 390. *nime ȝeme* = may take heed, attend to. *ȝeme* = A.S. *gýme*, care, anxiety. *gýman*, to take care of, regard.

l. 393. *wicke-tunes* = establishments, stations. *wice* = *wike* (in l. 339), dwelling. *tunes* = enclosures, *towns*.

l. 398. *wat I mai*, is our phrase *wbat I can*, what I am able to do.

P. 32, l. 400. *bo* = *beo* = they.

l. 401. *raddere* = the readier, the more disposed.

l. 405. *þat ever is ece* = that is everlasting. *ece* = eternal. A.S. *éce*, from *écan*, to prolong, *eke*.

l. 406. *clinge* = wither, dry up (used by Shakespeare). A.S. *clingan*, to shrink, wither. In Sussex they speak of a *clung bat*, a dry stick.

l. 407. *Her among* = among them.

l. 409. *þe sulfe þe pope* = *þe sulfe (sulve) pope* = the very pope, the pope himself.

l. 411. *an oþer wes[e]* = in another wise (manner).

l. 413. *at-stonde* = withstand.

l. 415. Thou goest (farest) wholly with deceit.

l. 416. *bi-leist* = beliest. A.S. *leōgan*, to lie, deceive.

l. 417. *þinþ soþ* = appeareth true.

l. 418. *i-sliked* = made *sleek*, or smooth, feigned, deceitful. O.N. *sleikja*, Dan. *slikke*, to lick.

l. 419. *bi-semed* = *beseemed*, made *seemly*, or fair. Spenser uses *seemed* in the sense of *beseemed*. O.N. *sama*, to fit, be fitting or becoming; Dan. *sømmelig*, seemly.

bi-liked. Coleridge says 'rendered *likely* or probable.' It may also signify 'made pleasing;' from O.E. *liken*, *liki*, to please.

ll. 420, 421. That all those that hear (take in) them (*i.e.* thy words), They ween that thou speakest the truth.

ll. 422-425. Stop! Stop! one shall unmask thee; Then shall it be well

seen That thou hast greatly lied, When thy leasing (lies) is made manifest (bewrayed).

l. 427. *fundieþ bonne* (*beonne*) = goeth hence (see l. 382, p. 31).

l. 429. *alre wonder mest* = most wonderful of all.

l. 432. *ricbe* = kingdom. O.E. *rike* = A.S. *rice*, kingdom.

P. 33, l. 433. *an oder* (*oðer*) *þeode* = in another land. A.S. *þeod*, a country; *þeodan*, to join, associate.

l. 437. *Hwi nultu* = why will you not? why don't you?

l. 438. *singin* (*singen*) *men* = sing to men.

l. 442. *beom* or *bom* = them, is required after *tecebe*.

l. 443. *wisi* = shew, teach. A.S. *wisian*, to instruct, shew; from *wis*, wise.

l. 445. *ydel wel* = useless (worthless) well. *on-idel* (l. 448) = in vain. A.S. *idel*, vain; Du. *ijdel*; O.E. *idel*, empty, vain; O.N. *audr*, empty, vacant. O.Fr. *vuide*, waste, void.

l. 446. *snel* = swift. Sc. *snell*, sharp, active. A.S. *snel*, quick; *snele*, quickly.

l. 447. *for-drue* = *for-drugen* = dry up. A.S. *for-drugan*, *for-druwian*, to dry up, parch; *drugan*, to dry; *drugað*, drougt, dryness.

dune = heath. A.S. *dún*, a hill, down.

l. 450. *bupte* = hopped.

bloue = *blowen* = blooming.

l. 451. *berre* = higher. A.S. *beáþ*, high; *býrre*, higher; *býbst*, *bébst* (O.E. *bext*, *best*), highest.

l. 452. *beo nu wear* = be now aware (sure).

l. 454. *nust = ne wust = ne wost*, knowest not.

l. 455. *zeilpest* = yelpest, boastest. A.S. *gealp*, a loud sound, clang; *gilþ*, glory, pride; *gilþan* (pret. *gealp*, pp. *gegolþen*), to glory, boast; whence Eng. *yelp*.

manne loþ = hateful to men.

l. 456. *evereucb wibt* = every creature.

worþ = wroþ = displeased.

l. 457. And mid howling (yelling) and crying.

l. 458. *wanst = wenst* = weenest.

un-lede = inexcusable, wicked. A.S. *un-léd*, from *léd*, excuse, way (Eng. *lude*); *lédian*, to excuse, clear.

l. 459. *gromes* = men, *grooms*, A.S. *guma*, a man; whence Eng. *groom*, *bride-groom*.

l. 460. *an-boð* = an-hangeth, hang up.

l. 461. *to-twicht* = pull or pluck at. A.S. *twiccian*, to pull, *twitcb*.

l. 462. *schawles* = scarecrow, literally *spectacle*; from A.S. *sceawian*, to look, *sbow*.

l. 463. *punch* = *punchþ* = seemeth (see l. 465, p. 34).

P. 34, l. 465. *gest an bonde* = triest to deceive. Cp. the O.E. phrase *bere an* (or) *bande* = accuse falsely.

l. 467. *i-cwede* = spoken; from A.S. *cwēðan* (pret. *cwæð*, quoth, pp. *gecwe-den*), to say, speak; *cwiddan*, to speak; *cwide*, *cwiðe*, speech, saying; whence *be-quest*, and *bequeath*.

l. 470. *bribte* = *brizte* = clearly.

l. 473. *þrostle* = a thrush. The A.S. *þrostle*, *þrosle*, a thrush, is derived from a root signifying *brown*. In East Anglia *þrostle* = thrush.

wude-wale = *wode-wale* = wood-pecker.

- ll. 475-477. Because it appeared to them that she had
The owl overcome, wherefor they shouted (applause)
And sang also in many wise.

vale = *fale* = *fefe*, many.

- l. 479. *gred þe manne ascþame* = cryeth shame upon the man.

- l. 480. That playeth at dice and loseth the game.

tavelep is from the A.S. *tæfel*, *tæfl*, a dice or gaming table, a game at dice; *tæflan*, to play at dice.

gome = game. A.S. *gamen*, game, joy, sport; *gamenian*, to sport; whence Eng. *game*, *gamble* (vulg. *gammon*, nonsense), *gambol*.

- l. 482. *i-banned ferde* = levied (thine) army. The O.E. *bannen* = to assemble an army; whence *ban*, to proclaim, forbid, curse. A.S. *abannan*, to proclaim, command; *abannan út*, to call out, assemble.

- l. 486. *tome*, adv. = in vain. A.S. *tom*, empty, void. O.E. *tome*, leisure, still existing in the phrase 'I have no *time* (leisure).'

- l. 496. *weolcne* = sky. Wright prints *weoluce*. It is the modern word *welkin*; A.S. *welcn*, *welcen*; from *wealcen* (pret. *weole*), to roll, turn, revolve, Eng. *walk* (the pret. walked in O.E. was *welk*).

P. 35, l. 502. *þingþ* = *þincþ* = seems.

- l. 506. *utþeste* = O.E. *out-bese*, outcry; from A.S. *ut*, out, and *bæs*, command, be-best.

- l. 507. *fiht-lac* = fighting. *-lac* occurs as an affix in *wedlock*, *knowledge*, &c.

- l. 508. *rape* = quickly.

- l. 514. *onsene* = A.S. *on-seōn*, aspect, face, countenance; from *seōn*, to see.

- l. 516. *bwatlicbe* = quickly, soon. A.S. *bwætlice*; from *bwæt*, sharp, quick, bold.

- l. 517. Gone after her army.

- l. 519. Perhaps *ne dradde* is to be understood after *niztegele*. The meaning of the line is The nightingale was not frightened with such words.

- l. 520. *orde* = point. A.S. *ōrd*, O.N. *oddr*, a point; whence Eng. *odd*.

- ll. 523, 524. Through big words, and with (bold) countenance,

Causes his foe for fear to sweat.

- l. 526. *War com* = *were ycome* = had come. *War* may be read *þar*, there, and *com* would mean came.

P. 36, l. 529. *þorte* = *þrote* = throat.

- l. 530. And sang willingly (with pleasure) to many men.

- l. 532. *a wolde* = in the wood. A.S. *weald*, *wald*, grove, wood, *wold*; whence *threshold* (O.E. *thresb-wold*), from *þrescian*, to beat, tread.

- l. 541. To you (two) shall betide harm and disgrace.

- l. 542. *dop griþ-bruce* = commit a breach of the peace. A.S. *griþ*, peace, protection; *griþ-brice*, peace-breaking. *bruce* is only a softened form of A.S. *brice*, a breach.

- l. 543. *i-some* = peaceable, reconciled together. A.S. *ge-some*, from *sam-nian* or *sonnian*, to collect.

- l. 547. *an*, first person sing. of *unnan*, to grant (see l. 301, p. 10).

- l. 549. *Ab do*, for *ab [bit] do* = but I do it.

- l. 556. *wule* is evidently an error for *wulde*, would, were willing.

- l. 558. *linde* (fem.) = the linden tree.

P. 37, l. 569. That his bishops may greatly shame.

- l. 572. Why will they not betake themselves to counsel? *i. e.* why will they not take thought together?

- l. 579. *leteþ* = pass by, leave unnoticed.
 l. 581. And giveth rent (income, revenue) very indifferently.
mis-licbe = indifferently, badly. A. S. *missen-lic*, *misselic*, dissimilar, various.
 l. 582. *leteþ* = esteem, think
 l. 584. *litle cildre* = to little children.
 l. 585. *adwole* = in error. A. S. *dwola*, error; *dwelian*, to err, mistake.
 Cp. Goth. *dwals*, foolish. Prov. Eng. *dwaule*, to talk incoherently.
 l. 586. That ever abideth (endureth), master Nichol.
 l. 587. *ute we þab to bim fare* = but out let us nevertheless go to him.
 l. 589. *Do we* = do we, let us do.
 l. 593. *ende of orde* = (?) *ende or orde*, end or beginning.
 l. 595. *mis-rempe* = misstate, mislead. O. N. *remba*, to strive.
 l. 596. Do thou oppose and stop judgment.
crempe = cramp, interrupt, stop. Du. *krimpen*, to crimp, contract, decrease. We have the same root in *crump* and *crumple*.
 ll. 598, 599. All without army and without retinue,
 Until they reached Portesham.

III.

The Story of Havelok the Dane.

The reader will find it convenient to recollect that in this romance *ct*, *ctb* (= *cbt*) are written for *gbt* (or *ʒt*), as *knict* = *knight*; *wictb* = *wight*. Occasionally the *c* is omitted, as *mouthe* = *moutbe* = *nigbte*. *d* is often omitted after a liquid, as *lon*, *lond*; *gol*, *gold*, &c.

P. 39, l. 3. *stark* = *strong*. A. S. *starc*, O. E. *sterc*, strong, severe, sharp; whence Eng. *starch*.

l. 5. *sueyn* = domestic servant, *swain*. A. S. *swán*, herdsman, servant; O. N. *sveinn*, a boy; Dan. *svend*, a bachelor.

P. 40, l. 16. *than* = when.

wolde = would, is often written *wulde*.

l. 17. *fulde* = completed, numbered.

l. 21. *bende* = near. A. S. *gebende* (O. E. *ibende*), *bende*; whence *bandy*, the sense of near.

l. 22. *botbe*. To suit the rhyme we should read *bede*, or *bade*. Icel. *bádir*, both; O. Sax. *bēde*.

l. 24. *boslon* = *boslen* = to administer the sacrament, to *bousel* (see l. 26, p. 40). A. S. *búsel*, offering, oblation; O. N. *bunsl*, sacrifice.

l. 27. *quiste* = be-quest (see l. 467, p. 34).

l. 32. *gangen* = A. S. *gangan*, to go; whence Sc. *gang*, to go, Eng. *gang-way*, *gang*.

l. 42. And in his hand bear a strong spear.

P. 41, l. 49. *belde* = *eld* = age.

l. 51. *messe-gere* = mass-gear, apparatus of the mass.

l. 59. *wonges* = fields, plains. Prov. Eng. *wong*. A. S. *wang*, a plain, field, meadow (cp. *Wan-stead* = *wang-stede*).

l. 66. *mirke nich* = dark night. *mirke* = dark, murky. A. S. *mirc*, dark, darkness.

P. 42, l. 80. *feblelike* = feebly, badly, scantily.

l. 81. He gave not (the consideration of) a nut for his oaths.

l. 87. *Witbuten on* = except on.

ll. 95, 96 *warie* = curse. *waried*, cursed. A.S. *wærg-ian*, to curse.

l. 100. *tilled* = drawn. A.S. *tilian*, to get, gain; Eng. *till*. The O.E. *tillen* signifies not only to till the ground, but to gain or procure food by some means or other.

P. 43, l. 115. *What is tbow* = What is there to you? what is the matter with you? The printed text reads *tbow* which is evidently an error for *you*, to you.

l. 116. *goulen* = yowl. This is a northern form of *zullen*, to yell.

l. 122. Half part (half as much) as we may (can) eat.

moun = pl. pres. of *mowen*, be able.

l. 124. *nis it no* = is (not) there no?

l. 131. *leyke* = to play. A.S. *lācan*, to play; *lāc*, play. Vulg. Eng. *lark*, sport.

l. 132. *bleike* = pale. A.S. *blæc*, *blāc*, O.N. *bleikr*, Du. *bleek*; whence *bleak* and *bleach*. The original meaning of *black*, Wedgwood says, is pale.

l. 133. *karf*, pret. of *kerven*, to cut, carve. A.S. *ceorfan* (pret. *cearf*, pp. *ge-corfen*), cut, hew, engrave.

l. 134. And afterwards (hacked) them all to pieces.

grotes = pieces. A.S. *grūt*, meal; Du. *grut*, broken, grain; Eng. *grit*, *groats*, *groats*, *groats*, *grounds*.

l. 136. *bið wawe* = *bi the wawe* = by the wall. *wawe* = wall = A.S. *wab*; whence Eng. *wain-scot*, Du. *wagen-schot* (the latter syllable we have in *side*, a lath, from O.E. *scheden*, to divide).

l. 146. *manrede* = homage. The *-rede* is an affix common to many O.E. words, and still exists in *kin-d-red*.

P. 44, l. 148. *To that forward* = on that condition (promise).

l. 157. Nor never yet conceived me.

gat = begot, conceived.

l. 160. *lewe* = *luke* (warm). A.S. *bleowan*, to warm; *bleow*, *bleo*, shelter, shade, *lee*.

l. 164. *tbis* = *tbo* + *it* = then it. It may be merely another form for *that*; it occurs however in *Genesis and Exodus*.

l. 166. *tboucbe* = *tbogb* = though, nevertheless.

ll. 167, 168. *nouth* (l. 167) = *moucte* = might; l. 168, = *nozt* = *nogbt* = not. *drepe* = kill, slay. A.S. *drepan*, to strike, hew, wound.

l. 171. *liues* = alive. Chaucer frequently uses the gen. form in this sense.

l. 174. *waiten* = to watch for, lie in wait for.

l. 175. *brouct of liue* = brought from life, put to death.

l. 183. *bals* = neck. A.S. *beals*, *bals*; whence O.E. *balse*, Prov. Eng. *bause*, to embrace.

l. 184. *flete* = swim, float. A.S. *fleotan*, to float, swim. Sc. *flete*, to flow; whence *fleet*, *fleeting*, *flutter*.

l. 209. *keuel of clutes* = (covering), coat of rags. *keuel* = *covel* = A.S. *cufle*, a cowl. *clute* = A.S. *clāt*, a little clot, clout, seam, patch. O.E. *cloute* signifies to mend.

l. 213. *bethede* = *bettede* = commanded.

P. 46, l. 219. *cleue* = cottage. A.S. *cleafa*, O.N. *kleft*.

l. 222. *witb*, perhaps an error for wilt.

- ll. 229, 230. The final rhymes were originally *adoun* and *croune*.
 l. 234. *grip* = griffin, from O.E. *gripen*, to seize.
ern = A.S. *ern*, *earn*, eagle.
 l. 235. *woluine* = a she-wolf, just as *vixen* = she-fox. Cp. O.E. *dovene*, a female dove.
 l. 244. *boues* = *bi-boues* = behovest.
 l. 246. *binne* = within. A.S. *binnan*. Cp. *bute*, without. The first syllable is the prefix *bi* or *be*, as in *beyond*, *beside*, &c.
 P. 47, l. 250. *shir* = *shire*, sheer, clear, bright. A.S. *scír*, pure, clear. *sbeer*. O.N. *skirr*, clean.
 l. 253. *it* = there.
stem = flame. A.S. *stém*, vapour, smoke.
 l. 256. *cerges* = tapers. Ger. *kerze*, Fr. *cierges*, church tapers.
inne. Sir F. Madden suggests *tinne*, ten, as the correct reading; but more probably it is *negbinne*, nine.
 l. 257. *wat* = *cwaf* = spake, quoth.
 l. 261. *sturten* = *sterten*, pret. pl. started.
 l. 265. *serk* = A.S. *syrce*, *serce*, a shirt.
 l. 266. *kyne merk*, a king's (or royal) mark. A.S. *cyne*, royal; whence *cyne-dom*, Eng. *kin-g-dom*.
 l. 282. *cherles* = churls. A.S. *ceorl*, a man, countryman; Icel. *karl*, a man; Ger. *kerl*, a fellow.
bine = servants, hinds. A.S. *bina* (for *bigna*), a domestic, a member of a family. O.N. *biön*, a family. A.S. *bige*, *biwa*; whence Eng. *bive*.
 P. 48, l. 300. *thrist[e]* = thrust.
 l. 301. *prangled* = compressed, stifled. Du. *prangen*, to compress.
 l. 303. *mayib* = *mayst*, mayest.
 l. 304. *fete* = *fette* = to fetch. The Promptorium Parvulorum records the two forms "*fetcbyn* or *fettyn*, affero." A.S. *feccan*, *fettan*; Ger. *fassen*, to seize.
 l. 306. *flaunes* = pancakes. Fr. *flan*, a *flawn*, a custard, or egg-pie.
al with suilk = with all such, suchlike.
 l. 309. *men* is here the indefinite pronoun. Ger. *man*, O.E. *me*, one.
seyt = *seyth* = saith.
 l. 313. *Grundlike* is evidently an error for *grudlike*, ravenously, greedily. Coleridge explains it 'deeply.'
 l. 314. *mitbe* = moderate. A.S. *mæðian*, to measure, use gently. Coleridge connects it with A.S. *mīðan*, to hide, dissemble.
 P. 49, l. 339. *bibetet* = promised it; it is not an error for *bibetest*, for *bibeten* is a strong verb, and the 2nd pers. pret. is *bibet-e*; the *t* is the pronoun *it* joined to the verb. This seems to have been common in the East Midland dialects, as we find traces of it in the *Ormulum*, and *Genesis and Exodus*.
 l. 348. *ig* for *ic* = O.E. *ich*, I.
 l. 349. *galues* = gallows. A.S. *galga*, a gallows, gibbet, cross.
 so *God me rede* is equivalent to the modern expression 'so help me God.'
 l. 350. *wicke* = wicked. The O.E. *wicke* often signifies *weak*, poor, as if from A.S. *wican*, to be weak, to decay.
 P. 50, l. 355. *Wat shal me to rede* = What shall I do? literally, what shall (be) to me for counsel, *i. e.* what is the best *plan* to adopt in this emergency.
 ll. 356, 357. *Let him know that he (Havelok) is alive, he will both (of us)*

High hang on (the) gallows-tree. The O.E. *tre* = wood, and is used as an affix = beam in *rode-tre*, the cross. Dan. *tre*, wood.

l. 365. *Al be sold*, qy. for *al is sold*. The pret. requires us to read *solde*. *doutbe* = might avail, or be worth anything. Sc. *dow*, to avail, prosper, be able. A.S. *dugan* (3rd sing. *deab*, pl. *dugan*; pret. *dubte*, *dobte*). Du. *doogen*, to profit, avail; whence *do* in the phrases 'this will *do*,' 'how do you *do*;' and *doughby* (A.S. *dybtig*, fit, useful, brave).

l. 367. *to the peni drou* = turned into money.

l. 369. *tere*, an. . . *pike* = tar and pitch. *ter* = A.S. *tyro*, *teor*, *tearo*, signifies resin, *tar*, and is connected with *teár*, a tear, or drop. *pike* = O.E. *pycbe*, A.S. *pic*, Ger. *pech*, Du. *pik*, pitch.

l. 370. *doutede* = feared, doubted.

krike = A.S. *crecca*, Du. *kreke*, creek, haven. Icel. *kryki*, corner, from *krökr*, a hook. The O.E. *cryke* signifies also a brook (and still does so in America).

l. 376. *bauedet* = *bauede* + *it*, had it (see note on l. 339, p. 49).

l. 378. *brinne* = three; *twin*, for *two*, is very common in O.E. writers.

P. 51, l. 386. *bise* = the north wind. O.H. Ger. *bisa*. In Switzerland, on the lake of Geneva, the north wind is called the *bise*.

l. 392. *thrie* = thrice; *twie* occurs in O.E. for *twice*. They are much older forms than the O.E. *twies* and *thries*; the *e* represents A.S. adverb ending *-en*.

bidene = subsequently. It also signifies *presently*. Marsh says it is of Dutch origin, being compounded of the particle *by* and the demonstrative pronoun *dien*; *by-dene* = thereby, therefor; and hence *immediately*, &c.

l. 395. *lende* = to proceed. A.S. *gelandian*, to land, arrive. Dan. *lande*, to go ashore.

l. 399. *cote* = A.S. *cote*, cottage, *cot*. Cp. *sheep-cote*, *dove-cote*.

l. 400. *flote* = company. The O.Fr. *flote*, a crowd, is probably connected with *fleet* and *float*.

l. 402. *erthe* = *erde*, to dwell. A.S. *eardian*, to dwell. Cp. *erd*, land, abode, l. 146, p. 6; *earding-stowe*, l. 28, p. 20.

l. 403, 404. So that they well were Of their harbour (dwelling) harboured (lodged) there (see note on l. 553, p. 18).

l. 405. *aute* = *aughte* = owned.

l. 406. *laute* = *laughte*, took. A.S. *laccan*, *gelæccan*, to seize, (pret. *ge-læhte*), whence *latch*.

IV.

The Romance of King Alexander.

P. 52, l. 5. We ought to read 'And oth[e] south half, and on the south quarter.' *othe* = O.E. *ape*, on the.

ll. 11, 12. *cbele* = *chills*, cold; *wele* = weal, wealth. If we must read *chalen* = *chealen*, then *wele* should be *welen*.

P. 53, l. 17. *ydes* = islands. The Promptorium Parvulorum has "*ilde*, betwene too freshe waters, *amnis*; *ilde*, londe in the sea, *insula*." With the double forms *yde* and *ylde*, compare O.E. *wordle* and *world*.

l. 22. Nor hold thou it (not) marvellous.

fêrlîch = *fêrlîche* = fearful. A.S. *fêrlîc*, sudden, from *fêr*, sudden (also sudden fear), fearful, horrid.

l. 23. *gestes* = tales, stories, relations. Lat. *gerere, gestum*, to do; whence *gest* or *gist*, a feat or deed done, and thence a relation, story.

l. 31. *balt*, an error for *batte*, called.

l. 38. *engyneful* = ingenious. O.E. *engine*, device. Fr. *engin*, contrivance, craft, from Lat. *ingenium*.

l. 39. *auenant* = Fr. *avenant*, graceful, beautiful.

l. 40. *stalworth* (often written *stalward*) = A.S. *stal-weorð*, worth taking or stealing.

l. 42. *queynteste* = quaintest. O.Fr. *coint*, neat, fine, trim. Lat. *cognitus*, known; and hence familiar, agreeable.

P. 54, l. 54. *sergeaunz* = menservants. Fr. *sergent*, a beadle. Ital. *sergente*, a serjeant, beadle, servant. Mid. Lat. *serviens ad legem*, a serjeant-at-law.

l. 60. *is cleped* = called; *ycleped* is no doubt the correct reading.

l. 70. That they are soon as black as pitch.

l. 71. *outelyng* = lying beyond others, external; *-lyng* is an adv. suffix, as in *dark-ling* (in the dark); *bead-long* (O.E. *bead-lynge*; Sc. *beadlins*).

l. 75. *haunteib* = frequent. Fr. *banter*, to frequent, haunt; Bret. *bent*, a way.

P. 55, l. 88. *airen* = eggs; from O.E. *ey* (A.S. *æg*, pl. *ægru*), an egg; whence *eyry*.

l. 89. *garnement* = garment; from Fr. *garnir*, provide, supply, adorn; *garnement*, garnishing, decking, munition; whence *garnish, garrison*. (O.E. *garstone*.)

l. 104. *gabbe* = joking. A.S. *gabban*, to scoff, delude. O.E. *gabben* signifies to talk; whence *gab, gabble*. Cp. Dan. and Sc. *gab*, the mouth. O.N. *gabba*, to mock, lie. Du. *gabberen*, to joke.

P. 56, l. 111. *An eigbe* = one eye.

l. 113. *rynetb* = *reynetb* = raineth.

l. 114. *wrieth* = covers, hides; *wryen*, to cover (l. 116). See *unwroȝen*, l. 118, p. 23.

l. 120. *bawen* = haws. *baw* = A.S. *baga*, haw, hedge; whence *baw-thorn*, a hedge-thorn.

bepen = hips. *bip* = the fruit of the wild rose. A.S. *biop*; Norse *bjupa*.

slon = sloes. A.S. *slā* (Du. *sleeuwe*), a sloe. Du. *slee, sleeuw*, dull, blunt, sour.

rabben = turnips. Du. *raap*, a turnip. Eng. *rape* seed.

l. 136. *purcbaceyng* = subsistence; from *purcbacen*, to procure. Fr. *pourchasser*, to pursue after, to obtain the object of pursuit. Ital. *procacciare*, to chase for, procure.

l. 139. *Hynd and forth* = *hynden forth* = backwards.

l. 140. *on any cas* = on any adventure.

P. 57, l. 142. *biwite*, pp. gone; from *witen*, to go. A.S. *witan*, to depart.

l. 160. *to wonde* = to fear, also to hesitate, delay. A.S. *wandian*.

l. 167. *medlée* = Fr. *medlée*, now *melée*, tumult, conflict, *medlay*; from *medler, meller*, to mix, *mell*.

P. 58, l. 172. *greyn and ord* = edge and point.

l. 173. *more los* = of greater renown (fame). Fr. *los*, report. Lat. *laus*, praise.

l. 175. *marreys* = marshes. Fr. *marais*, marsh (Ital. *maresse*, a fenny place), from Fr. *mare*, a standing water.

- l. 176. No beast neither has his (mode of) fighting.
 l. 184. *feloun* = fierce, cruel. Fr. *felle*, cruel, fierce; *felon*, cruel, rough; *felonié*, anger, cruelty, treason.
 l. 188. *kervynge* should evidently be *kervynde*, cutting.
 ll. 193, 194. Nor no man may him take (latch),
 But it be (except) that he take (him) unawares.
snacbe = to take suddenly or unawares. Eng. *snatch*.
 l. 196. Horrible it is after the (like the) devil (fiend).
 P. 59, l. 206. *selcouth* = strange, wonderful; literally *seldom* known, rare.
 A. S. *selde*, seldom, and *cup*, known.
 ll. 209, 210. *drybe*. *contray*. The O.E. for *dry* is often written *draye*.
 l. 218. *afygbtetb* = *afaitetb* = reduce (to subjection). Fr. *afaiter*; O.E. *afaitye*, to manage, subdue.
 l. 228. *side* = A.S. *sid*, ample, great. O.E. *side* = long, as in phrase 'wide and side.'
 P. 60, l. 235. *byrevetb* = bereaved (of a member or part of the body).
 l. 242. *y-wbet* = sharpened. A.S. *bwæt*, sharp, keen; *bwettan*, to sharpen.
 l. 257. supply is before *al*.
 l. 262. *y-grope* = investigated, searched out. A.S. *gráþian*, to feel, *grope*; whence *gripe*, *grapple*.
 P. 61, l. 274. *aswelt* = is put out, is quenched. A.S. *asweltan*, to die, depart; *sweltan*, to die, perish; whence *swelter* (O.E. *swelte*, *swelter*, to die, faint).

V.

Reign of William the Conqueror.

- P. 62, l. 2. *er*, for *ber*-after, hereafter.
 l. 12. To keep (defend) it well for him, and he well to him trusted.
 P. 63, l. 23. *fole dede* = a foolish deed.
 l. 25. *watloker* = much rather, the more (see l. 516, p. 35).
 l. 28. *nede* is here an adv. = of necessity, and is equivalent to O.E. *nedes*, needs.
 l. 32. *of-sende* = send for; so *of-aksen*, to ask for. The *negative* and *intensive* use of this prefix has already been pointed out.
 l. 34. *porcbas* = winning, booty (see l. 136, p. 56).
 l. 42. *biof þe* = behoof. A.S. *beþufan*, to behave, to be fit, need. *bebóþlic* = O.E. *behovely*, *nehovely*, needful.
witie = Semi-Saxon *witen*, to protect, defend, keep.
 P. 64, l. 51. *asoilede* = absolved, assoiled. O. Fr. *assoiler*, to acquit. Lat. *absolvere*, loose from.
 l. 53. *bere*, sbj. should bear; the pret. indic. would be *ber*, or *bar*.
 l. 58. *abide mo* = to await more (men).
 l. 59. *preste* = ready. Lat. *præsto*, in readiness; whence to *press* for a soldier, *press-gang*, *press-money*, &c.
 l. 74. *izete* = *i-yete* = eaten. In the South of England the people say I have *a-yeat* an apple.
 P. 65, l. 82. *sley* = sly, crafty. O.N. *slágr*, crafty. Norse *slög*, expert, clever; whence *sleight*.

- l. 84. *dereyni* = Fr. *desraigner*, try, prove.
 l. 86. *lokinge* = award judgment, decision; from *loki*, to enclose, keep, decide (see l. 56, p. 21).
 l. 107. *izolde* = *izolden*, pp. restored. Hearne's copy reads *bii zelde*.
 P. 66, l. 116. *wrastlede* = wrestled. A.S. *wræstlian*, *wræxlian*, to wrestle; from *wræstian*, to writhe, twist, wrest.
 l. 118. *luper* = A.S. *lýðer*, bad, wicked. Cp. Ger. *liederlich*, loose, disorderly. Du. *lodder*, a loose person.
wrencbe = A.S. *wrenc*, deceit, stratagem.
 l. 135. *banneur* = the bannerer, banner-bearer.
 l. 137. *ginne* = contrivance, skill (see *engyneful*, l. 38, p. 53).
 l. 139. *ne dude bom noȝt* = rendered their efforts useless.
 P. 67, l. 142. *agaste* = aghast, frightened. Gothic *us-gaisjan*, to frighten.
 l. 154. *no wille . . . of dunt* = no power of striking. *dunt* = dint, stroke, blow. A.S. *dynt*, stroke, blow; whence *dent*, *dint*.
 l. 165. *a day* = in (that) day.
 l. 166. *as me say* = as one saw.
 l. 167. *uor-armd* might signify hotly pursued, as if from *urnen*, to run; but A.S. *yrnan*, O.E. *urnen*, are strong verbs, and therefore the pp. would be *urnen*, not *arnd*. The true reading is *uor-armd* = harassed, for the stroke over the syllable *ard* in the MS. stands for *m* or *n*; *uor-armd* is from A.S. *earmian*, to grieve, trouble; *earm*, miserable.
 l. 168. *debrused* = bruised. O. Fr. *bruiser*, Fr. *briser*, to bruise, crush.
 P. 68, l. 174. *bor noȝer* = neither of them.
 l. 176. *an-aunter* = in doubt, doubtful. *an* = on or in; *aunter* = adventure, adventure, chance.
keueringe = recovering. The O.E. vb. *cover*, is frequently used for to recover.
 l. 198. *an erþe* = into earth, burial.
 l. 199. *fon* = foes. A.S. *fá*, enemy; from *fian*, to hate.
 l. 201. *ȝ largelicbe*, &c. = and liberally proffered him of her wealth.
 P. 69, l. 230. *esste* = asked. A.S. *æscian*, to ask (see *esse* l. 367, p. 73).
 P. 70, l. 247. *goderbele* = good fortune, happiness; from *gode* = good, *bele* = health. Cp. O.E. *wrotherbele*, misfortune.
 l. 248. *into kunde more* = more into natural right.
 l. 262. *feffede* = endowed. Fr. *feffer*, to convey the *fief* or *fee* (Mid. Lat. *feudum*, property in land distributed by the conqueror to his companions in arms, as a reward for their services) to a new owner.
 l. 265. *uorlore* = ruined, *forlorn*. Cp. *fröre* (Milton), for *frozen*.
 P. 71, l. 279. *debonere* = Fr. *debonnaire*, courteous, affable = *de bon aire*, good-humoured. Cp. Fr. *de mal aire*, bad-humoured.
 l. 285. *wened* = altar. A.S. *weofod*, altar.
 l. 287. *bulde* = flay. Cp. A.S. *bild*, battle; *byldere*, a butcher.
 l. 295. *as God ȝef þat cas* = as God gave that hap, i. e. as God had ordained.
 P. 72, l. 328. *no u[e]r* = no farther (see l. 330).
at-route = to advance with troops, make raids (see next line following).
 l. 334. *route* = army. O. Fr. *route*, crowd, troop.
 P. 73, l. 344. *untuled* = uncultivated, untilled (see notes to l. 77, p. 3, and l. 100, p. 42).
 l. 345. *adauntede* = subdued. Fr. *dompter*, *donter*, to tame. Sc. *dant*, to subdue, from Lat. *domitare*.

l. 353. *biden* = *bides* of land. A *bide* of land = as much as could be tilled by a single plough. The word *bide* is still used as a measure of land in Norway.

l. 358. *al clene* = thoroughly.

l. 359. *scrit*, like *scroll* = a register, literally a slip or shred of parchment. A.S. *scrūd*; Low Ger. *schroode*, a part, fragment.

l. 368. *ende* = end. It may be an error for *ernde*, errand.

P. 74, l. 374. *þat þar* for *þan þar*, than there.

l. 378. *astorede* = stored, filled. O.Fr. *estorer*, to erect, build, garnish. Lat. *instaurare*, repair, renew.

l. 386. *þer to*, Hearne's copy reads *a tuo*, in two.

l. 387. *spurnde* = stumbled. A.S. *spurnan*, to kick, stumble; *sporning*, a stumbling-block.

l. 390. *pur blind* = entirely blind. *pur* = *pure*, entire. In Wiclif, Exod. xxi. 26, it means 'blind of one eye.' It has now the meaning of almost blind.

P. 75, l. 408. *ballede* = bald. The original meaning seems to have been (1) shining, (2) white (as in *bald-faced* stag). A.S. *bæl*, a funeral pile, a burning.

l. 409. *lende* = loins, pl. *lenden*. A.S. *lendenu*, the loins. The root-meaning is probably *broad*. Lat. *lumbus*, whence Fr. *lombe*. O.Fr. *logne*; Sc. *lunye*; Eng. *loin*. *Lanky* is probably connected with *lende*; Fris. *lunk*, hip-bone.

l. 412. *arblaste* = arbalast; Mid. Lat. *arcubalista* (see *arblasters*, l. 430, p. 75), crossbow.

l. 414. *non uel* = *non uuel* = no evil, sickness; *in is deþ uel* = in his death fell; *uel* = *vul* = O.E. *vil* or *fil*, fell.

l. 416. *a3t* = noble. A.S. *æbt*.

P. 78, l. 441. *Manne orf* = men's cattle.

qualm = A.S. *cwealm*, pestilence, death, destruction. Dan. *quæle*, to choke. Swed. *qual*, sickness; *qualm*, hot, stifling weather.

l. 450. *sette* . . . *to ferme* = Mid. Lat. *dare* or *ponere ad firmam*, to let on lease; *firma*, rent. A.S. *feorm*, supper, board, hospitality. Lands were once let on the condition of supplying the lord with so many night's entertainment for his household.

l. 457. *tricherye* = treachery, is another form of *trickery*.

l. 468. *edwit* = twitting, reproach. A.S. *ed-witan*, to reproach, *twit*. *ed* = Lat. *re*- (see *atwite*, l. 332, p. 29).

l. 470. *chirchegong* = churching, literally church-going.

bende = sickness, is another form of *bond*.

l. 471. *atten* = *at þen* = at the; before a consonant it is *atte*, as *atte laste*, *atte beste*, &c.

P. 77, l. 490. *grony* = to groan, complain (of being ill). A.S. *grānan*, to lament. *groan* is connected with *grunt*; O.E. *gruny*, to groan; Ger. *grunzen*, to growl, mutter.

l. 494. *lechbes* = surgeons, physicians. A.S. *læce*, a physician, *leech*.

l. 497. *deol* = dole, sorrow. Sc. *dule*, grief; Fr. *deuil*, mourning; Lat. *dolere*, to grieve.

P. 78, l. 505. *porchas*, conquest (see l. 176, p. 56).

l. 509. *dele* = distribute. A.S. *dæl*, a part, *dole*, *deal*; *dalan*, to divide, dispense.

l. 528. *seisine* = possession. Fr. *saisine*, *seisin*, from *saisir*, to seize.

VI.

The Life of St. Dunstan.

P. 79, l. 531. *more* = root; Prov. Eng. *moor*, root. The etymology is uncertain.

l. 536. *aqueynte*, pret. was quenched. Cp. O.E. *adreynte*, drowned.

l. 545. *þurf*, for *þurb*, through. Cp. O.E. *þof* = *thog*, though.

P. 80, l. 558. *ipez* = thrive. O.E. *the*, to thrive, flourish = A.S. *þeon*, to thrive (pret. *þāb*, pp. *geþogen*, *geþungen*).

l. 565. *deynte* = pleasure, dainty. It literally signifies (1) *toothsome*, nice, (2) rare. Cp. O.E. *daintiþ*, dainty; Welsh *dant*, a tooth; *dantaid*, toothsome, delicate.

l. 567. *bone* = petition, prayer, *boon*. A.S. *ben*, prayer; from *biddan*, to ask. Cp. Icel. *beidne*, petition, from *beida*, ask, *bid*.

l. 583. *budinge* = secrecy, *biding*; from O.E. *bude*, to hide; whence O.E. *bidinges*, a secret place. Du. *bueden*, to protect, cover. Norse *bide*, lair of a beast.

P. 81, l. 591. *oreisouns* = orisons, prayers.

l. 594. *be ne kipte*, &c. = he took not of them no (any) reward.

l. 596. *bedes bede* = would offer prayers. Cp. our phrase to 'bid beads.'

l. 604. *Treoflinge* = playfully, triflingly. *-inge* is an adv.-ending = *-ly*. *trifle* signifies literally 'small piece.' A.S. *trifelan*, to pound.

l. 611. *blaste* = blazed. A.S. *blase*, a torch, blaze.

l. 612. *wrickede* = wriggled; probably connected with *writbe*, *wring*, *wrinkle*, &c. A.S. *wrigan*, to tend to, move to.

l. 615. *snytte* = wiped. A.S. *snytan*, snite, clean. The literal meaning of *snite* is to blow the nose; O.N. *snyta*, to blow the nose; *snite* is of course connected with *snout*.

l. 618. *lifte* = air, as in *a-loft*. A.S. *lyft*; O.N. *lopt*, sky, air; *á-lopt*, on high; Dan. *loft*, ceiling, loft; *lǿfte*, to lift, raise.

l. 619. *calewe* = bald-pate. A.S. *calu*, bald. Lat. *callow*.

l. 621. *atom ysnyt his nose* = at home with his nose snited (his nose being snited),

l. 622. *biæde* = hastened. A.S. *bigan*, *bigian*, endeavours, hasten. Dan. *bige*, to pant for.

pose = cold in the head. It may be the Fr. *pousse*, asthma, from Lat. *pulsus*; *pursy* = Fr. *poussif*.

VII.

Metrical English Psalter.

P. 82, l. 6. *lof* = A.S. *lōf*, praise; *lōfian*, to praise; *lof-sang*, a hymn, psalm; *lōf-sum*, laudable, *lovesome*.

P. 83, l. 17. *mensk* = honour. It is a sb. from the A.S. *mennisc*: (1) mankind; (2) human; whence O.E. *menske*, gracious.

l. 22. *In-over* is a translation of Lat. *insuper*.

l. 24. *stibes* = paths, ways. A.S. *stig*, a way, path; *stigan* (pret. *stāb*,

pp. *gestigen*), to go, climb, ascend; whence *stile* (A.S. *stigel*), *stirrup* (A.S. *stig-rap*), *stair* (A.S. *stæger*); O.E. *stegb* = Prov. Eng. *stie*, *steye*, ladder. See *up-stegb*, ascended, l. 65, p. 84.

l. 27. *teld* = tabernacle. A.S. *teld*, tent, tabernacle; *teldian*, to pitch a tent. Cp. 'tilt' of a cart.

l. 28. *mone* = shall. O.N. *mun*, shall, may, must.

l. 29. *wem-les* = pure, spotless. A.S. *wem*, *womm*, spot, blemish, *wem*; *wemman*, to spoil, corrupt.

l. 35. *es lede* = Lat. *deductus* est.

l. 39. *okir* = usury; O.N. *okr*, from *auka*, to increase, *eke*.

P. 84, l. 45. *to-flight* = refuge. A.S. *geberg*.

l. 46. *leser* = liberator, deliverer; from A.S. *leosan*, *leasan*, *lysan*, to loosen, redeem; whence O.E. *lesnesse*, forgiveness.

ll. 53, 54. *Um-gaf* = Lat. *circum dederunt*; *um-griped* = Lat. *prævenierunt*. The prefix *um* = A.S. *ymb*, around, about; as in O.E. *um-gang*, circuit; *um-thinke*, consider.

wæles = *wæles* = wells, pits. A.S. *wæl*. A whirlpool, in Lancashire still called a *wæle*.

quede = evil. Du. *kwaad*, bad; O.E. *quede*, the devil.

l. 56. *Bi-sied* = *bi-sized* = came upon. A.S. *be-sigan*, to descend.

l. 57. *drowing* = persecution. O.E. *drove*, to trouble, persecute; A.S. *dréfan*, to make muddy, disturb, vex. Chaucer uses *droyv*, troubled. See *to-dreved*, troubled, l. 68, p. 84.

l. 63. The MS. reads *of*, but the correct reading is evidently *þof* = *þogh*, though; so that *þof þaim be latb* = though it be displeasing to them.

l. 65. *reke* = smoke, reek. A.S. *réc*; Du. *rook*, smoke.

l. 68. *Kindled*, often written *kinled*. O.N. *kynda*, to set fire to; *kyndill*, a light, candle. Norse *kynnel*, a torch, whence *cannel coal* (coal that burns like a torch).

l. 69. *belded* = bowed, from *belde*, to incline to, bend; A.S. *byldan*, *bealdan*, to incline, bend; whence *beel*. Cp. O.N. *balla*, to incline; *bella*, to pour (Prov. Eng. *bele*, to pour out).

l. 73. *lurking* = hiding-place, lair. O.N. *lurka*, to lie in wait, *lurk*; whence *lurch* and *lurcher*.

P. 85, l. 75. Waters that were dark of hue (colour, appearance).

l. 76. *skewe* = sky. A.S. *scāa*, a shade, cloud. O.N. *sky*, a cloud; Cp. Ger. *wolke*, cloud, with Eng. *welkin*, the sky.

l. 77. *levening* = lightning. O.E. *levin*, *lewenynge*, lightning; Dan. *lyn*. Norse *lyón*, lightning; *lygne*, to lighten.

l. 84. *groundes* = foundations.

l. 85. *snubbing* = *snubbing*, rebuke, reproach. Swed. *snubba*, to reprove; O.N. *snubba*, to cut short. Dan. *snubbed*, stumpy; *snubbe*, to curtail; whence *snub-nose* (See note on l. 401, p. 181).

l. 86. *one-sprute* = a sprouting or spurting forth. Cotgrave has "*regailer*, to *spurt* or *sprout* (as water) back again." Swed. *spruta*. Norse *sputra*, *spryta*, to spurt, spout.

P. 86, l. 111. *balgb* for *balgb[e]* = A.S. *balga*, a saint. Chaucer has *balews*, saints.

l. 121. *unfiled* = undefiled. A.S. *be-fūlan*, to befoul, defile; *beffjled*, defiled. O.N. *fūll*, stinking; *fyla*, to stink. Cp. O.E. *file*, a wicked wretch.

l. 123. *Fraisted* = tried, purified. O.N. *fresta*, to try.

l. 131. *at fight* = to fight. The use of the preposition *at* = *to*, before verbs in the infinitive mood is good evidence of Danish influence in the Northumbrian dialect.

l. 133. *for-biling of bele of þe* = Lat. *protectionem salutis tuæ*. A.S. *ge-scildnesse bælu ðinre*; Eng. version, "shield of thy salvation."

l. 139. *fiþge* = A.S. *fylgean*, to follow.

umlap = lap about, surround, seize. O.E. *wlap*, to fold. A cognate root is seen in Ital. *involuppare*; Fr. *envelopper*.

l. 140. *ogain torne* = turn back, return.

to = *unto* = until.

wane = may be consumed. A.S. *wana*, lack (as in *wan-hope*, *wan-ton*, &c.); *wanian*, diminish, *wane*.

P. 87, l. 145. *o-bak* = *on-bak*, on the back. The A.S. version has *bec*; Lat. version *dorsum*; Eng. version 'necks.'

l. 149. *gnide* = A.S. *gnidan*, break (in pieces), rub, comminute.

likam = face, countenance; literally the body. A.S. *lic*, form, body; *licbama*, the living body.

l. 152. *geŋge* = people, gentiles. A.S. *geŋge*, troop, host; probably connected with O.E. *gangan*, to go.

ll. 155, 156. *Outen* = foreign, strange (see l. 146, p. 6).

l. 167. *birþes* = nations. A.S. *ge-byrd*, a family, lineage; from *béran*, to bear; whence *birth*, &c.

P. 88, l. 177. *winli* = joyous, *winsome*. A.S. *win*, pleasure; *wine*, a friend; *wynlic*, joyous; *wynsum*, pleasant, *winsome* (see l. 203, p. 89).

l. 181. *In un-nait* = Lat. *in vano*. O.E. *in ydel*, vain, useless; A.S. *unnet*, useless, from *neotan*, to use, enjoy.

l. 186. *laitand* = seeking. O.E. *laite*, O.N. *leyta*, to seek, discover.

P. 89, l. 205. *bies*, for *ogain-bies* = redeems; Cp. O.E. *wip-begge*, to redeem. The use of the verb *begge* or *bye* = buy, for *redeem*, is not uncommon in O.E. writers.

l. 207. *filles* = satiates.

l. 221. *est del* = *west del*. The *del* (A.S. *deal*) is in these words merely an affix = *part*.

l. 223. *rewed es* translates the Lat. *miseretur*.

l. 226. *scaft* = frame, form. A.S. *sceaft*, *gesceaft*, creature; *scapan* (pret. *scop*, pp. *gescapan*), to form, *shape*, create.

l. 230. *welyen* = *welwen* = wither. A.S. *wealwian*, *wealowigan*, to roll up, dry up, wither, *wallow*.

P. 90, l. 257. *Strekand* = spreading, covering, from *streke* = A.S. *streccan*, to stretch. O.H.Ger. *strac*, rigid, straight; *straccben*, to be stiff. A.S. *strec*, rigid, violent. O.E. *strek*, bold, powerful. By metathesis we get O.E. *sterk* = *stark*, starch.

fel = A.S. *fel*, skin. It still exists in *fell-monger*.

l. 258. *overestes* = highest parts. The *-est* or *-ost* as the superlative suffix of adv. is seen in *overmost*, O.E. *over-m-est*; *utter-est* = *utter-m-ost*, and *upperest* = *upper-m-ost*,

l. 263. *groundes* (= Lat. *fundavit*), from O.E. *grounde*, to lay the foundation of, establish. The A.S. equivalent of *groundes* is *steaðelade*, from *staðel-ian*, to found, set fast; whence O.E. *staðelnes* (A.S. *staðel-nes*), stability, foundation. We have another form of this root in *stead*, *stedfast*, *steady*, &c.

P. 91, l. 271. *Mere* = A.S. *gemære*, boundary, limit; Du. *meere*, boundary, *mere*.

l. 282. *gresse* = grass. The Southern dialect generally prefers the softer form *gers*, A.S. *gærs*. Cp. *thrist* for *thirst*, l. 276.

l. 294. *irchones* = *urchins*, hedgehogs (we still have *sea-urchin*), from Greek *ἐχῖνος* (connected with *ἀκάνθα*, a thorn; *κεῖρειν*, to prick). The A.S. term for *hedgehog* is *igil* or *il* (connected with *æl*, *al*, an awl).

l. 296. *setel-gange* = A.S. *setl-gong*, *setl-gang*, sun-set, setting (literally seat-going). The first element is retained in the word *settle*.

l. 299. *romand* = *ramand* = roaring. A.S. *bream*, cry, scream; *breman*, to cry, weep.

P. 92, l. 309. *roume* = A.S. *rum*, space, spacious; whence *roomy*; *room*, to walk at large; O.E. *rume*, to clear a space, make room.

til bende is an error for *tilende*, stretching, leading. O.N. *til*, to.

IX.

The Proverbs of Hendyng.

Throughout this poem *ue* = *eo* = *e*.

P. 96, l. 4. *thonkes* = thoughts.

ll. 16, 17. And take care that (thou) forbid none other to be wise and good.

l. 18. *bue* = *beo* = *be*.

l. 19. *fēb* = A.S. *fab*. O.E. *fob*: (1) of different colours; hence (2) a dress of various colours, particoloured.

grys = Fr. *gris*, a kind of fur.

l. 21. *warysoun* = *warison*. Fr. *guerison*, a reward.

P. 97, l. 24. *con fonde* = can attempt, can do.

l. 29. As many lands, so many customs.

l. 32. *lerne*. The rhyme requires *lere*, to learn.

l. 33. *other-whyte* = sometimes; *whyte*, like the Sc. *whytes*, has occasionally this signification.

l. 35. *Woltou*, *nultou* = wilt thou (or) wilt thou not. *i. e.* willing or unwilling.

l. 37. *Luef* = *leof* = *leue*, dear, beloved.

l. 44. *fol couthe* = well assured, full sure.

l. 47. *fode* = a child; literally a *fostered* one. A.S. *fēdan*, to feed, nourish.

P. 98, l. 59. Though it may appear game (pleasure) to the body.

l. 64. *gle* = music. A.S. *gleð*, music, song, joy, *glee*.

l. 66. *sof* = A.S. and Fr. *sof*, a fool, as in *be-sotted*, *sof*, &c.

l. 80. *male* = bag, chest, *mail*. O.H. Ger. *malaba*. Ital. *mala*, coffer, trunk; O.Fr. *male*, a great budget.

l. 88. *werthe* = *werde* = destiny. A.S. *weord*, *wyrd*, fate. Eng. *wierd*.

l. 89. There should be only a comma after the word *fylle*.

l. 90. Some such word as *wil* must be supplied after *myn*.

won = desire.

l. 93. *Este* = pleasant, dear. A.S. *este*, agreeable, delicate.

onne = one's own.

- l. 97. Provided thou delay to borrow, *i. e.* if you do not get into debt.
P. 100, l. 117. *gedelyng*, literally a needy person; from A.S. *gād*, want, need. It is generally considered, however, to represent the A.S. *gædeling*, a companion, *fellow*, vagabond.
 l. 119. *un-sabi* = dissatisfied, discontented, unfriendly. A.S. *sabi*, peace, agreement; *sablian*, reconcile (*settle* a difference), make peace; whence O.E. *sagbile*, to reconcile.
 l. 123. *lyf* = *luf* = favour.
 l. 125. *that is luf = that him is luf* = that prefers.
 l. 130. *Schenchen* = to pour out, give to drink. A.S. *scenc*, drink; *scencan* (Sc. *skink*), to pour out, give drink.
 l. 139. Under bush shall men abide the storm.
 l. 144. *treve* = A.S. *trega*, vexation, tribulation; *tregian*, to vex.
 ll. 147, 148. *best* = *begbest* = highest; *nest* = *negbest* = nearest.
P. 101, l. 153. *ene* = once. Cp. *twi-e*, *thri-e*, twice, thrice. This *e* represents an older *n*.
 l. 155. *unfeyn* = unfain, unwilling (to lend).
 l. 156. Seldom cometh loan laughing home.
 l. 160. When to thee were loth, *i. e.* when thou wert least inclined.
 l. 164. *ednetb*. Coleridge considers this an error for *endetb*, but it may be an error for *edwit*, reproach.
 l. 172. He is free of horse that ne'er had none.
ner as a contraction for *never* is very uncommon in O.E.
 l. 174. *munte* = to go over, cross. A.S. *myntan*, to propose, to set forth.
 l. 179. *after wille* = according to one's desire.
P. 102, l. 182. *lype* = A.S. *blǽp*, leap.
 l. 188. Oft haste repenteth.
 l. 191. *wyt at wolde* = wit (wisdom) at command.
 l. 192. *ore* = *eoure* = your.
soule-bote = soul-boot, salvation of the soul.
 l. 194. *ro* = A.S. *row*; O.N. *ró*, peace. Cp. O.E. *rooles*, restless; Eng. *un-ru-ly*.

X.

Specimens of Lyric Poetry.

- P. 103**, l. 206. *baundoun* = power. Fr. *bandon*, power, authority. The literal meaning is *proclamation*. Cp. Ital. *bando*, Eng. *banns*.
 l. 207. *An bendy bap* = a (piece of) good fortune.
 l. 208. *Icbot = icb wot* = I know.
 l. 215. *be = bue = beo*, she.
 l. 217. *forsake* = refuse.
 l. 218. *feye* = near to die, dead. A.S. *fæge*, dying.
 l. 220. At night when I turn (in bed) and watch.
 l. 221. *wonges* = cheeks. A.S. *wang*, jaw, cheek; *wang-tooth*, a grinder, is still used in the North of England.
 l. 227. *may* = A.S. *mæg*, maid; *mægð* (Ger. *magd*) = maid, from *magan*,

to be able; the literal meaning is probably *full-grown*. Cp. A.S. *mæg*, a man.

l. 232. I have yearned of yore, *i.e.* I have long been in great anxiety (distress).

l. 235. *Geynest under gore* = O most lovely one under dress, *i.e.* O thou the loveliest that wearest female apparel. *geyn* = gain, elegant, as in *un-gain-ly*. O.N. *gegn*, convenient, suitable; *gegna*: (1) to meet, (2) answer, fit. Sc. *gane*, to suffice.

gore, a narrow slip let into a woman's dress; hence the dress itself. O.N. *gúra*, to rend (Coleridge). Wedgwood connects *gore* with A.S. *gar*, a spear; Eng. *gore*, to pierce.

l. 236. *roune* = *rune* = song. A.S. *run*, a conversation; O.E. *roune* or *roude*, one in the ear; Du. *roenen*. Ger. *raunen*, to whisper.

P. 104, l. 242. *sad* = A.S. *sæd*, satisfied.

l. 256. *nuly* = *ne-wul-i* = I will not.

P. 105, l. 273. *Burde* = lady. This is merely another form (by metathesis) of *bride*.

l. 275. *bys* = Fr. *bis*, purple. Lat. *byssus*.

l. 286. *boc* = *book*, scythe.

l. 287. *to fon* = receive. *fon* and *bon* (hang) are common contractions of *fongen* and *bongen*.

l. 292. *Lomen* = tools. A.S. *lōma*, tool, utensil. The weaving-machine being one of the most important pieces of furniture in O.E. houses, the word *loom* received the special meaning which it now has; and from the weaving-machine being handed down from father to son, we have evidently the compound term *beir-loom*, now applied to any valuable hereditary property.

l. 294. *undreb* = out of patience, from *dreben* (*dregen*), to suffer (see l. 453, P. 15).

l. 295. So idle for to (see them) stand.

ll. 296-298. It had so bestead (happened)

That no man them had offered

Their tools to engage. *i.e.* no one had asked their services.

P. 106, l. 305. *alle ant some* = all and together, one and all.

l. 311. *rabt*, pret. of *recbe*, tell, reckon, give. A.S. *recan* (pret. *reabt*).

l. 321. *leode* = men, people. A.S. *lēōd*, *lēōda*, a countryman, a man; *lēōde*, people; whence *lewd* = O.E. *lewed*, the laity.

l. 322. This does not mean 'I am not the less to be believed,' but 'I am not to be accounted false.'

lees = A.S. *leas*, false.

l. 328. *un-sete* = A.S. *un-sidu*, vice, wickedness; from *sidu*, manner, custom, duty; *side*, modesty.

P. 107, l. 334. *unfete* = not *feat*, not good. *feat* = Fr. *fait*, made, done; from Lat. *facere*; O.Fr. *faire*; whence O.Fr. *faicture*, the making, form, or workmanship of a thing; whence *features*. O.E. *fetise*, well-made, neat; O.Fr. *faictis*. Lat. *facticus*.

l. 344. *tbretetb* = tires (himself with singing); from *tbrete*, A.S. *þreotan*, tire, weary.

l. 350. *rayletb* = puts on (as a garment). A.S. *brægel*, a garment; whence *night-rail*.

l. 357. *Miles* = maidens (?) A.S. *meowle*, maid, virgin.

murgeth = rejoice with, be merry. A.S. *myrg*, pleasure; *murge*, joyful.
makes = mates, companions (a softened form of which we have in *match*).
 A.S. *maca*, a husband, mate.

l. 358. *striketb* = runs, flows, trickles. A.S. *strican*, to go on; whence 'to strike sail.'

P. 108, l. 365. Dews moisten the downs.

donketh, from O.E. *donke*, to damp, moisten. Milton uses *dank* (O.E. *donk*), moist. It is probably connected with Du. *donker*. Ger. *dunkel*, dark; Prov. Eng. *danker*, a dark cloud.

l. 372. *wunne weole* = this delightful happiness. *wunne* is gen. fem. of *wyn* or *wun*; A.S. *wyn*, joy, delight. *weole* = A.S. *wæla*, wealth, bliss, *weal*.

l. 373. *fleme* = banished, exiled. A.S. *fléam*, a flight; *flyman*, to banish.

XI.

The Tale of Pers the Usurer.

P. 109, l. 4. *nygun* = a niggard. O.N. *nyggia*, to gnaw, rub, scrape; *nuggjen*, stingy. Sw. *nygg*, sparing. The same root is contained in *niggle*.

l. 9. *batren* = clothes. O.E. *bater*, clothing; A.S. *bæteru*, clothing; Ger. *bader*, a rag.

barme = bosom, lap. A.S. *bearm*.

P. 110, l. 19. *janglande* = *jangling*, chattering. O.Fr. *jangler*, to prattle, tattle, jest, lie. Du. *jangelen*, to yelp.

l. 26. *gryl* = sharp. stern. O.E. *gril*, cold, shivering; Du. *grillen*, to shiver, tremble.

P. 111, l. 55. *balydom* = *balidom*, reliques of the saints, on which sacred (holy) oaths (dooms) were formerly taken.

l. 69. *the to party* = the one side. *to* = *ta* = *tane* = that one, the one.

P. 112, l. 96. *peys* = weight. Fr. *poiser*, *peser*, to weigh; from *poids* (Lat. *pondus*), weight; whence to *poise*.

l. 103. *Sygbyng* = sighing. O.E. *sigbe* and *sike*; A.S. *sican*, Low. Ger. *suchten*, to sigh; whence *sough*, Sc. *souch*, the sound of the wind.

l. 105. *acouped* = *aculped* = accused, from Lat. *culpa*; whence *culprit* (as if a corruption of *culpatus*, the old Law Latin for an accused person).

P. 113, l. 132. *kyrtyl* = A.S. *cyrtel*, Dan. *kjortel*, a garment, either for man or woman.

as-smerte = at once, smartly, quickly. Cp. *as-swype*, immediately, l. 136.

P. 115, l. 198. *manas* = menace. Fr. *menace*; Ital. *minaccia*; Lat. *minæ*, *minacia*, threats.

l. 207. *sele* = man. A.S. *sel*, *gesell*, companion.

P. 116, l. 247. *brycbe* = humble, low, mean. Du. *brack*, rejected, damaged.

P. 117, l. 253. *ouer-skyle* = exceedingly; literally, immoderately. See *skile*, reason, l. 142, p. 23.

l. 254. *swele* = to swill, wash. A.S. *swilian*, to wash.

l. 263. *foltede* = foolish. Fr. *fol*, foolish. It may be connected with Spanish *falta*, a fault; *faltār*, to fail, be deficient.

P. 118, l. 313. *stonte* = *stont* = standeth.

P. 119, l. 339. *squyler* = a *swiller* or *scullion*. O.E. *squillary*, scullery; from O.E. *swille* or *squille*, to wash. O.N. *skola*; Dan. *skylle*, to rinse.

XII.

De Baptismo.

P. 122, l. 16. *sithere* = cider. Fr. *cidre*; Lat. *sicera*.

l. 18. This christening one may refuse.

Tbor3 = *theos* = this.

ll. 20, 21. For though it were water first,

Of water hath it (now) no particle.

l. 22. *forthe* = froth, scum (of anything). O.N. *froda*, scum; Low Ger. *trauben*, steam, vapour.

l. 25. *Tba3t* = *tba3* = though.

l. 32. In what time falleth in the year.

faltbe = *falleth*, happeneth.

l. 34. *eue ardaunt* = burning water, brandy.

l. 37. *mitte beste* = with the best.

l. 39. *keschte* is evidently an error for *kest* = casteth.

l. 42. *te-tealte* = overturned, worthless. A.S. *tealtian*, to *tilt*, shake, be in jeopardy.

P. 123, l. 45. *ibrinne* = *iber-inne*, therein.

ll. 52, 53. For [where]-with to wash is nothing

That man cometh to so easily.

l. 65. Without diminution and (or ?) increase.

l. 66. *more* (and in l. 78) = *moze* = may.

P. 124, l. 78. *3if* = *gef* = gave.

l. 81. *i-leave* = A.S. *ge-leaf*, permission, leave.

l. 82. *At felle* = *ibat felle* = that fell, sinned.

l. 83. *Olepi* = *onlepi* = once.

l. 89. *The ned* = *ibe nede* = (it behoveth) thee of necessity.

l. 92. *love* = *olve* = *balfe* = side, place.

l. 98. *3e* = he. *bis* = is.

P. 125, l. 100. That christeneth one (child) twice.

l. 103. *For-bedetb* = *for-budetb* = *for-bideth*, conceals.

l. 108. *scheawitb quike* = appears alive.

l. 112. *weyeth* = depart. O.E. *weyen*, to go astray; A.S. *wægan*, to deceive, elude. *weyeth* may be an error for *weyvetb*, waiveth.

l. 114. *fot* = *fet* = *vet* = *vat*, vessel.

wewetb = contriveth, makes shift with.

P. 126, l. 140. *i-gistned* = received or entertained as guests. O.E. *gest*, a stranger, *gwest*; Goth. *gasts*, a stranger; Welsh *gwest*, lodging, entertainment; Fr. *giste*, lodging. See *gesting*, lodging. l. 71, p. 129.

XIII.

Cursor Mundi.

P. 128, l. 18. *stern* = star. This is a Northern form of the word, corresponding to the Southern English *sterre*; O.N. *stjarna*; Goth. *stairno*, star; Du. *sterren*, to twinkle; O.N. *stirna*, to glitter.

l. 22. *first uncuth* = (for a long) period uncouth, unknown. *first* = A.S. *fyrst*, space of time, period; O.E. *frest*, *furst*, delay.

l. 25. *A mang squilk* = *A manges quilk*, amongst which (whom).

l. 34. *Desselic* = secretly, closely. A.S. *dygel*, darkness; *dygel-lic*, secret, close.

l. 44. *kyd*, pret. of *kythe*, to shew. A.S. *cýðan*, to make known.

P. 129, l. 51. *forþ-wit* = *for-wit* = before (see l. 127, p. 131). Cp. O.E. *in-wit*, within; *ut-wit*, without, &c.

l. 53. *scrippes* = wallets, scrips. Fris. *skrap*, a pocket; O.N. *skreppa*; Fr. *escharpe*, a wallet, scrip.

l. 60. *trutbes tru* = true thoughts.

l. 63. *leme* = light. A.S. *leōma*, ray of light, flame; *leōman*, to shine, *g-leam*.

l. 66. *can unkytb* = did hide, disappear (see l. 44).

l. 67. *sant drigbtin* = holy lord.

l. 68. *wipervin* = an enemy, opponent. *wiper* = *wip* = against, in *with-stand*; *win* = A.S. *win*, war; *winnan*, to contend, struggle.

l. 69. *þof-queþer* = though whether, nevertheless. A.S. *þeab-bwæðere*, yet, moreover, nevertheless.

l. 72. *spird* = enquired. O.E. *spere*, Sc. *speer*, to ask. A.S. *spirian*, to inquire; also to track.

P. 130, l. 87. *þat ful o suik* = that (man) full of treachery.

l. 107. *þat sal be yare* = that shall be quickly (done).

l. 110. *bon* = *boun* = bound, ready (to start), from *buinn*, pp. of Icel. vb. *bua*, to prepare, set out; whence *bound*, in the expression 'the ship is bound for New York' (see l. 211, p. 133).

P. 131, ll. 131, 132. An ointment (balm) of wonderful bitterness

That (a) dead man's body is anointed with.

smerl = A.S. *smérel*s, ointment; from *sméru*, fat. Eng. *smear*.

l. 133. *For roting* = for (preventing) decay.

l. 136. *At ans* = *at anes*, at once.

l. 141. *conrai* = entertainment. The same root is contained in Fr. *conroyer*, to *curry*, dress leather; Fr. *ar-rayer*, to *array*.

digbt = set in order, prepare.

l. 150. The fourth a child, much greater than they.

P. 132, l. 168. *beping* = scorn. O.N. *báðung*, contempt, scorn.

l. 174. *kytb* = country. A.S. *cyð*, a region.

l. 180. That many innocent (one's) should suffer for it.

l. 181. *sak* = fault, guilt; *sacces*, innocent, guiltless. A.S. *sacan*, to contend; *sacu*, strife, crime.

l. 182. *ta wrake* = take vengeance.

l. 183. *ani slik* = any such. *slik* = *swilk* = *silk*, such; whence (by dropping *l*) Sc. *sic*, such.

P. 133, l. 186. *for-farn*, pp. of *forfare*, to perish, destroy.

ll. 203, 204. There was a great distress of weeping Of those children that were slain. The phrase '*sweem* of mornynge,' *tristitia*, occurs in the Promp. Parv. *quain* = whining, mourning.

sume (cp. *swem* in l. 55, p. 3) = trouble, grief.

l. 208. *gest* = *gessed*, guessed, thought, decided. Du. *gbissen*, to reckon, estimate. It may be an error for *gert*, caused.

l. 211. *busk and ga* = get ready and go. *busk* = Icel. *bua*, to prepare; *at buast* (= *at buase*), contracted from *at bua sig*, signifies 'to bend one's steps'.

l. 216. *wildrin* = wilderness; probably A.S. *wild-debren*, pertaining to wild beasts.

P. 134, l. 229. *cove* = cave, den. Holland translates in *secretis recessibus* by 'in secret *coves* or nooks.' Lat. *cavus*, hollow; Portuguese *cova*, hole, pit.

l. 237. *glopnid* = terrified. Prov. Eng. *glop, gloppen*, to stare, feel astonished; O.N. *glápa*, to stare, gape.

l. 247. *ne for-pi* = nevertheless.

l. 251. *barn-site* = child-sorrow, sorrow that a mother feels for her child. *site* = O.N. *sát*, sorrow, sin. See *site*, to sorrow, l. 298, p. 136.

P. 135, l. 259. *dute* perhaps signifies 'to obey.' The Cambridge MS. reads *route* = to advance, march on.

l. 282. *bett* = *bete* = heat.

P. 136, l. 287. *þat wil resun* = that reason demands, i.e. that is reasonable.

l. 289. *a wei* = a little (?) but it might signify 'in the way.'

l. 295. Mary, I am surprised at you!

l. 319. *fra mi forward* = from (at) my command.

P. 137, l. 320. *orcbard* = *orcbard* = *ort-zerd*. A.S. *wyrt-geard*, from *wyrt* = herb, and *geard* = yard, enclosure.

l. 322. *of a prise* = of one value.

l. 329. *strand* = stream. This is not an uncommon meaning of the word in O.E. writers.

P. 138, l. 373. *o þair knaing* = of their knowing, i.e. of their acquaintances.

l. 375. *siguar* = *sipe-quar* = *time-ware*, time, period.

l. 378. *maumet* = idol. The O.Fr. *mabommet*, an idol, *mabumerie*, idolatry, shew the word is borrowed from the name of *Mabomet*. Cp. O.E. *maumetry*, idolatry; *maument*, an idol. It is often confounded with *mammet*, a doll, puppet.

P. 139, l. 400. *bar in bir arme*. The Cambridge MS. reads *bare in barme* (= bosom, breast).

ll. 407, 408. What he does (to) our gods, or may cause to be done, he may do to us if we work (act) not more wisely. It may mean 'what do our gods or may do here that we act the better (for it).'

l. 408. *wrick* should be *wark*; and *wark* in l. 409 should be *wrick* = *wreke*, vengeance; as the Cambridge copy reads *wreche*.

l. 415. *drund* = were drowned. The metre requires *drunkened* (see l. 274, p. 154).

l. 417. *or-quar* = elsewhere, anywhere.

P. 140, l. 423. *bak* = hatchet. Fr. *bachet*, to hack; *bachette*, a small axe.

l. 427. *yate-ward* = gate-keeper. Cp. *dore-ward*, *bot-ward*, door-keeper, boat-keeper, &c.

l. 436. *our bathet slogf[æ]b* = the steps of us both. *bathet*, gen. pl. of *bathe*, both; Cp. *aliber*, of all. *slogf[æ]b* = trace, footprints; whence Eng. *slot*, *sleuth*, *sleuth-bound*. O.N. *slöd*, a path, track, way; Prov. Eng. *cart-slood*, cart-rut.

l. 438. *gren*. The Cambridge MS. reads *sene*,

l. 445. *falau* = dry, faded; O.E. *fallewe*, pale. A.S. *fealwe*, pale, yellowish or reddish. Ger. *falb*, pale, faded. Chaucer uses the phrase *his bewe falewe* = his pale hue.

P. 141, l. 480. *sum* = Dan. *som*, as.

l. 483. *night* = *digbt*, decided, determined. The Cambridge MS. reads *disht*.

- P. 142, l. 486. *Mikelik* = *mekelik* = meekly.
 l. 497. *utenemes* = *utemest*, most remote, outmost. A.S. *ut-ema*, outermost.
 l. 503. *fel* = *fele* = many.
 l. 509. *scba* = *scbau* = grove, wood. O.N. *skogr*, Dan. *skov*, a wood; O.N. *skuggi*, O. Du. *scbaue*, Sc. *scug*, shade, shelter.
 P. 143, l. 525. *sueþel band* = swaddling-band. A.S. *sweðel*. Du. *swadel*, a swathing band.
 l. 526. *suelland* = *squelland* = squealing, crying.
 l. 528. *be* = *egbe* = *ye* = eye.
 P. 144, l. 554. *lam* = loam. A.S. *lam*; Du. *leem*, clay, earth; probably connected with *lime* (O.N. *lim*, glue) and *s-lime*.
 l. 555. *pepins* = *pippins*, pips, seeds. Dan. *pippe*, to shoot, spring forth, *peep*.
 l. 559. *and pine*. The Cambridge MS. reads *and palme pine*, and in l. 566 it reads *palme* for *pine*.
 l. 561. The Cambridge MS. reads *þe fadir bi cidre sbal þou take*, i. e. by (or in) the cedar thou shalt understand (God) the Father.
 l. 568. *Gain gifes*. The Cambridge MS. reads *gode ȝiftis*.
 P. 145, l. 600. *wande*, like the O.E. *ƿerd*, signifies a branch, *stem*.
 l. 604. *Halmes* (so in MS.) = branches. Eng. *balm*, *baulm*, stalk of corn. The Cambridge MS. reads *bolynes*, and if this be a correct reading, *balnes* should be printed *balines* = holiness. The Cambridge MS., in the Midland dialect, however, is not to be always trusted as a true version of the older Northumbrian copy.
 l. 611. *in an* = in one (place). Chaucer employs the phrase 'ever in oon' = ever in one state.
 l. 612. Without increase or diminution.

XIV.

Sunday Sermons in Verse.

- P. 146, l. 15. *mersuine* = *meer-swine* = sea-hog, porpoise, dolphin. A.S. *mere-swīn*. In France the *porpesse* (hog-fish) is known by the name of *marsoūin*. O.N. *marsvīn*, sea-swine or sea-hog.
qualle = whale. The *qu* represents *bw* in the A.S. *bwæl*, a whale, as in *walrus*.
 P. 147, l. 28. *flay* = frighten. The printed copy incorrectly reads *slay*. Harl. MS. 4196 has the reading here given; see l. 281, p. 176, where the word occurs again.
 l. 36. *quek* = *quike* = living.
 l. 39. *at a schift* (like O.E. *at a brayð*) = in a turn, in a twinkling, in a moment.
 P. 148, l. 69. *bird* = it behaved. A.S. *býrian*, to become, behave.
þlibtful = *þligbtful*, dangerous. *þlibt* is connected with *pledge*. A.S. *þlibt* = (1) a pledge, wager; (2) obligation, danger.
 l. 76. *Igain-sawe* = *ogain-sawe* = contradiction, denial.
 l. 83. *enfermer* = the Infirmary of the Abbey.
 P. 149, l. 88. *riuelic*, from *riue*, Eng. *rife*, frequently. Du. *rüf*, copious; O.N. *rifr*, liberal; *rifka*, to increase.

- l. 89. Supply and after *Faiths*.
lufreden = good-will, love. The suffix *-reden* = *-red* as in *kin-d-red*, &c.
 l. 90. *Fel auntour* = fell adventure, it happened by chance.
 l. 95. *tetid* = shewed, told.
 l. 96. *ful bard* = very afflicted. Cp. the phrase 'to go *bard* with one.'
 l. 118. *War scho ne bafð ben* = *war-ne scho bafð ben* = unless she had been (at hand to help me). *war-ne* = if not, unless; it is sometimes written *warn* = Old Saxon *ne wari*, unless. Fris. *wara*, but. Some have explained *war-ne* by *were it not*, but compare its use in the following passages:—
 "For here has na man payn swa strang,
 Þat he ne has som tyme hope omang,
 * * * * *
 Elles suld þe hert, thurgh sorow and care,
 Over-tyte fayle, *warn* som hope ware;
 * * * * *
 And men says, '*warn* hope ware it suld brest.'"

HAMPOLE's *Pricke of Consc.*, ll. 7264-7266.

- P. 150, l. 140. *overlop* = omission, from O.E. *ouerlepe*, to leap (skip) over, omit.
 l. 143. *meld* = accuse. A.S. *meld*, evidence, proof; *meldian*. Dan. *melde*, to discover, betray.
 P. 152, l. 201. *se bare* = *sea-waves*. *bare* in l. 204 = flows. The *bore* in a river = *tidal wave*.
 l. 214. And (the) harm (scathe) that the less (poor men) suffer on account of the more (greater).
 P. 153, l. 222. *wandretb* = peril. O.N. *vandræði*, danger, difficulty.
 l. 249. *nite* = refuse; perhaps from A.S. *nytan*, not to know.
 P. 154, l. 257. *bisend* = betokened. A.S. *bysen*, example, resemblance; *bysenian*, to give an example. See l. 259, where *biseninges* = tokens.
 l. 277. *wattri*, an error for *attri*, poisonous.
 P. 155, l. 287. *corsing* = dealing (as a broker); from O.Fr. *couracier*, a broker, dealer; whence 'horse-courser.'
 l. 318. *will of wan* = destitute of dwelling, homeless. O.E. *wille*, to go astray; *wan* = *wane* = dwelling.
 l. 319. *pok no sek* = poke (bag) nor sack.
 P. 156, l. 342. *arskes* = water-newts. Prov. Eng. *ask*, a lizard; A.S. *apexe*, a lizard. Garnet says that *ask* is probably connected with Gaelic *easg*, eel, the first element in *apexe* (Ger. *eidecbse*), a lizard, newt, signifying prickly, sharp. See note on *bedge-bog*, *urchin*, l. 294, p. 91.
 l. 345. *rage* = madness. Lat. *rabies*, rage, madness. Sicilian *raggia*. Fr. *rage*; Portug. *raivar*, to rage, *rave*.
 l. 348. *in a ras* = in a great hurry. *ras* = A.S. *ræs*. O.E. *res*. O.N. *rás*, race, rush, force; *rase* or *race* = tidal currents, as the *Race* of Alderney.
 P. 157, l. 358. Nor give thou of thyself any account, *i. e.* take no thought of thyself.
 l. 364. *selli radde* = dreadfully (wonderfully) afraid. *selli* = A.S. *sellic*, wonderful; *sellice*, wonderfully; from *seld*, seldom, rarely. Cp. O.E. *selcouth*, seldom known, wonderful.
 l. 386. *riped* = searched. O.E. *riþe*, to try, search; A.S. *riþan*, to cut; whence *reap*, *rip*, &c.
 P. 158, l. 393. *fertered* = enshrined. O.Fr. *fertre*, a shrine.

XV.

Sermon on Matthew xxiv. 43.

To this Sermon in Arundel MS. 57, there is the following marginal note :—
Vor to ssake away heuiness / and drede : and bys wende / into love of God.
 For to shake away heaviness and dread, and turn it (her, i. e. dread) into the love of God.

Note.—*ea, ie = e; v = f; z = s.*

P. 159, l. 1. *þellycbe* = this. *þellycbe* = A.S. *þyllic*, *þyle* (*þý*, the; *lic*, like), the like, such. O.E. *þilke*, *þulke*, this.

l. 2. *worbysne* = A.S. *forebysen*, example (see *bysend*, l. 257, p. 154).

l. 5. *dolue* = should undermine, dig through, from *delue* (pret. *dalf*), to dig.

þolye = to suffer, endure; A.S. *þolian*.

l. 6. *wyl of skele* = the will of reason.

l. 7. *besteringe* = bestirings, emotions.

ll. 8–10. Such a household shall be too (much) slack (slothful) and wilful, unless the same father's stiffness (strength) restrain and order them (aright).

l. 13. *inwytt* = inner wit, inner sense, conscience.

P. 160, ll. 1–3. For which treasure, that this same house be not broken through, chiefly he watcheth.

l. 4. *þayles* = nevertheless.

l. 5. *kacberelles* = catchpolls, servants. The O.E. *cacbe*, catch, signifies to drive away.

l. 6. *onlosti* = un-lusty, careless, idle, literally unwilling; from A.S. *lust*, *lyst*, pleasure, desire.

l. 9. *worlete* = A.S. *for-lætan*, to forgo, relinquish.

wylny = A.S. *wilnian*, to desire; *wiln*, a wish.

l. 10. *bessette* = to be-shut, to shut out.

l. 11–13. Next that, he setteth strength; that strength should withdraw the fiends whom sleight (prudence) commands (sends to say) to be cast out, that is, foul lusts should be withdrawn (abstained from) and reproved.

l. 21. *ysoze* = *ysagen* = seen.

l. 22. *þeslicbe clom* = a profound silence. Chaucer uses *clom* as an interjection = hush! It is evidently connected with Prov. Eng. *clam*, *clem*, to pinch, starve. A.S. *clam*, bond; Du. *klemmen*, to pinch, compress.

ll. 24, 25. *ich do you to wytene* = I assure you, literally I do (cause) you to wit (know). *wytene* is the gerundial infinitive (see to *comene*, come, l. 27).

l. 27. *abyt naxt* = abideth not, delayeth not.

l. 32. *þaynen auere* = chains on fire, fiery chains.

l. 34. *and bise brengelþ* = and (they) bringeth them. *bise*, (acc.) them.

P. 161, l. 6. *comste* = *comestu* = comest thou.

l. 7. *yzeye þe* = sawest thou; *þe* = thou thyself.

l. 9. *Vol of brene on-þolyinde* = full of intolerable burning (see *þolye*, l. 5, p. 159).

l. 12. *wantrokiyng* = default, want. *wan-* = *un*, as in *wan-þope*, despair, here used intensively; *-trokiyng*, want; A.S. *trucan*, to fail, abate; whence *truckle*.

- l. 17. *buoþe* = *boþe* = both (are).
 l. 27. *y-byreþ* = *byereþ* = hear.
yueþ *youre* = *yeueþ* *yeare* = give ear, listen.
P. 162, l. 1. *bauberck*. O.Fr. *bauberc*; O.H.Ger. *bals-berc*; A.S. *beals-beorg*, coat of mail, *babergeon* (*beals*, neck; *beorgan*, to cover).
 l. 10. *bit þingþ þet*, &c. = it seems that, &c.
 l. 11. *be cas* = perchance.
 l. 19. *longe godes drede* = on account of the fear of God. *longe* = *ilong* = along of. A.S. *gelang*, owing to; *gelingan*, to happen. Chaucer uses '*long on*,' on account of. Shakespeare has '*long of*,' Cymbeline, v. 5.
 l. 26. *sseawere* = shower, mirror; *ssede*, *shade*, shadow. The phrase *ac be*, &c. = but by (as in) a glass darkly.
 l. 27. *onspekynde* = un-speaking, ineffable.
on-todelinde = un-to-deal-ing, indivisible.
 l. 30. *y-þorsse* = *thrashed*, struck (dazzled, blinded). A.S. *þerscan* (pret. *þarsc*, pp. *geþorscen*), to *thresb*, beat.
 l. 33. *half* = side, part.
P. 163, l. 1. *ssepþes* = forms. A.S. *sceppan*, to form, shape.
 l. 5. *zodes* may be for *zones* = of the Son, or for *godes* = of God.
 l. 9. *an-bezed* = *an-bigh-ed* = exalted. The *an-* is the same prefix as in *an-banged*.
 l. 16. *blefþ* = endures. The context seems to require *bleue* = *bleuen* = *bi-leuen*, to endure, continue, last.
 l. 17. *beryinges* = praises, honours. O.E. *bery*, A.S. *bérian*, to praise, honour (see l. 23, p. 164).
 l. 24. *alle preste* = all the proudest, highest; *preste* = *pretteste* = proudest. A.S. *pryt*, *prut*, pride.
P. 164, l. 6. *buyter* qualifies *cloþinge* in l. 7.
 l. 7. *nessbede* = tenderness, delicateness. A.S. *bnæsc*, tender, soft, *nesh*, *nasty* (= O.E. *nasky*).
 l. 16. *lbest* = *blest* = listeneth.
Hyt lykeþ þet þou zayst = What thou sayest pleaseth (us).
 l. 19. *mennesse* = communion, fellowship. A.S. *ge-mæne*, communion; *ge-mænnes*, fellowship. The *ge* (= Lat. *con*) = Gothic *ga*, an older form of which is seen in Ger. *gan-z*, all.
 l. 26. *be lyue* = *þe lyue* (?) = the life.
P. 165, l. 3. *onzyginde* = un-see-ing, invisible.
 l. 11. *gessynge* = *lessynge* = diminution. *gessynge*, if correct, would signify deeming, thought.
 ll. 30, 31. *and oþre* = et cetera.

XVI.

The Pricke of Conscience.

- P. 168**, l. 15. *Als-tite* = as-soon, immediately. *tite*, soon, is connected with *tide*, time.
 l. 27. *forme-fader* = first father, forefather. *forme* = A.S. *frum*, first; *frym*, original. It is of course connected with *former*.
P. 169, l. 47. *sembland*, sometimes written *semblant* = appearance.
pure = *pouer* = poor.

- l. 56. *fon* = *few* (see ll. 158, 159). The *n* represents *e* in A.S. *feaw-e*, *few*.
 P. 170, l. 96. *by skille* = with reason, rightly.
 l. 105. *Angers* = troubles, grievances. Lat. *angere*, to strain; *angor*, anguish, vexation.
yvels = evils, diseases, *ills*.
appayre = impair. Fr. *piré*, Lat. *pejor*, worse.
 P. 171, l. 111. *tynes* = loses. O.N. *tyna*, to lose; A.S. *teōn*, loss.
 l. 114. *jaunys* = jaundice. Fr. *jaunisse*; from *jaune*, yellow.
 P. 172, l. 150. *beld* = *eld* = age.
 l. 165. *dysy* = dizzy. A.S. *dys-ig*, foolish, erring. O.E. *dizze*, to stun.
 l. 167. *rouncles* = wrinkles. Sc. *runkle*, a wrinkle. Ger. *runzel*, Sw. *rynka*, A.S. *wrinclian*, to wrinkle. The root *rinc* or *runc* = crooked, bent, appears in *ring*. O.N. *bringr*, a circle; Dan. *krinkel*, crooked; Eng. *crinkle*, *crumple* (Sc. *crunkle*), *crimp*, *crank*, *sbrink* (A.S. *scrincan*, Sw. *skyrnka*).
 l. 168. *His mynde es short* = His memory is short.
 l. 169. *band* = *and* = breath. O.N. *andu*, breath.
 P. 173, l. 174. *for-worþes* = come to nothing. A.S. *for-weorðan*, to become nothing, be undone, perish.
 l. 175. *moutes* = falls off, *moults*. Du. *muiten*, to moult.
 l. 178. *slavers* = slobbers, drivels. O.N. *slafra*, to lick; *slefa*, *slaver*, drivel; whence *slow-worm* (Norse *slewa*).
 l. 182. *souches* = suspects. O. Fr. *souber*, to suspect, be suspicious.
 l. 184. *bard baldand* = hard-holding, *i. e.* close-fisted, stingy.
 l. 187. *latsom* : not *late-some*, but *wlatsom* = loath, irksome. A.S. *wlætian*, *wlætian*, to loathe, irk.
slaw = A.S. *slāw*, slow, idle, lazy. Du. *slee*, blunt; O.N. *slíofr*, Dan. *sløv*, blunt, dull; whence *sloth*, *sleeveless* (as in sleeveless errand, late), which last should be written *sleeve*; *sloe* (so called because of its rough flavour).
 l. 191. *lakes* = blames. O.E. *lac*, fault, defect, *lack*; Du. *lack*, want; Sw. *lak*, vice, fault.
 P. 174, l. 205. *cover agayn* = *agayn cover* = recover.
 P. 175, l. 242. *worow* = to strangle. Sc. *worry*, to strangle, choke; Ger. *würgen*. Eng. *worry*. Dogs that *worry* sheep seize them by the throat.
 l. 243. *rogg*. Sc. *rug*, to tear in pieces. Norse *rugga*, to shake, rock; whence *rug*, *rugged*.
 P. 176, l. 290. *lates about-ga* = causes to revolve.
 P. 177, l. 312. *a* = *ane* = one. Cp. *to* = *ta* = *tane*, the one (l. 69, p. 111).
 P. 178, l. 337. *domland* = dark, cloudy, is formed from a verb *domle* or *dromle*, to be disturbed, with which we may compare Prov. E. *droumy*, dirty; *drumly*, muddy; *drumble*, to be disturbed, confused (Shaks. "Look how you *drumble*.") Sc. *drum*, dull.
 l. 353. *or-litel* = *ouer little* = very little.
 l. 354. *bigg* seems here to mean 'well furnished.' A.S. *byggan*, to build, inhabit. O.Sw. *bygga*, to prepare, build. In the North of England *bug*, or *big*, signifies swollen, elated, as if connected with *bulge*. Dan. *bugne*, to bend, bulge.
 l. 363. *Now eese us a thyng* = Now to us a thing is pleasant.
 P. 179, l. 370. *dede stoure* = death-struggle, the agony of death. O.N. *stúra*, sorrow, disturbance. Du. *stuer*, fierce. O.Sc. *stour*, battle, conflict, Sc. *stourne*, *stern*.
 P. 180, l. 402. *dede band* = death's hand.

l. 427. *titte* = tug, pull. O.E. *tytte*, to pull suddenly. A.S. *tibtan*, to draw, *tigthen*.

P. 181, l. 429. *ilka synogbe and liib* = each sinew and joint. A.S. *liib*, Ger. *g-lied*, a limb, joint. Norse *lide*, to bend the limbs; whence *liiby*, *liibe*, (pliable), *liibesome*, *liissome* (active, pliant).

l. 451. *raumpæ* = ramp, stamp with the feet. Ital. *rampare*, to ramp, clamber; whence *romp*, *rampage*, &c.

skoul = scowl. Dan. *skule*, to cast down the eyes. Prov. Eng. *skelly*. Dan. *skele*.

stare = O.N. *star*, sight, look; *stara*, to gaze, stare.

l. 452. *blere* = to put out the tongue, to make grimaces, wry mouths. It is probably connected with Du. *blaeren*, to roar, *blare*.

P. 182, l. 479. *fild* = defiled; *filand*, defiling (l. 495, p. 183). A.S. *fylan*, Du. *vuylen*, to make foul or filthy; whence O.E. *file*, a vile wretch.

P. 183, l. 497. *slotered* = bespattered. Prov. Ger. *schlott*, mud; *schlütten*, to dabble in the wet and dirt. Prov. Eng. *slotch*, a sloven; *slutch*, mud. With these words are connected *slut*, Dan. *slatte*; Ger. *schlottern*, to dangle, wobble.

XVII.

Political Songs.

P. 185, l. 29. *frith and fen* = forest and marsh. Gael. *frith*, a heath, deer-park, forest. Prov. Eng. *frith*, unused pasture land, brushwood.

P. 186, l. 64. *laykes lett* = spoilt their sport. *layke* = A.S. *lac*, sport, *lark*.

P. 187, l. 83. *boved* = remained. Prov. Eng. *bove* = to float on the water, remain in a place; whence *bov-er*. Welsh *boftan*, to fluctuate, suspend, hang over.

l. 93. *wane* = quantity. Some etymologists connected it with *won* or *wan* the preterite of O.E. *wynne*, to win, but others make it equivalent to A.S. *bwon*, *quid*, *paullulum*; comparing it with Lat. *quid*, *quanti*, *quot*, &c.

P. 189, l. 141. *japes* = boasts. Fr. *japper*, to yelp. *jape* is a softened form of the root *gab*; O.E. *gabbe*, to lie, deceive.

P. 190, l. 166. *ascry* = Sw. *anskri*, outcry, alarm.

l. 180. *frek* = bold, daring. A.S. *frecc*, bold, daring; whence *freca*, a bold one. O.E. *freke*, a man, knight.

l. 183. Then availed him no glee.

P. 191, l. 197. *feld*. Mr. Wright alters this to *ferd*, frightened, but *feld* = hidden. Prov. Eng. *feel*, to hide.

l. 206. *nakers* = kind of kettle-drums.

l. 208. *alblast* = O.E. *arblast*, a cross-bow. Lat. *arcubalista*.

P. 193, l. 270. *pencelle* = pennon, banner. Fr. *pencel*. Lat. *penna*.

l. 272. *graybeest gate* = the most direct (nearest) way.

P. 194, l. 282. *dubbed*, from O.E. *dub*, to arrange, prepare, decorate. O.Fr. *addoubier*, to dress, arm at all points; Fr. *douber*, to rig or trim a ship.

l. 294. *o-ferrum* = afar. Cp. *whil-om*, O.E. *quil-um* or *um-quile*, awhile, formerly. The *-um* is the A.S. *ymbe*, about. Cp. O.E. *umgang*, circuit; *um-set* (l. 324). Trench quotes *um-stroke* = circumference, from Fuller.

l. 303. *ine* = *egben* = eyes.

P. 195, l. 330. *cant* = crafty. O.Fr. *coint*, Prov. Fr. *conte*, neat, fine, pretty.

XVIII.

The Voiage and Travaile of Sir John Maundeville.

P. 198, l. 23. *cheventeyn* = chieftain. Fr. *chef*, from Lat. *caput*, the head.

P. 204, l. 8. *avaled* = descended. Fr. *à val*, downwards; *à mont et à val*, towards the hill and towards the vale, upwards and downwards. 'To *vail* his flag' = 'To lower his flag.' 'vailed lids,' Hamlet.

XIX.

Alliterative Poems. The Deluge.

P. 207, l. 1. *wy3e3* = men. A.S. *wig-a*, a warrior; from *wig*, war.

l. 2. *faut* = fault. Fr. *faute*; Sp. *falta*, defect, offence, failing; from Lat. *fallere*.

l. 6. *for-gart* = lost. It literally signifies *for-did*, ruined; from O.E. *gar*, *ger*, to do, cause, make (see l. 396, p. 158).

l. 7. *eggyng* = instigation. O.N. *egg*, an edge; *eggia*, to sharpen, instigate.

l. 9. *defence* = prohibition. O.E. *defend*; Fr. *defendre*, prohibit, forbid; whence *fend*, *fender*, *fence*.

l. 10. *payne* = penalty. Fr. *peine*. Lat. *pæna*.

perily = *aperily* = openly, plainly.

l. 12. *drepe3* = destroys. A.S. *drepan*, to strike, hew, wound.

l. 15. *for-brast* = overwhelmed; from *threste*, *thruste*. A.S. *þræstian*, to rack, twist, torture.

P. 208, l. 16. *maugre* = displeasure. Fr. *mal*, ill, *gré*, will, pleasure.

l. 21. *stylest* may be written for *styfest* = sturdiest, boldest; or for *stythbest*, strongest, most stubborn. A.S. *styð*, firm.

l. 25. *gayn* = suitable, good. Sc. *gane*, to suffice, be fit. O.N. *gegn*, convenient.

l. 26. *boute* = without. Cp. O.E. *binne*, *withbin*; *buve*, above.

l. 29. *loke to kynde* = keep to nature, i. e. observe the laws of nature.

l. 37. *on folken wise* = after the manner of men.

l. 44. *in monge3* = among. Cp. O.E. *in-middes*, amidst.

l. 48. *forloyned* = gone astray, departed; from Fr. *loin*, far, which we have in *pur-loin*, O.Fr. *purloigner*.

P. 209, l. 50. *werp* = to throw out, to utter, speak.

l. 54. *burne* = man. A.S. *beorn*, warrior, chief.

l. 63. *in-nogbe knawen* = enough (well)-known.

l. 67. *nuy* = anger; *nuyed*, grieved (l. 72). Ital. *annoiare*; Fr. *ennuyer*, to vex, annoy, grieve.

l. 72. *gore* = sin, but literally vileness, filthiness. A.S. *gôr*, dirt, mud. Cp. Eng. *gorbely*, *gorcrow*.

glette = wickedness, but literally filth, dirt. Prov. Eng. *glut*, Fr. *glette*, slime. O.N. *glata*, wet.

North Prov. Eng. *skime*, to look aside. O.N. *skima*, to glance around; *skima*, a glimpse; A.S. *sciman*, to glitter: Eng. *shimmer*.

l. 257. *Iumpred = jumpre = trouble*. Cp. O.E. *jumbre, jumpre*, to shake together, agitate.

^ l. 264. *tolke* = person, here refers to God. It literally signifies an ambassador. O.N. *tálkr*, an interpreter; *tálka*, to interpret.

l. 265. *glam* = word. Sw. *glamma*, to chatter, talk; *glam*, talk. Cp. O.N. *glam*, clash, clangour; Sc. *glamer*, noise.

l. 270. *þrublande* = urging onwards. O.E. *þroble*, to press on.

P. 216, l. 293. *rengne3e = rengne3 = courses*. A.S. *bring*, a ring, circuit.

l. 295. Then was a design manifested when escaped all the wild (animals).

skyilly = skyille = reason, design, skill. *skyualde* seems to be another form of *skifte*, ordained; A.S. *scyftan*, to order, appoint.

l. 301. *gorste3 = places overgrown with furze, or gorse*. Welsh *gores, gorest*, waste, open. Prov. Eng. *gorsty*, overgrown with furze.

Destruction of Sodom.

P. 217, l. 315. *flytande* = chiding, roaring. A.S. *flitan*, to scold, quarrel.

l. 318. *ridlande* = pouring. O.N. *reda*, to tremble, shake. Du. *riideren*, to shiver. Ger. *rütteln*, to shake, sift, *riddle*.

l. 334. *Rydelles = redeles = without advice, uncertain what to do*.

l. 336. *3omerly = A.S. geomortíc, doleful, sorrowful; geomor, sad, grim; from geomrian, to grieve, groan*.

3arm = Welsh garm, shout, outcry. garmio, to set up a cry.

l. 338. *ro3un of a recbe = a cloud of smoke; recbe, reke, vapour, smoke, reek (A.S. rée, smoke), reeking*.

l. 339. *vselley = ashes*. A.S. *ysela, ysla*, spark, hot ashes.

P. 218, l. 340. *flot* = boiling fat. O.N. *flot*, grease swimming on the surface of broth. Low Ger. *flot*, cream. The same root is contained in *fleet, flood, &c.*

l. 341. *bet* = kindled; from O.E. *bete*, to make up the fire.

l. 346. *blubrande* = bubbling, boiling up. Cp. Prov. Eng. *blob, blab*, a bubble, drop; *blubber*, to bubble, foam. Chaucer uses *blubber* in the sense of *bubble*.

l. 358. *schalke* = man. A.S. *sceale*, a servant, soldier, man; *marshál* (Mid. Lat. *marescalcus*), is from the O.H. Ger. *mābre* (Eng. *mare*), horse, and *schalk*, a servant. Cp. Fr. *marechal*, a blacksmith; *seneschal* (Mid. Lat. *siniscalcus, famulorum senior*, the steward) is from Goth. *sineigs*, old (superl. *sinista*), and *skalks*, a servant.

l. 353. *coste3 of kynde* = the properties of nature, natural properties (see l. 9, p. 19).

l. 359. *bropley* = filthy, nasty, vile; from O.E. *bratbe, brotbe*, fierce, rough, bad, abominable. O.N. *brædi*, anger.

l. 367. The bituminous (sticky) asphalt that spice-mongers sell.

l. 370. *terne* = lake, *tarn*. O.N. *tjörn*.

- l. 141. *wylger* = more wildly, more fiercely.
- l. 145. *brennest* = highest, steepest. O.E. *brent*, high, steep, is connected with Dan. *bryn*, edge, eminence; Welsh *bryn*, a hill.
- l. 146. *A* is an error for *and*.
- beterly* (= quickly, hastily) is connected with A.S. *bête*, hate; *bétel*, fierce; *bettan*, to pursue, drive. Cp. N. Prov. Eng. *better*, eager, earnest.
- l. 146. [*b*]aled = rushed. Fr. *baler*, to *bale*, *baul*, tow. Ger. *bofen*, to fetch, drag.
- l. 148. *raykande* = rushing, from O.E. *rayke*, N. Prov. Eng. *rake*, O.N. *reka*, to go.
- P. 212, ll. 149, 150. Ere each valley was brim-full to the edges (tops) of the hills, And every valley as deep that overflowed at the brinks.
- brurd-ful* = full to the brim. A.S. *brerd*, *breord*, margin, rim, bank; *brord*, point, blade or spire of grass.
- l. 154. Some swam thereon that believed (trowed) themselves safe.
- l. 156. *rurd* = cry. A.S. *reord*, speech, language.
- l. 157. *byse* = high grounds, heights.
- l. 158. *bysed* = hastened, hied. A.S. *bigan*, to hasten; *bige*, diligent. Du. *biigben*, Dan. *bige*, to pant.
- l. 160. *Re-couer* of *þe creator* may signify 'recovery (safety) of the Creator,' or 'Saviour of the creature.'
- l. 161. *mase* = *mese* = *meþe*, moderation, pity, compassion.
- l. 167. Friend looks to friend and his leave takes.
- luf* = *lef* = dear, beloved (one).
- l. 172. *burkled* = rested, settled. Prov. Eng. *burkle*, to squat; *burcb*, to cuddle. Eng. *ruck*; Low Du. *burken*, to squat down.
- l. 173. *mourkne* = to rot. O.N. *morkinn*, rotten; *morkna*, to rot. O.E. *morkin*, a wild beast found dead, carrion.
- P. 213, l. 183. *myke* = Du. *mik*, the crutches of a boat, which sustain the main boom or the mast and sail when they are lowered for the convenience of rowing.
- l. 185. *Hurrok* = oar. Dan. *rykke*, to draw. Prov. Eng. *orruck-boles*, oar-drawing holes. Eng. *rullocks*.
- l. 187. *flyt* = motion, is connected with Eng. *flit*, *flitter*, *flutter*.
- l. 190. *Nyf* = *ne* + *if* = if not.
- lumpen* = befallen. A.S. *limpan* (pret. *lomp*), to happen, concern.
- l. 191. *a lel date* = a true date (period); *lel* = *leal*, *loyal*.
- l. 199. *rozly* = roughly. It seems to be an error, however, for *rewly*, sad, sorrowful.
- l. 200. *ioyst* = rejoiced, happy, joyful.
- l. 204. *lased* = became less; from O.E. *lasse*, less.
- l. 205. *stanges* = pools, wells. Lat. *stagnum*, a standing water. O.Fr. *estang*, a pond.
- l. 206. Bid leave off the rain, it abated at once.
- l. 212. *rasse* = eminence, is still used in the North of England for a mound, hill-top, and is an affix in local names. N. Prov. Eng. *raise*, O.N. *reysa*.
- P. 214, l. 215, *kyste* = chest, ark.
- l. 235. *downe* = *downe* = *dovene* = a female dove (see l. 247, p. 215). Cp. *vixen*, a female fox; O.E. *wolvne*, a female wolf.
- P. 215, l. 249. *skyrmez* = looks about, seems to be another form of the

North Prov. Eng. *skime*, to look aside. O.N. *skima*, to glance around; *skima*, a glimpse; A.S. *sciman*, to glitter; Eng. *shimmer*.

l. 257. *Iumpred = jumpre* = trouble. Cp. O.E. *jumbre*, *jumpre*, to shake together, agitate.

^ l. 264. *tolke* = person, here refers to God. It literally signifies an ambassador. O.N. *túlkr*, an interpreter; *túlka*, to interpret.

l. 265. *glam* = word. Sw. *glamma*, to chatter, talk; *glam*, talk. Cp. O.N. *glam*, clash, clangour; Sc. *glamer*, noise.

l. 270. *brublande* = urging onwards. O.E. *broble*, to press on.

P. 216, l. 293. *rengne3ze = rengne3* = courses. A.S. *bring*, a ring, circuit.

l. 295. Then was a design manifested when escaped all the wild (animals).

skyilly = skyle = reason, design, *skill*. *skyualde* seems to be another form of *skifte*, ordained; A.S. *scyftan*, to order, appoint.

l. 301. *gorste3* = places overgrown with furze, or *gorse*. Welsh *gores*, *gorrest*, waste, open. Prov. Eng. *gorsty*, overgrown with furze.

Destruction of Sodom.

P. 217, l. 315. *flytande* = chiding, roaring. A.S. *flitan*, to scold, quarrel.

l. 318. *ridlande* = pouring. O.N. *reda*, to tremble, shake. Du. *riideren*, to shiver. Ger. *rütteln*, to shake, sift, *riddle*.

l. 334. *Rydelles = redeles* = without advice, uncertain what to do.

l. 336. *3omerly* = A.S. *geomortlic*, doleful, sorrowful; *geomor*, sad, grim; from *geomrian*, to grieve, groan.

3arm = Welsh *garm*, shout, outcry. *garmio*, to set up a cry.

l. 338. *ropun of a recbe* = a cloud of smoke; *recbe*, *reke*, vapour, smoke, *reek* (A.S. *réc*, smoke), *reeking*.

l. 339. *vselle3* = ashes. A.S. *ysela*, *ysla*, spark, hot ashes.

P. 218, l. 340. *flot* = boiling fat. O.N. *flot*, grease swimming on the surface of broth. Low Ger. *flot*, cream. The same root is contained in *fleet*, *flood*, &c.

l. 341. *bet* = kindled; from O.E. *bete*, to make up the fire.

l. 346. *blubrande* = bubbling, boiling up. Cp. Prov. Eng. *blöb*, *blab*, a bubble, drop; *blubber*, to bubble, foam. Chaucer uses *blubber* in the sense of *bubble*.

l. 358. *scbalke* = man. A.S. *sceale*, a servant, soldier, man; *marshal* (Mid. Lat. *marescalcus*), is from the O.H.Ger. *mābre* (Eng. *mare*), horse, and *schalk*, a servant. Cp. Fr. *marechal*, a blacksmith; *seneschal* (Mid. Lat. *siniscalcus*, *famulorum senior*, the steward) is from Goth. *sinetigs*, old (superl. *sinista*), and *skalks*, a servant.

l. 353. *coste3 of kynde* = the properties of nature, natural properties (see l. 9, p. 19).

l. 359. *bropley* = filthy, nasty, vile; from O.E. *bratbe*, *brotbe*, fierce, rough, bad, abominable. O.N. *brædi*, anger.

l. 367. The bituminous (sticky) asphalt that spice-mongers sell.

l. 370. *terne* = lake, *tarn*. O.N. *tjörn*.

XX.

Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight.

P. 220, l. 2. *brittened* = destroyed. A.S. *brytan*, to break; *bryttian*, to crumble; *brytta*, a fragment; *brytlic*, broken in pieces; whence Eng. *brittle*.
l. 8. *Fro* = from the time that.

l. 9. *bobbaunce* = pride, boasting. Fr. *bobance*.

l. 19. *skete* = O.N. *skjótt*, quickly.

P. 221, l. 27. *I attle schawe* = I will endeavour to shew. *attle* (Sc. *ettle*), to endeavour; N. Prov. Eng. *ettle*, *attle*; O.N. *aeila*, to intend.

l. 29. *outrage aventure* = an extraordinary adventure.

l. 43. *kayre* = to go, literally to turn one's steps to a place. A.S. *cérran*, Ger. *kebren*.

l. 49. *as leuest bem þoʒt* = as seemed best to them.

P. 222, l. 60. *ʒep* = quick. A.S. *gæp*, crafty.

l. 61. *doubt* = *doube* = the noble, doughty one (see l. 365, p. 50).

l. 65. Christmas celebrated anew, proclaimed full often. *Nayte* = O.N. *neyta*, to use, employ.

l. 66. *bonde-selle* = gifts. It is still preserved in *bansel*, an earnest, something given or done to make good a contract. A.S. *bond*, hand, and *sellan*, to give, bestow.

P. 223, l. 99. *fulsun* = A.S. *fulestan*, *fylstan*, to aid, favour; *fylst*, help.

l. 104. *stizle* = to direct, rule, set in order. A.S. *stibtan*, to govern, dispose; whence O.E. *stickler*, umpire; *stickle* for, to maintain one's right.

P. 224, l. 129. *lote* = sound. Sw. *lâte*, cry, voice; *lât*, sound; *lâta*, to sound.

l. 140. *etayn* = A.S. *eóten*, a giant.

l. 142. *in bis muckel* = in his muchness or greatness of size.

P. 225, l. 165. *tor* = tedious, difficult. O.N. *tor* (used as a prefix), difficulty, trouble.

l. 173. *ferkkes* = rides. It is connected with *firk*, a sudden movement, jerk. A.S. *frician* (whence the O.E. *firke*), to dance.

P. 226, l. 181. *fax* = hair. A.S. *feax*.

l. 188. *cemmed* = bent, knotted. O.E. *cam*, *camous*, crooked, curved. Bret. *kamm*, crooked. Fr. *cambrer*, to bow, crook; whence *cambering*, *cambrel*.

l. 194. *þwarle knot* = a garland. A.S. *þwæl*, ribbon, garland.

P. 227, l. 206. *bolyn bobbe* = a branch of holly.

l. 216. *gracons* = gracious, pleasing, beautiful; *gracons* may signify Grecian.

l. 222. *dut be no woþe* = he feared no harm; *dut* = *dutte*, *doubted*, feared.

l. 230. *stemmed* = stood still. O.N. *stemma*, to stop, dam. Other forms of the root are seen in *stammer* = A.S. *stamer*, stammering; O.N. *stama*, to stammer; Sc. *stammer*, to stagger; O.E. *stamber*, to stumble.

P. 228, l. 234. *swogbe* = (1) swooning, (2) dead, deep.

ll. 244, 245. As all were fallen asleep, so ceased their words in hie (suddenly).

P. 229, l. 267. *founded in fere* = come in company.

l. 290. *bur* = blow. O.E. *bire*, violence, force, rush. Welsh *bur*, violence, rage.

l. 294. *flet* = floor. A.S. *flett*, a room, palace.

l. 295. *diȝt me dom* = givē me permission.

l. 296. *barlay* = by our lady.

P. 230, l. 304. *runisch-ly* = fiercely. O.E. *runisch*, strange, uncouth, fierce;

A.S. *rūn*, mystery (see l. 457, p. 235).

l. 305. *bresed broȝeȝ* = bristly (shaggy) brows.

l. 310. *rous* = *ros* = renown, praise. Sc. *ruse*, Dan. *rose*, to praise.

l. 312. *gryndel-layk* = valour, boldness, literally fierceness, anger; from O.E. *gryndel*, angry, Norse *grina*, to wry the mouth, *grin*; *grinale*, sour-looking. *-layk* is the Norse form corresponding to the A.S. *-lac*, in *knowledge*, *wedlock*.

P. 231, l. 327. *bayȝen þy bone* = grant thy request.

P. 233, l. 412. *bot slokes* = but stay, stop talking; *sloke* = Eng. *slake*.

l. 418. *lut* = *lout* = inclination, stooping (see l. 20, p. 2).

P. 234, l. 420. *note* = tool, weapon (see l. 51, p. 21).

l. 424. *schyndered* = shivered, splintered. Prov. Eng. *sbinder* = to shiver to pieces. Our word *skin*, seems originally to have signified a *splinter*. Cp. *skin-bone*. Ger. *schien bein*; from *schiene*, a splint.

ll. 438, 439. *þaȝ bedleȝ nowē in stedde* = though headless now on steed, or though headless he were on steed.

l. 440. *bluk* = *bulk*. O.E. *bouk*, body; *bluk* may be an error for *blunk* = *blonk*, horse.

l. 443. By the time his reasons (conduct) were explained.

P. 235, l. 459. *fole boues* = the hoofs of the foal, his horse's hoofs.

XXI.

The Romance of William and the Werewolf.

P. 237, l. 4. *ken* = *kun* = *kin* = cows, *kine*.

l. 9. *bayte on* = to set on (as in *bait* a bull). Icel. *beita*, to bait, hunt with hawk or dog. O.Fr. *abetter*, to incite, animate, *abet*.

l. 12. *Clouȝtand kyndely biȝ schon* = mending (patching) shoes according to custom. A.S. *clūt*, a patch. Cp. *cloet*, dish-clout, &c.

l. 15. *darked* = was hiding (for fear). O.E. *dare*, to lie motionless, to be stupefied or terrified. Low Ger. *be-daren*, to be still, quiet. To *dare* birds is to catch them by frightening them with a hawk, &c. Prov. Eng. *dor*, to frighten, stupefy; *dor*, a fool.

bim own = *bim one* = himself.

P. 238, l. 31. *Feld foute* = felt the smell, got scent. *foute* = *fewt* = trace of a fox or beast of chase by the odour.

P. 239, l. 81. *non eiȝ* = no egg. The MS. reads *no neȝȝ*.

l. 82. *ginneþ*. Sir F. Madden thinks that some such verb as *berke*, is wanting after *ginneþ* = beginneth. It seems probable that *ginneþ* = howl utter, send out, from A.S. *ginan*, to open, *yawn*.

P. 241, l. 139. All the form of man so amiss had she shaped (transformed).

P. 243, l. 193. *þ buntynge* = *an buntynge* = a hunting.

l. 205. *þurth* = *þurgh* = *þurȝ* = through.

P. 245, l. 267. *to neȝh him so bende* = to approach him so near.

P. 246, l. 314. *fordedes* = *fayre dedes* = kind actions.

P. 247, l. 353. *kyn* = *kynde* = kind.

XXII.

The Vision of Piers Ploughman.

P. 249, l. 4. *scleep* = *sheepee* = shepherd.

P. 250, l. 38. *askep* = require, demand.

P. 252, l. 82. *Fouȝten atte[n] alle (ale)* = fought at the ale.

l. 86. *Roberdes knaves*. In the Statutes of 5 Ed. III, c. 14, a class of malefactors guilty of robbery and murder, are called *Roberdesmen*.

l. 91. *seint Jeme* = St. James of Compostello.

l. 104. *Alle þe ffoure ordres* = all the four orders, *i.e.* the Franciscans, Augustines, Dominicans, and Carmelites.

P. 253, l. 135. *bouchede hem* = stopped their mouths.

l. 137. *Ragemon* = catalogue, list. The full expression is *ragemon rolle*, or *rolle of ragman*; whence *rigmarole*.

P. 254, l. 167. *mom* = sound (made by closed lips); whence *num*, silence; *mumble* (O.N. *mumla*, to mutter). Cp. O.E. *mummin* ("as they that noȝht speke), *mutio*."—Prompt. Parv. To cry *mum* = to cry silence.

P. 259, l. 322. *ellene* = *ellerne* = elder (tree). See Shakespeare's *Love's Labour's Lost*, v. 2.

l. 340. *borwes* = sureties, sponsors.

P. 260, l. 362. *bose* = *two se* = who so.

P. 262, l. 416. *summe in þe eorþe*. According to the popular creed of the middle ages, the less guilty of the rebellious angels were permitted to occupy the different elements on earth instead of being condemned to the pit.

l. 446. *daffe* = a fool, is connected with *daff*, to daunt; *daft*, stupid, *deaf*.

P. 263, l. 465. *ædde* = to sing. A.S. *geddian*, to sing; Norse *gidda*, to shake; whence Eng. *giddy*.

ll. 474, 475. *wolde*. In the first line *wolde* signifies desired; in the second it seems an error for *wrohte*, did.

P. 265, l. 531. *ffauvel* = *favel* = deception by flattery, cajolery; to *curry favour*, is a corruption of *curry favel*. *Favel* (Fr. *fauveau*, from *fauve*, yellow) was the name of a horse, for its colour, as *Bayard*, *Dun*, *Lyard*.

P. 267, l. 580. *dune* = *din*. Wright's text reads *doom*, judgment, decision.

l. 598. *To-logged* = *to-lugged* = pulled about by the ear or hair. O.E. *lug*, the ear; Sw. *lugga*, to pull one by the hair.

P. 267, l. 602. And bidden to pack off.

P. 268, l. 621. *wip beoden* = *wip-beolden* = withheld.

P. 272, l. 749. *recbeþ* = become rich. Wright's text reads *ricben*.

Regatorie. Regrating, or the buying up of provisions and other things cheaply and selling them dearly, was one of the great sources of oppression of the poor by the rich in the middle ages.

P. 276, l. 909. *blaberde* = babbled, gabbled. Dan. *blabbre*, to gabble. The root is retained in *blab* (see l. 346, p. 218).

P. 277, l. 919. *his pestilences*. This refers to the three pestilences in the reign of Edward III. The first lasted from May 31, 1348, to Sept. 29, 1349; the second lasted from Aug. 15, 1361, to May 3, 1362; the third raged from July 2, to Sept. 29, 1369.

l. 926. *passchet* = dashed, beaten. O.E. *paš*, to dash.

P. 278, l. 959. *gustus* = *gestes* = deeds.

l. 963. *Caurimauri* = a moth-eaten garment.

P. 279, l. 1001, *beilede* = *beilsede* = saluted, greeted. Dan. *bilse*, Eng. *bail*.

P. 281, l. 1064. *atte Noke* = *atten oke* = at the oak. Cp. *John Nokes*, John at the oaks; *John Styles*, John at the stile.

l. 1080. *Donet* = grammar, elements; from *Donatus*, whose treatise was the foundation of the mediaeval grammars.

P. 282, l. 1085. *pak-neelde* = pack-needle. Du. *naelde*, O.N. *nál*, a needle; *neelde*, seems to be a contraction of *needle*. Cp. Goth. *netbla*. O.H.G. *nādala*, *nālda*, a needle. The root *nad*, signifying a prick or sting, occurs in A.S. *næddre*, O.E. *nedder*, an adder.

l. 1097. *Auncel* (Wright's text reads *auncer*), a small vessel or cup.

l. 1107. *bummede* = drank. Prov. Eng. *bum*, drink; *bumpy*, tipsy. Cp. Eng. *bumper*.

l. 1115. *boxterye* = huckstery. Ger. *böker*, a retailer, a petty dealer. Prov. Ger. *bukler*, a huckster.

P. 283, l. 1123. *Rode of Bromholm*. At the Priory of Bromholm, in Norfolk, there was a celebrated cross said to be made of fragments of the real cross, and much resorted to by pilgrims. It was brought from Constantinople to England in 1223.

P. 284, l. 1153. *vernicle*, diminutive of *Veronike*; a copy of the picture of Christ which is supposed to have been miraculously imprinted upon a handkerchief preserved in the church of St. Peter at Rome. (Tyrwhitt).

P. 288, 1284. *þerf* = A.S. *þeorf*, unleavened.

XXIII.

Gospel of St. Mark.

P. 309, v. 9. *gobatis* = fragments. *gobet* signifies a morsel, mouthful; Gael. *gob*, the mouth. Cp. *gobble*, *goblet* (Fr. *gobelet*, a wide-mouthed vessel).

P. 314, v. 46. *gogil-yzed* = goggle-eyed, which signifies literally a full, rolling eye; from *goggle*, to shake, *joggle*; Gael. *gog*, a nod.

P. 315, v. 27. *anentis* = as regards, with respect to. A.S. *ongean*, against, opposite; Sw. *gent*.

XXIV.

Description of Britain.

P. 334, l. 6. *margey perles*. The term *margey* = *margery*, is a corruption of *margarite*, a pearl; Gr. *μαργαρίτης*.

l. 24. *a ys* = *ba ys* = he is. This pronoun (signifying also *she, it, they*), is still used in the Southern counties.

P. 335, l. 8. *steenes* = stone vessels. Spenser uses *stean* in this sense.

P. 338, l. 23. *wlaffynge* = babbling. A.S. *wæflan*, to whiffle, babble, speak indistinctly. N. Prov. Eng. *whiffler*, a silly, trifling fellow; *whiffle-wbaffle*, nonsense.

The Norman Invasion.

P. 342, l. 18. *orped* = valiant, daring, literally headlong, from O.N. *verpa*, to throw, *warp*.

XXV.

The Pardoneres Tale.

P. 348, l. 77. *mary* = marrow. A.S. *mearg*, marrow; Prov. Eng. *merowe*, delicate; A.S. *merwe*, *mearu*, tender, soft.

P. 351, l. 187. *þe blood of Crist þat is in Hayles*. The Abbey of Hailes in Gloucestershire, founded by Richard king of the Romans, brother to Henry III. This precious relique, which was afterwards called 'the blood of Hailes,' was brought out of Germany by the son of Richard, Edmund, who bestowed a third part of it upon his father's Abbey of Hailes. (Holinshed v. ii. p. 275).

P. 352, l. 209. *upright* signifies flat on the back.

P. 359, l. 425. *Fen*: the name of the sections of Avicenne's great work entitled *Canun*.

XXVI.

The Tale of the Caskets.

P. 368, l. 38. *mulle* = dust. Cp. O.E. *mullok*, rubbish; Low Ger. *mullen*, to rub.

l. 39. *meined* = *meinged* = mingled or mixed.

P. 372, l. 149. *drechinge onde* = a heavily-drawn breath.

P. 375, l. 241. *spellinge of hir charmes* = the recital of her charms. The A.S. *spellian*, signifies to recite; whence *spell*, an incantation, as in *magic spell*.

l. 245. *bleeke* is an error for *blake* = black.

GLOSSARY.

[The numbers refer to the pages of the Notes where the etymology and derivations are given.]

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>A, one.
 A, all.
 A, in, one.
 A, he, it, they.
 Abaist, Abayst, Abayste,
 abashed, humbled,
 terrified.
 Abashed, frightened.
 Abaye, at bay.
 Abbe, to have.
 Abbei, an abbey.
 Abbeþ, pl. have.
 Abbod, an abbot.
 Abbodes, abbots.
 Abid = <i>abit</i>, endures,
 suffers.
 Abid, imp. stop.
 Abide, Abiden, pp.
 awaited.
 Abide, Abiden, Abyde,
 to await, to delay.
 Abidende, patient, en-
 during. [ries.
 Abit, Abyt, abides, tar-
 Abiten, to bite.
 Ablame, to defame.
 Abod, abode, stayed,
 awaited, remained,
 refrained.
 Abof, above.
 Abraid, arose, started
 (out of sleep). 386.
 Abouten, about.
 Aboven, above.
 Abuggen, to atone for,
 expiate.
 Abute, Abuten, about.
 Abyd, put off.
 Abyme, the deep, abyss.</p> | <p>Abyt, abideth.
 Ac, but.
 Achaped, escaped.
 Achtande, eighth.
 Acoled, cooled.
 Acorde, to agree.
 Acordyng, agreeing, fit.
 Acouped, accused. 421.
 Acoye, to entice, decoy.
 Acquyte, to acquit.
 Acsi, to ask.
 Acursi, to curse.
 Adai, by day.
 Adaunte, to subdue,
 conquer. 413.
 Adde, had.
 Adizte, to set in order,
 (see Dizte). 402.
 Adonward, down.
 Adrad, afraid, in dread.
 Adrawe, to draw.
 Adun, Adoune, down,
 downwards.
 Adunest, dinnest. 402.
 Adwole, in error. 407.
 Afer, Aferr, far, afar.
 Aferd, Aferde, fright-
 ened, afraid.
 Aferes, dealings, affairs.
 Afoled, befooled.
 Afure, on fire. [412.
 Afyghte, to endeavour.
 Afyn, finally, lastly.
 Agast, Agaste, aghast,
 frightened, terrified.
 413.
 Agaynes, against.
 Agen, Ageyn, again,
 back.</p> | <p>Aghlich, horrible, ter-
 rible.
 Agh, pres. ought.
 Aght, pret. ought.
 Agon, Agoon, gone, ago.
 Agraypinge, decoration,
 ornament.
 Agreped, adorned.
 Agte, owned. 391.
 Agte, possessions, mo-
 ney, wealth. 386.
 Agtes, payments. 386.
 Ah, but.
 Ai, Ay, ever, aye.
 Aire, heir.
 Airen, Ayren, eggs. 411.
 Aijer, either, each.
 Aiware, everywhere.
 Ake, to ache.
 Al, (1) all, whole, (2)
 quite, very.
 Al a, a whole.
 Alblast, a crossbow. 430.
 Ald, Alde, old.
 Alderes, elders.
 Alegge, to call in ques-
 tion. 402.
 Algate, yet, nevertheless.
 Alizte, pp. descended.
 Alle, pl. all. [livelong.
 Alle longe, the entire,
 Alle = <i>ale</i>. 437.
 Alliaunce, alliance.
 Almesse, Almous, alms.
 Almest, almost.
 Along, Alonge, on ac-
 count of. 428.
 Alosed, renowned,
 famed.</p> |
|--|---|--|

n, bedridden.
 sier.
 efell.
 ure.
 racelet, collar.
 , a beggar.
 , beheld.
 , promised.
 liche, needful,
 sary.
 eak.
 , to commend.
 'e, to acknow-
 .
 otection.
 trong, bold.
 Belyfe, Belyve,
 , quickly, at
 = *be along*, be
 count of.
 am, ray.
 , to denote,
 .
 cent, curved.
) to be, (2) are,
 een.
 ne, prayer.
 ope of a hill,
 d.
 , to deprive.
 on, to be.
 o offer.
 on, messenger.
 messenger,
 . 394.
 n, messengers.
 prayers.
 , promised.
 , belief.
) be.
 i bear.
 3eoren, to bear.
 ep, are.
 e, bore.
 e, noise.
 r.
 erde, a beard.
 beardless.
 noise.
 ren, to bear.

Berge, to protect. 394.
 Berke, to bark.
 Berking, barking.
 Bering, behaviour.
 Bern, Berne, a child.
 Bernynde, burning.
 Berp, bears.
 Berwen, to preserve. 394.
 Bes, shall be, is.
 Besette, to exclude. 427.
 Best, Beste, a beast.
 Besteriinge, emotions.
 Bestow, shalt thou be.
 Besoghte, besought.
 Bet, better. 392.
 Bet, did beat.
 Bet, 'go bet,' hasten.
 Bet, kindled, made up
 the fire. 392.
 Bete, to repent, to a-
 mend one's life. 392.
 Bete, to beat.
 Betel-brouwed, having
 overhanging brows,
 having a heavy look.
 Beten, ornamented.
 Betere, Betre, better.
 Betewe, between.
 Beth, Bep, is, are.
 Bethe = *bede*, to com-
 mand.
 Bethe = *bathe*, both.
 Bepo3te, Bepou3te, be-
 thought.
 Beðen, to entreat. 394.
 Bewreyyng, bewraying,
 accusation.
 Beye, to buy.
 Bi, be, by.
 Bicalle, to call after,
 accuse.
 Bicam, became.
 Bicchid boones, dice.
 Bicherme, to chirp as
 birds do.
 Bicloped = *bicleoped*,
 spoken. 403.
 Bicom, became.
 Bicom, pp. gone.
 Bicume, Bicumen, (1) to
 become, befall, hap-
 pen, (2) pp. befallen.

Bid = *bit*, bids.
 Bidde, to pray.
 Bidde = *bede*, to offer.
 Bide, to abide.
 Bidene, forthwith, im-
 mediately, subse-
 quently. 410.
 Bidder, a beggar.
 Bie, to buy, redeem. 417.
 Bifalle, befallen.
 Bifel, Bifil, Bifyl, befell.
 Bifor, Bifore, Biforen,
 Biform, before.
 Big, Bigg, richly en-
 dowed, furnished with
 arms. 429.
 Bige, Bigge, to build.
 429.
 Bigen, to buy.
 Bigete, Bigeten, to ob-
 tain, beget.
 Bigetel, what is obtained
 by conquest, or pur-
 chase. 404.
 Biggyng, buying.
 Biginne, Bignyne, to
 begin.
 Beginning, beginning.
 Bigonne, pp. begun.
 Bigraven, carved.
 Bigrede, to scream,
 shout. 397.
 Bigrowe, overgrown.
 Bigrypte, seized.
 Bihalde, to behold.
 Biheld, Biheild, beheld.
 Bihete, to promise.
 Bihetet, promisedst it.
 Bihinde, Bihynde, be-
 hind.
 Bihold, Biheold, beheld.
 Bihote, to promise.
 Bihold, beheld.
 Bii, to atone for, expiate.
 Bikennd, commended.
 Bile, the bill (of a bird).
 Bilef, remained. 387.
 Bileist, speakest falsely,
beliest.
 Bileve, belief.
 Bileve, Bileven, Bilewen,
 to remain.

- Atuttest, reproachest,
 twittest. 403.
 At-vore, before.
 Ap, hath.
 Apel, noble, a noble-
 man, knight.
 Au = *agb* = *ow*, ought.
 Aucte = *agbt*, wealth.
 Auen, Aun, Aune, own.
 Auh, possessions, goods.
 Aumayl, enamel.
 Aumener, an almoner.
 Auncel, a small vessel or
 cup, a pair of scales.
 Auncetere, ancestor.
 Auncre, a nun.
 Aungel, angel.
 Aunter, adventure.
 Auntour, chance.
 Auntour, adventure, '*fel*
auntour,' it happened.
 Aute = *agbt*, owned.
 Auter, an altar.
 Auþer, either.
 Avale, in many.
 Avale, to descend, let
 down. 431.
 Avance, Avaunse, ad-
 vance.
 Avancement, advance-
 ment.
 Avauntage, advantage.
 Ave, to have.
 Avenaunt, pleasant,
 beautiful. 411.
 Avenge, pl. took.
 Aventures, adventures.
 Avere, on fire.
 Aveð, hath.
 Advise, to advise, to take
 note of, to heed.
 Avisement, caution,
 heed.
 Avoutrie, adultery.
 Avow, vow. [tious].
 Avysed, advised, cau-
 awake, to arouse.
 Awede, to go mad.
 Awei, away.
 Aweyward, away from.
 Awold = *awolde*, cause,
 produce. 385, 387.
- Awold, in signification.
 381.
 Awondered, astonished.
 Awreke, to avenge. 401.
 Axe, Axen, to ask.
 Axeste, askest thou.
 Ay, ever.
 Ayen, again, against.
 Ayenboghthe, redeemed.
 Ayer, air.
 Ayeyn, again, against.
 Aywhore, everywhere.
 Ajaf, gave out, uttered.
 Ajc, Ajen, Ajene, Ajcin,
 Ajeyn, again, against,
 back, towards.
 Ajcin-ward, back.
 Ajenes, Ajens, against.
 Ajen-bie, to redeem.
 Ajen-biyn, redemption.
 Ajen-stonde, Ajcin-
 stonde, to withstand,
 oppose.
 Ajcr, yearly.
 Ajt, noble. 414.
 Ajte, ought.
 Ajte, eight.
 Ajtsum, anxious (see
 Hagt). 384.
- Bac, the back.
 Bad, Bead, offered.
 Bad, entreated.
 Baie, at bay.
 Balaunce, peril, jeopardy.
 Bald, bold. [boldly].
 Baldeliche, baldly,
 Bale, sorrow, grief, cala-
 mity, ruin. 383.
 Balfully, sorrowfully.
 Balie, the belly.
 Ballede, bald. 414.
 Ban, Bane, a bone.
 Baner, a banner.
 Baneur, Banyour, ban-
 ner-bearer.
 Banne, to curse.
 Bannes = *banes*, bones.
 Bar, bore.
 Bare, wave. 426.
 Bare, a grove. 397.
 Bare, a boar.
- Bare, openly.
 Baren, to lay bare, to
 expose.
 Baret, Barez, strife, con-
 test. 402. [bargain].
 Bargan, strife, contest,
 Barlay, by our lady.
 Barm, Barne, bosom,
 lap. 421.
 Barn, Barne, a child.
 Barnage, childhood.
 Barnde, burnt. [424].
 Barn-site, child-sorrow.
 Barn-tem, progeny, des-
 cendants.
 Baroun, a baron.
 Barred, striped.
 Barst, burst.
 Bataile, Batayle, a battle,
 an armed host.
 Bate, to abate.
 Bath, Bathe, both.
 Bather, of both.
 Bauda, a broker, go-
 between.
 Baundoun, Bandoun,
 power, jurisdiction,
 rule. 419.
 Baussenej, badgers.
 Bawe-lyne, bow-line.
 Bayst, abashed, flinched.
 Bayte, to set on. 436
 Bayben, to grant.
 Be, by.
 Bead, bad, commanded.
 Be-bedde, to supply with
 bed, or lodging.
 Bebledd, covered with
 blood.
 Becom, became.
 Bed (pl. Bedden), offered.
 384.
 Bed, Bede, a prayer. 415.
 Bede = *bide*, to abide.
 Bede, Beden, to offer.
 415.
 Bede = *bed*, bad, com-
 manded.
 Bede, promisedest.
 Beden, Bedene, bidden.
 Bedene, Bidene, forth-
 with.

'ered.
bod, dwelt.
 dy.
 bidden, asked,
 383.
 ommands.
 forbodes, por-

le, message.
 3offet, a blow,
 .
 oghe, a bough.
 oghe, to bow.
 Bogte, Boht,
 it. [for.
 xpiated, atoned
 . bent.
 ke, a book.
 buck.
 he, boldly.
 owl.
 swollen. 398.
 iolne, to swell,

bone.
 eon, to be.
 oun, ready. 423.
 ne, petition, re-
 , *boon*. 415.
 ound, estab-
 l.

(1) force, mean-
 (2) prison.
 = *bonden*,
 den, bound.
 , of bone.

1 bank, pl. Bon-
 Bonkke3.
 , debonair, cour-
 s.

oat.
 ore, a boar.
 3orde, a table.
 a bird.

3p. born.
 , a pledge.
 3ng, borrowing.
 es, lands in towns
 by a particular
 re.

me3, produces,
 3.

Borne, Bourne, water,
 stream, *burn*.

Borough, a town, *borough*.

Borwe, a pledge, security.

Borw3, a city.

Bosk, Boske, a bush.

Bost, boast, pride.

Bot, Bote, but, except.

Bot, bit, pierced.

Bot (to) = *to boot*, for
 security. 392.

Bote, 'for bote,' to boot.

Bote, remedy, salva-
 tion. 392.

Bote-yef, unless.

Botel, bottle.

Botles, bootless, irre-
 mediable.

Botme, the bottom.

Bothen, Bothen, both.

Boþem, pit, bottom.

Boþeme3, valleys, bot-
 toms.

Boþemlez, bottomless.

Botoun3, buttons.

Bouche, to stop one's
 mouth.

Bouele, bowel.

Boun, ready. 423.

Bounté, goodness,
 bounty.

Bour, room, chamber.

Bourde, to jest, joke.

Bourde, a jest.

Bout, Boute, without.

Bou3te, bought, atoned,
 expiated.

Bowande, obedient.

Bowe, to go, hasten.

Boxum, obedient. 385.

Boxumly, obediently.

Boxumnes, obedience.

Bo3, Bo3e, a bough.

Bo3, Bo3e, a bow,

Bo3e, to hasten.

Brac, broke.

Brad, Brade, broad.

Brak, broke. [386.

Brayd, started, turned.

Brayde, to start, rush
 to, awake.

Brayde, (1) 'in (or at) a

brayde, 'in a turn, in
 a trice, (2) an assault.
 386.

Brayinde, roaring.

Brayden, embroidered.

Breadlepes, bread-
 baskets. 385.

Brec, broke. [395.

Breche, a woody glen.

Bred, Brede, bread.

Brede, breadth, abroad.

Bred-wrigte, a baker.

385.

Bref, short.

Breke, to break.

Brem, Breme, (1) quick,
 active, vigorously, vio-
 lently, (2) fierce, an-
 gry, (3) lofty, proud.
 400.

Bremli, Bremly, Breme-
 ly, violently, rapidly,
 fiercely, vigorously.

Bren, Brenne, to burn.

Brend, Brende, Brenned,
 burnt.

Brene, a burning.

Brennand, burning.

Brennyng, burning.

Brent, burnt.

Brentest, highest. 433.

Bresed, rugged, shaggy.

Brest, Breste, to burst.

Brether, Breþer, Breðere,
 Briðere, brethren,
 brothers.

Breþe, vapour, steam,
 breath. [brewers.

Brewesters, female

Breuh, brewed. [ened.

Breygid, abridged, short-

Bricteste, brightest.

Brig, a bridge,

Brihte, clearly.

Brin, Brinne, to burn.

Brinnand, burning.

Brint, burnt.

Brittened, broken, de-
 stroyed. 435.

Brist, Bryzt, bright.

Bristnesse, brightness.

Broche, a brooch.

Bilfoder, food.
 Bilike, to make likely,
 or to render pleasing.
 404.
 Bilonge, to belong to,
 depend upon.
 Bilouked, shut up.
 Bi-lowen, to accuse
 falsely. [ment.
 Bimene, to bemoan, la-
 Bimening, lamentation.
 394.
 Biment, bemoaned, la-
 mented. 388.
 Bineoðe, Bineope, be-
 neath.
 Binime, Bynyme, to de-
 prive of, rob. 381.
 Binne, within. 409.
 Binom, took away, de-
 prived of.
 Biofpe, behoof. 412.
 Biqueþ, bequeathed. 405.
 Biquede, bequest. 405.
 Bird, behaved. 425.
 Bire, haste, rush. 436.
 Biri, city, town. 389.
 Biriele, a tomb, sepul-
 chre. 394.
 Bi-rolled, rushed about.
 Birþe, nation, tribe. 417.
 Bischriche, to shriek,
 scream. 397.
 Bischopen, to bishops.
 Bisay = *besaw*, ordained.
 Bise, the north wind.
 410. [seech.
 Biseke, Biseken, to be-
 Bisemar, scorn, mock-
 ery, shame. 398.
 Biseeme, to render
 seemly. 404.
 Biseo, to ordain, ap-
 point.
 Bisen, to rule over.
 Bisend, betokened,
 likened. 426.
 Biseninge, token, sign.
 Bisied, came upon. 416.
 Bisides, besides.
 Bisop, Bissop, bishop.
 Bisogt, besought.

Bispeke, bespoken,
 agreed.
 Bispitte, to spit on.
 Bistad, alleged,
 Bistad, happened, placed
 (in peril).
 Bistod, Bistode, stood,
 stood still.
 Biswike, to deceive,
 cheat, defraud. 399.
 Bisypþe, betimes, at
 times.
 Bit, biddeth, bids.
 Bitagte, Bitactue, gave,
 assigned. 384.
 Bitake, to entrust to,
 hand over, assign, be-
 queath. 384.
 Biteche, to entrust, give
 (see Bitake).
 Bitelle, to speak, plead.
 Bitide, to betide, befall.
 Bith, by the. 408.
 Bitid, befallen. [over.
 Bitook, gave, handed
 Bitraye, to betray.
 Bituene, Bitwen, be-
 tween.
 Bituixen, Bituxen, be-
 twixt, between.
 Bitweone, between.
 Bitwixe, betwixt.
 Bitymes, betimes.
 Biþoyte, bethought.
 Bive, to tremble. 390.
 Biwaken, to keep a vigil
 for the dead. 393.
 Biwite, gone. 411.
 Bizendis, beyond. [404.
 Bizete, to obtain, get.
 Bizete, possessions.
 Bizonde, beyond.
 Blabere, to babble,
 mutter. 438.
 Blabered, babbled.
 Blac, Blak, Blake, black.
 Blan, cease (see Blinne).
 Blase, blaze, flame.
 Blaste, blazed.
 Blaunner, a kind of
 lawn or fur.
 Blaw, Blawe, to blow.

Blede, to bleed.
 Blefþ, remains (see Bi-
 leve).
 Bleeke, Bleike, pale,
 livid. 408. [399.
 Blenche, to flinch, waver.
 Blende, mixed.
 Bleo, colour, complex-
 ion, hue.
 Blere, to blear the eye,
 deceive.
 Blere, to put out the
 tongue, to make
 grimaces. 430.
 Blete, poor, mean. 404.
 Blete, foliage. 397.
 Blethely, blithely, joy-
 fully.
 Blin, Blinne, Blinnen, to
 cease, stop. 382.
 Blisse, to bless.
 Blissing, blessing.
 Blive, quickly.
 Blo, blue.
 Blod, Blode, blood.
 Blome, flower, bloom.
 Blonk, a horse, originally
 a *white* horse.
 Blossme, Blostme, blos-
 som, bloom. 395.
 Blossmen, blossoms.
 Blou, to blow.
 Blowe, blooming.
 Blubrande, bubbling,
 boiling. 434.
 Bluk = *buk* = *bulk*, body.
 436.
 Blunder, confusion, ruin.
 Blycande, shining.
 Blykked, shone.
 Blynnne, to cease.
 Blyssen, blisses, joys.
 Blyþeliche, joyfully.
 Bo = *beo*, to be. [434.
 Bobbaunce, boast, pride.
 Bobbe, a branch.
 Boc, a book.
 Bocher, butcher.
 Bod = *abod*, awaited.
 Bod, sb. delay.
 Bod, Bode, message,
 word, command. 383.

ffered.
ibod, dwelt.
 ody.
 bidden, asked,
 383.
 commands.
 forbodes, por-
 .
 de, message.
 Boffet, a blow,
 t.
 oghe, a bough.
 3oghe, to bow.
 Bogte, Boht,
 ht. [for.
 expiated, atoned
 l, bent.
 oke, a book.
 i buck.
 che, boldly.
 owl.
 swollen. 398.
 Bolne, to swell,

 bone.
 beon, to be.
 boun, ready. 423.
 one, petition, re-
 t, boon. 415.
 bound, estab-
 d.
 (1) force, mean-
 (2) prison.
 1 = *bonden*,
 iden, bound.
 2, of bone.
 a bank, pl. Bon-
 Bonkkej.
 2, debonair, cour-
 is.
 boat.
 iore, a boar.
 Borde, a table.
 a bird.
 pp. born.
 e, a pledge.
 yng, borrowing.
 zes, lands in towns
 l by a particular
 ire.
unez, produces,
 s.

Borne, Bourne, water,
 stream, *burn*.
 Borugh, a town, *borough*.
 Borwe, a pledge, security.
 Borw3, a city.
 Bosk, Boske, a bush.
 Bost, boast, pride.
 Bot, Bote, but, except.
 Bot, bit, pierced.
 Bot (to) = *to boot*, for
 security. 392.
 Bote, 'for *bote*', to boot.
 Bote, remedy, salva-
 tion. 392.
 Bote-yef, unless.
 Botel, bottle.
 Boties, bootless, irre-
 mediable.
 Botme, the bottom.
 Bothen, Bothen, both.
 Boþem, pit, bottom.
 Boþemej, valleys, bot-
 toms.
 Boþemle3, bottomless.
 Botoun3, buttons.
 Bouche, to stop one's
 mouth.
 Bouele, bowel.
 Boun, ready. 423.
 Bounté, goodness,
 bounty.
 Bour, room, chamber.
 Bourde, to jest, joke.
 Bourde, a jest.
 Bout, Boute, without.
 Bouyte, bought, atoned,
 expiated.
 Bowande, obedient.
 Bowe, to go, hasten.
 Boxum, obedient. 385.
 Boxumly, obediently.
 Boxumnes, obedience.
 Bo3, Boze, a bough.
 Bo3, Boze, a bow,
 Boze, to hasten.
 Brac, broke.
 Brad, Brade, broad.
 Brak, broke. [386.
 Brayd, started, turned.
 Brayde, to start, rush
 to, awake.
 Brayde, (1) 'in (or at) a

brayde, 'in a turn, in
 a trice, (2) an assault.
 386.
 Brayinde, roaring.
 Brayden, embroidered.
 Breadlepes, bread-
 baskets. 385.
 Brec, broke. [395.
 Breche, a woody glen.
 Bred, Brede, bread.
 Brede, breadth, abroad.
 Bred-wrigte, a baker.
 385.
 Bref, short.
 Breke, to break.
 Brem, Breme, 1) quick,
 active, vigorously, vio-
 lently, (2) fierce, an-
 gry, (3) lofty, proud.
 400.
 Bremli, Bremly, Breme-
 ly, violently, rapidly,
 fiercely, vigorously.
 Bren, Brenne, to burn.
 Brend, Brende, Brenned,
 burnt.
 Brene, a burning.
 Brennand, burning.
 Brennyng, burning.
 Brent, burnt.
 Brentest, highest 433.
 Bresed, rugged, shaggy.
 Brest, Breste, to burst.
 Brether, Breþer, Breðere,
 Briðere, brethren,
 brothers.
 Breþe, vapour, steam,
 breath. [brewers.
 Brewesters, female
 Breuh, brewed. [ened.
 Breygid, abridged, short-
 Bricteste, brightest.
 Brig, a bridge.
 Brihte, clearly.
 Brin, Brinne, to burn.
 Brinnand, burning.
 Brint, burnt.
 Brittened, broken, de-
 stroyed. 435.
 Brist, Bryst, bright.
 Bristness, brightness.
 Broche, a brooch.

- Brod, Brode, broad.
 Broht, Brohte, Brochte,
 Brouthe, Brojt,
 Brojte, brought.
 Bronch, a branch.
 Bronde³, brands, embers,
 ashes.
 Bropley, filthy. 434.
 Broje³, brows.
 Broune, brown.
 Brurd-ful, full to the
 brim. 433.
 Brusten, to burst.
 Brutenet, cut in pieces.
 435.
 Bryche, low, mean. 421.
 Brydde, a bird.
 Brynstone, brimstone.
 Bue, Buen, to be.
 Bues, obeys.
 Bueþ, are.
 Buffet, a blow.
 Buges, boughs. 385.
 Bugge, Bygge, to buy.
 Bugh, a bough.
 Bugles, buffaloes.
 Buile, Builen, to boil.
 Buk, Buke, a book.
 Bukkey, bucks.
 Bulej, bulls.
 Bult, built.
 Bummed, tasted, drank.
 Bun, ready.
 Buope, both. 428.
 Bur, a blow. 436.
 Burde, Buyrde, a woman,
 lady. 420.
 Buriinge, burial.
 Burn, Burne, a man, a
 nobleman. 431.
 Burgeis, a burgess,
 citizen.
 Buryel, tomb.
 Burje, a city, borough.
 Buschen, to busk, go out.
 Busk, a bush.
 Busk, Buske, (1) to pre-
 pare (for a journey),
 (2) to go on a
 journey, to go (one's
 way). 425.
 Bustelyng, wandering
- about, uncertain what
 way to take.
 Bute, without.
 Bute-if, except.
 Buton, but.
 Bup, are.
 Buve, above.
 By, to be.
 Bycom, became.
 Byclippe, to surround.
 Byclippe, Byclepe, to call.
 Byd = *byt*, prays.
 Bydde, to pray.
 Byddinde, praying.
 Byde, Byden, to remain,
 abide.
 Byde³, abides.
 Bydene (see Bidene).
 Bye, to buy.
 Byeh, be, are.
 Byfalle, to befall.
 Byfyl, befell.
 Bygile, to beguile.
 Bygete, to obtain.
 Bygeten, begotten.
 Bygyng, a building.
 429.
 Bygonne, begun.
 Byholde, to behold.
 Byhove, to behave.
 Byleave, belief.
 Bylyve, quickly, imme-
 diately.
 Bynne, within.
 Byneþen, beneath.
 Byrad, determined, re-
 solved.
 Byreve, to deprive, be-
 reave.
 Bys, purple. 420.
 Byse, to be wary, cau-
 tious.
 Byschyne, pp. shone
 upon.
 Byside, besides.
 Bysougt, besought.
 Byspeete, to spit on.
 Bytazte, assigned.
 Bythuxte, betwixt.
 Bytuene, Bytweone, be-
 tween.
 Bytyde, to befall.
- Bywraye, to accuse, be-
 tray. 385.
 Cacche, Cache, to catch,
 drive away, chase.
 Cald, Calde, cold.
 Calewe, bald. 415.
 Calling, invitation.
 Cam, came.
 Can, know, knows.
 Candlen, candles. 389.
 Cant, crafty, brave. 430.
 Capados, a hood, or
 close cap.
 Care, sorrow.
 Carefully, sorrowfully.
 Carien, to wander.
 Carl, churl, man. 409.
 Caroin, a dead body,
 carrion.
 Carpe, Carppe, to talk.
 Cas, Case, hap, chance,
 adventure, circum-
 stance, occurrence.
 Casten, to devise, plan.
 Casten, pp. cast.
 Catel, Catele, Catelle,
 wealth.
 Caytif, a wretch.
 Caytete, Caytiffe,
 wretchedness.
 Caurimauri, a worm-
 eaten garment.
 Cayte, caught.
 Cellen, cells. [Sely].
 Cely, good, gentle (see
 Cemmed, twisted, folded).
 435.
 Cerges, tapers. 409.
 Certeyn, certain.
 Ceteis, cities.
 Chacen, to drive out.
 Chacche, to drive, catch.
 Chafare, chaffer. 382.
 Chalange, Challenge,
 claim.
 Chapman, Chapmon, a
 merchant. 382.
 Chare, Char, a car.
 Chare, Charen, to turn.
 392.
 Chartre, a prison. 384.

, sharp.
 chaste.
 e, chance, for-
 adventure.
 he, chance, to
 l. [able.
 eable, change-
 n, chains.
 e.
 chose.
 cold.
 a shield.
 chill, cold. 410.
 , chinks, fissures.
 ge, market.
 , turned.
 cheer, face.
 a churl, rustic,
 . 409.
 gladly, joyfully.
 mp. choose.
 hees, chose.
 n, to prosper,
 sed.
 to choose.
 , strife.
 , reason. [431.
 steyn, a chieftain.
 n, to eschew.
 les, a kind of
 , Fr. *ciboule*.
 r, Childre, Chil-
 , Chyldern, chil-
 .
 ede, childhood.
 en, churches.
 egong, church-
 a cherry.
 , noise, chirping
 irds.
 choice. [go.
 , take (the way),
 cheese. [fully.
 , choicely, care-
 inge, chirping,
 ering.
 esse, a cistern.
 clad.
 purely, cleanly,
 urity.
 to cleanse.

Clef, cleaved.
 Cleme, to daub with
 plaster. 432.
 Clene, pure, clean.
 Clenge, to cling.
 Clennes, cleanness,
 purity.
 Clensing, cleansing.
 Clepe, Clepen, to call.
 403.
 Clept, called, *y-clept*.
 Clepyng, calling.
 Clere, clear. [clerk.
 Clergeoun, a young
 Clerken, of clerks, of
 men in holy orders.
 Clerlych, clearly.
 Cler-matin, a kind of
 fine wheaten bread.
 Cleve, a cottage. 408.
 Cleyme, to claim.
 Clinge, Clynge, to with-
 er, shrivel. 404.
 Clinke, to ring, toll.
 Clippe, to embrace, clasp.
 Clive, to cleave, adhere
 to. 392.
 Clived, suffered. 382.
 Clom, silence, peace.
 427.
 Clos, Cloos, close, secret.
 Clottes, clods.
 Cloustand = *cloutand*,
 patching. 436.
 Clout, a piece, frag-
 ment, rag. 408.
 Clowtez, pieces.
 Clupie, to call.
 Clute, a rag. 408.
 Cnoke, to knock.
 Coc, cock.
 Cofre, Cofer, chest, ark.
 Coffyn, a basket.
 Cogge, a wheel. 398.
 Cokeneye, a lean
 chicken. [bread.
 Coket, a kind of fine
 Col, Cole, a coal.
 Col plontes, cabbage-
 plants, coleworts.
 Com, came. [ment.
 Comanment, command-

Combrez, destroys.
 Comen, Comyn, com-
 mon.
 Comene, to come.
 Comers, commerce.
 Comlyng, a stranger.
 Comlych, comely.
 Commun = *comen*, pp.
 come.
 Campaigne, company.
 Compers, companions.
 Compleynen, to com-
 plain.
 Comse, Comsen, to com-
 mence, begin, en-
 deavour.
 Comynde, coming.
 Comynge = *comene*, to
 come.
 Con, aux. vb. did.
 Con, Can, knows, pl.
 Conne, Cunne, 'Con
thonke, give thanks.
 Cone, Conne, Conen, pl.
 to know.
 Conne, Connen, to learn.
 Confort, comfort.
 Conninge, knowledge.
 Conrai, a course, enter-
 tainment. 425.
 Conseile, to counsel.
 Contene, to contain.
 Contray, Contraye, Con-
 treie, a country.
 Contrarius, diverse, con-
 trary.
 Conyng, a rabbit.
 Coostez, coasts.
 Cop, Coppe, top, hill-top.
 Corageus, courageous.
 Coren, corn.
 Cors, body.
 Cors, course.
 Corse, to curse.
 Corsed, cursed.
 Corseynt, a relique, the
 body of a saint.
 Corsyes, curses. [426.
 Corsing, horse-dealing.
 Cortays, Corteyes, cour-
 teous, kind.
 Cortaysye, courtesy.

- Cortesliche, courteously.
 Cosin, cousin.
 Cost, expense.
 Cost, Coste, coast, border.
 Costes, Costez, customs, laws, properties. 395.
 Cote, a coat.
 Cote, a cot. 410.
 Cou, cow.
 Coude, Couth, Couth, Coube, could, knew.
 Cou3de, Cou3pe = *coupe*, knew.
 Couherde, a cow-herd.
 Coust, couldst.
 Coupe, a cup.
 Covatous, covetous.
 Cove, a cave, cavern.
 424.
 Covert, convent.
 Covenable, convenient.
 Covenably, conveniently.
 Cover, to recover.
 Covetyse, covetousness.
 Crabben, crabs.
 Craft, force, art.
 Craftes, abilities.
 Crages, crags, rocks.
 Crake, to crack.
 Craven, to ask.
 Craym, cream.
 Creftesman, craftsman.
 Crei, cry.
 Crepe, to creep.
 Creme, to stop. 407.
 Cresped, crisped, curled.
 Cresten, christian.
 Creyme, chrism, oil used in anointing. [tian.
 Cristen, Cristene, chris-
 Crist-ni, Cristny, Crist-
 nyne, to baptize.
 Cristnyng, baptism.
 Crijnyng, crying.
 Croft, a field.
 Croice, Crois, cross.
 Croked, crooked.
 Crokkes, crocks, pots.
 Cronique, a chronicle.
 Crop, Crophe, top.
 Cropure, crupper.
 Cros, a cross.
 Croune, a crown.
 Crouny, to crown.
 Crounyng, coronation.
 Croys, a cross.
 Crudde, curd.
 Crummes, crumbs.
 Cullen, to kill.
 Culvere, a dove.
 Cum = *com*, came.
 Cumand, to command.
 Cumandment, com-
 mandment
 Cum, Cumen, to come.
 Cumly, comely, fair.
 Cummen, pp. come.
 Cums, imp. come.
 Cumse, to commence.
 Cunde, kind.
 Cunne, kin.
 Cunne, to know.
 Cunnyng, knowledge.
 Cuntenance, counten-
 ance, form, pretence.
 Cupide, cubits.
 Cuppe-mel, cup by cup.
 Cure, care.
 Curtaisli, courteously.
 Curteisle, Curtesliche,
 Curteysly, Curteys-
 liche, courteously.
 Curteys, courteous.
 Curteysy, courtesy.
 Cusse, to kiss.
 Custe, habits. 395.
 Cut, a lot.
 Cupe, knew, could.
 Cupest, knewest.
 Cwab, spoke.
 Daffe, a fool.
 Dai, day.
 Dai-lijst, daylight.
 Dai-rim, daybreak. 402.
 Dai-sterre, day-star.
 Dalf, digged. 427.
 Dalt, dealt.
 Dam, ocean.
 Dam, dame.
 Dammage, loss.
 Dar, dare.
 Dare, to tremble, to lie
 hid. 436.
 Darked, lay hidden.
 436.
 Darst, darest, durst.
 Dat = *dat*, that.
 Daunger, danger.
 Daunsyng, dancing.
 Daunte, to tame. 413.
 Dayes-eye, daisy.
 Dayntes, Dayntyes,
 dainties, rarities.
 De = *de*, the.
 Dead = *deað*, death.
 Debaat, sedition.
 Debonere, debonair,
 courteous. 413.
 Debrekyng, breaking.
 Debrused, bruised. 413.
 Dece, the dais, the high
 table.
 Ded, Dede, dead, 'Dede
 Se,' Dead Sea.
 Ded, Dede, death. 429.
 Ded, Dede, deed.
 Dede, did, caused.
 Dedly, deadly.
 Deed, death.
 Deede, dead.
 Deef, Def, deaf. [tell.
 Deeme, to deem, judge,
 Dees, dice.
 Defalte, fault.
 Defaute, want. [431.
 Defence, prohibition.
 Defende, to forbid, pro-
 hibit.
 Defendet, forbidden.
 Defigured, disfigured.
 Defye, to digest.
 Degysset, disguised.
 Deide, died.
 Del, Dele part dis-
 tributing, *deal*. 417.
 Dele, to divide, dis-
 tribute, have dealings
 with. 414.
 Delful, doleful.
 Delices, delicacies,
 Deliverly, dextrously,
 quickly.
 Delivry, to deliver.

Delt, distributed, divided, dealt.
 Delve, to dig.
 Delver, a digger.
 Dem, Deme, (1) to deem, judge, decide, doom, (2) to name, call. 384.
 Deme, cause, doom, censure.
 Demes, dooms, decrees.
 Demmed, dammed, filled up.
 Dempt, condemned.
 Demþ, judges, thinks.
 Deol, dole, grief. 414.
 Deop, Deope, deep.
 Deore, dear, beloved.
 Deores, lovers.
 Deore, to dare.
 Deowes, dews.
 Dep, Depe, deep, deeply.
 Depart, to separate, divide.
 Depe, to dip.
 Der, a beast. 383.
 Der, Dere, (1) dear, beloved, precious, joyful, joyous, (2) rarity, dainty. 389.
 Dere, Deren, to hurt, injure.
 Dereyni, to contest, prove. 412.
 Derk, Derke, dark.
 Derknesse, darkness.
 Dern, Derne, secret, secretly. 403.
 Derrest, noblest. [389.
 Derðe, dearth, famine.
 Derworth, Derworþe, precious, beloved.
 Derworþly, honourable.
 Desavauntage, disadvantage.
 Desclosed, disclosed.
 Descrijfe, to describe.
 Deserite, to disinherit.
 Despit, a wrong. [tiny.
 Destenê, Destenye, des-
 Destrue, to destroy.
 Desparple, to scatter.

Desselic, secretly. 423.
 Dette, debt. [death.
 Deth, Deb, Dethe, Depe, Deb, does, causes.
 Devise, Devyse, to tell, describe. [tioning.
 Devisynge, telling, men-
 Devoydyng, doing, or putting away.
 Deye, to die.
 Deyl, part, share, deal.
 Deyntê, pleasure, dainty. 415.
 Deystynê, destiny.
 Deje, to die.
 Dexter, daughters.
 Dich, a ditch. [der.
 Diffame, to defame, slan-
 Dighte, (1) to prepare, set in order, (2) ordain, determine, doom, pret.
 Dighte, pp. Dight, 402.
 Digne, to deign.
 Diht, composes.
 Diht, condemned, doomed (see Dighte).
 Dihte, to prepare. 402.
 Dilitable, delectable, pleasant.
 Dimnes, darkness.
 Dingnetê, dignity.
 Dingneliche, Dingneliche, properly, fitly, worthily.
 Dint, a blow. 413.
 Disceyve, to deceive.
 Disclaundre, disrespect.
 Discreve, Discrive, Discryve, to describe.
 Disparpled, Disparpoiled, scattered.
 Distruen, to destroy.
 Dizele, secret. 395.
 Dize, pp. arranged, ordained.
 Dizte, ordained.
 Dizte, to give (see Dighte). 402.
 Diztti, to ordain.
 Do, to cause, place, give.
 Doande, Doende, doing.

Doghty, doughty, valiant. 410.
 Dok, tail.
 Dolve (pret. subj. of *Delve*, to dig, break through), digged. 427.
 Dom, Dome, doom, judgment, opinion, permission, pl. Domes, decisions. 384. [429.
 Domland, cloudy, dark.
 Don, Done, (1) to do, cause, put, (2) done, taken, put. [438.
 Donet, a grammar.
 Dong, Donge, dung.
 Dongen (pp. of Dinge, to beat), beaten.
 Donke, to moisten. 421.
 Donne, to be done.
 Donward, downward.
 Dool, grief, dole. 414.
 Dor = ðor, there.
 Dor, Dore, a door.
 Doreward, a doorkeeper.
 Dorst, Dorste, durst.
 Doser, back of a seat.
 Dostu, doest thou.
 Dotest, ravest, speakest foolishly. Wright's text reads *Doted*.
 Doþ, causes, doth.
 Douhtre, a daughter.
 Doumbe, dumb.
 Doun, Doune, down.
 Dounes, hills, *douns*.
 Doun-falland, descending.
 Dout, Doue, fear.
 Doute, to fear.
 Douthe, availed, was of value. 410.
 Douth, Douþe, doughty, valiant(men), knights. 410, 435.
 Dovene, Dovne, a female dove. 433.
 Douhtiore, braver.
 Dowed, availed. 410.
 Dowelle, to dwell.
 Dowter, a daughter.

Far, Fare, Faren, to go,
 proceed, act, behave.
 Fare, way, course.
 Fare, Faren, gone, de-
 parted. 384.
 Fars, fares. [400.
 Fastrede, firm in counsel.
 Fajmed, embraced.
 Faure, Fawre, four.
 Faurtend, fourteenth.
 Faut, a fault. 431.
 Fauvel, Fauwel, Favel,
 flattery. 437.
 Fax, hair. 435.
 Fay, faith.
 Fayli, to fail.
 Fayn, glad.
 Fayrnes, beauty. [craft.
 Fayrye, magic, witch-
 Fayten, to mortify
 Fe, Fee, cattle, money,
 property, *fee*. 384.
 Feblelike, feebly, poorly,
 niggardly.
 Febli, to become feeble.
 Feblore, feebler.
 Febly, to become feeble.
 Feche, Fecche, Fechen,
 to fetch.
 Feend, fiend, devil.
 Fees, cities.
 Feer, fire.
 Feere, a companion.
 Fefede, endowed, be-
 stowed. 413.
 Feh, a dress of various
 colours. 418.
 Fei, faith. [courteous.
 Feir, Feire, fair, civil,
 Feirth, fourth.
 Feith, Feiþ, faith.
 Feibely, Feizþely, Feizþ-
 liche, truly.
 Fel, Felle, fierce, cruel.
 Fel, Felle, a hill, pl. Fels,
 Felles, hills.
 Fel, Felle, the skin,
 hide. 417.
 Fel, Fele, many. 392.
 Felau, Felaw, Felawe, a
 fellow, companion.

Felawschape, Felayshyp,
 fellowship.
 Feld, (1) felt, (2) hidden.
 Feld, Felde, a field.
 Feldfare, a bird so called.
 Felde, (1) fell, (2) filled.
 Fele, many.
 Fele, to feel, experience.
 Felefelded, manifold,
 multiplied.
 Felle, hardy, fierce,
 cruel, horrible, dread-
 ful. 412.
 Felon, Felun, (1) a
 wretch, (2) wretched,
 wicked. 412.
 Felonye, shame, dis-
 grace, crime.
 Felunliche, Felunly,
 wickedly, fiercely.
 Fen, the name of the
 sections of Avicenne's
 great work entitled
Canun.
 Fen, dirt, mud, marsh.
 Fend, an enemy, fiend,
 devil.
 Feng, took.
 Feole, many.
 Feor, Fer, Ferr, far.
 Ferd, Ferde, Fered, fear,
 fright.
 Ferd, Ferde, went, de-
 parted, fared. 391.
 Ferde, Verde, army,
 host. 391.
 Ferdnes, fear.
 Fere, (1) fire, (2) bold,
 courageous, (3) to
 frighten.
 Fere, (1) a mate, com-
 panion, (2) akin, 'in
fers, together, in
 company.
 Feren, companions.
 Feren, afar. 380.
 Ferene, fern, brake.
 Ferforþ, far.
 Ferkkes, rides. 435.
 Ferli, Ferly, (1) a marvel,
 wonder, (2) marvel-

lous, strange, (3) won-
 derfully, greatly.
 Ferlich, Ferliche, (1)
 marvellous, wondrous,
 (2) wonderfully, *ferly*
fele, very much. 411.
 Ferlikes, marvels, mira-
 cles.
 Ferlilic, Ferlyly, wonder
 fully, greatly.
 Ferme, farm. [farther.
 Ferre, (1) distant, (2)
 Fersch, fresh. [426.
 Fertered, enshrined.
 Ferthe, fourth.
 Ferþing, Ferþyng, a
 fourth part, a far-
 thing.
 Fesauns, a pheasant.
 Fest, (1) fist, (2) loaded.
 Fest, Feste, a feast.
 Fest, Festen, to fasten,
 to confine.
 Fested, Festend, fastened.
 Festnes, fastness, sta-
 bility.
 Fet, feet.
 Fet, Fette, fat.
 Fete, Fette, (1) to fetch,
 (2) fetched.
 Fetel, Fetil, a vessel.
 Fetis, Fetyes, neat, nice,
 pleasant, comely.
 Fetisliche, neatly, nicely.
 Fetre, to fetter.
 Fette, Fetten, to fetch.
 Fettle, prepared, made
 ready. 432.
 Fepered, feathered.
 Feþly = *feibly*, truly.
 Feute, scent.
 Feye, dead. 419.
 Fey, faith.
 Feyne, to feign.
 Feyntise, (1) deceit, (2)
 faintness.
 Feyr, Feyre, fair, beau-
 tiful. [withcraft.
 Feyrie, Feyrye, magic,
 Feyrnesse, complexion,
 beauty.

e, even.
 de, old age, old.
 grown old.
 Eldere, elders.
 elder.
 ges, elders.
 eleventh.
 = *ellerne*, an
 -tree. 437.
 an ell. [wise.
 Ellis, else, other-
elles, provided.
 le, a staff of an
 a length.
 a fish so called.
 older.
 uncle. [dor.
 sitour, ambassa-
 ten, fellow Chris-
 ude, emerald.
 sonyng, poison-
 soner, poisoner.
 ided, embroider-
 ce, to drive out.
 imens, enchant-
 its.
 ce, to increase.
 , to come to an
 tur, crevices.
 to end.
 z, Endyng, death.
 nes, once. 419.
 l, entangled. It
 be an error for
 sed, bordered,
 ured.
 ner, the Infirma-
 of an abbey.
 med, inflamed.
 angel.
 English.
 eful, skilful.
 ny.
 , bright.
 , an enemy.
 one (acc.). [dow.
 nbre, to oversha-

Enpoysened, poisoned.
 Enqueri, to inquire.
 Enseure, to insure.
 Entrete, to treat of.
 Eode, went.
 Eorne, to run.
 Eorpe, earth.
 Eovill[e], evilly, badly.
 Er, (1) before, (2) are.
 Erand, an errand.
 Erd, land, abode. 386.
 Erde, earth.
 Erding-stowe, dwelling-
 place, abode.
 Ere, (1) an ear, (2) are.
 Eres, ears.
 Erf, Erfe, cattle. 381.
 Ering, earing.
 Erl, an earl.
 Erliche, Erlyche, early.
 Ern, Erne, an eagle.
 Ernde, an errand.
 Ernest, earnest.
 Ernestly, quickly.
 Erst, first. [that.
 Erst þan = *er þan*, ere
 Ert, art.
 Erth, earth.
 Erthe, to dwell.
 Erpe, earth, ground.
 Erpeli, earthly. [quake.
 Erpe-movynge, earth-
 Ertou, art thou.
 Erur, before.
 Erve, cattle. 381.
 Es, is.
 Esse, (1) is, (2) to ask.
 Esste, asked.
 Est, the east.
 Este, pleasant. 418.
 Et, ate.
 Etayn, a giant. 435.
 Ete, to eat.
 Eten, to eat.
 Ette, ate.
 Ethen, hence.
 Eðen = *beðen*, hence.
 Eði-modes, kind, merci-
 ful. 389. [435.
 Ettle, to come, arrive.
 Evelez, evils.

Evereuch, every.
 Everile, each. 386.
 Evre, ever.
 Evrich, every.
 Evreich, every, each.
 Evrelestynde, everlast-
 ing.
 Evylle, sickness.
 Ewe ardaunt, brandy.
 Expouner, Expowne, to
 expound.
 Eyr, the air.
 Eyre, heir.
 Eje, an eye.
 Ejen, eyes.
 Fa, Faa, a foe. 413.
 Faand, found.
 Faas, Faes, foes.
 Fade, hostile.
 Fader, a father.
 Fagen, fain, glad. 390.
 Faght, fought.
 Fai, faith.
 Faines, gladdens, re-
 joices.
 Faire, Fayre, fair, hon-
 ourable, courteous,
 worthily.
 Fais, foes.
 Falau, fallow. 424.
 Fale = *fale*, many.
 Falle, (1) to befall, (2)
 fallen.
 Fals, false.
 Falshede, falsehood.
 Falth, falleth, falls.
 Falt, falters, fails.
 Famen, foemen, enemies.
 Fand, found.
 Fande, to try, tempt.
 Fanding, temptation,
 trial, pl. Fandinges.
 Fang, Fange, to take.
 Fannand, waving, flow-
 ing. [flies.
 Fannez, fans, flutters,
 Fantoum, Fantum, an ap-
 parition, a phantom.
 Fantasye, fancy.
 Farand, good, noble.

Far, Fare, Faren, to go, proceed, act, behave.
 Fare, way, course.
 Fare, Faren, gone, departed. 384.
 Fars, fares. [400.
 Fastrede, firm in counsel.
 Fapmed, embraced.
 Faure, Fawre, four.
 Faurtend, fourteenth.
 Faut, a fault. 431.
 Fauvel, Fauwel, Favel, flattery. 437.
 Fax, hair. 435.
 Fay, faith.
 Fayli, to fail.
 Fayn, glad.
 Faymes, beauty. [craft.
 Fayryze, magic, witch-
 Fayten, to mortify
 Fe, Fee, cattle, money,
 property, *fee*. 384.
 Feblie-like, feebly, poorly,
 niggardly.
 Febli, to become feeble.
 Feblore, feebler.
 Febly, to become feeble.
 Feche, Fecche, Fechen,
 to fetch.
 Feend, fiend, devil.
 Fees, cities.
 Feer, fire.
 Feere, a companion.
 Fefede, endowed, be-
 stowed. 413.
 Feh, a dress of various
 colours. 418.
 Fei, faith. [courteous.
 Feir, Feire, fair, civil,
 Feirth, fourth.
 Feith, Feib, faith.
 Feipely, Feizebly, Feizb-
 liche, truly.
 Fel, Felle, fierce, cruel.
 Fel, Felle, a hill, pl. Fels,
 Felles, hills.
 Fel, Felle, the skin,
 hide. 417.
 Fel, Fek, many. 392.
 Felau, Felaw, Felawe, a
 fellow, companion.

Felawschape, Felayschyp,
 fellowship.
 Feld, (1) felt, (2) hidden.
 Feld, Felde, a field.
 Feldfare, a bird so called.
 Felde, (1) fell, (2) filled.
 Fele, many.
 Fele, to feel, experience.
 Felefelded, manifold,
 multiplied.
 Felle, hardy, fierce,
 cruel, horrible, dread-
 ful. 412.
 Felon, Felun, (1) a
 wretch, (2) wretched,
 wicked. 412.
 Felonye, shame, dis-
 grace, crime.
 Felunliche, Felunly,
 wickedly, fiercely.
 Fen, the name of the
 sections of Avicenne's
 great work entitled
Canon.
 Fen, dirt, mud, marsh.
 Fend, an enemy, fiend,
 devil.
 Feng, took.
 Feole, many.
 Feor, Fer, Ferr, far.
 Ferd, Ferde, Fered, fear,
 fright.
 Ferd, Ferde, went, de-
 parted, fared. 391.
 Ferde, Verde, army,
 host. 391.
 Ferdnes, fear.
 Fere, (1) fire, (2) bold,
 courageous, (3) to
 frighten.
 Fere, (1) a mate, com-
 panion, (2) akin, 'in
ferre, together, in
 company.
 Feren, companions.
 Feren, afar. 380.
 Ferene, fern, brake.
 Ferforb, far.
 Ferkkes, rides. 435.
 Ferli, Ferly, (1) a marvel,
 wonder, (2) marvel-

lous, strange, (3) won-
 derfully, greatly.
 Ferlich, Ferliche, (1)
 marvellous, wondrous,
 (2) wonderfully, 'ferly
fele, very much. 411.
 Ferlikes, marvels, mira-
 cles.
 Ferilic, Ferily, wonder
 fully, greatly.
 Ferme, farm. [farther.
 Ferre, (1) distant, (2)
 Fersch, fresh. [426.
 Fertered, enshrined.
 Ferthe, fourth.
 Ferping, Ferbyng, a
 fourth part, a far-
 thing.
 Fesauns, a pheasant.
 Fest, (1) fist, (2) loaded.
 Fest, Feste, a feast.
 Fest, Festen, to fasten,
 to confine.
 Fested, Festend, fastened.
 Festnes, fastness, sta-
 bility.
 Fet, feet.
 Fet, Fette, fat.
 Fete, Fette, (1) to fetch,
 (2) fetched.
 Fetel, Fetil, a vessel.
 Fetis, Fetys, neat, nice,
 pleasant, comely.
 Fetisliche, neatly, nicely.
 Fetre, to fetter.
 Fette, Fetten, to fetch.
 Fettle, prepared, made
 ready. 432.
 Fepered, feathered.
 Feply = *feily*, truly.
 Feute, scent.
 Feye, dead. 419.
 Fey, faith.
 Feyne, to feign.
 Feyntise, (1) deceit, (2)
 faintness.
 Feyr, Feyre, fair, beau-
 tiful. [witchcraft.
 Feyrie, Feyrye, magic,
 Feyrnesse, complexion,
 beauty.

faith. [tending.
de, fighting, con-
g, fighting.
, feeble.
e, fourth.
'e.
ide, fifteenth.
fth.
1) fight, (2) fights.
, fighting, con-
. 406.
deceitful, *fickle*.
, defiling. 416.
lefled.
e, gold wire.
o defile.
, to follow. 417.
a girl (?)
lled. [fine.
yn, (1) end, (2)
'e.
-frist, a long
od, delay. 423.
fishes.
1) a fight, (2)
ts.
to fight.
ae, a flame.
n, a priest.
s, pancakes. 409.
ces sparks. [en.
to terrify, fright-
l, fleeing, flying.
fleece.
, Fleih, flew.
eyng, flying.
Fleiss, flesh.
ly, fleshly,
flew.
, (1) to banish,
banished, exiled.
,
to flee.
lych, carnal.
i floor.
to float, swim.
, floats.
, floated.
flesh.
ge, flying. [flesh.
lust, lust of the

Fley, flew.
Flighand, flying.
Flitte, to remove.
Flijs, fliest.
Fliyt, flies.
Flo, to flay.
Flo = *fleo*, to flee.
Flo, an arrow.
Flod, Flode, a flood.
Floh = *flap*, flows.
Flon, arrows.
Flon = *fleon*, to flee.
Flor, floor.
Flot, boiling fat. 434.
Flote, a company. 410.
Flote, floated.
Flob = *fleob*, flies, fly.
Flowe, Flowen, pl. flew.
Floyed, flowed.
Flude, a flood.
Flum, a stream, river.
394.
Flwe, flew.
Flyt, current, course
(from *flitte*, to re-
move).
Flytande, striving, con-
tending (from *flite* or
flyte, to chide). 434.
Flyth, flies.
Flyzes, flies.
Flyzt, flight.
Fnast, breath. 396.
Fnaste, to breathe.
Fo we, let us proceed.
400.
Fo, foe.
Fo, few. 392.
Foch, Foche, to fetch.
Fode, food.
Fode, person, creature,
child, pl. Fodez, crea-
tures. 418.
Foded = *fonded*, tempt-
ed, enticed.
Foghles, Fogheles, birds.
Fol, full, very.
Folcouthe, well assured.
Folde, earth.
Foldez, imp. turn over
to, assign.

Fole, foal. [foolish.
Fole, (1) a fool, (2)
Folewe, to follow.
Folfile, to fulfill.
Folfult, fulfilled.
Folken, of people.
Folmarde, a polecat.
Folpayd, richly endowed.
Foltede, foolish. 421.
Folwing, following.
Foly, foolishly.
Folowand, Foluande,
Folwande, following,
corresponding.
Folze, to follow. 401.
Fom, foam.
Fomon, an enemy.
Fon, Fone, few. 429.
Fon, ceased. 432.
Fon, to take. 420.
Fon, foes. 413.
Fond, Fonde, found.
Fonde, to try, attempt,
engage.
Fondyng, temptation.
Foner, fewer.
Fonge, to take, receive.
Fongez, takes.
Fonger, receiver.
Font, found.
Foo, foe, enemy.
Foondes, harbours.
For, went. 384.
For = *feor*, far.
Forbedd, forbad.
Forbede, Forbeode, to
forbid.
Forbedun, forbidden.
Forbere, to forbear, ab-
stain.
Forberne, to consume.
Fordedes, good deeds.
Fordon, Fordo, (1) to
ruin, destroy, (2) un-
done.
Fordred, sore afraid.
Fordronk = *furdronken*,
exceedingly drunk.
Fordrue, dried up. 405.
Foren, gone, departed,
pl. went.

Foreward, Forewarde,
Forward, Forwarde,
a promise, covenant,
agreement.
Forfare, to destroy.
Forferde, destroyed.
Forga, to forego.
Forgaf, forgave.
Forgart, lost. 431.
Forgete, to forget.
Forhede, to hide. 422.
Forhele, to hide, keep
secret. 373, 391.
Forhiler, concealer.
Forhiling, refuge, asy-
lum. [den. 391.
Forhole, Forholen, hid-
forleost, loseth.
Forlese, to destroy.
Forlet, (1) leaves off, (2)
left. 393, 396.
Forlete, to leave, refuse.
Forloren, Forlorn, for-
lorn, lost, ruined, de-
stroyed. [431.
Forloyned, gone astray.
Formast, first.
Forme, first. 428.
Forme-fader, Formere-
fader, Forme-foster,
first father.
Formest, first.
Formyour, creator.
Fornes, furnace.
Fornumen, taken away,
deprived of.
Forquat, Forqui, for-
what, wherefore.
Forred, covered with fur.
For-red, deceived. 388.
Forsake, to refuse.
Forsoc, refused.
Forsoth, Forsob, For-
sothe, forsooth, truly,
indeed.
Forst, frost. [falsely.
Forswere, to swear
Forswering, perjury.
Forsweringes, perjuries.
Fort, Forte, Forto, un-
til, for to.

Forth, forwards. [422.
Forthc, scum, froth.
Forþ, way, passage.
Forthan, Forþan, for
that reason, therefore.
Forþ cumen, pp. come to
pass.
Forþe = *forþi*, therefore.
Forþer, to further.
Forthers, Forþer, fur-
ther, moreover.
Forthfare, to go forth.
Forthi, Forthie, there-
fore, wherefore, al-
though. [fore.
Forði, therefore, where-
Forþinke, Forþynke, to
repent. [forth.
Forthledand, leading
Forþrast, thrust down,
overwhelmed. 431.
Forþwit, before. 423.
Fortone, fortune.
Fortune (be), perchance.
Forworth, far forth, far.
Forwake, to be weary
with watching.
Forward, Forwarde, co-
venant, agreement.
Forwhi, wherefore.
Forwit, before. 423.
Forworthes, come to
nothing, perish. 429.
Forwrojt, overworked,
fatigued.
For3, a furrow.
For3af, forgave. [387.
For3elde, to requite.
For3et, forgot.
For3ete, to forget.
For3eten, forgotten.
For3etynge, forgetful-
ness. [forgive.
For3eve, For3yve, to
For3oven, forgiven.
Fot = *fat*, vat, vessel,
422.
Fot, Fote, a foot.
Fotte, to fetch.
Foted, footed.
Foul, a fowl, bird.

Fouled, Fowled, defiled.
Founde, to establish.
Founde = *fonde*, to seek.
Founde, to go, come.
Founde, pp. found.
Foundere, to destroy.
Founde[re]de, destroyed.
Founjt, the baptismal
fount.
Founs, the bottom.
Foutene nigt, fortnight.
Foute, scent.
Fou3ten, fence.
Foyne, to fight, push
aside.
Foyson, Foy3oun, Foy-
syr, plenty, abun-
dance.
Fo3e, consent. 400.
Fo3le, Fo3ele, a bird, fowl.
Fra, from. 383.
Frainde, enquired.
Fraiste, to try, seek.
Fram, from.
Frame, advantage.
Fraward, forward.
Frayn, Frayne, to ask,
enquire, seek. 385.
Frayst, sought. 416.
Frayst, Frayste, to seek.
Fraysted, tried.
Fraystez, seeks. *
Freedom, generosity.
Freeltie, frailty.
Freinde, enquired. 385.
Freis, Freisshe, fresh.
Frek, bold, hardy. 430.
Freke, Freke, a man,
person, pl. Freke3.
430.
Frele, frail.
Freliche, Frely, (1) no-
ble, good, (2) richly,
beautifully.
Freme = *queme*, to
please.
Frend, Freind, a friend.
Freo, free,
Freomen, freemen.
Fret, Frete, to eat. 386.
Freten, eaten, devoured.

- to furnish, fill.
- he, Freliche,
l, noble.
timid, fearful.
ed, fear.
ke, timidly.
Fryth, a wood.
[tect.
to preserve, prom.
om. 380.
freezes. [ring.
ge, rubbing, jar-
to foam.
g, foaming.
, forehead.
rutte, Fryt, fruit.
unne, birds.
, Fugele, Fuzele,
, bird.
re.
ile, foul. 416.
omplete, fulfilled.
fool.
Fulflit, ful-
l, filled full.
, fullness.
, perfect.
, abundant. 387.
shed, abundance,
teousness. [435.
, to aid, assist.
, follows.
ite, fumes arising
excessive drink-
Funden, found.
, Fundieþ, goes,
o. 404.
e.
st, first.
e first.
ire.
a bird.
ights.
, defiling.
ading.
ceased.
farther.
feather, pl. Fy-
r,
- Fyzt, fight, contest.
- Ga, to go. [go.
Gaes, Gaas, Gais, imp.
Gabbe, to lie, joke. 411.
Gadere, Gaderen, Ga-
dre, Gadery, to ga-
ther.
Gaf, gave.
Gain, good. 431.
Gainges, goings, paths
(see Ga).
Galegale, chatterer. 400,
401. [409.
Galues, the gallows.
Galwe-tre, the gallows.
Galle, gall.
Game, Gamen, play,
sport, pleasure.
Gan, did.
Gan, pp. gone. [ing.
Gangand, going, walk-
Gangen, to go. 407.
Gar, to make.
Gare, ready, yare. 393.
Garnement, garment.
Garryng, having a harsh
guttural sound.
Gart, made.
Gast, aghast.
Gast, Gaste, ghost, spirit.
Gastlic, spiritually.
Gat, gate, path, way.
Gatte, Gatten, granted.
393.
Gaude, ornament.
Gayn, good, service-
able, useful. 431.
Gaynliche, pleasantly.
Gaynly, kindly.
Ge, ye.
Gede, went.
Gedelyng = *gadling*,
vagabond. 419.
Gedere, Gedre, to ga-
ther, lift up.
Gef, (1) if, (2) gave.
Gees, geese.
Geld, requited (see
zelde). 387.
Gendered, born.
- Gendrez, kinds.
Gendrye, to engender.
Genge, nations. 417.
Gent, gentle.
Gentiliche, nobly.
Ger, to compel, to make.
Ger, Gere, year.
Gered, behaved, man-
nered.
Gered, clothed.
Geren, to prepare, set
in order. 303. [389.
Gerken, to prepare.
Gern, Gerne, earnestly.
Gers, Geres, compels.
Gert, (1) did, caused, (2)
girded.
Geserne, Giserne, axe.
Gessee, to think, suppose.
Gessee, to deem, sup-
pose, order, place.
Gessynge, judging, cen-
suring.
Gest = *gert* (p. 133, l.
208), caused.
Gest, goest. 405.
Gest, guest, stranger.
Gest, made.
Gestening, Gestning,
lodging. 422.
Gestes, deeds, stories.
Get, yet.
Gete, to get.
Gett, handed down,
transmitted.
Geþ, goes.
Geve, Geven, to give.
Geven, given.
Geynest, fairest (see
Gayn). 420.
Ghe, she.
Gif, Gife, to give.
Gilden-moth, golden
mouth.
Gile, to beguile.
Gilt, guilt. [vice, craft.
Ginne, contrivance, de-
Ginne, to begin.
Ginneþ, howls. 436.
Girde, girded.
Giserne, axe.

- Givand, giving. [*glided*.
 Glad, Glade, Glode.
 Gladdore, more glad.
 Glade, glad.
 Glade, to become glad,
 to gladden.
 Gladur, more glad.
 Glam, word. 434.
 Glaumande, boisterous.
 Gle, song, glee. 418.
 Gled, Glède, glad.
 Glède, to rejoice, be
 glad.
 Glednesse, gladness.
 Glediynde, rejoicing.
 Glemered, glimmered.
 Glent, looked, glanced,
 shone.
 Glenu, skilful. 400.
 Glod, came.
 Gloir, glory.
 Glopnid, Gloppend,
 terrified, frightened.
 423.
 Glosed, spoke pleasantly,
 flattered.
 Glosynge, interpreting.
 Glotonie, gluttony. [*ing*.
 Glouand, burning, glow.
 Glydande, going, walk-
 ing.
 Gnide, to break in
 pieces. 417.
 Gobet, Gobat, a piece,
 morsel. 438.
 God, Gode, good.
 Goddeli, goodly, pleas-
 antly.
 Godelych, good, goodly.
 Goderhele, welfare,
 safety. 413.
 Godhede, goodness.
 Godles, goodless, having
 no goods.
 Godnisse, goodness.
 Godspelle, gospel.
 Golet, gullet.
 Gome, man. 405.
 Gome, Gomen, sport,
 play, *game*. 406.
 Goni, Gone, to go.
- Gone, to gasp, yawn.
 Gonge, to go (see
 Gange).
 Gonne, pl. began, did.
 Goon, to go.
 Goot, a goat.
 Gorde, rushed.
 Gore, dress. 420.
 Gore, filth. 431.
 Gorstez, gorse, heath.
 Gost, Goste, spirit.
 Gotez, streams.
 Gotz, goes.
 Gop, goes.
 Gop, imp. go.
 Goud, good. [408.
 Goule, Goulén, to howl.
 Gou we, let us go.
 Grad = *gret*, cries
 (shame upon).
 Grad, Gradde, cried.
 Graipe, to ordain.
 Gram, Grame, anger,
 wrath, disgust, grief.
 397.
 Gramere, grammar.
 Granand, groaning.
 Granti, to consent,
 grant.
 Gratlyche, greatly.
 Gratheli = *gratibeli*,
 readily, easily.
 Grattest, greatest.
 Graunte, Graunti, to
 grant.
 Grave, to bury.
 Graven, buried.
 Graype, ready.
 Graype, to prepare.
 Grayped, placed, seated.
 Grayped, prepared,
 dressed. [diest.
 Graypest, nearest, rea-
 Graypely, quickly, rea-
 dily, firmly.
 Graz, grace.
 Grede, cry, to cry. 397.
 Gredy, greedy. [noise.
 Gredyng, Gredyng,
 Greetli, greatly.
 Greet, Greete, great.
- Greibede, prepared.
 Greme, to anger, wrath.
 Gren, Grene, green.
 Greane, to grin.
 Gres, Gresse, grass. 418.
 Gresses, grasses.
 Gret, wept. 383, 392.
 Gret, Grette, great;
 comp. *Gretter*.
 Gret, Grette, to cry,
 weep. 392.
 Gretaunde, mourning,
 weeping, sorrowing.
 Gretes, of the great.
 Grette, to greet.
 Grette = *grette*, wept.
 Gretely, greatly.
 Greten, to greet.
 Greten, wept.
 Gretli, greatly.
 Gretliche, greatly.
 Grette, greeted, saluted.
 Greeting, greeting.
 Greved, grieved.
 Greve, grove.
 Grevi, to be heavy.
 Greyn, Greyne, grain.
 Greythe, to prepare, or-
 der, build.
 Greythede, prepared,
 made.
 Griefe, to grieve.
 Grim, savage, fierce.
 Grindinge, gnashing.
 Grip, dragon. 409.
 Grisbriteing, a gnashing
 or grinding of the
 teeth. [fear. 400.
 Grise, to be afraid, to
 Grislich, Grisliche, hor-
 rid, horrible, fright-
 ful.
 Griseliche, horrible.
 Grisely, Grisly, horrid,
 horrible. [406.
 Grith, safety, peace.
 Gripbruche, breach of
 the peace. 406.
 Grocching, grumbling.
 Grome, man. 405.
 Gronyng, groaning.

, Grony, to groan,
at. 414.
lamented, be-
led. [wail. 383.
1, to lament, be-
weeping,
pieces.
, to grow. [417.
ded, established.
des, foundations.
ling, on the face,
relling.
nd, growing.
e, to pout the
grumble.
ide, murmured.
ing, murmuring,
nbling. 403.
flat on the face.
, struck, caused
quiver. 398.
, ground.
like = *gruudilike*,
dily.
sharp. [rowful.
stern, *grim*, sor-
y, fiercely.
ne, pl. rough.
ne, sharp. [teeth.
to gnash the
el-layk, boldness.
pigs.
kind of fur. 418.
y, Gryslich, hor-
ness, hideousness.
u.
Jude, good.
Julte, guilt, tres-
, fault.
Junne, begun, did.
, young.
st, youngest.
o go.
ze, going.
Guode, good.
Gure, your, of you.
to strike off.
= *gestes*, deeds.
Gyden, to guide.
rule.

Gylen, to beguile.
Gyn, vessel, engine.
Gyng, host, assembly.
Gyterne, a guitar.
Gyve, a gift.

Ha, he.
Habbe, I have.
Habbe, Habben, to have.
Habbez, hast.
Habide, to abide.
Hach, hatch, cover.
Haf, have.
Hafd, Haft, had.
Hagt, anxiety, grief,
sorrow. 384.
Haire-clout, a garment
of horse-hair. 383.
Haigre, hair cloth. 383.
Hak, a hatchet.
Halled = *baled*, rushed.
Halched, fastened.
Halce = *bals*, neck.
Hald, Halde, Halden,
to hold.
Haldand, holding.
Halden, *beld* in good
repute, esteemed.
Halden, pp. held.
Hal-dor, the hall-door.
Hale, to rush. 433.
Hale, recess, hole. 395.
Hale, whole.
Halely, wholly.
Half, side. [416.
Halgh, holy, a saint.
Hali, holy.
Halke, corner, recess.
Halmes, stalks. It may
be an error for Halines,
holiness (see note
p. 425).
Halp, helped.
Hals, the neck. 408.
Halse, entreat, conjure.
Halt, holds.
Halve, half.
Halvendele, half.
Halves, shares.
Halwede, hallowed.
Haly, holy,

Halydom, reliques of
saints. 421.
Halywater, holy water
Halzed, hallowed.
Ham, them.
Ham, Hame, home.
Hamward, homeward.
Han, to have. [429.
Hand = *and*, breath.
Hap, Happe, good for-
tune, hap, chance.
Hapnest, most fortu-
nate, happy.
Harde, severe.
Hardeliche, courage-
ously, boldly.
Hare, their, theirs.
Harnais, furniture.
Harryng, grating, rough.
Harde = *barde*, hard.
Hasardour, a gambler,
gamester.
Hasardrie, Hasardrye,
gambling, playing at
dice.
Hasped, enclosed, en-
veloped, fastened
(with a hasp.)
Hastly, hastily.
Hat, Hatte, is called,
named, designated.
392.
Hatande, hating.
Hate, to command. 392.
Hapel, a noble, a knight.
Hatiet, hates.
Hatren, clothes. 421.
Hattest, art called,
Hat, has. [411.
Haunte, to frequent.
Haunted, practised.
Haubergh, hauberk.
Haved = *hawed*, has.
Havede, had.
Handlen, to handle.
Haveck, Haveke, a
hawk.
Haveke, hawks.
Haven, to have, pret.
Hadde, Heside.
Hayes, Havet, has.

Havest, Haves, hast.
 Havkes, hawks.
 Havid, Haved, had.
 Havis, has.
 Hawbergh, hauberk.
 Hawwe, enclosure, garden.
 457. [rics. 411.
 Hawen, hawthorn ber-
 Hazer, more fit.
 He, eye. 425.
 He = *beo*, she,
 He, *bo*, or *bue*, they.
 Heape, assembly,
 Hed, Hede, the head.
 Hede, heed.
 Hedde, Hedden, had.
 Hedlez, headless.
 Heed, the head.
 Heengen, pl. hang.
 Heeved, the head.
 Hef, rose, swelled.
 Hegest, highest.
 Hegge, a hedge.
 Hegh, Heghe, high,
 Heghest, highest.
 Heghnes, highness,
 height.
 Heght, height.
 Hei, Heie, high.
 Heiemen, Heyemen,
 noblemen.
 Heihliche, greatly.
 Heilede = *beilsede*, sa-
 luted. 438.
 Heilnesse, health. 385.
 Heind = *bend*, courteous.
 Heivol, haughty,
 Heize, high.
 Heiste, height.
 Hel, Hele, salvation.
 Held, Helde = *eld*, old
 age, age.
 Helde = *bolde*, esteem.
 Helde, to bend down.
 416.
 Helder, rather.
 Hele, to heal.
 Hele, salvation, health.
 Heled, covered. 379.
 Heles, covers.
 Heling, salvation.

Helm, a helmet.
 Helpe, health.
 Helðe, safety.
 Hem, them.
 Heme, a shirt, skirt.
 Hend, Hende, hands.
 Hende, near. 467.
 Hende, urbane, cour-
 teous.
 Hendely, courteously.
 Hendest, most courteous.
 Hendy, gracious.
 Henge, to hang, [hence.
 Hennes, (1) hens, (2)
 Hens, hence.
 Hent, Hente, seized.
 Heo, (1) they, (2) she.
 Heom, them.
 Heonnes, hence.
 Heor, Heore, their.
 Heore, theirs. 411.
 Her = *er*, before.
 Her-bi, hereby.
 Her, (1) hear, (2) here.
 Her, Here, the hair.
 Her, of them.
 Her-of, hereof.
 Herande, hearing. [394.
 Herbergeri, lodging.
 Herbivore, here before.
 Herborw, harbour,
 abode. 394.
 Herborwed, lodged,
 sheltered. 394.
 Herd, hard.
 Herde, a keeper of
 cattle.
 Herdes = *erdes*, lands.,
 Herdne, an errand. 385.
 Here, an army. 393.
 Here, of them, their.
 Here, to hear, pret.
 Herde.
 Here, a hair shirt.
 Here, the hair.
 Here-ward, her-ward.
 Heres, theirs.
 Heren, an army. 393.
 Herie, to praise. 428.
 Heried, invaded.
 Heriynge, praise.

Herke, Herkne, to
 hearken.
 Herle, fillet.
 Hernes, brains.
 Herne3 = *ernes*, eagles.
 Herre, higher. 405.
 Hert, a hart.
 Herte, the heart.
 Herte-blood, heart's
 blood. [383.
 Herteden, consoled.
 Herting, consolation,
 comfort.
 Herttes, Herttez, harts.
 Hervest, harvest.
 Herye, to praise. 428.
 Heryinge, praise.
 Heryng, hearing.
 Hest, hast.
 Hest, highest. 419.
 Hestes, behests.
 Het = *et*, ate.
 Het, it. [mised. 392.
 Het, was called, pro-
 Hete, (1) heat, (2) hate.
 Hete, bid. 392. [433.
 Heterly, quickly, hastily.
 Heth, Heb, hath.
 Hethe, to entreat.
 Heþe, heath. [408.
 Hethede, commanded.
 Hethen, Heðen, hence.
 Heþene, heathen.
 Heþing, scorn. 423.
 Hett = *bete*, heat.
 Hette, called, promised.
 Hetterly, fiercely. 433.
 Hette3, promisedest.
 Heu, hue.
 Hevé, heavy.
 Heved, the head.
 Hevede, had.
 Heven, to raise.
 Heveneriche, the king-
 dom of heaven.
 Hevenlyche, heavenly.
 Hevidles, headless.
 Hevy, heavy.
 Hevyd, the head.
 Hey, Heye, hay.
 Heyer, higher.

eight.
 igh.
 e, great, high.
 ie, chiefly.
 height.
 (1) they, (2) she.
 , haste, to hasten.
 hides of land.
 hither.
 ard, hitherward.
 ither. [quickly.
 iste, 'in bie,'
 eld.
 o hear.
 hewed, cut.
 called, was called,
 ised.
 gh.
 hite, was called,
 nanded, pro-
 i. 392.
 y.
 cover. 379.
 overed.
 covering. [vants.
 1) him, (2) ser-
 ie, servants.
 ie, hanging.
 r, hair.
 se, herds.
) her, (2) their.
 let on hire.
 .
 em.
 arrives.
 ie, high.
 hasten. 415.
 hastened.
 , long.
 it, it.
 omised. 392.
 y, honour. 401.
 o rejoice. [est.
 = *biseste*, high-
 she, (2) who.
 o, they.
 e3, she-beasts.
 o hobble.
 ok, sickle.
 hood.
 uge.

Hogt = *logt*, taken.
 Hoked, hooked.
 Hokes, hooks.
 Hol, whole, sound.
 Hold = *beold*, held.
 Holde to, to go to.
 Holde, beholden, in-
 debted. [hold.
 Holde = *beolde*, should
 Holde, faithful.
 Holden, held, kept.
 Hole, whole.
 Holewe, hollow.
 Holly, wholly.
 Hollyn, holly.
 Holw, hollow.
 Holyliche, adv. holy.
 Hom, (1) home, (2) them.
 Homicidy, murder.
 Hond, hand.
 Hond, Honde, hound.
 Honde, hands.
 Hondele, to handle.
 Honden, hands.
 Hondsele, hansel, gift.
 Honge, Hongen, to
 hang.
 Honger, hunger.
 Honne, hence.
 Hontinge, hunting.
 Honurand, honouring.
 Hoor, hoar, hoary.
 Hoot, hot.
 Hop, hope, trust. [ing.
 Hopand, hoping, trust-
 Hor, their, of them.
 Hordom, whoredom.
 Hore, (1) hoary, (2) their.
 Hors, pl. horses.
 Horte = *beorte*, the heart.
 Horwed, unclean. 432.
 Hose, whose.
 Hoseli, Hosle, Hoslon,
 to housle, to admi-
 nister the sacrament.
 407.
 Hote, hot.
 Hote, to command. 392
 Hoten, called.
 Hotene, promised.
 Hoteð, imp. promise.

Hoteth, is called.
 Hou, how.
 Houle, an owl.
 Houve, cap, hood.
 Hove, to abide, dwell.
 Hoved, abode.
 Hoven, raised.
 Hovene, heaven.
 Hovenriche, the king-
 dom of heaven.
 Hoves, behoves.
 Hoves, hoofs.
 Hove3, hovers.
 How = *beow*, colour,
 hue, 404.
 How-gate, how-so.
 Hoxterye, huckstry.
 438.
 Hu, Hu3, colour, hue.
 Hu, how.
 Huam, whom.
 Huanne, when.
 Huannes, whence.
 Hud, imp. hide.
 Hude, to hide.
 Hudinge, secrecy. 415.
 Hue, they.
 Huer, where.
 Huere, their.
 Huerto, whereto.
 Huermeye, wherewith.
 Huervore, wherefore.
 Huet, what.
 Huichen, which.
 Huirnes = *burnes*, cor-
 ners, hiding-places.
 Hul, a hill.
 Huld, held.
 Hulde, to hold.
 Hulde, pl. held.
 Hulde, to flay. 413.
 Hulde, should hold.
 Hule, an owl.
 Hules, protects.
 Hulles, hills. [dred.
 Hundret, Hundreth, hun-
 Hunger, famine.
 Hungren, to hunger.
 Hungri-ger, famine-
 years.
 Hunke, acc. us two.

- Hunne, to grant. 389.
 Huo, who.
 Hupte, hopped.
 Hurde, heard.
 Hure, our, of us. 400.
 Hure, Huire, hire, reward.
 Hure and hure, alternately. 395.
 Hurkled, rested. 433.
 Hurne, corner. 395.
 Hurrok, an oar. 433.
 Hurte, the heart.
 Hus, Huse, a house.
 Huych, Huyche, which.
 Huyre, hire.
 Huyter, whiter.
 Hwan, when.
 Hwar, where.
 Hwat, why, what.
 Hwatliche, quickly. 406.
 Hwe, hue, colour, complexion.
 Hwed, hued, coloured.
 Hwere, where.
 Hwet, what! lo!
 Hwi, why. [interval].
 Hwil, Hwile, while, an
 Hwo, who.
 Hwuch, which, what.
 Hy, she.
 Hy, they.
 Hyh, Hyhe, high.
 Hyht, promised.
 Hynd, hinder, backwards,
 Ilyne, him.
 Hyne, a servant, *kind*.
 Hyng, Hynge, to hang.
 Hyre, (1) her, (2) their.
 Hyghte, was called.
 Hy3, Hy3e, high.
 Hy3e, heights.
 Hy3ed, hastened.
 Hy3est, highest.
 Hy3ez, hastens. [height].
 Hy3t, (1) called, (2)
 Ibake, pp. baked. [406].
 Ibanned, summoned.
 Ibe, Ibeo, been.
 Ibere, sound, noise. 400.
 Iblesset, pp. blessed.
 Iblowe, blown. 404.
 I-bore, born.
 Ibounde, pp. bound.
 I-broken, broken.
 I-bro3t, pp. brought.
 Ic, I.
 Icaried, pp. carried.
 Ich, (1) I, (2) each.
 Ichabbe, Ichave, I have.
 Icham, I am.
 Ichcholle, I will.
 Iche, each.
 I-clepet, pp. called.
 Ichot = *I wot*, I know.
 Icholle = *ich wolte*, I will.
 Ichulle, I will.
 I-cloped, pp. clothed.
 Icluped, pp. called.
 Icome, pp. come.
 Icopet, coped, having a
 cope.
 I-cristned, I-cristnid, I-
 cristened, pp. baptized.
 Icundur, more like. 398.
 Icwede, spoken. 405.
 Icweme, to please.
 Idel, (1) idle, (2) idol.
 Idelnisse, idleness.
 Idolven, pp. dug.
 Ido, Idon, done, caused.
 Idyket, pp. ditched.
 Ifare, gone.
 I-frijet, pp. fried.
 Ifuld, pp. filled.
 Ig, I.
 Igain, Igaines, against.
 Igain-sawe, contradic-
 tion. 384.
 I-gistned, pp. lodged, en-
 tertained. 422.
 I-gon, gone.
 Igranted, pp. granted.
 I-had, pp. had.
 Ihert, pp. heard.
 Ihold, residence. 404.
 Iholde, esteemed.
 I-hote, called.
 I-hunted, pp. hunted.
 Ihuret, pp. rewarded.
 I-kept, pp. kept.
 I-kest, casts, cast.
 Il, bad wicked.
 Iladde, led.
 Ilaste, lasted.
 I-leave, permission.
 I-leve, to believe.
 I-lezen, lain. [peers].
 Ilike, (1) alike, (2) com-
 mliknet, compared.
 Ilijst, pp. lit.
 Ilk, (1) same, (2) each.
 Ilka, each.
 Ilkan, each one.
 Ilke, same.
 Ille, bad, wicked.
 Ilome, frequently.
 Ilyche, alike.
 Imad, pp. made.
 Imang, Imange, among.
 Imeind, mixed. 395.
 Imid, amid, amidst.
 In-come, to come in.
 In-don, pp. collected, ga-
 thered.
 Ine = *egben*, eyes. 430.
 Ine, in.
 In-middes, amidst.
 In-monge3, amongst.
 Inne, adv. in.
 In-nogh, Innoghe,
 enough, sufficiently,
 'innogbe knawen',
 well-known.
 Inomen, taken.
 Inou, enough.
 Inouwe, pl. enough.
 Ins3t, insight.
 In-spranc, entered,
 sprang in.
 Insted, instead.
 In-wis = *iwis*, truly.
 Inwyt, Innerwit, con-
 science.
 I-ordeyned, pp. ordained.
 Ioyeden, pl. rejoiced.
 I-potayne, hippopota-
 mus.
 Irchones, Irchounes,
 hedghogs. 418.
 Ire, her.

I-redy, ready.
Is, them.

Ised, pp. said.

Isei, Isey, saw.

Iseo, to see.

Iset, pp. set.

Iseþ, pl. see.

Iseye, pl. saw.

Isejen, seen.

Islept, pp. slept. [404.

Isliked, made smooth.

Isome, peaceable. 406.

Isowen, sown. [tained

Isoustained, pp. sus-

Isoused, pp. spoused.

Issote, pp. shot.

Issue, hole, opening.

Isustained, pp. sustained.

I-termynet, pp. ended.

Iþez, throve. 415.

Itide, to betide.

I-trized, Itrijet, pp. tried,
proved.

Iturnd, pp. turned.

Ivel, evil, disease, sick-
ness.

Ivo, seize. 403.

Iwar, wary. 398.

Iwis, truly.

Iwite, to blame.

Iwoned, wont, accus-
tomed.

Iwonne, pp. won.

I-wriþen, pp. twisted, en-
twined.

Iwroust, pp. worked.

I-wyis = *iwis*, indeed, in
truth.

I-jete, eaten. 412.

I-jolde, restored. 413.

Janglande, talking. 421.

Janglers, chatters.

Japers, jesters. [vices.

Japes, japez, jokes, de-

jaunys, jaundice.

Jeauntez, giants.

Jolef, pleasant.

Jolilé, joyfully, merrily.

Joly, pleasant, joyful.

Jopardé, jeopardy.

Jornes, journeys.

Joyfnes, youth.

Joyst, rejoiced.

Juge, judge.

Justise, judge.

Jumpred = *jumpre*, sor-
row, trouble. 434.

Kachereles, catchpolls.

Kalle, to cry out, ex-
claim.

Karf, cut. 408.

Karful, sorrowful.

Kas, accident, 'as *yn*
kas, as happened.

Kateyl, wealth.

Kay, left.

Kayred, departed, went.

Kayser, emperor.

Kaytefes, wretches.

Kechyn, kitchen.

Kei, key.

Keizes, keys.

Kele, to cool.

Ken, kine.

Ken, Kene, keen, strong.

Kende, (1) kind, nature,
(2) natural.

Kendeliche, naturally.

Kendes, natures, kinds.

Kene, bold, keen.

Kenly, keenly.

Kenne, kin.

Kenne, shew.

Kenned, shewn, taught.

Kenneþ, teaches.

Kepe, Kepen, to keep
watch, care for, re-
gard. 399.

Kepez, regards.

Kepich, care I. 399.

Kepud, kept.

Kepyng, care.

Kertles, mantles.

Kerve, to cut. 408.

Kervyng, cutting.

Keschte = *kescht*, casts.

Kest, (1) cast, (2) kissed.

Keste, to cast.

Kesten, pl. pret. cast.

Kete, noble.

Kevel, covering. 408.

Keveryng, recovering.

Kid, made known. 385.

Kinde, natural (form).

Kindely, by nature.

Kingrik, Kingrike, a
kingdom.

Kinnesman, kinsman.

Kipte, took.

Kirc, Kirke, church.

Kith, Kithe, to shew.
423.

Kithing, knowledge.

Kitte, to cut.

Kleþing, clothing.

Knaing = *knauing*, ac-
quaintances.

Knau, know. [ledge.

Knaulechyng, know-

Knave, boy, servant.

Knawe, to know.

Kneo, a knee.

Kneole, to kneel.

Kneolyng, kneeling.

Kneus, knew.

Kniht, knight.

Knihted, knighthood.

Knoleche, to acknow-
ledge.

Known, (1) to know,
(2) known. [ledging.

Knowleching, acknow-

Knowlych, knowledge.

Knowing, Knowyng,

Knowyng, knowledge.

Koles, coals.

Kolled, embraced.

Komen, pp. come.

Kontrey, country.

Koured, cowered.

Kouthe, known.

Krike, creek. 410.

Kud, known, renowned.

Kudde, revealed, mani-
fested.

Kueade, evil.

Kumen = *kumende*,
coming.

Kumly, comely.

Kun, kin.

Kunde, (1) nature, (2)

- native, (3) natural, right.
 Kunne, kin, race, nation.
 Kunnes, 'eny *kunnes*,' of any kind, any kind of.
 Kuppes, customs.
 Kuvere, recover.
 Kuynde, natural.
 Kuyndely, kindly.
 Kuyndliche, naturally.
 Kyd, appeared. 423.
 Kyd, Kydde, renowned, well-known. 423.
 Kyn, kine. [race.
 Kyn, Kynde, kin, kind,
 Kynd, Kynde, nature.
 Kynde, rightful.
 Kyndely, according to custom.
 Kyne, royal. 409.
 Kyngene, of kings.
 Kyrf, cut, stroke, 'on *kyrf*,' one blow.
 Kyrtyl, a mantle. 421.
 Kyst, Kyste, chest, ark.
 Kyth, city, country. kingdom. 423.
 Kybes, kingdoms, regions.
 Lacche, to take, have. 410.
 Lacching, receiving.
 Lace, belt, girdle.
 Lach, to take, have.
 Lad, Ladde, led.
 Laft, Lafte, left.
 Laght, Lagt, took. 385.
 Laghter, laughter.
 Lahynde, laughing.
 Lai, law.
 Laite, to seek. 417.
 Laitand, seeking.
 Lake-ryftes, lake-rifts, lake-fissures.
 Lake, to blame. 429.
 Lam, loam, dust. 425.
 Lamez, gives, affords.
 Lang, Lange, long. [ing.
 Lang-mode, long-suffer-
- Lange, to long for.
 Langar, Langer, longer.
 Lapped, wrapped, enclosed.
 Lare, Lore, instruction.
 Largeliche, largely, liberally.
 Lasse, less.
 Lasned, became less.
 Lastand, lasting, everlasting. [tended.
 Lasted, reached, ex-
 Lastende, lasting.
 Lat, lets, permits.
 Late, imp. let.
 Latere, latter.
 Lates, lets.
 Lath, Lathe, loath, displeased, loathsomely, displeasing. 429.
 Laðes, barns. 387.
 Latsom, loath, disinclined. 429.
 Lauer, lower.
 Laumpe, lamp.
 Lauhwe, to laugh.
 Laused, opened.
 Laute, took. 410.
 Lavande, flowing. 432.
 Laverd, lord.
 Laverding, a lord, noble.
 Laverdschipe, lordship.
 Laverock, lark.
 Law, Lawe, low.
 Lay, (1) a song, (2) law.
 Layke, to play, 430, 408.
 Laykes, sports.
 Layke3, sports, devices.
 Laykyng, sport, play, amusement.
 Layt, Layte, to seek.
 Layt, lightning.
 Laytes, seeks.
 Layth, wicked.
 Laze, to laugh.
 Lazed, laughed.
 Lazes, laughs.
 Lazinge, laughing.
 La3t, seized, taken, fastened. 385, 410.
 Lebardez, leopards.
- Leche, to heal.
 Leche, a physician. 414.
 Leche-craft, the healing art.
 Leches, physicians.
 Led, lead. [pass, live.
 Lede, to lead, direct, to Lede (lif for lyf), try (life for life).
 Lede, Leden, language, tongues. 420.
 Lede, man, person, people. 420.
 Ledes, people.
 Lede3, men, mortals.
 Leed, lead.
 Leef, leaf.
 Leely, truly, faithfully.
 Leendis, loins.
 Leepis, baskets. 385.
 Lees, less.
 Lees, false. 420.
 Leete, to leave.
 Leeve, to believe.
 Lef, Lefe, to leave.
 Lef, pleasing, dear, 'lef sir,' dear sir.
 Lef, permission.
 Lefdye, lady.
 Lefe, beloved.
 Leeful, Leful, Leeveful, permissible, lawful.
 Lefful, dear, precious. 394.
 Legge, (1) lay, (2) liege.
 Leide, laid.
 Lel, Lele, loyal, true.
 Lelliche, Lelly, Lellyche, Lely, truly.
 Lely-flowre, lily-flower.
 Lelye, truly.
 Leme, a light. 423.
 Len, Lene, to lend.
 Lend, lent. [414.
 Lende, Lenden, loins.
 Lende, to proceed. 410.
 Lene, lean. [395.
 Lene, to grant, permit.
 Leng, Lenge, to dwell, abide.

longer.
long.
l, dwelt. [longer.
e, Lengore,
it, longest.
e, Lenpe, length.
gave.
gone, abode.
t, the season of
t.
a man. 420.
people.
lear, pleasant.
limb.
lion.
le, leaned.
eaped, ran.
ountenance.
t, to learn.
Leosen, to lose.
ge, loss.
t, dearest.
aped.
Lepen, to leap,
hasten.
danced.
leaps, runs.
taught.
ountenance.
o teach, learn.
, taught.
, to learn.
esse, less.
p, loose, release.
eadow, pasture.

o destroy.
deliverer. 416.
to become less.
e, lessening, di-
tion.
st, loses.
lease.
este, (1) least, (2)
rivance, device
to last.
= *lesteð*, imp.
i to. 394.
Lestne, to listen.
nge, pasturing.
ndrance.

Lete, to forsake, leave,
to leave off.
Lete, to let, permit.
Lete, voice. 396.
Lett, Lette, put a stop
to, to hinder.
Leperne, leathern.
Leve, leaf. [to live.
Leve, (1) to believe, (2)
Leve, to forsake, leave
off.
Leve, Leue, to grant.
Leve, leave, permission.
Leve, pl. dear.
Leved, having leaves.
Leved, Levede, re-
mained.
Levedi, Levedy, lady.
Levelike, kindly. 390.
Leven, to believe.
Levening, lightning.
Levere, rather, liefer.
Leves, imp. believe.
Levest, most pleasing,
lievest.
Levez, pl. leave.
Levez, leaves (of trees).
Lewde, Lewed, lay-men,
ignorant, unlearned.
Lewe, warm. 408.
Lewed-men, laymen.
Lewse, pasture. 381.
Ley, to lay.
Leyd, laid.
Leyke, to play. 408.
Lhest, listens.
Lhord, Lhorde, lord.
Libardes, leopards.
Libbe, to live.
Licam, the body. 393.
Lich, (1) like, (2)
body. 393.
Lichame, body.
Licour, liquor.
Lif, life.
Lif=*lef*, pleasing. [time.
Lif-dawes, life-days, life-
Lifd, lived.
Life, Lyfe, to live.
Lifode, sustenance, live-
lihood.

Lift, Lifte, firmament,
sky. 415.
Lift, the left.
Ligge, to lie. [lied.
Lighed, spoke falsely,
Light, active.
Light, (1) to lighten, to
set light to, (2) to
alight, descend.
Ligten, to descend.
Liht, (1) fallen, (2) light.
Lihþ, lies.
Lik, like. [383.
Likam, body, form.
Like, to delight, please.
390.
Likerous, pleasant, de-
lightful.
Likes, pleases.
Liknes, likeness.
Linde, linden-tree.
List, pleases.
Listely, pleasantly.
Listes, wiles. 399.
Lit, stain. 382.
Litele, to make little.
Lith, limb, member.
Liðe, to listen. 385.
Lither, bad, wicked, un-
toward.
Lives, alive. 408.
Lizt, light, imp. alight.
Lizt, Lizte, to lighten,
amuse.
Lizte, easy, easily.
Lizter, easier.
Lizþ, lies.
Liztliche, easily, quickly.
Liztinge, lightning.
Lizttere, quicker.
Llak, lake. [called.
Lobbekeling, a fish so
Lobres, lubbers;
Wright's text reads
Lobies.
Lode3-mon, a pilot.
Lodlych, loathsome.
396. [415.
Lof, (1) love, (2) praise.
Lofe, to love.
Loof, Lofe, Loof, a loaf.

- Loī = *leof*, dear, pleasing. 401.
 Loīte, 'upon *loīte*,' 'onloīte,' on high, above, aloft.
 Lofden, pl. loved.
 Logh, laughed.
 Loghe, deep. 432.
 Loh, laughed.
 Lok, Loke, to look.
 Loken, locked up.
 Loke3, looks.
 Loki, to enclose. 397.
 Lokke3, locks.
 Lokyng, looking.
 Lokynge, custody.
 Loky, to guard. 397.
 Lomb, Lombe, lamb.
 Lome, ark, vessel, tool. 420.
 Lomen, Lomes, tools.
 Lond, Londe, land.
 Lone, (1) a lane, (2) loan.
 Longage, language.
 Longe, to belong. [428.
 Longe, on account of.
 Longes, belongs.
 Loovis, Lovis, loaves.
 Lopen, pp. run.
 Lordlich, lordly.
 Lordynge, Loverdyng, a lord, lordling.
 Lore, instruction, knowledge, wisdom.
 Lore, pp. lost. [out.
 Lorked, lurked, stole.
 Lorne, lost.
 Los, fame. 411.
 Lossom, Lossum, love-some, lovely.
 Lostes, lusts.
 Losyng, perdition.
 Lote, sound. 435.
 Lote, cheer. 390, 391.
 Loten, faces. 390, 391.
 Lote3, voices.
 Loth, Loþ, indisposed, disinclined.
 Loþe, disinclination, displeasure.
 Lopli, loathsome.
- Louh, low.
 Louked, fastened, looped.
 Loure, to scowl.
 Lout, Loute, to stoop, to bow, obey. 380.
 Loutede, did bow.
 Loutte, imp. bend, stoop.
 Louwest, lowest.
 Lovand, praising.
 Love = *alve* = *balve*, side part.
 Love, to praise.
 Loveles, without love.
 Loverd, Lord. [lonely.
 Loveliche, pleasantly.
 Lovelokest, most lovely.
 Lovelych, lovely.
 Loveye, to love. [ing.
 Lowande, shining, glow.
 Lowkande, closing.
 Lo3, the deep. 432.
 Lo3e, (1) pl. low, (2) pit.
 Lo3en, pl. laughed.
 Lud, loud. 395.
 Lud, man, servant.
 Lud, language, song.
 Lude, a man, a knight.
 Ludes, servants, vassals.
 Luef, favourite, beloved.
 Luef (is), prefers, loves.
 Lufe, to love.
 Lufly, Luflych, lovely, pleasantly.
 Luflyly, courteously, lovingly.
 Lufreden, Lufredene, love.
 Luft, left.
 Lugged, lodged.
 Lullede, lolled, hung.
 Lumpen, befallen.
 Lur, loss.
 Luring, louring. 403.
 Lurking, hiding-place, lair. 416.
 Lurne, to learn.
 Luste, pleased.
 Lut, Lout, bend. 380.
 Lute, little.
 Luted, bowed.
- Lutel, little.
 Luper, wretched.
 Lutten, did obeisance. 380.
 Luyte, little.
 Lybbe, to live.
 Lyf, life.
 Lyf = *lef*, love, favour.
 Lyfand, living.
 Lyftande, lifting, floating.
 Lyflode, subsistence, livelihood.
 Lyft, lifted, extolled.
 Lyfte, to raise, build.
 Lyfte, (1) lifted, (2) sky.
 Lygge, to lie.
 Lyghtly, easily, soon.
 Lyht, lighteth, descends.
 Lyht, Lyhte, light.
 Lyk, like.
 Lykame, body, shape, form.
 Lyke, to please, delight, 'lyked not ille,' be not displeased.
 Lyke3, pleases.
 Lyking, pleasure.
 Lykkest, most like.
 Lykne, to liken, compare.
 Lykyng, pleasure.
 Lylie-whyt, white as a lily.
 Lym, limb.
 Lyndes, loins.
 Lyounes, lions.
 Lype, a leap.
 Lyste, pleased.
 Lyte, little.
 Lyve, life.
 Lyze, to lie to, deceive.
 Lyzen, to tell lies.
 Lyzere, liar.
 Lyst = *lyzte*, to alight.
 Lyst, light, active.
 Lyst, easily, lightly.
 Lyst, befell, happened.
 Lyst, Lyste, light.
 Lystly, lightly, quickly.

Ma, more.
 Maad, pp. made.
 Mac, make.
 Mach = *macbe*, to match.
 Mad, frightened, astounded.
 Mad, pp. made.
 Maïesté, majesty.
 Maïster, Maïstir, master.
 Maïsters, chiefs, masters.
 Maïstre, Maïstrie, mastery, victory.
 Makand, making.
 Make, companion, equal, match. 421.
 Maked, Makede, made.
 Makes, Makez, couples, (male and female), wives.
 Makye, to make.
 Makyer, maker, creator.
 Male, bag, mail. 418.
 Malys, malice.
 Man, one.
 Manas, menace, threats.
 Manasside, charged.
 Mancioum, mansion.
 Mandeth, mends, improves.
 Maners, virtues.
 Manhed, humanity, kindness.
 Mankunde, mankind.
 Man-kyne, mankind.
 Manliche, manly.
 Manne, men's.
 Manqueller man-killer, executioner.
 Manrede, homage. 408.
 Manslautre, manslaughter.
 Mansleyng, manslaughter, murder.
 Mantile, a mantle.
 Manyere, manner.
 Mar, Mare, more, greater.
 Marchantes, Marchaundes, Marchaundes, merchants.

Marchaundise, merchandise.
 Marchaundrie, Marchaundrye, merchandise, business.
 Marewe, morrow, morning.
 Marge[r]ly perles, pearls. 438.
 Marreys, marsh. 411.
 Mas, makes.
 Mase, moderation.
 Masse, prayer.
 Maste, most, greatest.
 Mate, afraid.
 Mater, Materie, substance, matter.
 Maugre, in spite of. 431.
 Maumentri, idols.
 Maumet, an idol. 424.
 Maundemens, commandments.
 Maunget, eaten.
 Mawe, stomach, maw.
 Mawgre, displeasure. 431.
 May, maid, maiden. 419.
 Maydenhod, maidenhead.
 Maydynes, maidens.
 Mayn, (1) strength, main, (2) great, main, powerful, strong.
 Mayné, Mayny, servants, household.
 Maytene, to maintain.
 Mayster, master, knight.
 Maysteresse, mistress.
 Maystrie, mastery.
 Maystery, masters, superiors.
 Mayth, mayest.
 Mazty, mighty.
 Me, one, they.
 Meddelid, mixed. 411.
 Mede, meed, pay.
 Mede, mead.
 Medecin, medicine.
 Mede-wyves, midwives.
 Medle, conflict. 411.

Meede, reward.
 Meel, meal.
 Meer, lake.
 Meete, measurement.
 Meeten, to dream.
 Meine, household, domestics.
 Meined, mixed. 395.
 Meires, mayors.
 Meke, meek.
 Meke, to make meek.
 Mekeliche, meekly.
 Mekille, much.
 Mekli, Mekly, meekly.
 Mel, meal.
 Meld, Melde, to rebuke, accuse. 426.
 Mele, to speak.
 Melle, to mix. 411.
 Melly, conflict, contest. 411.
 Mellyng, mixing. 411.
 Melodye, melody.
 Men, one, they.
 Mene, to mean, signify.
 Mene, mean, middle.
 Meric, pleasantly.
 Meneth, pl. sorrow, grieve.
 Meng, imp. mix. 395.
 Menesse, fellowship. 428.
 Mensk, Menske, honour.
 Menske, to honour. 415.
 Mensked, adorned.
 Menskelye, honourably, decently.
 Menskful, honourable, respected.
 Ment, 1) remembered, (2) bemoaned.
 Meny, Menzé, company, host.
 Merciede, thanked.
 Mere, boundary. 418.
 Merk, mark.
 Merke, dark.
 Merpes, mirths, sports.
 Mersuine = *meersuine*, porpoise. 425.

Mervayle, Mervaylle,
 Merveyle, Merveylle,
 marvel, wonder, miracle.
 Mervelous, marvellous.
 Mesagyr, Messenger,
 Messagere, Messenger,
 messenger.
 Meshe, to tear in pieces. 398.
 Mesauntere, misfortune.
 Meseise, uneasiness,
 trouble.
 Mesur, Mesure, moderation.
 Mesurable, Mesurabul,
 moderate, temperate.
 Mest, most.
 Mestedel, most part.
 Met, mete, to measure.
 Mete, meat.
 Mete, proper, meet.
 Meten, meat. 38.
 Meten, to measure, pp.
 measured.
 Mett = *mete*, to meet.
 Metinge, measurement.
 Meth, Meþe, Meðe,
 mercy, pity, moderation.
 394.
 Meþeþe, immoderate,
 extraordinary.
 Meþink, methinks.
 Meve, to move.
 Meveþ, moves.
 Mey, may.
 Meynð, household.
 Meyntene, to maintain.
 Meyny, assembly,
 household, family.
 Miche, much.
 Mid, with.
 Mid, middle.
 Mide, with.
 Midward, middle.
 Mightand, mighty.
 Miht, might.
 Miht, mightest.
 Mihti, mighty.
 Mihtful, mighty.
 Mikel, much, great.

Mikeland, great.
 Mikeled, made great,
 increased.
 Mikelik, meekly.
 Mikle, great (distance),
 far.
 Milce, pity.
 Mildelike, meekly.
 Miles, maidens. 420.
 Min, mind, remembrance.
 Min, Mine, to bear in
 mind.
 Mined, mindful.
 Mines, rememberest,
 thinkest.
 Mirk, Mirke, dark. 407.
 Mirkenes, darkness.
 Mirknesses, darknesses.
 Mirthes, joys, pleasures.
 Mis, Misse, to lose.
 Misbeleevynge, unbelieving.
 Mischance, misfortune.
 Mischeving, misfortune.
 Mischief, misfortune.
 Misdede, misdeeds.
 Mismo, to do amiss.
 Misliche, badly. 407.
 Misliked, was displeased.
 Misliking, displeasure.
 Misrempe, to misplead.
 407.
 Mis-seid, slandered.
 Missely, badly.
 Mist = *mizt*, mightest.
 398.
 Mister, need.
 Mithe, to satiate, appease. 409.
 Mitte, with the.
 Mix, wretch.
 Mijthi, mighty.
 Mo, more.
 Moch, Moche, much,
 great.
 Mochedel, very much.
 Mochel, great.
 Mod, Mode, mood,
 mind, manner. 388.

Modor, mother, mother's.
 Mody, moody, proud.
 388.
 Moght, Moht, might.
 Molaynes, embossed ornaments.
 Mold, Molde, earth,
 world, mould.
 Moldeþ, dry lands.
 Mom, a sound, muttering.
 437.
 Mon, man, one.
 Monð, money.
 Mone, shall. 416.
 Mone, the moon.
 Mongeþ, In-mongeþ,
 amidst.
 Moni, many.
 Mont, mount.
 Mountain, mountain.
 Mony, Mouye, many.
 Monye, money.
 Monyth, a month.
 Moon, moaning, mourning.
 Mooneþ, month.
 Mor, a moor.
 More, greater.
 More = *moze*, may.
 More, root.
 Mornynge, mourning.
 Morun, the morn, morning.
 Morwe, morrow, morning.
 Morwynnge, morning.
 Mose, hedge-sparrow.
 398.
 Moskles, mussels.
 Most, Moste, must.
 Most, Moste, greatest.
 Moste, might.
 Mot, Mote, must, may.
 394.
 Moun, be able. 408.
 Mountouns, amount.
 Mourkne, to rot, decay.
 433.
 Mournen, to mourn.
 Moutes, falls off. 429.

Mowen, to be able, may.
 Mowe, mayest.
 Mowen, pl. may.
 Mowth, mouth.
 Moje, pl. may.
 Mojt = *mot*, must.
 Mojt, might.
 Much, great.
 Muckel, greatness, muchness. 435.
 Mudde, mud, mire.
 Mugerl, to be able. 386.
 Mught, might.
 Mukel, great, greatness.
 Mulle, dust. 439.
 Mune, to consider. 392.
 Munstrals, minstrels.
 Munteth, purposes, or intends (to go). 419.
 Muthe, mouth.
 Murnyng, mourning.
 Murge, to make merry. 421.
 Murgeth, pl. make merry.
 Murie, pleasant.
 Murphe, Murþe, mirth, pleasantness. 402.
 Muze, may.
 Myche, much, very.
 Myd, with.
 Myddes, midst.
 Myddes, middle.
 Myde, with.
 Mydlerd, middle-earth, the world.
 Myghtfulnes, might, strength.
 Myht, mightest.
 Myke, the crutches of a boat, which sustain the mainboom, or the mast and sail, when they are lowered for the convenience of rowing. 433.
 Mykel, much.
 Mykel-hede, greatness.
 Mylde, meek.
 Myldely, meekly, humbly.

Mylder, meeker.
 Mynde, memory.
 Mynen, to undermine.
 Mynn, Mynne, to recollect, remember.
 Myrk, Myrke, dark. 407.
 Myriest, most pleasant.
 Myry, pleasant, amicable.
 Myrly, pleasantly, joyously.
 Myschaunce, mistakes, misdeeds, misfortune.
 Mysdede, wronged.
 Mysse, amiss, badly.
 Mysseyde, slandered.
 Myzt, might.
 Myztez, mights, powers.
 Na, Naa, no.
 Nabbe, to have not.
 Nad = *nade*, had not.
 Nadde, Nade, had not.
 Naghertale, night-time.
 Naght, naught.
 Naht, not.
 Nai, denial.
 Nakers, kettle-drums.
 Nakryn, of kettle-drums.
 Nam, took, went, took the way.
 Namare, no more.
 Nameliche, Namely, Namlic, chiefly, especially.
 Nan, Nane, none.
 Nan-mo, Nan-more, no more.
 Nart, art not.
 Nas, was not.
 Nasche, soft. 428.
 Nat, not.
 Natheles, nevertheless.
 Naper, neither.
 Nothing, nothing.
 Nauper, neither.
 Nauzt, not.
 Nave, have not.
 Nawper, neither.

Nayte, to use. 435.
 Nayted, celebrated.
 Naytly, neatly, deftly.
 Nazt, not.
 Ne, nor, not.
 Nebsseft, image.
 Nec, neck.
 Nedde, had not.
 Neddur, Nedere, adder, serpent.
 Nede, of necessity, needs.
 Nede, '*ful nede*,' = '*ful needs*,' of necessity.
 Nedful, necessitous. 387.
 Nedlez, needless, useless.
 Nedys, needs, of necessity.
 Neet, neat, cattle. 386.
 Nefen, Nefne, to name.
 Nefur, never.
 Negh, Neghe, to come near.
 Neghburgh, neighbour.
 Neghes, approaches.
 Neh, Neih, nigh, near.
 Neist, next.
 Neiz, nigh.
 Neizhebor, neighbour.
 Nek, Nekke, the neck.
 Nel, will not.
 Neltu, wilt thou not.
 Nem, took.
 Neme 3e, take ye.
 Nemned, named.
 Nempnen, to name.
 Neod, Neode, need, work.
 Neodes, of necessity.
 Neodful, needful, necessary.
 Neoze, nine.
 Ner, nearer.
 Nere, near.
 Nere, were not.
 Nerre, nearer.
 Nes, was not.
 Nese, nose.
 Nesshede, delicacy, softness. 428.
 Nest, nearest.

Nestland, nestling.
 Neth, hath not.
 Neu, new.
 Neveu, nephew.
 Neven, Nevene, to name.
 Nevenes, names.
 Never be helder, never
 the more (see Hel-
 der).
 Nevre, never.
 Newed, renewed.
 Neje, to approach.
 Nejed, approached.
 Nejh[e], to approach.
 Nejhebre, neighbour.
 Nich, denial.
 Nich = *nicht*, night.
 Nightes, by night.
 Nigramauncy, necro-
 mancy.
 Niht, night.
 Nil, Nile, will not.
 Nime, to take.
 Nis, is not.
 Niß, envy. 380.
 Nißful, envious. 380.
 Nite, to refuse. 426.
 Niwe, new.
 Nixt, next.
 Niyzt, night.
 No = *ne*, not. 389.
 No-but, only.
 Nobelay, nobleness.
 Noblete, nobility, noble-
 ness.
 Nobleye, nobility.
 Nobliche, nobly.
 Noght, Noht, not.
 Noke, notch, nook, cor-
 ner.
 Nokes, corners, pas-
 sages.
 Nolde, would not.
 Nollep, pl. will not.
 Nom, took.
 Nombre, number.
 Nome, pl. took.
 Nome, security, 390.
 Nome, name.
 Nomen, taken.
 Non, none.

Non, None, noon.
 Nonne, a nun.
 Nonnerye, a nunnery.
 Nout, not.
 Nouthet, neither.
 Noust, not.
 Norischi, to nourish.
 Norysshunge, nourish-
 ing.
 Not, knows not.
 Not but = *no-but*, only,
 except.
 Note, devices, plans,
 power, business. 397,
 402.
 Note, nut.
 Note, weapon, tool.
 397, 436.
 Nopeles, nevertheless.
 Notemuges, nutmegs.
 Noþer, neither.
 Noþerward, down-
 wards, 398.
 Nou, now.
 Nouþer, neither.
 Nouþwhere, nowhere.
 Nowel, Christmas.
 Nowþe, now (then).
 Nowther, neither.
 Noyce, noise.
 Noye, to annoy.
 Nojt, not.
 Nu, now.
 Nul, will not.
 Nultou, wilt thou not.
 Nuly, I will not.
 Numen, taken. 381,
 386.
 Nummun = *nomen*,
 taken.
 Nust, knowest not.
 Nuste, knew not.
 Nuy, annoy, harm.
 Nwe, new.
 Nwe, anew, recently.
 Nwe-zer, new-year.
 Nwy = *annoy*, anger.
 431.
 Nwyed, annoyed, made
 angry. (year).
 Nw-zer, Nw-zeret, new-

Nw-zeres, new-year's.
 Nyej, nigh.
 Nyf, if not.
 Nyghtegale, nightin-
 gale.
 Nygun, a niggard, mi-
 ser. 421.
 Nyht, night.
 Nyhtes, by night.
 Nyle, will not.
 Nyme, to take.
 Nymmez, takes.
 Nymb, receives.
 Nys, extraordinary,
 foolish.
 Nywe, new.
 Nyxt, next.
 Nyze, nigh.
 Nyst, Nyzte, night.
 O, of.
 O, one.
 Obak, on the back.
 Obedyent, obedience.
 Obeysen, to obey.
 About, about.
 About-ga, to revolve.
 Oc, also, 388.
 Oc = oð, oath.
 Odde, odd, uneven.
 Of, off, from.
 Of-dret, sore afraid.
 Oferd, afraid.
 O-ferrum, afar. 430.
 Offerand, Offrand, offer-
 ing.
 O-firr, afar.
 Of-saw, perceived.
 Of-scapie, to escape.
 Of-seie, perceived.
 Of-sende, send for. 412.
 Of-seye, perceived.
 Ofþypte, repented. 402.
 Oftoned, very angry.
 401.
 Og, owe, ought.
 Ogain, again.
 Ogain-saghes, contra-
 diction, reproaches.
 Ogaines, Oganis,
 Ogayne, against.

Oght, Oht, ought.
 Ok, Oke, Ook, oak.
 Okerer, Okerere, a
 usurer.
 Okering, Okeryng,
 usury.
 Okir, usury. 416.
 Olepi, only.
 Olt, old.
 On, one.
 Onan, anon.
 Onde, breath. 439.
 Onde, jealousy. 403.
 On-dep, adeep, in the
 deep.
 One, alone, self.
 Onderstonde, to under-
 stand. [stood.
 Onderstonde, pp. under-
 Ondervonge, to receive.
 Ondervonge, pp. re-
 ceived.
 Ondervynge, pret. pl.
 received.
 On-end, at last.
 Ones, once.
 One-sprute, outburst.
 416.
 Onewe, anew, again.
 Onez, once.
 On-fanged, up-took.
 On-ferrum, afar.
 On-grounde, aground.
 Onigt, at night. 384.
 On-loft, On-lofte, above,
 on the surface, aloft.
 Onlosti, idle, slothful.
 427.
 Onlyche, only.
 On-lyve, alive.
 Omneape, scarcely.
 Onon, anon. 388.
 On-raw, in row, in ar-
 ray.
 On-rounde, around.
 Onsagen, wicked
 speech. 384.
 Onsene, face, 406.
 On-sidis, aside.
 On-slep, On-slepe,
 asleep.

Onspekynde, ineffable.
 Onsware3, answers.
 On-polynde, On-poly-
 inde, intolerable, un-
 bearable. 427.
 On-todelinde, indivisi-
 ble.
 Onzyginde, invisible.
 Oo, ever, aye.
 Oon, one, 'in oon,' in
 one state.
 Oob, oath.
 Ope, open.
 Openlic, openly.
 Opon, upon.
 Oppenand, opening.
 Oppenes, imp. open.
 Opyn, open, manifest.
 Oor, ore.
 Or...or, either...or.
 Or = *ur*, our.
 Or, Ore = *ewer*, your.
 Orcherd, orchard. 424.
 Ordayny, to order, rule.
 Orde, point, end. 406.
 Ordeynour, ruler, or-
 dainer.
 Ore, mercy.
 Ore, your. 419.
 Ore, before.
 Oreisouns, prayers.
 Oreng, orange.
 Oreste, first. 385.
 Orf, cattle.
 Or-quar, anywhere.
 Orisoun, prayer.
 Or-litel, over-little, too
 little.
 Orped, valiant. 439.
 Or-quar, anywhere.
 Oryzt, aright.
 Oth, on the.
 Op, Othe, oath.
 Oper, or.
 Operwhile, sometimes.
 Other-whyle, some-
 times.
 Opren, dat. others.
 Ou, you.
 Ouert, fruit.
 Ouhte, ought.

Oune, own, one's own.
 Ous, us.
 Out-bere, to take out.
 Outen, foreign, strange.
 417.
 Out-taken, excepted,
 excluded.
 Outelyng, external.
 Out-toke, took out.
 Outrage, extraordinary.
 Oujt, Oujte, ought.
 Overal, everywhere.
 Overcomp, overcomes,
 surpasses.
 Overestes, uppermost
 parts. 417.
 Over-fare, to overgo.
 Over-ga, to overgo.
 Overgeb, surpasses,
 overgoes.
 Overgon, overgone,
 passed.
 Overlop, omission.
 Overmastes, highest,
 uppermost.
 Over-mykel, overmuch,
 too much.
 Over-pharan = *over-
 faren*, to pass over.
 394.
 Over-skytle, extraordi-
 narily. 421.
 Over-spradde, over-
 spread.
 Overtan, overtaken.
 Over-þogt, frightened.
 389.
 Over-þwert, across,
 athwart.
 Over-walt, overturned.
 Over-waltes, overflows.
 Over-wente, turned
 over. 390.
 Ow, you.
 Owai, away.
 Owe, Owen, own.
 Owel, awl. 398.
 Owen, ought.
 Owip, ought, owes.
 Own = alone, 'bim own,'
 by himself.

Oxspring, offspring.
Oynement, ointment.
Oze, Ozen, Ozene, own.
Ozt, ought.

Pacche, patch.
Paie, pleasure, liking.
Paid, pleased.
Pak-needle, pack-needle.
438.

Paleys, palace.
Palesye, palsy.
Pane, cloth.
Pape, pope.
Parauntre, perhaps.
Parfit, Parfite, perfect.
Parforme, to perform.
Parisschens, parishioners.

Parten, to share.
Partiliche, plainly.
Party, Partye, side, part.
Pas, Passe, to surpass.
Pas, passage.
Passet, passed.
Pases, paths.
Passchet, blown, dashed.
438.

Passynge, surpassing.
Pay, pleasure.
Payd, Payde, pleased.
Paye, to please.
Payne, penalty.
Payenes, pagans.
Payneme, pagan.
Payttrure, the defence
for the neck of a
horse.

Pees, peace.
Peine, penalty.
Pelle, a rich cloth, pall.
Peire, to impair, defame.
Pellure, Pelure, a kind
of rich and costly fur.
Penantz, Penaunce,
penance.
Pencelle, banner. 430.
Pendautes, the drop-
ping ornaments of
horse-gear.

Pennes, feathers.

Pens, pence.
Pented, appertained.
Peosen, pl. pease.
Perce, to pierce.
Percyl, parsley.
Perrey, perry.
Perrey, jewellery.
Persun, parson.
Pertelyche, apertly,
openly.

Pertene, to appertain.
Pertiliche, Pertly, clear-
ly, openly, plainly.
Pes, peace.
Pesecoddes, pea-shells.
Pette, pit.
Peyn, Peyne, pain.
Peynen, to endeavour.
Peyneble, painstaking,
earnestly.

Peyned = *pyned*, tor-
mented.
Peys, weight. 421.
Peyse, to weigh.
Pike, pitch. 410.
Pilewe, pillow.
Pilt, thrust. 388.
Pine, torment.
Pinen, torments.
Piries, pear-trees.
Piriwhit, perry.
Pitaile, foot-soldiers.
Plaidi, to plead. 400.
Plait, pleading. 395.
Plas, place.
Plat, Platte, flat.
Plate, steel armour for
the body.

Plaunte, to plant.
Playne, to complain.
Playnt, complaint.
Pleiden, to plead.
Pleide, played.
Plenté, plenty.
Plenteousliche, plente-
ously.
Plentez, fulness.
Plese, to please.
Plete, to plait.
Pley, play.
Pleye, to play.

Pleyn, Pleyne, to com-
plain.
Pleynand, complaining.
Pleynly, plainly.
Pliht, bound.
Plihten, to pledge.
Plihtful, dangerous.
425.

Plont, plant. [plough.
Plou, Plouz, Plowgh,
Plyghte, Plyht, pledged.
Plyzt, harm.
Pocir, Poer, power.
Pok, poke, pocket.
Pons, pence.
Ponysche, to punish, to
torment.

Porchas, what is obtain-
ed by conquest. 414.
Pore, poor.
Porettes, Porettes, leaks.
Pors, purse.
Porveid, provided,
guarded.
Porveynde, providing,
doing.

Pose, a cold in the
head. 415.
Potecary, apothecary.
Potte, to put.
Pouce, pulse.
Pouder, dust.
Pound, a pond.
Pouwer, power.
Pover, Povere, poor.
Poverore, poorer.
Povert, poverty.
Pourveid, provided.
Powdre, dust.
Poynt, a particle.
Prangled, compressed.
409.

Preie, to pray.
Preisen, to praise.
Preistes, priests.
Preinyng, prayer.
Preize, to pray.
Prentys, apprentice.
Preostes, priests.
Preoven, to prove.
Prese, press.

Pr
Pr
Pr
P
P
P
P
P
P
P

Preste, a priest.
 Preste, ready. 412.
 Preste, proudest. 428.
 Prestely, quickly, readily.
 Presteste, prompt, most punctual.
 Pretilyche, prettily.
 Preve, tried, proved.
 Preve, to prove.
 Prevy, secret.
 Preye, to pray.
 Preyere, prayer.
 Preyse, to praise.
 Princehed, dominion, rule.
 Pris, Prise, prize, honour, value.
 Prist = *prest*, active, quick.
 Prisoner, a jailor.
 Prisunes, prisoners.
 Privé, Privei, Pryvé, secret, familiar.
 Priveliche, secretly.
 Pryvete, secret.
 Promysioun, promise.
 Prout, proud.
 Provendrerer, holders of benefices.
 Prud, Prude, Fruide, pride. 382.
 Prute, pride.
 Prys, Pryse, price, prize.
 Pryvyte, a secret.
 Puire, pure.
 Pult, put.
 Pulte, to put, thrust.
 Pupplische, to publish.
 Pur, pure.
 Pur-blind, wholly blind. 414.
 Purchacen, to procure. 411.
 Pure, poor.
 Pured, refined.
 Purpos, purpose, mind.
 Purpre, Purpur, purple.
 Purvay, to get ready.
 Purveance; ordinance, plot.

Pute, Putte, pit.
 Puttide, put.
 Pyk, pike.
 Pyn = *pyne*, sorrow.
 Pyne, to torment.
 Pynen, Pynes, torments.
 Pynnyng-stole, a stool of punishment, a cucking-stool.
 Pyns = *pynes*, torments.
 Pysan, gorget of mail or plate attached to the helmet.
 Pyté, pity.
 Qua, who.
 Quac, to quake.
 Quain, whining, weeping.
 Quaintelye, knowingly, cunningly.
 Quakand, quaking.
 Qualle, whale. 425.
 Qualm, disease. 414.
 Quar, where.
 Quarbi, whereby.
 Quare, where.
 Quarfor, wherefore.
 Quarin, wherein.
 Quar-of, whereof.
 Quar-boru, where-through.
 Quarelle, dart, arrow.
 Quareres, quarries.
 Quat, what. [ever.
 Quat-als-ever, whatso-
 Quat, Quab, quoth, said, answered.
 Quatkin, what kind.
 Quat-sa-ever, whatso-ever.
 Quatso, whatsoever.
 Quavande, waving, flowing.
 Quawes, waves.
 Quede, a wretch. 416.
 Quede, evil. 416.
 Quedir, whether.
 Queintise, a stratagem.
 Queinteliche, quaintly, gaily.

Quek = *quik*, living.
 Quelle, to kill.
 Queme, to please. 400.
 Quen, when.
 Quer, whether.
 Quet, Quete, wheat.
 Quepen, whence.
 Queynte, quaint. 411.
 Queynte, quenched.
 Queyntely, craftily, cautiously.
 Qui, why.
 Quic, alive.
 Quicliche, quickly.
 Quil, Quile, while, time.
 Quilk, which.
 Quils, whilst.
 Quiste, bequest. 407.
 Quit clayme, to give up the claim to a thing.
 Quit, Quite, to reward.
 Quite, white.
 Quoake = *quok*, quaked.
 Quo-so, whoso,
 Quyle, while.
 Raadd, afraid.
 Rabben, turnips. 411.
 Rac, wind, *rack*, or driving clouds.
 Rad, active. 394.
 Rad, Rade, frightened, afraid.
 Rad, rode.
 Rad, promised.
 Radde, frightened, afraid.
 Radde, pret. read.
 Raddere, reader.
 Raddest, advisedest.
 Rade, ready.
 Rade, rode.
 Rade, road, way.
 Radly, quickly, readily.
 Rage, madness, fever. 426.
 Ragemon, a roll. 437.
 Raght, reached.
 Raht, reckoned. 420.
 Railed, set in order.

- Raken, to consume.
 387. [391.
 Ransaken, to ransack.
 Rap, haste, hurry.
 Rape, to hasten. 391.
 Rapli, quickly.
 Ras, rose.
 Ras, rush, haste, hurry.
 Rase, to run. 348.
 Rasse, eminence. 433.
 Rathe, Raße Raße,
 soon, quickly. 391.
 Rathly, quickly.
 Rattis, rats. [reached.
 Rauhte, obtained.
 Raumpe, to ramp. 430.
 Raunsoun, ransom.
 Rawpe, mercy, pity.
 382.
 Raykande, rushing,
 rapid.
 Rayke, to go. 433.
 Rayke3, goes.
 Rayle, to deck, orna-
 ment, to set in order.
 Rayled, arrayed.
 Raymen, to roam. It
 may also signify to
 rule.
 Raynande, raining.
 Raysoun, reason, argu-
 ment.
 Razt, reached, went.
 Realych, royally.
 Rearde, sound. 433.
 Reawere, piteous, kind.
 Reche, to reach, take.
 Reche, smoke, reek.
 434.
 Reche, to *reck*, care.
 397.
 Rechen, to tell. 385.
 Reching, interpretation.
 385.
 Rechles, careless.
 Recles, incense. 434.
 Recoverer, recovery,
 or recoveror.
 Red, imp. advise, propose.
 Red, Rede, counsel, ad-
 vice. 381.
 Redde, related.
 Redden, pl. counselled.
 Rede, remedy. 381.
 Rede, to advise. 381.
 Rede3, advisest.
 Redly, readily.
 Redy, ready.
 Reed, red.
 Refourme, to confirm,
 re-establish.
 Regnynde, reigning.
 Regratour, retailer.
 Reke, reek, smoke. 416.
 Rekenly, nobly, princely.
 Rele, to roll, pace.
 Relyf, remainder.
 Relyves, remnants,
 leavings.
 Rem, cry. 382.
 Rem, realm.
 Ren = *renne*, to run.
 Rended, rent.
 Reneye, refuse, forsake.
 Rengned, reigned.
 Rengnez3e, courses. 434.
 Renk, a knight.
 Reakkkes, men, people.
 Renne, to run.
 Rennyng, running.
 Rent, Rente, revenue.
 Repreve, to reprove.
 Reprevynges, reproofs.
 Reproof, reproof.
 Rere, to raise.
 Rerde, Rerid, reared,
 raised.
 Res, haste. 348.
 Resceyve, to receive.
 Rese, haste.
 Reste, rested.
 Resteles, Restlez, rest-
 less, unceasing.
 Resun, reason, right.
 Reu, to repent. 382,
 391.
 Reuful, piteous, sorrow-
 ful.
 Reuful, merciful, kind.
 Reuli, sorrowfully,
 Reume, realm, king-
 dom.
 Reuel, Reul, rule.
 Reve, to bereave.
 Revel, feasting, festi-
 vity.
 Rew, imp. have pity.
 Rewe, to pity. 382.
 Rewed, merciful.
 Reweli, Rewli, sorrow-
 ful. 382, 391.
 Rewful, merciful.
 Rewle, to rule, direct.
 Rewme, realm.
 Rewpe, pity. 382.
 Reyn, rain.
 Reysoun, reason, right.
 Ribaudye, ribaldry.
 Riche, kingdom. 405.
 Richeliche, richly.
 Richesse, riches.
 Ricchis, sets out, goes.
 Ridlande, pouring. 434.
 Rif, rife, rive, tear.
 Ristes, fissures, open-
 ings (see Ryve).
 Rig, back.
 Righte, to set right.
 Riht, right.
 Rihtfolle, righteously,
 equitably.
 Rihtfuliche, rightfully.
 Rike, kingdom.
 Rimed, spake loudly.
 Riped, searched. 426.
 Risand, Riseand, rising.
 Rise, branch. 396.
 Rith, right.
 Rivelic, frequently,
 often. 425.
 Rwe, to repent. 382.
 Rwe3 (me) repents me.
 Ri3t, Ri3te, right.
 Ri3ti, to set right.
 Ri3tly, rightly.
 Ro, a roe.
 Ro, peace. 419.
 Robberie, robbery.
 Roche, rock.
 Rode, rood, cross. 386.
 Rode-tre, the cross.
 Rode, complexion,
 colour. 402.

Rody, ruddy, flesh-coloured. [429.
 Rogg = *rogge*, to rend.
 Rok, rock.
 Role, to roll.
 Romand, roaring. 417.
 Ron, ran.
 Ronk, rank, bold.
 Roo, the roe.
 Rootless, restless.
 Rooch, a rock.
 Roode, cross.
 Rore, to roar.
 Ros, rose.
 Rospen, to rasp, diminish. 387.
 Rot, Rote, root.
 Roþer, rudder,
 Roþeron, oxen.
 Roþun, a cloud.
 Roting, decay.
 Rotte = *rote*, root.
 Roume, broad, roomy. 418.
 Rounce, horse, steed.
 Roun, to take counsel.
 Rounne, prayer, song. 420. [429.
 Rounce, to wrinkle.
 Rous, praise, renown. 436.
 Rout, company, host. 413.
 Rout, rush.
 Routhe, pity, mercy.
 Rowt, army.
 Rowtande, rushing, pouring. 432.
 Rowtes, companies.
 Roþe, rough.
 Roþly, roughly. 433.
 Ruchched, Ruched, settled, righted, rolled.
 Rude, complexion. 402.
 Rueled, rushed.
 Rulen, to rule.
 Runge, pl. rang.
 Runisch, fierce, sudden. 436.
 Runischly, fiercely.
 Runnen, pl. ran.

Rurd, noise, cry. 433.
 Rwlly, piteously.
 Ryalmes, realms.
 Ryche, rich (men).
 Ryd, to release.
 Rydelles, perplexed. 434.
 Ryden, ridden.
 Ryf = *ryfe*, rive, pierce.
 Ryg, Ryge, shower, rain. 432.
 Ryht, aright.
 Ryn, Rynne, to run.
 Ryne, to rain.
 Rynnes, runs.
 Rys, a branch, twig.
 Ryshed, rose.
 Ryve, to tear, rive.
 Ryzt, prepared.
 Ryzt, right, righteousness.
 Ryzteþ, aright.
 Ryztfol, rightful.
 Ryztneße, equity.
 Ryztwys, righteous.
 Ryztvolle, righteous.
 Ryztvolliche, rightfully, righteously.
 Sa, so.
 Saaf, safe, whole.
 Sac, fault. 423.
 Saccles, innocent.
 Sacclesli, innocently.
 Sad, staid, sober, tired, weary.
 Sad, satisfied. 420.
 Saddely, sorrowfully.
 Sadloker, more heavily.
 Saf, safe.
 Safiche, safely.
 Sag, Sagh, saw.
 Sagh, saws, words.
 Saghtel, peace, concord, 419.
 Sak, sake.
 Sak, fault, sin. 423.
 Sakerfyse, sacrifice.
 Sal, Sale, Sall, shall.
 Sald, sold.
 Sale, hall.

Salme, to sing psalms.
 Salt, shalt.
 Saltou, shalt thou.
 Saluen, to salute,
 Same, Samen, together, '*alle samen*,' altogether.
 Samened, Samned, gathered, collected.
 Sand, message. 383.
 Sant, holy.
 Santes, saints.
 Sar, Sare, sorrowfully, sorely.
 Sare, sore, sorrowful.
 Sari, Sary, sorry.
 Sarmoun, discourse, sermon.
 Sattle, to settle.
 Sau, saw.
 Sauf, Saufe, Sauffe, safe.
 Saufiche, safely.
 Saugh, Sauh, saw.
 Saul, Saule, the soul.
 Saun, Saunz, without.
 Saundyner, Sandiver, red ochre.
 Sauveur, saviour.
 Savur, savour.
 Savyte, safety.
 Sawel, Sawell, the soul.
 Sawes, words.
 Sawh, Say, saw.
 Sazeþ, words.
 Saztled, settled.
 Saztlyng, reconciliation, peace.
 Scade, divided.
 Scaped, escaped.
 Scaþe, scathe, harm, wrong. 390.
 Scau, to shew.
 Scene, bright, sheen.
 Sceu, to shew.
 Scha = *schaw*, wood, grove. 425.
 Schadewe, a shadow.
 Schaft, (1) form, make, (2) an arrow. 417.
 Schalk, Schalke, man, person. 434.

Schaltow, shalt thou.
 Schamie, imp. be
 ashamed.
 Schankes, legs.
 Schape, Schapen, to
 shape, devise, plan,
 prepare.
 Schapp, shape.
 Scharplyche, sharply,
 quickly.
 Schauing, manifestation,
 appearance.
 Schaw, Schawe, to shew.
 Schawe, a wood, grove.
 Schawles, a scarecrow.
 Scheawith, pl. appear.
 Schede, to separate, dis-
 tinguish. 400.
 Sheep = *sheepe*, shep-
 herd.
 Schel, shall.
 Schelde, a shield.
 Schelder, shielder.
 Schenchen, to pour out,
 to give drink. 419.
 Schende, to destroy,
 ruin, spoil, to hurt,
 harm, 401.
 Schene, bright, sheen.
 Schent, destroyed,
 beaten.
 Schere, to cut.
 Schete, to shoot.
 Scheathe, a sheath.
 Schew, Schewe, to shew.
 Schiff, turn, instant.
 Schild, Schilde, shield.
 Schilde, to shield.
 Schille, shrill. 398.
 Schilling, shillings.
 Schire, bright clear.
 409.
 Schirche, to shriek. 400.
 Schirme, to fight, con-
 tend. 401.
 Schirreves, sheriffs.
 Scho, she.
 Schok, shook.
 Scholde, should.
 Scholdest, shouldst.
 Scholes, hangs down (?)

Schome, shame.
 Schomliche, modestly.
 Schonde, shame, dis-
 grace.
 Schonkes, legs.
 Schoon, shoes.
 Schop, Schope, created,
 devised, made,
 planned.
 Schopen, pl. became,
 turned to.
 Schote, to shoot.
 Schowved, pushed,
 shoved.
 Schraf, shrove.
 Schred, clothed.
 Schrewe, wretch, fiend,
 villain.
 Schrewid, wicked.
 Schrippe, scrip.
 Schrof, shrove.
 Schroud, Schroude,
 clothing, shroud, gar-
 ment. [fess.
 Schryve, to thrive, con-
 Schuld, Schulde, should.
 Schulden, pl. should.
 Schuldren, Schuldres,
 shoulders.
 Schule, shall.
 Schulen, Schulle, Schul-
 len, pl. shall.
 Schuln, pl. shall.
 Schuniet, shuns. 401.
 Schyl-fysch, shell-fish.
 Schyndered, shivered.
 436.
 Schyre, bright.
 Schwne, shun, ward off.
 Sckile, skill 400.
 Sclaundrid, offended.
 Sco, she.
 Scor, score.
 Scorn, shorn, cut.
 Scrippes, wallets. 423.
 Scrit, a writing, a roll
 of parchment. 414.
 Scriven, shriven.
 Scued, shewed.
 Sealte, salt.
 Seche, to seek.

Sechende, seeking.
 Sechej, seeks.
 Seckes, sacks.
 Seculere, a layman.
 Sed, Sede, pp. said.
 Sed, Sede, seed.
 Seg, a man, person.
 Seg, Segge, a man, per-
 son, knight.
 Sege, siege.
 Segeð, falls, alights. 389.
 Segge, sedge.
 Segge, may say.
 Segge, Seggen, to say.
 Seh, saw.
 Seid, Seide, said.
 Seidestow, saidst thou.
 Seie, to say.
 Seie, seen.
 Seigen, to say.
 Seiles, sails.
 Sein, saint.
 Sein, seen.
 Seised, possessed.
 Seisine, possession. 414.
 Seist, sayest.
 Seith, says.
 Seynge, saying.
 Sek, a sack.
 Sek, Seke, sick.
 Sekand, seeking.
 Seke, to seek.
 Skenesses, sicknesses,
 diseases.
 Seker, sure, certain.
 Sekes, seekest.
 Seknesse, sickness.
 Seky, to seek, to look
 for.
 Sel, seal.
 Sel, time. 385.
 Selve, Selven, self, selves.
 Selcouth, Selcouthe,
 strange, wonderful.
 412.
 Selcut, Selcuth, wonder,
 wonderful. 412.
 Selden, Seldene, seldom.
 Seldum, seldom.
 Sele, man. 421.
 Self, Selve, self, very.

Seli, good, blessed, simple. 383.
 Seli-red = *seli-spel*, success, bliss.
 Seli-spel, prosperity, good fortune, happiness. 387.
 Selk, silk.
 Selkouth, marvellous, wonderful, great.
 Selli, Selly, (1) greatly, wondrously, (2) a marvel.
 Sellyez, marvels.
 Selven, himself.
 Selure, canopy.
 Selver, silver.
 Sely, blessed, happy, good, well-disposed, simple. 383.
 Semblance, appearance, form.
 Sembland, face, countenance, appearance.
 Semblant, Semblaunt, appearance, countenance.
 Semblaunce, appearance.
 Semble, Semblee, assembly.
 Sembled, assembled.
 Seme, to arbitrate, decide. 400.
 Semes, loads. 392.
 Semet, Semis, seems.
 Semloker, more seemly.
 Semly, seemly, beautiful.
 Semlokest, most seemly, pleasant.
 Semynge, appearance, 'at my *semynge*,' as appears to me.
 Sen, (1) to see, to appear, (2) seen, (3) since.
 Send, Sende, sent.
 Sendal, fine silk.
 Sene, seen.
 Sene, truthful.
 Seo, to see.

Seolfe, self, very.
 Seon, to see.
 Seoth, sees.
 Seop, pl. see.
 Ser, Sere, diverse.
 Serdai, different days.
 Sergeaunz, Servauntes, soldiers, servants.
 Seriaun, sergeant (at law).
 Serk, a shirt. 409.
 Sermounne, (1) word, discourse, (2) to discourse, relate.
 Servage, service, vassalage.
 Servaunt, a servant.
 Servie, to serve.
 Servis, service.
 Servisabul, serviceable.
 Serw, Serwe, sorrow.
 Sese, to cease.
 Sesons, Se-sounez, seasons.
 Sest, seest.
 Sesun, season.
 Sete, seat.
 Setel-gange, setting. 418.
 Sep, pl. see.
 Sepen, afterwards.
 Seppe, Seppen, since, afterwards.
 Settand, setting.
 Settez (on), lights upon.
 Seuid, followed.
 Seve, seven.
 Sevepe, seventh.
 Sevend, seventh.
 Sewid, Sewede, followed.
 Sewes, dishes.
 Sewyngly, in order.
 Sextene, sixteen.
 Sixty, sixty. [Seyn.
 Sey, Seye, to say, pl.
 Seyde, said.
 Seyed, passed. 432.
 Seyl, sail.
 Seyn, seen.
 Seyt, says.
 Seyyng, saying.

Sez, saw.
 Shadewe, shadow.
 Shamlic, shamefully.
 Shap, shape.
 Shape, to make, form.
 Shel, Sheld, shield.
 Shep, sheep.
 Sheren, to reap.
 Shete, to shoot.
 Shir, bright, clear. 409.
 Sho, she.
 Shole, Sholen, pl. shall.
 Sholden, should.
 Shome, shame, disgrace.
 Shop, put (see Schop).
 Shote, pp. shot.
 Shote, to shoot.
 Shrive, to shrive.
 Shrewes, wretches, wicked persons.
 Shulde, should.
 Shuldre, the shoulder.
 Shule, Shulen, pl. shall.
 Shynand, shining.
 Shype, a ship.
 Sibbe, relations. 394.
 Sidbordez, side-boards.
 Side, long. 412.
 Sigge, to say.
 Sih, saw.
 Siht, sight.
 Sik, sick.
 Sikenesse, sickness.
 Siker, (1) true, sure, certain, (2) to assure.
 Sikerest, securest, safest.
 Sikerli, Sikerlike, truly, indeed, boldly. 391.
 Silc, such.
 Sille, seat.
 Sine, since.
 Sines, sins.
 Singin, to sing.
 Sinigeden, sinned. 398.
 Sins, afterwards.
 Siqar, period, time. 424.
 Sist, seest.
 Sit, sits.
 Site, (1) sorrow, (2) to sorrow. 424.

Sith, since. [402.
 Sipe, time, pl. Siþes.
 Sithen, Siþen, Siðe, then,
 since, afterwards, sub-
 sequently.
 Sithere, cider. 422.
 Sipþe, afterwards.
 Sitten, pp. sat.
 Sitteþ, sits.
 Siȝt, sight.
 Skatere, to scatter.
 Skele, skill, reason. 434,
 Skentinge, song. 403.
 Skete, quickly, soon.
 434.
 Skewe, sky. 416.
 Skille, reason, right.
 400.
 Skilles, reasons.
 Skivden, changed,
 shifted. 383.
 Skoul, to scowl. 430.
 Skowteþ, to scud about,
 search out.
 Skwe, the sky, clouds.
 Skyes, clouds.
 Skyfte, to shift, change.
 Skylle, reason.
 Skylyly, skill, purpose,
 design. 434.
 Skyrmeþ, to look nar-
 rowly about. 433.
 Skyvalde, manifested,
 devised. 434.
 Sla, to slay.
 Slac, slow.
 Slade, dale.
 Slagen, slain.
 Slake, to abate.
 Slan, slain.
 Slavers, slobbers. 429.
 Slaw, Slawe, slow. 427.
 Slagt, slaughter, murder.
 Sle, Slee, to slay.
 Sleghe, Sleghe, wise,
 crafty. 412.
 Sleght, skill, craft.
 Slely, slyly, prudently.
 Slen, Slene, to slay.
 Slep, sleep, 'on slep,'
 asleep.

Slep, slept.
 Slepand, sleeping.
 Slepe, to sleep.
 Slepynge, sleep.
 Sleuþe, sloth, idleness.
 Sley, prudent, sly.
 Sleygh, crafty, skilful.
 Sleynge, slaying, mur-
 der.
 Sleþe, prudent. 412.
 Sleþe, prudence.
 Slih, prudent, wise.
 Slik, such. 423.
 Slo, to slay.
 Slogh, slew.
 Slogth, path, step.
 Slokes, imp. stop. 436.
 Slon, to slay. 381.
 Slon, sloes. 411.
 Slonge, pl. slung.
 Slotered, defiled, be-
 spattered. 430.
 Slou, Slouh, Slow, Slowe,
 Slowgh, slew,
 Smach, smell, flavour,
 stink. 393.
 Smachande, smelling,
 savouring.
 Smacke, to taste, en-
 joy.
 Smaken, to scent. 393.
 Smacky, to taste, enjoy,
 long for. 393.
 Smal, Smale, small.
 Smeren, to anoint. 393.
 Smerl, a gum, balm,
 ointment. 423.
 Smerld, embalmed.
 Smert, (1) smart, active,
 (2) severe.
 Smerte, 'as smerte,'
 smartly, at once.
 Smerte, to smart.
 Smiland, smiling.
 Smit, smites.
 Smolderande, smoulder-
 ing.
 Smoltes, smells.
 Smot, smote.
 Smyt, smites.
 Smyþ, a carpenter.

Smyþþe, a smithy.
 Snache, to seize sud-
 denly, snatch.
 Snaw, snow.
 Snel, Snelle, quick,
 quickly, suddenly.
 405.
 Snepe, foolish. 401.
 Snibbing, rebuke. 416.
 Snou, snow.
 Snyte, to wipe. 415.
 So = seo, to see.
 Sobrelliche, Sobrelyche,
 soberly.
 Sobretē, sobriety.
 Socoure, assistance,
 help, succour.
 Sodalni, Sodeynliche,
 suddenly.
 Soght, thus.
 Soght, Sogt, Sogte,
 Sohte, sought. 387.
 Som, some.
 Somdel, somewhat.
 Some, together, 'alle
 ant some,' one and
 all. 420.
 Somer, summer.
 Somony, to summon.
 Somwat, somewhat.
 Son, soon.
 Son, sound.
 Sond, sand.
 Sond, Sonde, word, mes-
 sage, messenger. 383.
 Sonde, dish. 390.
 Sonder (in-), asunder.
 Sondere-men, messen-
 gers. 383.
 Sondes, messengers.
 Sondeþ-mon, a messen-
 ger.
 Sone, soon.
 Sone, a son.
 Song, sang.
 Sonkken, pl. sank.
 Sonne, the sun.
 Sor, sorrowful.
 Sore, sorrow.
 Sore, sorely, sorrow-
 fully.

Soreghes, sorrows.
 Soren, shorn, reaped.
 Sorewe, sorrow.
 Sorful, sorrowful.
 Sorge, sorrow. 383.
 Sori, sorry, sorrowful.
 Sot, a fool. 418.
 Soþnesse, truth.
 Soþþe, afterwards. 402.
 Sottes, fool's
 Soth, Soþ, Sothe, Soþe,
 true, truth.
 Sothly, Soþly, truly.
 Soukand, sucking.
 Souht, Souȝt, sought.
 Sourquidrye, pride.
 Sowwe, sown.
 Spac, spake.
 Spad, a spade.
 Spak, spake.
 Spale, spell, rest. 401.
 Sparlyr, calf of the leg.
 Sparþe, battle.
 Sparwe, a sparrow.
 Spec, spoke.
 Specheles, speechless.
 Specialych, specially.
 Sped, succeeded.
 Sped, speed, haste.
 Spedd, Spedde, suc-
 ceeded.
 Speddestu, succeedest
 thou.
 Spede, to succeed, pros-
 per.
 Spedes, prospers.
 Spek, imp. speak.
 Spek, Speke, to speak.
 Speke, spakest.
 Speke, pl. spoke.
 Speke, Speken, to speak.
 Spelle, delay, rest.
 Spelle, a (false) speech.
 Spelle, discourse, tale,
 story. 401.
 Spellinge, reciting, a
 magical incantation.
 439.
 Spende, spent.
 Spene, expend, or =
 scheuwen, to shew.

Spenet, fastened.
 Sperd, Sperde, fastened,
 confined, imprisoned.
 Spere, a spear.
 Speren, to shut up, con-
 fine. 384.
 Speride, shut up, en-
 closed.
 Sperling, a fish so called.
 Speten, to spit, vomit.
 Spetos, sharp.
 Spetynge, spitting,
 Spicelike, with spices.
 Spicers, sellers of spices.
 Spices-ware, spicery.
 382.
 Spilen, to enjoy, have
 pleasure. 395.
 Spille, to destroy, ruin,
 spoil. 402.
 Spird, inquired. 423.
 Spire, twigs. 395.
 Spirs, imp. inquire.
 Spoke, spoken.
 Spoushod, spousehood,
 marriage.
 Spousi, to espouse.
 Spraulle, Sprawle, to
 sprawl.
 Sprawlyng, straggling.
 Spray, sprig, branch.
 Sprede, Spreden, to
 spread.
 Sprong, sprang.
 Sprongen, Sprungen, pp.
 sprung forth, risen.
 Spume, foam, scum.
 Spuniande, sticky.
 Spurnde, stumbled. 414.
 Spuse, spouse.
 Spyllez, spoils. 402.
 Spyrakle, spirit.
 Spysereȝ, spice-mongers.
 Srid, clothed.
 Srud, change of cloth-
 ing. 382.
 Ssame, shame.
 Ssame, to be ashamed.
 Sscet, shot.
 Sseawe, to shew.
 Sseawere, mirror. 428.

Sseawy, to shew, ap-
 pear.
 Ssedde, shed.
 Ssede, shade.
 Ssel, shall.
 Sseld, a shield.
 Ssende, to destroy.
 Ssetare, shooter, archer.
 Ssete, to shoot.
 Sseppe, form.
 Ssepbes, forms. 428.
 Ssipe, a ship.
 Ssipvol, shipfull.
 Ssire, shire.
 Solde, should.
 Ssoldren, shoulders.
 Ssolle, pl. shall.
 Ssriffe, shrift.
 Ssriue, pl. shrove.
 Stac, closed, shut. 432.
 Stad, placed.
 Stale, Stalle, a place,
 seat.
 Stalword, Stalworth,
 Stalworþe, strong,
 brave. 411.
 Stalworthhede, stedfast-
 ness.
 Stalworthly, strongly,
 stubbornly.
 Stalworþest, bravest.
 Stamyn, threshold.
 Stanc, a pool. 433.
 Stan, Stane, a stone.
 Stang, a pool. 433.
 Stangeȝ, pools.
 Stant, stands.
 Starc, stark, strong. 407.
 Stareand, Starinde, star-
 ing, gaping.
 Stark, strong.
 Stat, state.
 Stapelines, foundation.
 417.
 Staued, Stawed, stowed,
 placed in safety.
 Staueȝ, stows, places in
 safety.
 Sted, Stede, place, 383.
 Stede, a steed, horse.
 Steene, a stone vessel.

- Stefhede, stiffness, strength.
 Stefne, voice. 402.
 Stegh, Steghe, to ascend. 415.
 Stegh, ascended.
 Stek, folded.
 Stekes, imp. shut or fasten up. 432.
 Stel-bawe, stirrups.
 Stele, handle.
 Stele, to steal.
 Stel-gere, steel-gear, armour.
 Stern, Steme, light, flame. 409.
 Stemmed, stopped, stood still. 435.
 Steorne, stern.
 Steornliche, sternly.
 Stepmoder, a step-mother.
 Stepmoderes, step-mothers.
 Stere, to stir.
 Stern, Sterne, a star. 422.
 Sternes, stars.
 Sterne, a star.
 Sterren, stars.
 Stert, started.
 Sterte, (1) to start, (2) started.
 Sterve, to die. 382.
 Sterved[e], died. *Storven* is a better reading.
 Steven, voice, command. 401.
 Steyne, to stain.
 Stejen, to ascend.
 Sties, paths. 415.
 Stif, stiff, stubborn, brave.
 Stif, strong, bold.
 Stiffuly, strongly, quickly.
 Stify, strongly.
 Stihes, paths. 415.
 Stille, quietly, secretly.
 Stint, Stinte, to stop.
 Stirte, started.
 Steward, steward. 384.
 Stije, Stijen, (1) to ascend, (2) ascended.
 Stijede, ascended.
 Stijtes, rules, directs. 435.
 Stoc, stock, trunk.
 Stod, stood.
 Stok, stock, trunk.
 Stoken, enclosed.
 Stoken, pp. shut up. 432.
 Ston, stone.
 Stond, imp. stand.
 Stonde, Stonden, to stand.
 Stoneyinge, astonishment.
 Stont, stands.
 Stope, to stop (up).
 Storve, should die (see Sterve).
 Stound, Stounde, a short period of time, a moment, an interval. 383.
 Stouned, Stowned, astounded.
 Stoupand, stooping.
 Stoupe, to stoop.
 Stour, Stoure, a conflict, agony. 429.
 Stowres, attacks.
 Stra, a straw.
 Strand, stream. 424.
 Strang, Strange, strong.
 Strangeþ, becomes strong.
 Strayne, Strayny, to restrain, rule.
 Strecche, to stretch, move.
 Streght, straight.
 Streitliche, strictly, narrowly.
 Streijt, stretched.
 Strekand, stretching, covering. 417.
 Strem, stream.
 Stremmes, streams.
 Streney, streams.
 Strend = *strene*, race, progeny.
 Strenger, stronger.
 Strengþed, strengthened.
 Strengþe, strength, force.
 Strengþhede, strengthened.
 Strenkle, to scatter.
 Strenthe, force, meaning, signification.
 Strenþe, strength.
 Strete, a street.
 Streyt[e], narrow.
 Strejt, straight.
 Strif, strife. 393.
 Striif, strife, trouble.
 Strike, to strike up, to play.
 Strike, to run, flow. 421.
 Stroics, destroys.
 Strondis, strands, streams.
 Strye, to destroy.
 Stryed, destroyed.
 Stude, a place.
 Stunde, a moment (see Stound), short period of time. 383.
 Stunden, to abide. 333.
 Stunden, pl. abode.
 Stureþ, stirs.
 Sturioun, sturgeon.
 Sturne, stern.
 Sturten, pl. started.
 Sturtes, stirrups.
 Sty, a path, road.
 Styfly, strongly, safely.
 Styh, ascended.
 Styinge, ascending.
 Stynkande, stinking.
 Synt, Stynte, to stop.
 Styringes, movements.
 Styryed, stirred, moved.
 Stytest = *styntes*, stops.
 Stytest, strongest.
 Stybly stiffly.
 Styse, to grow up.
 Sua, so.

Sual, swelled.
 Suanis, swains, servants.
 Suank, laboured, toiled.
 Sue, Swe, to follow.
 Suein, a swain, man.
 Suelland, squealing, crying. 425.
 Sueme, tribulation. 382.
 Suerd, a sword.
 Suere, to swear.
 Suet, Sute, to sweat.
 Suepel-band, swaddle-band. 425.
 Suetlik, sweetly.
 Suetnes, sweetness.
 Suette, sweet.
 Sueyn, swain, servant. 407.
 Suffrende, suffering, enduring.
 Suich, Suiche, such.
 Suik, Suike, treachery.
 Suikedom, treachery, falseness.
 Suikeldom, treachery, deceit.
 Suikelhede, fraud, deceit, treachery.
 Suilk, such.
 Suim, swoon.
 Suith, Suithe, Suipe, very quickly.
 Suiðe, quickly.
 Suld, Sulde, should.
 Sule, Sulen, pl. shall.
 Sulfce, very, self.
 Sulle, Sullen, to sell.
 Sullers, sellers.
 Sulte, very, same. 398.
 Sulver, silver.
 Sum, as. 424.
 Sumdel, somewhat.
 Sume = *suim*, grief, affliction. 382, 423.
 Sumere, summer.
 Summe, some, certain.
 Sumpnour, summoner, apparitor.
 Sumquat, somewhat.
 Sundri, separate. 383.
 Sune, sound.

Sune, son.
 Sunen, Sune, sons.
 Sunkken, pl. sank.
 Sunne, sun.
 Sunne, sin.
 Sunne-bem, a sunbeam.
 Suor, swore.
 Suote, sweet.
 Survise, service, course.
 Susteene, Susteine, Susteini, to sustain.
 Suster, a sister.
 Susteyne, to sustain.
 Suth, truth.
 Suth, south.
 Supe = *suipe*, very.
 Suppe, afterwards.
 Suwe, to follow.
 Suwep, pl. follow.
 Suythe, much, greatly.
 Swa, so.
 Swal, swelled.
 Swange, loins.
 Sware, square.
 Swe = *sweyed*, rushed.
 Sweande, flowing.
 Swele, to wash. 421.
 Swelt, Swelte, to destroy.
 Swem, troubled, grieved. 382.
 Swep, meaning. 386.
 Sward, a sword.
 Swardis, swords.
 Swerd, a sword.
 Swere, Sweren, to swear.
 Swete, to sweat.
 Swetnesse, sweetness.
 Swevene, Swevenyng, a dream.
 Sweynes, servants.
 Swike, to cease. 402.
 Swike, a traitor. 399.
 Swikedam, deceit, fraud, treachery. 399.
 Swikeldome, treachery, deceit.
 Swilc, Swilk, Swilke, such. 381.
 Swin, swine.
 Swink, Swinke, to labour, toil, work.

Swiðe, very quickly. 384.
 Swo, so.
 Swoghe, (1) swoon, (2) deep.
 Swolgen, pp. swallowed. 383.
 Swon, a swan.
 Swonken, laboured, toiled.
 Swore, the neck. 398.
 Sworen, sworn.
 Swuch, Swych, such.
 Swymmed, swam.
 Swynke, to labour.
 Swyre, the neck.
 Swybe, heavily, fast. 384.
 Syghyng, sighing.
 Syk, sick, weak.
 Sykerlyk, Sykerlyche, truly, indeed, secure.
 Sykernes, security.
 Sylvener = *sylveren*, silver dishes.
 Symmented, cemented.
 Syn, Synne, since.
 Synne, sign, token.
 Synkande, sinking.
 Synkke, sinks.
 Synoghe, sinew.
 Syth, time.
 Sythen, afterwards.
 Sythes, Sybes, times.
 Syze, Syzen, saw.
 Syzt, Syzte, sight.
 Ta, to take.
 Taa, a toe.
 Tabart, coat.
 Tac = *take*, to take.
 Tachched, attached.
 Tades, toads.
 Taght, Tagte, taught.
 Tak, take.
 Take, pp. taken.
 Taken, a token, sign.
 Takening, Takning, Takninge, a token, sign.
 Tal, tale, discourse.

Tald, Talde, told. 384.
 Tale, speech, tidings,
 news, question, ac-
 count, report.
 Take, to tell.
 Talentyf, desirous.
 Talis, tales.
 Talkkande, talking.
 Tan, Tane, taken.
 Targes, targets.
 Tars tapites, Tharsian
 tapestry.
 Tas, toes.
 Tat, that.
 Taute, taught.
 Tavele, to play at dice.
 406.
 Taverners, keepers of
 taverns.
 Tawnen, to shew. 387.
 Te, to.
 Tech, imp. teach.
 Teche, Tehen, to
 teach.
 Techeres, teachers.
 Teches, Techches,
 marks.
 Teeme, theme.
 Teld, Telde, tabernacle,
 tent. 416.
 Telde, to raise up.
 Teldes, habitations,
 dwellings.
 Telid, shewess.
 Tellus, tells.
 Tels, imp. tell.
 Telp, telleth, esteems.
 Temptande, tempting.
 Ten, to go, to conduct.
 380.
 Tend, tenth.
 Tende, pret. lighted.
 Tende, to kindle, light
 up. 398.
 Tene, grief, tribulation,
 anger, sorrow. 398,
 401.
 Tent, attend.
 Teonep, grieveth.
 Terc, to tar. 410.
 Terne, lake, pool, 434.

Te-tealte, in jeopardy,
 in vain. 422.
 Teyntis, tents.
 Tha, those.
 Theder, thither.
 Thah, though, pro-
 vided.
 Thaim, them.
 Thair, their.
 Thanes, men, nobles.
 Thanne, then, when.
 Thapotecary, the apo-
 thecary.
 Thankynges, thanks.
 Thar, There, there,
 where.
 Thar, need.
 Tharby, thereby.
 Tharin, therein.
 Tharto, thereto.
 Tharwit, therewith.
 Thayre, their.
 Thayt = *thar*, though.
 Thefs, thieves.
 Tbenche, to think.
 Thennes, thence. {thou.
 Thenkeste, thinkest
 Theo, pl. the.
 Theode, countries, lands.
 Theose, these, those.
 Ther, there.
 Ther-offe, thereof.
 Therinne, therein.
 Thester, dark, darkness.
 400.
 Thertil, thereto.
 Thew, virtue.
 Thewes, virtues, mo-
 rals, good manners.
 Thider, Thidre, thither.
 Thinc, appears.
 Thes, these.
 Thit = *tho* + *it*, then it.
 Tho, those.
 Thought, appeared.
 Thoughtfulest, the most
 thoughtful.
 Thoh, though.
 Thol, Thole, suffer.
 Tholand, bearing en-
 during.

Thole, Tholien, Thol
 to suffer, to end
 permit, be patient
 Thoner, thunder.
 Thonered, thundered.
 Thonk, thought, than
 Thoo, then.
 Thoos, those.
 Thore, there.
 Thoru, through.
 Thoruthlike, throug
 out-like, piercing.
 Thouche, though.
 Thoucte, thought.
 Thouth, thought, de
 vided.
 Thouthte, thought.
 Thow, an error for *Y*
 you.
 Thu, thou.
 Thunche, to appear,
 seem.
 Thurgh, Thurz, throu
 Thrall, Thrall, Thrall
 slave.
 Thrall[e], enslaved
 brought into bond.
 Threste, to thrust.
 Threstelcoc, a thrust
 Threstes, thirsts.
 Threte, to threaten.
 Threte, to tire. 420
 Thretend, thirteenth
 Thretynges, threats.
 Thrid, Thridde, thir
 Thrie, Thries, thrie
 Thrin, Thrinne, thir
 Thrist, thrust.
 Thritti, thirty.
 Thritteind, thirteenth
 Throwe, time.
 Paa, the, those.
 Paim, them.
 Pare, of the, to the.
 Poref = *parf*, need. 4
 Pare-vore, therefore.
 Farwyb, therewith.
 Fas = *bes*, of the.
 Fas, those.
 Fau, Fauh, Fauz,
 though.

ough.
nevertheless.
thither.
ough.
ey.
1, Felliche, Fel-
1, Felliche, the
, such.
dat. and acc.) the.
2, to think.
2, to seem, appear.
Fenke, to think.
, to appear, seem.
3, Fennis, thence.
forth, thence-
n.
) , the.
Po, the, these.
land, nation.
these.
f), this.
ere.
ere, Fir, these.
unleavened.
r, thereafter.
e, therefore.
e, therein.
e, therefore.
through.
ese.
u), the.
at.
thence. 383.
manner, custom.
behaved, con-
ed. 380.
thieves.
manners, cus-
s, qualities, vir-
Pidir, Fidur, thi-
ick.
thickly.
ilke, this, these.
Finks, or pinkp,
ars.
, to think.
, to seem.
seems.

Pinche = *pinch* be, ap-
pears to the.
Pinge, sake.
Pingb, appears.
Pir, these.
Pire, of thy, to thy.
Pirled, pierced.
Pis (obliq. case *pise*,
pisse), this.
Pis, Fise, these.
Piselves, thyself.
Pisternesne = *cisternesne*,
cistern, pity.
Po, those.
Po, then.
Pof, though.
Pofqueber, nevertheless.
423.
Poghte, (1) seemed, ap-
peared, (2) thought.
Pole, imp. suffer.
Polemoodness, Polemod-
nesse, patience, en-
durance.
Polye, to suffer, endure.
Polynde (see On poly-
inde.)
Fondringe, Fondrynge,
thunder.
Ponken, to thank.
Ponkes, thanks,
thoughts. 398.
Ponkes (hire), willingly.
398.
Poning, noise, din. 401.
Ponne, then, when.
Porte = *throate*, throat.
Poru, through.
Poruout, throughout.
Porw, Porw3, through.
Pos, these.
Pos = *peos*, this.
Pouhte, seemed.
Pouzt, thought.
Pousend, a thousand.
Pousend3ibe, thou-
sand times.
Pousent, Fousynde,
thousand.
Fow, thou.
Foz, though.

Pozles, nevertheless.
Pozt, Fozte, thought.
Poztes, thoughts.
Prawen, bound, twisted,
Predbare, threadbare.
Preo, three.
Prep, contradiction,
gainsaying. 432.
Prete, (1) to threaten,
(2) a threat.
Pretene, to enjoin,
threaten.
Pretté, thirty.
Frettene, thirteen.
J ridde, third.
Fries, thrice.
Priste, daring. 399.
Fritti, thirty.
Proliche, heartily.
Froly, quickly.
Froly, thoroughly, cer-
tainly.
Fronge, throng, crowd.
Prostle, a thrush. 405.
Frote, the throat.
Frowe, time.
Frowen, thrown,
crowded.
Froze, time, turn. 401.
Frublande, crowding.
434.
Pryd, Prydde, third.
Fryez, thrice.
Fryft, thrift, luck, good-
ness.
Dryven, grown up,
thriftly.
Fu, thou.
Fu = *wu*, how.
Puder, thither.
Puderward, thither-
ward.
Fulk, Pulke, this,
these.
Funch = *Funchb*, ap-
pears (see Fenche.)
Funch, appears, seems.
Funder-brast, thunder-
bolt.
Furf, Furf, Furfh,
through. 415.

þurleden, pl. pierced.
 Furt, needed.
 þurth = *Furb*, through.
 Furs, through.
 Fuster, darkness.
 þuvele, underwood.
 401.
 þujte, seemed, appeared.
 þwarl-knot, a hard knot, a garland.
 þyef (obliq. case *þyefe*), a thief.
 þyester, dark. 400.
 þyesternesse, darkness.
 þykke, thickly.
 þyse, these.
 þy3, thigh.
 þwong, a thong.
 þag, then.
 þar-offe, thereof.
 þhurg, through.
 þe, who, which, that.
 þer, there.
 þeden = *deden*, deeds.
 þeden, þeþen, thence.
 þenke, to think.
 þewed, behaved.
 þis, these.
 þider, thither.
 þhogt, anxiety.
 þhogte, þhugte, appeared. 382.
 þhurg, through.
 þisternesse, darkness.
 þo, those.
 þoge, nevertheless.
 þor, there.
 þor-bi, thereby.
 þor-fore, therefore.
 þor-offen, thereof.
 þor-on, thereon.
 þraldom, slavery.
 þridde, third.
 þrist, thrust.
 þu, thou.
 Tidde, befall.
 Tide, time, at intervals.
 Tidi, beautiful. 386.
 Tight, determined. 424.

Tileris, tillers, '*erpetileris*,' husbandmen.
 Til, Tille, to. 383.
 Tilled, brought. 408.
 Tilward, toward.
 Tilynge, tilling.
 Tim, time.
 Timen, to have success, be prosperous.
 392.
 Timbred, built.
 Tine, to lose. 429.
 Tipand, tidings, news.
 Tirne, to turn.
 Tirnenden, pl. turned.
 Tite, quickly, suddenly. 428.
 Titte, a tug, pull, wrench. 430.
 Titter, quicker, more quickly.
 Tithand, Tipping, tidings, news.
 Tize, to tie.
 Tjst, soon, quickly.
 Tjstly, quickly, at once.
 To, the one. 421.
 To, until.
 To-bar, falsely accused. 387.
 To-breddest = *to-bredde*s, makest broad.
 To-breidyng, tearing.
 To-breke, break violently.
 To-broke, pp. broken in pieces.
 Toc, took.
 To-deled, divided.
 To-dreved, troubled.
 To-flight, refuge.
 To-for, before.
 To-fore, before.
 Toft, a field.
 To-gadere, To-geder, Togider, together.
 Tok, took.
 Tokenes, tokens.
 Toknen, tokens, signs.
 Tolden, reckoned. 384.
 Tole, tool.

Tolke, man, person. 434.
 Tollere, a taker or receiver of *toll*.
 To-logged, pulled about by the ear. 437.
 Tombesteris = *tombesteres*, dancing-women.
 Tome, in vain. 406.
 Ton, the one.
 Tone = *teone*, grief, anger. 397.
 Tong, Tonge, tongue. 399.
 Tonge, a pair of tongs.
 Top, Toppe, top, head.
 Toppynge, mane.
 Tor, difficult, tedious.
 Toren, torn.
 To-rent, rent in pieces.
 Tormens, torments.
 Torn, turn, stratagem.
 Torne, to turn.
 To-rof, rent in pieces.
 Torres, Tours, towers.
 To-samen, together. 386.
 To-spad, spread about.
 To-suolle, swollen. 398.
 To-teren, to tear in pieces. 385.
 Tother, Toþir, the second, that other.
 Toðere, the others.
 To-tose, hurt, to tease. 398.
 To-twiche, pull at. 405.
 Toun, a town.
 Tour, a tower.
 Tovore, before.
 Tournayed, jousted.
 Touper, that other, the other.
 Towalten, burst, welled up.
 Towardes, towards.
 Towche, to touch.
 Towches, touches.
 Traisted, trusted.
 Trammes, devices, plans.

- Travail, labour, fatigue.
 Trayne, device, deceit.
 Trayste, to trust.
 Trawayle = *travayle*, labour.
 Trawed, trowed, believed.
 Trawþ truth.
 Tre, timber, plank, beam.
 Tremblande, trembling.
 Tren, trees.
 Treoffinge, playfully. 415.
 Tresore, Tresour, treasure.
 Tresorie, treasury.
 Tretiden, disputed.
 Treuþe, Treuthe, troth, pledged word, faith.
 Trewē, true.
 Trewed, believed.
 Trewely, Trewly, truly.
 Trewið = *trows*, beliefs. 384.
 Trewthe, pledged word. 391.
 Treye, sorrow, grief, trouble. 419.
 Triedest, the most tried, most proved.
 Tricherie, treachery.
 Triwe, true, faithful.
 Tro, a tree.
 Triste, to trust.
 Tron, trees. 404.
 Trone, throne.
 Trost, Troste, to trust.
 Troupe, troth, promise.
 Trow, Trowe, to trow, believe, trust.
 Trowyng, opinion.
 Tru, true.
 Truage, hostage.
 Trumpes, trumpets.
 Trusse, to pack (off.)
 Tristing, trusting.
 Trupe, truth.
 Tryed, valuable, costly.
 Tuelf, twelve.
 Tuelft, twelfth.
- Tuengst, twingest. 399.
 Tuengde, twinged, twitched.
 Tuin, two.
 Tukest, takest vengeance, annoy. 397.
 Tulk, man. 434.
 Tulkēs, men, warriors.
 Tun, Tune, a town.
 Tunes, towns (see *Wicke tunes*.) 404.
 Tung, Tunge, tongue.
 Tuo, two.
 Turned tyme, time elapsed, gone by.
 Turves, pl. of turf.
 Tussh, tusk.
 Tuxes, tusks.
 Twa, Twaye, Twayn, two.
 Twei, two.
 Twelf, twelve.
 Tweye, Tweyne, Twyes, two, twice.
 Twinne, two.
 Twyn, Twynne, to part, separate.
 Twynne, two.
 Twynnen, joined.
 Tyde, to betide, happen.
 Tyene, anger, sorrow.
 Tyl, to.
 Tylle, to lead. 383.
 Tyme, to befall.
 Tyne, to lose. 429.
 Tyned, enclosed, shut up.
 Tyred, attired.
 Tysyk, consumption.
 Tyte, soon.
 Tybyng, tiding.
 Tybynges, tidings, news.
- Uch, Uche, each.
 Uche a, every.
 Uchon, Uchone, each one.
 Ugly, horrible.
 Uglines, loathsomeness.
 Ule, owl.
 Umbe-grouen, about grown, covered.
- Umbefoldes, encircles.
 Umbe-torne, twisted.
 Umbilaid, encircled.
 Umbre, showers.
 Umgaf, surrounded.
 Umgang, circuit.
 Umgriped, embraced.
 Umlappe, to encircle.
 Umset, surrounded.
 Umthoght, bethought.
 Umstride, to bestride.
 Unavanced, unadvanced.
 Unbileve, unbelief.
 Unbilevefulness, unbelief.
 Unblyþe, sad, joyless.
 Unbond, unbound.
 Unbounden, pl. unbound.
 Unbrent, unburnt.
 Unbrosten, unburst.
 Uncouþe, strange, foreign. 423.
 Uncuth, strange, unknown.
 Undede, undid, opened.
 Under, noon. 390.
 Underand, innocent. (see *Deren*).
 Unders, puts under, subjects.
 Understanden, pp. understood.
 Understod, received.
 Undertoc, agreed.
 Undertok, undertook, took.
 Underveng, received.
 Underȝete, understood. 399.
 Undirstonden, pp. understood.
 Undon, to explain.
 Undreh, impatient, dissatisfied. 420.
 Undren, Undrun, the third hour of the day. 390.
 Undurfong, received.
 Un-eðes, scarcely, not easily. 391.

Unfere, feeble, sick.
 Unfest, unstable.
 Unfete, bad. 420.
 Unfeyn, reluctant.
 Unfiled, undefiled. 416.
 Unklad, sorrowful.
 Unhap, misfortune, accident.
 Unhiled, uncovered. 379.
 Unhillen, to disclose. 379.
 Unhuled, uncovered, disclosed.
 Unker, of us (two). 403.
 Unkeveleden, uncovered. 408.
 Unkinde, Unkuynde, unnatural, unkind.
 Unkyth = *Unkythe*, to become invisible. 423.
 Unlede, wicked. 405.
 Unlose, to unloose.
 Unmete, extraordinary.
 Un-mepe, immoderation. 402.
 Unmilde, savage.
 Un-muric, unpleasant. 402.
 Unnait, vanity. 417.
 Unnepe, scarcely. 391.
 Unnethes, scarcely.
 Unprudent, unwise.
 Un-orne, rude. 402.
 Un-rede, folly, wickedness (see Red).
 Unright, wrong.
 Un-rihtfulnesse, wrong.
 Unriht, wrong, unright.
 Unsah, angry, displeased, unfriendly. 419.
 Unschilful, unreasonable.
 Unsele, unfortunate. 391.
 Unseli, unhappy, wretched.
 Unseldeche, misfortune. 391.

Unsete, vice. 420.
 Unsouwen, to unsow, take off.
 Unpeu, vice (see Thewe).
 Unthewes, vices.
 Unpryftely, wickedly.
 Unthryfte, imprudence, folly, misfortune.
 Untille, unto.
 Untrewe, untrue.
 Untuled, uncultivated, untilled.
 Unwemmed, pure, spotless. 416.
 Un-werste, wicked, wrong. 399.
 Unwille, unpleasant. 403.
 Un-wille, desirable, wished for. 402.
 Unwis, unwise.
 Unwijt, coward. 396.
 Un-wijtis, cowards.
 Un-worþ, displeasing, useless.
 Unworþelych, unworthy, bad.
 Unwraсте, beggarly, poor. 399.
 Un-wrenche, craft, wicked devices. 399.
 Unwreste, badly. 399.
 Unwroze, discovered. 399.
 Unwrosten = *unwrosten*, discovered. 399.
 Up, Upe, upon.
 Upbraiding, reproach.
 Up-brayd, upbraiding.
 Upe, up.
 Upehovene, upraise.
 Upheve, to raise.
 Uphoven, raised.
 Upon, open.
 Uprisinge, resurrection.
 Upset, set up.
 Upsodoun, up-side-down.
 Upstegh, rose up.
 Upsteghe, to go up.
 Upsteghing, ascending.

Upsterte, started up.
 Upswal, swelled up (with anger).
 Up-waite, up-waft.
 Up-jelde, to yield.
 Ur, Ure, our.
 Usellej, ashes (hot). 434.
 Usej, employs, passes.
 Ut, Ute, out.
 Ute-brast, outburst.
 Ute we, let us go out.
 Ut-comen, pl. out-came.
 Uten, foreign. 386.
 Utenemes, uttermost. 425.
 Uttheeste, outcry, alarm. 406.
 Utlete, outlet, bay.
 Uuel = *vul*, fell.
 Uuele, badly. 397.
 Vader, father.
 Vair, Vaire, good, fair, well.
 Vale = *veale*, many.
 Valeie, a valley.
 Vallynge, falling.
 Vantward, vauntward.
 Variand, Variande, changing.
 Vaste, fast.
 Varþ, fareth, acts.
 Vayn, Vayne, vein.
 Vel, fell.
 Velde, field.
 Velazes, companions.
 Velazrede, fellowship.
 Vele, many.
 Veng, took, possessed.
 Venkquyst, vanquished, destroyed.
 Ver, Vere, fire.
 Ver, Verre, farther. 413.
 Verayly, truly.
 Verde, retinue, followers.
 Vermeile, red.
 Verrayment, Verreyment, truly.

Vers, verse.
 Verst, first.
 Verveyne, vervain.
 Vewe, few.
 Villiche, vilely, foully.
 Vilonye, dishonour, shame.
 Vinde, to find.
 Vijs, flies. 403.
 Vo, foe.
 Vol, full.
 Volc, Volk, folk, people.
 Vold, field, earth.
 Volde, fold. 403.
 Volliche, Vollyche, fully.
 Volnesse, fulness.
 Volveld, fulfilled, perfected.
 Vome, foam.
 Vomeþ, foameth (at the mouth).
 Vor, for.
 Vorarnd, pursued or troubled. 413.
 Vorbarnd, burnt, consumed.
 Vorbed, forbad.
 Vorbernd, consumed.
 Vorbysne, example. 427.
 Vorewarde, covenant, promise.
 Vorlete, to refuse. 427.
 Vorlore, ruined. 413.
 Vorlost, loses. 404.
 Vorpriked, pierced.
 Vorre = *ferre*, afar. 402.
 Vorsuore, perjured.
 Vorte, for to.
 Vorth, Vorþ, forth.
 Vorþan, therefore.
 Vor-þi, wherefore.
 Vorwounded, severely wounded.
 Vorsete, to forget.
 Vorzuelze, to swallow, devour.
 Vorzobe, forsooth.
 Voul, foul.

Voyde, to leave.
 Voyde, to make void, empty.
 Voys, voice.
 Vram, from.
 Vrom, from.
 Vuel = *uvel*, evil, sickness. 414.
 Vuele = *uuele*, wickedly, evilly.
 Vus = *Uus*, us.
 Vyage, voyage.
 Vyende, fiend.
 Vylanye, crime, sin.
 Vylanye, shame, disgrace.
 Vynezerd, vineyard.
 Vynnes, fins.
 Wa, (1) woe, (2) sorrowful.
 Wa = *bwa*, who.
 Waferis, sellers of cakes.
 Wafte, wafted, threw.
 Wafullie, Wafullic, woefully.
 Wailawai, well-a-day! alas!
 Wain, sb. decrease.
 Waines, waggons.
 Waiour, a wager.
 Waisching, washing.
 Waischun, washed.
 Waiten, to lie in wait.
 Waites, watches.
 Wakan, to stir up.
 Wakand, waking.
 Wake, to keep awake, keep watch, to keep a vigil for the dead.
 Waken, Wakene, to raise up, stir up.
 Wakeþ, Wakyeþ, imp. watch.
 Waking, sb. watch.
 Wakkest, weakest.
 Wakne, to awaken.
 Wakned, excited.
 Waky, to keep watch.
 Wakynde, watching.
 Wal, wall.

Wald, Walde, would.
 Wale, to seek.
 Walewid, rolled. 417.
 Walkand, walking.
 Walkere, a fuller of cloth.
 Walld, would.
 Walle-heved, well-head, spring.
 Walle, to boil up.
 Walt, exercised, employed.
 Walt, rolled. 432.
 Walter, to flow.
 Waltere, tossed.
 Waltes, Waltez, rushes or wells out, flows. 432.
 Wan, Wane, when.
 Wan, which.
 Wan, got, won.
 Wand, Waand, delay.
 Wandes, Wandeþ, branches, wands, staves.
 Wandre, to walk, wander.
 Wandreth, Wandrethe, sorrow, trouble. 426.
 Wandrynge, walking.
 Wane, Wanne, Whanne, when.
 Wane, to decrease, diminish. 417.
 Wane, diminution.
 Wane, dwelling (see Won).
 Wane, quantity. 430.
 Wangelist, evangelist.
 Wanhope, despair.
 Wanne, when.
 Wante, to lack. 389.
 Wantede, failed.
 Wanting, lack.
 Wantrokinyge, lack. 427.
 Wapnid, weaponed, armed.
 War, Ware, cautious, crafty, prudent, aware. 398.

- War, Ware, were.
 Ward, regard.
 Warde, to guard.
 Wardeyn, guardian.
 Wardrobe, a jakes, privy.
 Ware-vore, wherefore.
 Ware-poru, where-
 through.
 Ware, to guard.
 Ware, to employ, use.
 Ware, goods.
 Ware, where.
 Waren, to make aware.
 Warie, to curse. 408.
 Waried, cursed.
 Ward, world.
 Warly, craftily, cau-
 tiously.
 Warne, unless. 426.
 Warni, to warn.
 Warp, uttered (pret. of
 Werpe, to throw).
 397.
 Warpen, to cast, to
 hurl.
 Warso, whereso
 Warporu, where-
 through.
 Wary, to curse.
 Warysoun, reward. 418.
 Wasche, to flood, over-
 whelm.
 Waschen, washed.
 Waspene = *Wasteme*,
 form. 379.
 Wassen, to wash.
 Wast, was it.
 Wast, the waist.
 Wast[e], to waste,
 destroy.
 Wasti, to waste, con-
 sume.
 Wastours, destroyers.
 Wat, what.
 Wat = *ward*, spake.
 Wate, wet.
 Water, flood.
 Watloker, the rather,
 the more so. 412.
 Watrand, watering.
 Watterej, waters.
- Wattri = *attri*, poison-
 ous. 403.
 Waty, was. [closed.
 Waunden, wound, en-
 Wawe, (pl. Wawes,
 Wawe3, Wawis),
 wave.
 Wawe, wall. 408.
 Wax, sb. increase.
 Wax, became.
 Waxlokes, waves.
 Waxen, to become,
 grow, multiply.
 Wayk, Wayke, weak.
 Wayned, brought.
 Wayte, to keep guard,
 watch, to watch for,
 to see, to lay wait,
 to watch an oppor-
 tunity to do harm.
 Wayve, to wave, shake.
 Waje3, waves.
 Wear, careful. [388.
 Wedde, pledge, security.
 Wedden, to wed, marry.
 Wede, clothing.
 Wede, to go mad.
 Weden, garments.
 Weder, storm, weather.
 Wederez, storms.
 Weeles, wells.
 Weepe, to weep.
 Wei, Weie, way.
 Weila-wei, Weilawei,
 alas! well-a-day!
 Weis, washed. 390.
 Wel, very.
 Weld, Welde, Welden,
 to wield, govern, rule.
 Wele, weal, bliss.
 Wele, well.
 Weli, rich. 394.
 Welkes, fades. 417.
 Welkede, withered.
 Welkid, withered, faded.
 Welkyn, sky, firma-
 ment. 406.
 Welle, to boil. 432.
 Welt = *welte*, exercised,
 used, possessed. 389,
 419.
- Welth, Welþe, Welfe,
 wealth.
 Welud, withered. 417.
 Welwide, withered.
 Welyen, to wither. 417.
 Wem, blemish. 416.
 Wemles, Wemmles,
 pure, unblemished,
 unspotted.
 Wenche, young maiden.
 Wendand, going, de-
 parting.
 Wend, Wende, thought,
 weened.
 Wende, to go.
 Wend, thought, be-
 lieved.
 Wendes, goes.
 Wene, to ween, suppose.
 Wene, doubt.
 Wenene, whence.
 Wenges, wings.
 Wenten, pl. turned.
 Weolcne, sky, welkin.
 406.
 Weole, weal, wealth.
 421.
 Weolþe, wealth.
 Weore, were.
 Weori, weary.
 Wepyng, weeping.
 Wep, wept.
 Wep, weeping. 391.
 Wepe, Wepen, to weep.
 Weping, weeping.
 Wepne, Weppen, Wep-
 pene, weapon.
 Wer, were.
 Werbles, warbles, notes.
 Were, wert.
 Were, (1) war, battle,
 (2) doubt.
 Wereden, pl. protect.
 Weren, to defend, guard.
 385.
 Werez, enjoys, wears.
 Werinisse, weariness.
 Werk, work.
 Werkes, works.
 Werlde wo, world's woe.
 Werdy, worldly.

Werldys, world's.
 Werme, worm, reptile.
 Wern, were.
 Werne, to refuse, deny.
 388.
 Werneden, pl. refused.
 Werp, uttered.
 Werre, war.
 Werren, wars.
 Werrende, warring.
 Werthe, (1) honour. (2)
 destiny. 418.
 Wery, weary.
 Werynesse, weariness.
 Wes, was.
 Wes = *wise*, mode.
 Wessche, to wash.
 West = *wost*, knowest.
 Wete, wet.
 Wette, wetted.
 Weve, to *waive*, forbid.
 Weved, altar. 413.
 Wex, increased, became.
 Wexe, to grow, become,
 to increase.
 Wexe, imp. become.
 Wexen, pp. increased.
 Wey, Weye, way.
 Weye, to depart.
 Weye, to weigh.
 Weyebondes, waistband.
 Weyen, pp. weighed.
 Weyk, weak.
 Weylinge, Weylyng,
 wailing.
 Wha, who.
 Wham, whom.
 Whanne, when.
 Whannes, whence.
 Whare, where.
 Whaut, what.
 Wheder, whether.
 Whel, a wheel.
 Whenne, whence. 432.
 Whichche, hutch, ark.
 Whider, whither.
 Whil, While, while,
 time.
 Whilk, which.
 Whilles, whilst.
 White = *wite*, to blame.

Whittore, whiter.
 Whyle, sometimes.
 Whon, when.
 Whos, whose.
 Wic, Wicke, wicked.
 409.
 Wiche-craft, Wicche-
 craft, witchcraft.
 Wickenes, sin.
 Wicke-tunes, establish-
 ments. 404.
 Wicth = *wight*, brave.
 Wid, (1) with, (2) wide.
 Wide-pher, far.
 Wider, whither.
 Widew, a widow.
 Wiegh = *wiz*, a person.
 Wif, wife, woman.
 Wight, active, brave.
 Wiht, person, creature.
 Wihtliche, quickly.
 Wike, duties. 403.
 Wike, wicked.
 Wike, habitation, dwell-
 ing. 403.
 Wikkedliche, wickedly.
 Wiknes, wickedness.
 Wil, will.
 Wildrin, wilderness.
 424.
 Wile, will.
 Wile, formerly.
 Will, destitute. 426.
 Wille, pleasure.
 Willesfol, wilful.
 Wilne, Wilnen, to de-
 sire. 427.
 Wilnyngge, desire.
 Wilt, Wiltu, wilt thou.
 Win-tre, a vine.
 Win, joy, bliss.
 Windes-ware, winds.
 Wink, sleep.
 Winli, winsome. 415.
 Winne, bliss, safety.
 Winne, to get.
 Winsome, joyful, win-
 some, kind, lenient.
 Wintre, winter, year.
 Wirche, to work.
 Wirchen, to work, do.

Wis, wise.
 Wise, mode, manner.
 396.
 Wisi, to instruct, teach.
 405.
 Wisliker, the more
 wisely.
 Wisly, wisely, safely.
 Wiss, Wisse, Wissen,
 to instruct, teach, di-
 rect, shew. 405.
 Wist, took care of.
 Wiste, knew.
 Wisten, pl. knew.
 Wit, Wite, to go,
 vanish. 411.
 Wite, to bear witness,
 '*God it wite*,' so help
 me God.
 Wite, to keep, preserve.
 Wite, blame, fault. 403.
 Wite, to learn, know.
 Wite (he), let him
 learn.
 Wite, to hide.
 Wited, took care of.
 Witen, to learn.
 Witerlike, Witerly,
 truly.
 Witeword, precept, in-
 struction.
 Wip, from.
 Wipere, which of two.
 Wiperwin, an enemy.
 423.
 Wiphalt, withholds.
 With-holden, pp. with-
 held.
 Wipinnen, within.
 Wipoute forth, without.
 Wipouten, Wipowten,
 without.
 Wið-ðan-ðat, provided.
 Withuten, Wiðuten,
 without, except.
 Wipstod, remained,
 stayed.
 Wip-segge, to gainsay.
 Witie, to keep.
 Witin, within.
 Witouten, without.

- Witow, Wittow, know thou.
 Witter, wise, good. 379.
 Witterly, truly.
 Wittes, senses.
 Witty, wise.
 Witute, Wituten, without.
 Witynge, knowing.
 Wive, dat. wife.
 Wives, women.
 Wiwes, wife's.
 Wijes, men. 430.
 Wist, quickly.
 Wijtes, creatures. 398.
 Witztli, soon.
 Witztliche, Witztly, greatly, quickly, soon.
 Wlatsum, detestable, hateful. 419.
 Wlappede, wrapped.
 Wlates, 'me wlates,' I am disgusted. 429.
 Wlite, features. 390.
 Wlonk, beautiful, pleasant.
 Wlyteth, look (pleased). 390.
 Wo, sorrowful.
 Wod, wood.
 Wod, raging.
 Wod, Wode, mad, uncontrolled.
 Wodenesse, madness.
 Wode, wood.
 Woderove, woodruff.
 Woede = *wode*, weed.
 Woso, who-so.
 Woke, week.
 Wol, will.
 Wol = *wole*, contemptibly.
 Wolawo, alas! well-a-day!
 Wol-cume, to welcome.
 Wold, power, signification. 381, 419.
 Wold, wood. 406.
 Wolde, desired.
 Wolde, would.
 Woldest, wouldest.
- Woldustow, wouldest thou.
 Wole, will.
 Wole, evil. 395.
 Wolen, pl. will.
 Wolle, wool.
 Wollene, woollen.
 Wolt, wilt.
 Wone, custom.
 Woltou, be thou willing, wilt thou.
 Wolvine, a she-wolf. 409.
 Wolwes, wolves.
 Womb, Wombe, belly.
 Wombede, bellied.
 Wommon, a woman.
 Won, abode, dwelling.
 Won, treasure, earning.
 Won, will, opinion.
 Won, Wone, to dwell. 392.
 Wonde, to refrain.
 Wonde, to fear (to speak out), to delay. 411.
 Wonde, to cease.
 Wonder, very, '*wonder fast*,' very fast.
 Wonderliche, very, wonderfully.
 Wonderuolle, wonderful.
 Wondri, to wonder.
 Wondringe, wandering.
 Wonand, dwelling.
 Wone, wont.
 Wone, to dwell. 392.
 Wone, custom.
 Woned = *waned*, decreased. 417.
 Wonen, to dwell, remain. 392.
 Wonen, pp. gained.
 Wones, Wone3, dwellings.
 Wonges, cheeks. 419.
 Wonges, meadows. 407.
 Woning, Woninge, dwelling, abode.
 Wonnand, dwelling.
- Wonne, pl. won, got.
 Wonne, pp. got.
 Wonnen, pp. came, got (to a place).
 Wont, want, lack.
 Wont, dwelt.
 Wony, to dwell. 392.
 Wonyande, lives.
 Wonye, to dwell.
 Wonying, Wonyinge, Wonyng, abode, habitation.
 Wop, weeping. 391.
 Wopnede, armed. 393.
 Worc, work.
 Worch, imp. work.
 Worsche, Worchten, to work.
 Worching, Worchinge, making, working.
 Worchipful, honourable.
 Wore, were.
 Wore, wert.
 Woren, pl. were.
 Woice, voice.
 Worldis = *worldish*, worldly.
 Worli = *worbli*, good.
 Worme, reptile.
 Wit, with.
 Worme, to deny (see Werne).
 Wordle, world.
 Worow, to strangle. 429.
 Worpen, cast.
 Worre, war.
 Worri, to make war upon.
 Wors, worse.
 Worscheupe, worship.
 Worscheupe, Worscheupen, Worscheipe, Worscheipe, Worscheipe, to worship, to honour.
 Wot, Woot, Wote, know.
 Wortes, herbs.
 Worly, becomes.

Worþ = *worþ*, angry.
 Worþe, to become.
 Worthē, to become,
 imp. '*worþe him*,'
 let him be.
 Worþed, came to.
 Worþelych, worthy,
 good.
 Worþeþ, imp. become,
 turn.
 Worthi, worthily.
 Worþilych, honourable.
 Wosschen, pp. washed.
 Wost, knowest.
 Wostou, knowest thou.
 Woþe, harm.
 Wou, wrong. 399.
 Wouke, week.
 Wounder, very.
 Wowe, wall. 408.
 Wowe, wrong, injus-
 tice. 399.
 Wowe, to woo.
 Wowyng, wooing.
 Wox = *woxe*, pp. be-
 come.
 Woþe, wickedness. 399.
 Woþt = *wot*, know.
 Wrak, Wrake, ven-
 geance.
 Wraht, wrought.
 Wrakful, angry, venge-
 ful, full of vengeance.
 Wrange, wrong.
 Wrangwis, wicked.
 Wrangwislie, badly,
 Wrangwisnes, sin, un-
 righteousness.
 Wranne, wren.
 Wrastle, to wrestle.
 413.
 Wrathē, to be angry.
 Wrathful, angry,
 Wraththeles, without
 wrath, not displeased.
 Wraþþe, to make angry.
 Wrecche, a wretch, vil-
 lain.
 Wrecche, wretched.
 Wrecche, vengeance,
wreak.

Wrecchede, wretched-
 ness.
 Wreche, vengeance,
 punishment.
 Wreche, Wrecche,
 wretched.
 Wreched, wretched.
 Wrechednes, wretched-
 ness.
 Wreke, Wreken, to
 wreak, avenge.
 Wreken, pp. avenged.
 Wrencheþ, devices. 399.
 Wreten, (1) to write,
 (2) written.
 Wrethe, wrath.
 Wrethful, wrathful,
 angry.
 Wrick, work.
 Wrickede, wriggled.
 415.
 Wrie, Wryen, to cover.
 399.
 Wrigtful, guilty. 385.
 Wrigtleslike, inno-
 cently. 385.
 Wring, flow.
 Writ, writes.
 Writelingē, trills in a
 song. 397.
 Wroght, laboured.
 Wrohte, made.
 Wrong, squeezed,
 wrung.
 Wrongen, wrung (dry).
 Wrot, Wroot, wrote.
 Wroþe, (1) displeased,
 (2) angrily.
 Wroþly, Wroþely,
 angrily, fiercely.
 Wrout, Wrouhte,
 Wrouste, worked,
 wrought, made, did,
 acted.
 Wroþt, Wroþte, worked,
 made, did.
 Wryþes, wriggles,
 crawls.
 Wu, who.
 Wu, how.
 Wuch, which.

Wude, a wood.
 Wudewale, a bird called
 the *witwall*. 405.
 Wulde, would.
 Wule, will.
 Wulle, pl. will.
 Wule, while.
 Wult, wilt.
 Wune, ability. 379.
 Wune, to dwell. 392.
 Wune, custom, wont.
 Wune, won.
 Wunes; customs.
 Wunne, joy, bliss. 421.
 Wultu, wilt thou.
 Wurche, to work.
 Wurne, to refuse (see
 Werne).
 Wurð, (1) became,
 (2) is.
 Wurð (he), let him be.
 (2) worthy.
 Wurþe, (1) worth, value,
 Wurðe, (1) to be, (2)
 may be. 381.
 Wurðe wroþt, was
 done.
 Wurðeden, worshipped,
 honoured. 380.
 Wurðed, honoured.
 Wurðen, to be (in rest).
 Wurðen, to worship,
 honour.
 Wurðen, pl. became.
 Wurðing, honour.
 Wusche, to wish.
 Wuste, knew.
 Wyd, wide.
 Wydene, wide.
 Wyderward, whither-
 ward.
 Wydowande, withering,
 dry.
 Wydow, widow's.
 Wyf, wife, woman.
 Wyght, active.
 Wyht, creature.
 Wighthe = *wigbte*,
 brave.
 Wyle, (1) while, (2)
 will.

- Wylger, wilder.
 Wylle, to desire.
 Wylle, pleasure, '*myd wylle*,' willingly.
 Wyllesvol, wilful.
 Wyline, Wylny, to desire. 427.
 Wylnyngge, Wylningge, desire.
 Wylsfully, wilfully.
 Wymmon, a woman.
 Wyn, wine.
 Wyndez, turns, goes.
 Wynes fille, fill of pleasure.
 Wynne, to get, win.
 Wynnynge, gains.
 Wwnyord, vineyard.
 Wyrle, whirled, rushed.
 Wyse, manner.
 Wysed, directed.
 Wysen, to instruct.
 Wysly, wisely.
 Wyt, knowledge.
 Wyt, Wyte, to learn. 379.
 Wyte, Wytene, to know, learn.
 Wyter, wise. 379.
 Wyttes, senses.
 Wybdrazþ, withdraws.
 Wyb-zede, to refuse.
 Wy3, man, person.
 Wy3e, a man, creature. 430.
 Wy3es, men.
 Wy3t, active, brave.
 Wy3t, loud, merry.
 Wy3t, wight, creature.
 Wy3test, bravest.
 Yaf, gave.
 Yald, yielded.
 Yare, quickly. 423.
 Yateward, gatekeeper. 424.
 Ybe, been.
 Ybried, pp. buried.
 Yblyssed, pp. blessed.
 Ybore, born, borne.
 Ybroke, broken.
 Ybro3t, pp. brought.
 Ych, I.
 Ychabbe, I have.
 Yche = *ilk*, same.
 Ycham, I am.
 Ychot, I wot, I know.
 Ycharged, pp. loaded.
 Ychaunged, pp. changed.
 Yclenzed, pp. purified, cleansed.
 Ycleped, Yclepud, Yclept, pp. called.
 Yclosed, pp. closed.
 Ycorouned, pp. crowned.
 Ydel, idle, useless. 405.
 Ydle, an isle. 410.
 Ydemd, pp. deemed.
 Y-dizt, pl. determined, resolved.
 Ydo, done.
 Ydolve, broken through.
 Y-don, done.
 Y-dronke, drunk.
 Yef, if.
 Yefþ, gives.
 Yfounde, pp. found.
 Yeme, Yemen, to protect. 404.
 Yemyng, rule.
 Yermen, to desire. 403.
 Y-ete, pp. eaten.
 Yeve, to give.
 Yeven, pp. given.
 Y-froted, pp. rubbed.
 Y-graunted, pp. granted.
 Ygrope, pp. searched out. 412.
 Yhad, pl. had.
 Yhat, made hot.
 Yheld, Yhelde, to give, yield.
 Y-hent, taken.
 Yher, Where, a year, years.
 Yherd, pp. heard.
 Yhere, to hear.
 Yhit, yet.
 Yholde, pp. held, kept.
 Yhoned, pp. suspended, hanged.
 Yhoten, pp. called.
 Yhouth, youth.
 Yhung, young.
 Yhurt, pp. hurt.
 Y-hyerd, heard.
 Y-hyreh, imp. hear.
 Y-hyzt, ordained.
 Yif, imp. give.
 Yif, if.
 Y-knaup, knows.
 Y-knowe, known.
 Y-kuenct, pp. quenched.
 Ylaste, lasted.
 Y-left, pp. left.
 Ylent, pp. come.
 Ylered, pp. taught.
 Yliche, alike, like.
 Y-lokked, shut in.
 Ylond, island.
 Ylore, Ylost, pp. lost.
 Ylle, wickedly.
 Y-mad, pp. made.
 Ymake, adv. to match.
 Ymaked, pp. made.
 Ymarled, having a soil consisting of *marl*.
 Ymelled, pp. mixed.
 Ymengud, Ymeyned, pp. mixed.
 Ympne, a hymn.
 Ynemned, pp. named.
 Ynne, in.
 Ynoh, Ynou, Ynou3, enough. 387.
 Ynowe, pl. enough.
 Yno3, Ynu3, greatly, sufficiently, enough.
 Yod, went.
 Yoten, pp. called.
 Your = *yeare*, ear.
 Yprimisined, pp. dressed, covered.
 Ypyned, pp. tormented.
 Yre, Yren, Yrn, iron.
 Y-rokked, pp. rocked.
 Yschape, pp. transformed.
 Yschave, shaven.
 Yschent, pp. destroyed, ruined.
 Yschore, shorn, cut.

Yse, ice.
 Yse, to see.
 Ysent, pp. sent.
 Yseo, to see.
 Yset, pp. set, established.
 Ysey, saw.
 Yseye, seen.
 Y-shuldred, having shoulders.
 Yslawe, slain.
 Ysnyt, pp. wiped. 415.
 Ysode, sodden, boiled.
 Yso3e, seen. 427.
 Yspoused, pp. spoused.
 Yspronge, sprung, sprinkled.
 Ysseawed, shewn.
 Ystyked, pp. stabbed.
 Yswore, sworn.
 Ysy, to see.
 Ytake, taken.
 Ytaryed, pp. tarried.
 Ytaut, pp. taught.
 Yþe3, waves.
 Yþorse, struck. 428.
 Ytold, pp. esteemed, told.
 Yturnd, turned.
 Yunge, young.
 Yvels, diseases.
 Y-take, taken.
 Y-used, pp. used.
 Yvels, diseases.
 Y-wasted, consumed.
 Y-waxe, grown.
 Ywhet, pp. sharpened. 412.
 Ywis, Ywys, truly.
 Ywrite, to learn.
 Y-write, Y-wryte, written.
 Y-zed, pp. said.
 Y-ze3e, sawest. 427.
 Yzyeþ, pl. see.
 Yveþ, imp. give.
 Ywyteþ, imp. know, learn.
 Yzed, pp. said.
 Yzeþ, pl. see.
 Yze3, saw.

Yze3en, pl. saw.
 Yzi, to see.
 Yzo3e, seen.
 Yzy, to see.
 Y3e, eye.
 Y3en, eyes.
 Y3e-lydde3, eyelids.
 Y3eve, given.
 Y-3yrmed, pp. been anxious, grieved for.

Zang, song.
 Zaulen, souls.
 Zay, imp. say.
 Zayst, sayest.
 Zayþ, says.
 Zede, said.
 Zelf, self.
 Zelve (obliq. case), self.
 Zennen, sins.
 Zente, sent.
 Zevevald, sevenfold.
 Zigge, Zygge, to say.
 Ziker, sure, confident.
 Zittinde, Zittynde, sitting.
 Zofthede, delicacy, softness.
 Zomdel, somewhat.
 Zome, some.
 Zomþyng, something.
 Zone, son.
 Zonge. pl. sang.
 Zor3e, sorrow.
 Zostren, sisters.
 Zoþ, true.
 Zuete, sweet.
 Zuord, sword.
 Zuyfte, swift.
 Zyenne, to see.
 Zykere, pl. sure, confident.
 Zyng, to sing.
 Zyþe, time.
 Zy3te, Zy3þe, sight.

3a, yea.
 3af, gave.
 3al, yelled.
 3are, ready, prepared.
 423.

3arkede, prepared.
 3arm, cry. 434.
 3ate, gate.
 3atus, 3atis, gates.
 3ave, gave.
 3e, 3he, yea.
 3edde, to sing, recite. 437.
 3ede, went.
 3ederly, certainly, truly, perfectly, wholly.
 3ef, gave.
 3ef, if.
 3eilpe, to boast. 405.
 3eld, imp. requite, pret. gave.
 3eldingus, gifts.
 3elde, (1) to yield, (2) to requite.
 3ene, to shew.
 3eode, went.
 3eorne, eagerly, earnestly, quickly.
 3eorne, to desire.
 3eþ, active, brave, quick.
 3eme, care. 404.
 3eme, to preserve, to take care of.
 3ellynge, yelling.
 3e3ed, proclaimed.
 396.
 3er, a year.
 3erd, 3erde, rod, staff.
 3erne, earnestly, readily.
 3erne, to desire.
 3et, 3ete, yet.
 3eve, to give.
 3he = 3e, yea.
 3if, if.
 3ifte, a gift.
 3ive, to give.
 3ode, went.
 3ol, Christmas.
 3ollest, yellest. 400.
 3olden, requited, returned.
 3ong, 3onge, young.
 3ongore, younger.
 3ore, yore, formerly.
 3ongost, youngest.

3orne, eagerly.
 3ore. long ago, yore.
 3ou, 3ow, you.
 3our, your.
 3oures, your.
 3oupe, youth.
 3oven, given.

3ow, you.
 3omere, sad, com-
 plaining. 293.
 3omerly, sad, piteous.
 3ozelinge, chattering.
 396.
 3ulinge, yelling.

3ulpe, to boast.
 3ut, 3ute, yet.
 3yf, if.
 3yfte, a gift.
 3yrnden, yearned, de-
 sired.
 3yve, to give.

CORRECTIONS AND EMENDATIONS.

Page	3, line 61,	for He	read In.
"	4, "	92, " harðe	" harde.
"	6, "	155, " And	" An.
"	8, "	219, " hen	" hem.
"	28, "	278, " wr[o]þe	" w[o]rþe.
"	53, "	31, " halt	" hatt.
"	348, "	66, " sperfluite	" superfluité.
"	383, line 4 from bottom,	for eðen	read ðeðen.

RECENT BOOKS

Printed at the Clarendon Press.

A TYPOGRAPHICAL GAZETTEER. Attempted by the Rev. HENRY COTTON, D.C.L., Archdeacon of Cashel, late Sub-Librarian of the Bodleian Library. Second Series. 8vo., cloth, 12s. 6d.

XENOPHONTIS OPUSCULA POLITICA EQUESTRIA et VENATICA cum ARRIANI LIBELLO de VENATIONE. Ex Recensione et cum Annotationibus LUDOVICI DINDORFII. 8vo., cloth, 10s. 6d.

BRITTON. The French Text carefully revised, with an English Translation, Introduction, and Notes. By FRANCIS MORGAN NICHOLS, M.A., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, formerly Fellow of Wadham College. In Two Volumes, large 8vo., 1l. 16s.

TWO OF THE SAXON CHRONICLES, PARALLEL: With Supplementary Extracts from the others. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Glossarial Index, by JOHN EARLE, M.A., sometime Fellow and Tutor of Oriel College, and Professor of Anglo-Saxon, Rector of Swanswick. 8vo., cloth, 16s.

A HISTORY OF AGRICULTURE AND PRICES IN ENGLAND from 1259—1400. Compiled entirely from Original and Contemporaneous Records. By JAMES E. THOROLD ROGERS, M.A., Professor of Political Economy in the University of Oxford; Tooke Professor of Economic Science and Statistics, King's College, London. 2 vols. 8vo., cloth, 2l. 2s.

EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON. Fifth Edition. Crown 4to., 1l. 11s. 6d.

— LEXICON FOR SCHOOLS. Eleventh Edition. Square 12mo., 7s. 6d.

— GREEK-ENGLISH VOCABULARY. 18mo., 3s.

Oxford: Printed at the CLARENDON PRESS, and published for the UNIVERSITY by MACMILLAN & CO., London and Cambridge.

CLARENDON PRESS, OXFORD.

- WORDSWORTH'S GREEK GRAMMAR. Fourteenth Edition. 12mo., strongly bound, 4s.
- LLOYD'S GREEK TESTAMENT, with Marginal References, &c. 18mo., cloth, 3s. Large Paper for Marginal Notes, 4to., cloth, 10s. 6d. Half morocco, 12s.
- MILL'S GREEK TESTAMENT. Fcap 8vo., cloth, 2s. 6d. Large paper, 4to., cloth, 6s. 6d.
- SOPHOCLIS TRAGÆDIÆ, cum Commentariis G. DINDORFII. Third Edition. Two vols. fcap. 8vo., 21s.
Each Play, separately, 2s. 6d.
The Text only, square 16mo., 3s. 6d. Each Play, 6d.
Jones's Notes on Œdipus Tyrannus, 6d.
- ÆSCHYLUS, cum Notis et Scholia DINDORFII. Three vols. 8vo., cloth, 11. 6s. The Text separately, 5s. 6d.
- HOMERI ILIAS, ex rec. DINDORFII. 8vo., 5s. 6d.
- ODYSSEA. DINDORFII. 8vo., 5s. 6d.
- SCHOLIA GRÆCA. DINDORFII. Two vols. 8vo., 15s. 6d.
- DEMOSTHENES, HARPOCRATIONIS LEXICON. Ed. DINDORF. Two vols., cloth, 21s.
- DINDORF, METRA ÆSCHYLI SOPHOCLIS EURIPIDIS ET ARISTOPHANIS DESCRIPTA. 8vo., cloth, 5s.
- PLATO, PHILEBUS, revised Text and English Notes. POSTE. 8vo., cloth, 7s. 6d.
- THEÆTETUS, revised Text and English Notes. CAMPBELL. 8vo., cloth, 9s.
- SCHELLER'S LATIN LEXICON. RIDDLE. Folio, cloth, 21s.
- XENOPHONTIS HISTORIA GRÆCA. DINDORF, accedunt Annotationes. Second Edition. 8vo., cloth, 10s. 6d.
- EXPEDITIO CYRI, cum Annotationibus. DINDORF. Second Edition. 8vo., cloth, 10s. 6d.
- INSTITUTIO CYRI, cum Annotationibus. DINDORF. 8vo., cloth, 10s. 6d.
- MEMORABILIA SOCRATIS. DINDORF. 8vo., cloth, 10s. 6d.

CLARENDON PRESS, OXFORD.

WILLIAMS'S GRAMMAR OF THE SANSKRIT LANGUAGE. Third Edition, enlarged, 8vo., cloth, 13s. 6d.

SUMMER'S HANDBOOK OF THE CHINESE LANGUAGE. 8vo., cloth, 1l. 8s.

HISTORICAL WORKS.

CLARENDON'S HISTORY OF THE REBELLION.

New Edition. Seven vols. 18mo., cloth, 21s.

——— HISTORY OF THE REBELLION. With his Life, in which is included a Continuation of his History. With Indexes. Royal 8vo., cloth, 22s.

——— HISTORY OF THE REBELLION. With Notes by Bishop WARBURTON. Seven vols. med. 8vo., cloth, 2l. 10s.

——— LIFE AND CONTINUATION OF HIS HISTORY, with the Suppressed Passages. Three vols. 8vo., cloth, 16s. 6d.

BURNET'S HISTORY OF JAMES II. With additional Notes. 8vo., cloth, 9s. 6d.

——— HISTORY OF HIS OWN TIME. With the Suppressed Passages and Notes. Six vols. 8vo., cloth, 2l. 10s.

BINGHAM'S ANTIQUITIES OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH, and other Works. Ten vols. 8vo., cloth, 5l. 5s.

CLINTON'S FASTI HELLENICI. From the Earliest Accounts to the Death of Augustus. Three vols. 4to., cloth, 4l. 17s.

——— EPITOME OF THE FASTI HELLENICI; or, Civil and Literary Chronology of Greece. 8vo., cloth, 6s. 6d.

——— FASTI ROMANI. From the Death of Augustus to the Death of Heraclius. Two vols. 4to., cloth, 3l. 9s.

——— EPITOME OF THE FASTI ROMANI; or, Civil and Literary Chronology of Rome and Constantinople. 8vo., cloth, 7s.

EUSEBII, HISTORIA ECCLESIASTICA. Edited by E. BURTON. 8vo., cloth, 8s. 6d.

Oxford: Printed at the CLARENDON PRESS, and published for the
UNIVERSITY by MACMILLAN & Co., London and Cambridge.

CLARENDON PRESS, OXFORD.

FULLER'S CHURCH HISTORY OF BRITAIN. Edited
by the Rev. J. S. BREWER. Six vols. 8vo., cloth, 1*l.* 19*s.*

GRESWELL'S FASTI TEMPORIS CATHOLICI. Four
vols. 8vo., cloth, 2*l.* 10*s.*

——— ORIGINES KALENDARÆ ITALICÆ. Four
vols. 8vo., cloth, 2*l.* 2*s.*

——— ORIGINES KALENDARÆ HELLENICÆ.
Six vols. 8vo., cloth, 4*l.* 4*s.*

INETT'S CHURCH HISTORY. Edited by the Rev.
JOHN GRIFFITHS, M.A. Two vols. 8vo., cloth, 1*l.* 11*s.* 6*d.*

KENNETT'S PAROCHIAL ANTIQUITIES. Two vols.
4to., cloth, 1*l.* 14*s.*

The New Edition of Burnet's History of the Reformation.

BURNET'S HISTORY OF THE REFORMATION
OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND.

A New Edition, carefully revised, and the Records collated with the
Originals. By the Rev. N. POCOCK, M.A., late Michel Fellow
of Queen's College. Seven volumes, 8vo., cloth, 4*l.* 4*s.*

"The edition of Burnet's History which has just come from the Clarendon Press of the University of Oxford is a book which deserves an early and special attention. The research and the talent and patient labour which have been expended in the production of this work, in its present form, by Nicholas Pocock, M.A., late Michel Fellow of Queen's College, are deserving of all admiration and praise; and we may be grateful indeed for such a monument of critical care and erudition. Never before has this work of Burnet obtained such attention, or been sifted so clear of its errors and crudities; nor has any one succeeded, as Mr. Pocock has now, in making its merits and defects so amply and impartially plain by his appropriate commentary and his exhaustive annotations."—*Times*.

Oxford: Printed at the CLARENDON PRESS, and published for the
UNIVERSITY by MACMILLAN & Co., London and Cambridge.

November, 1866.]

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD.

Clarendon Press Series.

THE DELEGATES of the Oxford Press understand from eminent Schoolmasters and others who are authorities upon education, that there is still great need of good School Books and Manuals.

They are told that Editions with good English notes of many of the Greek and Latin Classics read in the higher classes of the Public Schools are required; that text-books, both English and Foreign, are much needed for the use of Schools, especially with reference to the Local Examinations held by the Universities; that good English and other Grammars, and Exercise-books adapted to them and with a copious supply of Examples, are much needed and that there is a great and urgent want of Delectuses, Analecta, and generally of books of Selections from Authors, for use in Schools;—

That the Histories now read in Schools are greatly below present requirements, and in some cases there are absolute deficiencies; and that the want of good books on History is much felt in the Law and Modern History School in the University;—

That English Treatises on Physical Science, written with clearness and precision of language, and adapted for use in the higher classes of Schools, and in the Natural Science School of the University, do not exist.

They believe that the University may with propriety and efficiency do much towards remedying the defect. They have therefore determined to issue a series of Educational Works, hoping to supply some existing wants, and to help in improving methods of teaching.

The departments of Education which they propose to deal with at present are the following :—

I. CLASSICS. The Delegates hope to issue

1. Works suitable for the Universities and the highest forms of Schools; or
2. Books for School-work generally, beginning from the very rudiments.

II. MENTAL AND MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

III. MATHEMATICAL WORKS; both for University Students, and also with especial regard to the needs of Middle Class Schools.

IV. HISTORY. Here again there will be two classes of books :—

1. Short Histories, such as may be useful for the History School, or for general reading;
2. School Histories, with all the necessary appliances for education.

V. LAW.

VI. PHYSICAL SCIENCE. The experience of teachers in the University and elsewhere has already pointed out several desirable works, and has also gone some way towards providing the books required.

VII. ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE, which will comprise a carefully compiled series of Reading Books, Exercise Books, and Grammars.

VIII. MODERN LANGUAGES.

IX. A MISCELLANEOUS CLASS; including Handbooks on Art, Music, Literature, and the like.

X. A SERIES OF ENGLISH CLASSICS.

The DELEGATES OF THE PRESS invite suggestions and advice from all persons interested in sound education; and will be thankful for hints, &c., addressed to the REV. G. W. KITCHIN, Walton Manor, Oxford.

Just Published.

1. **Chemistry for Students.** By A. W. WILLIAMSON, Phil. Doc., F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry, University College, London. (Crown 8vo., cloth, price 7s. 6d.)

Also: **Solutions of the Problems in "Chemistry for Students."** By the same Author. (Sewed, price 6d.)

"Within less than four hundred pages of a handy little volume, in type not fatiguing to the eye, Professor Williamson here gives to the student an outline of the leading facts and principles of inorganic and organic chemistry.

"Very few men are able to compress, within such limits, so large a topic, and of those who should attempt to do so almost all would fail to keep together soul and body of the science. Even in large treatises there is a tendency to part principles from facts. Having taken the life out of the body in a few preliminary chapters, the learned expositor confines all further attention to the corpse. While this is true of many a large book, in a small book we get usually facts alone or principles alone, if not the two in a state of repulsion. Professor Williamson is accurately technical and so concise that at a glance his pages might seem to contain only the *caput mortuum* of a great science. But let a chapter be read, and the truth appears that the student who reads such a book as this is in the hands of a singularly skilful teacher who knows how, without waste of a word, to fix intelligent attention. Out of experiments and observed facts arranged in a clear logical order he develops principles, and points to the part they play in the world's life. Step by step the student is led, not blindfold but with his attention constantly directed to the landmarks on his way. For example, the book begins by telling the learner how to make oxygen. There is a diagram of the arrangement necessary, and a clear explanation of the process of getting the gas from chlorate of potash or manganese. Then there is an equally clear account (with a diagram) of Lavoisier's experiment for getting oxygen out of the common air. * * * * *

"A volume constructed in this way is really a too rare example of what a good elementary text-book in any science ought to be: the language brief, simple, exact; the arrangement logical, developing in lucid order principles from facts, and keeping theory always dependent upon observation; a book that keeps the reason of the student active while he strives to master details difficult but never without interest, and that furnishes him with means for practising himself in the right management of each new tool of knowledge that is given to him for his use."—*Examiner*.

2. **Greek Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their forms, meaning, and quantity; embracing all the Tenses used by Greek writers, with references to the passages in which they are found.** By W. VEITCH. New and revised edition. (Crown 8vo., cloth, 616 pp., price 8s. 6d.)

"The 'Clarendon Press Series' makes an excellent start, and if its succeeding volumes are to combine anything like the distinctive

merits of the first, it is destined to supersede every other series already in use. Mr. Veitch's work on the *Irregular and Defective Greek Verbs* is as signal a proof as could be furnished that a book designed to assist the learner or the advanced student may be convenient in size and yet exhaustive in treatment, may be quite original in investigation and yet fall readily into the educational channel, may confine itself to the strictest exposition of phenomena, and yet be fresh with the force of character and lively with the humour that belong more or less to all inquiring and independent minds.

* * * *

"We shall not pretend to review the treatise of an author who stands very nearly, if not altogether, alone in knowledge of his subject. Mr. Veitch is indeed as independent of the praise or the censure of critics as any author need care to be. It is one of his claims to the gratitude of scholars that, in spite of the premature and almost universal desertion of the field of rigid, textual scholarship, for the easier, showier, and pleasanter field of aesthetic or literary disquisition, he has persevered in his forsaken and solitary path, and has produced a work unique of its kind, full of fresh and lasting contributions to our knowledge of the Greek language, and intellectually vivacious and incisive on nearly every page. Open the book anywhere, and instances of erroneous doctrines corrected, of omissions (common to all our lexicons) supplemented, of new theories propounded and vindicated, occur at once. * * * * Let the critical reader compare Mr. Veitch's treatment of such a compound as ἀνορθώω, for example, with its handling by other critics, and he will at once see how incomparably more trustworthy Mr. Veitch is as a guide not only for the pupil and teacher, not only for the writer of Greek prose and verse, but also for the constituter of texts and for the advanced amateur scholar. Indeed there is scarcely an authority, whether editor, lexicographer, or grammarian, British or Continental, whom Mr. Veitch has not occasion to correct, modify, or supplement. The German Dindorf, the Dutch Cobet, the French Littré, the English Liddell and Scott, are a few among living scholars who are repeatedly brought to the touchstone of comprehensive induction and acute judgment, while the dicta of departed authorities are canvassed with a freedom which would be almost cruel, were it not uniformly so just. We congratulate Mr. Veitch on the completion, and the Clarendon Press on the publication, of a work which will reinstate our scholarship in that esteem which the Germans have almost ceased to entertain for it since the days of Porson and Elmsley, and which will have the merit not only of purifying the fountain-heads of classical education, but of affording the youthful scholar an example of that moral singleness of purpose and undeviating search for truth which are even rarer than the intellectual gifts that have been lavished on its execution."—*Spectator*.

"The book before us by Mr. William Veitch is quite a wonderful contribution to critical knowledge of Greek, and has been selected by the Delegates of the Clarendon Press to lead off a new series of educational works. Its great distinction, in the first place, is that it is all derived from original reading. Mr. Veitch has not learned

the anatomy of the language from anybody's anatomical plates; he has dissected the body for himself. He has gone with a careful finger through the Greek texts, and the Greek texts in their latest recensions, marking every noticeable form, and checking by his own personal examination the *dicta* of other critics. * * * The book is useful, indeed we may say indispensable, to scholars, in the widest sense of the word. It takes a larger range than its mere title would imply; and besides being a supplement to our best Lexicons, such as that of Liddell and Scott, contains touches of fine philology which would have delighted Porson and Elmsley. Indeed, the perusal of it recalls to our memory the description of Elmsley with which Hermann concluded his review of our countryman's edition of the *Medea*:—‘Est enim P. Elmsleius, si quis alius, vir natus augendae accuratiori Graecae linguae cognitioni, ut cujus eximia ac plane singularis in pervestigandis rebus grammaticis diligentia regatur praeclaro ingenio, mente ab auctoritatibus libera, animo veri amantissimo, neque aut superbia, aut gloriae studio, aut obtractandi cupiditate, praepedito.’ It is a pleasant sign of the increased communication between the northern and southern parts of the United Kingdom that the Clarendon Press should have volunteered to bring this learned treatise before the world; and Mr. Veitch gratefully acknowledges the service in his preface. His book will soon become a text-book in all the great English public schools, and will doubtless by-and-by come to be known and appreciated also in the country in which it was written.”—*Pall Mall Gazette*.

3. An Elementary Treatise on Heat, with numerous Woodcuts and Diagrams. By BALFOUR STEWART, LL.D., F.R.S., Director of the Observatory at Kew. (Crown 8vo., cloth, price 7s. 6d.)

“In this work the Author endeavours to place before his readers in an elementary form the facts and principles of the Science of Heat, and also to give some of the most prominent practical applications of our knowledge of this subject. He begins with the study of well-ascertained facts, and proceeds onwards to general principles.

“The work is divided into three parts:—

“1. The study of the various Effects produced on Bodies by Heat. Many of the most recent investigations, and the apparatus used in conducting them, are described at length; and numerical examples are given to help the student to attain to the accuracy needful in physical researches.

“2. The Laws which regulate the Distribution of Heat through Space. This part includes radiation, conduction, convection, and the measurements of specific and latent heat. Theoretic views are here first introduced.

“3. The Nature of Heat, its Sources, and Connexion with other Properties of Matter. In this part heat is viewed as a species of motion; and the leading principles of the Science of Energy, by which heat becomes related to other forms of motion, are discussed.

"The work is chiefly intended for students of Physical Science ; but it is hoped that it may also interest general readers by placing before them some of the most remarkable and most practical and valuable truths arrived at by modern researches into the nature and qualities of heat."—*From the Author's Preface.*

4. The Elements of Deductive Logic, designed

mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By the Rev. T. FOWLER, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Lincoln College, Oxford. (Crown 8vo., cloth, price 3s. 6d.)

"The precise object of these pages is (without presupposing any technical acquaintance with logical terminology) to enable a student of average intelligence to acquire for himself an elementary knowledge of the main problems, principles, and rules of Deductive Logic."

"The Manuals of Sanderson, Wallis, Aldrich, &c., owing to the peculiar circumstances of the period in which they were written—a period which, being transitional, retained not only much of the scholastic terminology, but also much of the Realistic doctrine—have ceased to be adapted to modern instruction. The Author, with some misgivings, and a keen sense of the difficulties of the task, trusts that the present work may be found usefully to occupy their place. Its propositions cannot however be presented in the same curt and dogmatic shape, for we have learnt to regard many portions of Logic, like many portions of the sciences whose method it claims to analyse, as fairly open to differences of opinion."

"It is hoped that, independently of its bearing on University studies, a short English Manual of Logic may be used with advantage in the Upper Forms of Schools, and that it may not be without interest to the general reader."—*From the Author's Preface.*

5. The Golden Treasury of Ancient Greek

Poetry ; being a Collection of the finest passages in the Greek Classic Poets, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. WRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. (Crown 8vo., cloth, price 8s. 6d.)

The arguments in favour of selections from the ancient classics grow stronger as the time lessens which men can devote to the dead languages. Especially in the case of those ancients whose writings are rather of poetical or literary than of historical importance, such as the Greek poets, it seems better that students who cannot work through more than a few thousand lines, should give a part of their labour to detached passages of varied excellence, than that they should spend all their strength on whole works of which many parts are inferior in interest. Not all parts even of the best Greek poems are of equal beauty: the finest pieces are as good occasions for grammatical and critical instruction as those which are less fine ; and when the constructive art has been observed in a few whole works, there is much to be said in favour of a wider range and a less continuous but a more

extended and, so far, a more complete survey of the general poetical world of Greece.

Again a collection as well of the less known and accessible gems of Greek poetry as of more familiar passages from the greatest works may be of service to some even of those who no longer read Greek with a view to examinations.

No collection adapted to either of these purposes has yet been published: and the aim of this volume is to supply the want, by bringing together in a convenient form the finest passages of extant Greek verse from the *Iliad* to the later epigrammatists, so far as the limits of about seven thousand lines will allow.

A short statement of the subject of each passage is prefixed wherever such a statement appeared necessary to relieve the obscurity resulting from the absence of context; and in some cases of unusual difficulty an analysis of the connexion of ideas is supplied in the margin. Historical introductions to the several poetical periods, addressed to the origin of each species of poetry and its connexion with the general history of the Greeks, and explanatory notes with occasional translations, are appended.

6. Specimens of Early English; being a Series of

Extracts from the most important English Authors, Chronologically arranged, illustrative of the progress of the English Language and its Dialectic varieties, from A.D. 1250 to A.D. 1400. With Grammatical Introduction, Notes, and Glossary. By R. MORRIS, Esq., Editor of "The Story of Genesis and Exodus," &c. (Crown 8vo., cloth, price 7s. 6d.) [*Nearly ready.*]

This work seeks to set before students of the English language a systematic view of its older forms and their development, as exhibited in writers of the latter part of the thirteenth and the whole of the fourteenth centuries: a most important period in the history of our language, though it has been but imperfectly investigated even by the best writers on the subject. Existing text-books on the history of English literature and language not only pass over much that is important in this period, but they also deal in a very unsatisfactory way with many chief authorities, whose style, language, and position are thought to be sufficiently illustrated if twenty or thirty lines are devoted to them. There is in fact no real knowledge of this period to be met with. This present work is intended, partially at least, to fill this blank. It presents a series of specimens selected so as to form a connected and continuous whole. Each passage chosen is of considerable length (the extracts varying from 200 to upwards of 1200 lines); so that the grammar, vocabulary, and manner of each author are completely represented to the student.

These specimens are arranged in chronological order, and illustrate the leading *dialects* of the early English period. They will be found to be (for the most part) new; having been chosen from works which have not usually been quoted and are not well known. In many cases the passages are re-edited from the best MSS.; a few of them now appear for the first time.

CLARENDON PRESS SERIES.

The work has a grammatical Introduction, Notes, and a Glossary; and it is hoped that it may be within the reach and capacity of all who take an interest in the *origines* of our mother-tongue. It lays bare some of the strong foundations on which our language is built up; it throws some light on the ethnological and historical characteristics of its period; religion, manners, domestic habits, ranks and orders, of a very important time in the annals of this country are illustrated by it.

It is, however, specially intended for students in colleges in which the English language forms a part of the regular routine of instruction, and for candidates for the Civil and Indian Civil Service.

In course of Preparation.

I. CLASSICS.

1. Sophocles. By the Rev. LEWIS CAMPBELL, M.A., Professor of Greek at St. Andrews, late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.
2. Homer, Iliad I–XII. By D. B. MONRO, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.
3. Homer, Odyssey I–XII.
4. ——— Odyssey XIII–XXIV. By ROBINSON ELLIS, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.
5. A Golden Treasury of Greek Prose, being a collection of the finest passages in the principal Greek Prose Writers, with Introductory Notices and Notes. By R. S. WRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, and J. E. L. SHADWELL, B.A., Student of Christ Church.
6. Horace. With English Notes and Introduction. By the Rev. E. WICKHAM, M.A., Fellow of New College, Oxford. Also a small Edition for Schools.
7. Livy I–X. By J. R. SEELEY, M.A., Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge; Professor of Latin, University College, London. Also a small edition for Schools.
8. Cicero. Select Letters. By the Rev. A. WATSON, M.A., Fellow of Brasenose College, Oxford.
9. Cicero. The Philippic Orations. By the Rev. J. R. KING, M.A., Fellow of Merton College, Oxford.

10. **Selections from the less known Latin Poets.** By the Rev. NORTH PINDEB, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.
11. **Selections from Xenophon** (adapted for the use of Schools). With English Notes and Maps, by J. S. PHILLPOTTS, B.C.L., Fellow of New College, Oxford; Assistant Master in Rugby School.
12. **The Commentaries of C. Jul. Caesar. Part I.** The Gallic War, with English Notes, &c., by CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A., Assistant Master in Rugby School; late Scholar of Balliol. Also, to follow: Part II. The Civil War: by the same Editor.
13. **Select Epistles of Cicero and Pliny** (for Schools). With English Notes, by the Rev. C. E. PRICHARD, M.A., late Fellow of Balliol.
14. **Selections from Plato** (for Schools). With English Notes, by the Rev. B. JOWETT, M.A., Regius Professor of Greek, and J. PURVES, B.A., Balliol College.
15. **The Elements of Greek Accentuation** (for Schools): abridged from his larger work by H. W. CHANDLER, M.A., Fellow of Pembroke College, Oxford.
16. **Cornelius Nepos** (for Schools). With English Notes, by OSCAR BROWNING, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant Master at Eton College.

II. MENTAL AND MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

1. **The Elements of Deductive Logic**, designed mainly for the use of Junior Students in the Universities. By the Rev. T. FOWLER, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Lincoln College, Oxford. (Crown 8vo., cloth, price 3s. 6d.) [Ready.]

III. MATHEMATICS.

1. **An Elementary Treatise on Quaternions.** By P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh; late Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. [In the Press.]
2. **A Course of Lectures on Pure Geometry.** By H. J. STEPHEN SMITH, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow of Balliol College, and Savilian Professor of Geometry in the University of Oxford.

IV. HISTORY.

1. A History of Germany and of the Empire, down to the close of the Middle Ages. By J. BRYCE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.
2. A History of British India. By S. OWEN, M.A., Lee's Reader in Law and History, Christ Church; and Reader in Indian Law in the University of Oxford.
3. A History of Greece. By E. A. FREEMAN, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.
4. A Constitutional History of England. By the Rev. W. STUBBS, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, and Regius Professor of Modern History.
5. A Church History of the First Three Centuries. By the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Canon of Christ Church, and Professor of Ecclesiastical History.

V. LAW.

1. The Institutes of Justinian, with Notes and an English Translation. By J. BRYCE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.
2. Commentaries on Roman Law; from the original and the best modern sources. In Two Volumes, demy 8vo. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Professor of Law at University College, London.

VI. PHYSICAL SCIENCE.

1. A Treatise on Natural Philosophy. In four Volumes. By Sir W. THOMSON, LL.D., F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Glasgow, and P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the University of Edinburgh; late Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. *Vol. I. nearly ready.*
2. Also, by the same Authors, a smaller work on the same subject, forming a complete Introduction to the subject, so far as it can be explained by the help of Elementary Geometry and Algebra. *[In the Press.]*

3. *Forms of Animal Life. Illustrated by Descriptions and Drawings of Dissections.* By G. ROLLESTON, M.D., F.R.S., Linacre Professor of Physiology, Oxford. [*In the Press.*]
4. *On Laboratory Practice.* By A. VERNON HARCOURT, M.A., Lee's Reader in Chemistry at Christ Church, and H. G. MADAN, M.A., Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.
5. *Geology.* By J. PHILLIPS, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Geology, Oxford.
5. *Handbook of Astronomy, Descriptive and Practical.* With very numerous illustrations and tables. By G. F. CHAMBERS, F.R.A.S. [*In the Press.*]

VII. ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.

1. *On the Principles of Grammar.* By the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School.
Also, by the same Author, a *Gradual*, designed to serve as an Exercise and Composition Book in the English Language.
2. *The Philology of the English Tongue.* By the Rev. J. EARLE, M.A., late Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford, and late Professor of Anglo-Saxon.
3. *Reading Books.* *The First*, for Junior classes in Schools, in Two Vols. Vol. i. Prose. Vol. ii. Verse.
The Second, for more advanced Readers, in Two Vols. Vol. i. Prose. Vol. ii. Verse. By the Author of "*Mademoiselle Mori*."
4. *Typical Selections from the best English Authors* from the Sixteenth to the Nineteenth Century, (to serve as an higher Reading book,) with Introductory Notices and Notes, being a Contribution towards a History of English Literature.

VIII. FRENCH.

By Mons. JULES BUÉ,

Honorary M. A. of Oxford ; Taylorian Teacher of French, Oxford ;
Examiner in the Oxford Local Examinations from 1858.

1. *A French Grammar.* A complete theory of the French language, with the rules in French and English, and numerous Examples to serve as first Exercises in the language.

2. A French Grammar Test. A book of Exercises on French Grammar; each Exercise being preceded by Grammatical Questions.
3. Exercises in Translation No. 1, from French into English, with general rules on Translation; and containing Notes, Hints, and Cautions, founded on a comparison of the Grammar and Genius of the two languages.
4. Exercises in Translation No. 2, from English into French, on the same plan as the preceding book.
5. Exercises on French Idiomatic Locutions.
6. A new method of French Analysis.
7. Theory of French Pronunciation.

IX. MISCELLANEOUS.

1. The Principles of Music. By the Rev. Sir F. A. GORE OUSELEY, Bart., M.A., Mus. Doc., Professor of Music, Oxford.
2. A Handbook of Pictorial Art, with numerous Illustrations, and Practical Advice. By the Rev. R. ST. JOHN TYRWHITT, M.A., late Student and Tutor of Christ Church.

X. ENGLISH CLASSICS.

Designed to meet the wants of Students in English Literature: under the superintendence of the Rev. J. S. Brewer, M.A., of Queen's College, Oxford, and Professor of English Literature at King's College, London.

THERE are two dangers to which the student of English literature is exposed at the outset of his task;—his reading is apt to be too narrow or too diffuse.

Out of the vast number of authors set before him in books professing to deal with this subject he knows not which to

select: he thinks he must read a little of all; he soon abandons so hopeless an attempt; he ends by contenting himself with second-hand information; and professing to study English literature, he fails to master a single English author.

On the other hand, by confining his attention to one or two writers, or to one special period of English literature, the student narrows his view of it; he fails to grasp the subject as a whole; and in so doing misses one of the chief objects of his study.

How may these errors be avoided? How may minute reading be combined with comprehensiveness of view?

In the hope of furnishing an answer to these questions the Delegates of the Press, acting upon the advice and experience of Professor Brewer, have determined to issue a series of small volumes, which shall embrace, in a convenient form and at a low price, the general extent of English Literature, as represented in its masterpieces at successive epochs. It is thought that the student, by confining himself, in the first instance, to those authors who are most worthy of his attention, will be saved from the dangers of hasty and indiscriminate reading. By adopting the course thus marked out for him he will become familiar with the productions of the greatest minds in English Literature; and should he never be able to pursue the subject beyond the limits here prescribed, he will have laid the foundation of accurate habits of thought and judgment, which cannot fail of being serviceable to him hereafter.

The authors and works selected are such as will best serve to illustrate English literature in its *historical* aspect. As "the eye of history," without which history cannot be understood, the literature of a nation is the clearest and most intelligible record of its life. Its thoughts and its emotions, its graver and its less serious modes, its pro-

gress, or its degeneracy, are told by its best authors in their best words. This view of the subject will suggest the safest rules for the study of it.

With one exception all writers before the Reformation are excluded from the Series. However great may be the value of literature before that epoch, it is not completely national. For it had no common organ of language; it addressed itself to special classes; it dealt mainly with special subjects. Again; of writers who flourished after the Reformation, who were popular in their day, and reflected the manners and sentiments of their age, the larger part by far must be excluded from our list. Common sense tells us that if young persons, who have but a limited time at their disposal, read Marlowe or Greene, Burton, Hakewill or Du Bartas, Shakspeare, Bacon, and Milton will be comparatively neglected.

Keeping, then, to the best authors in each epoch—and here popular estimation is a safe guide—the student will find the following list of writers amply sufficient for his purpose: Chaucer, Spenser, Hooker, Shakspeare, Bacon, Milton, Dryden, Bunyan, Pope, Johnson, Burke, and Cowper. In other words, Chaucer is the exponent of the Middle Ages in England; Spenser of the Reformation and the Tudors; Hooker of the latter years of Elizabeth; Shakspeare and Bacon of the transition from Tudor to Stuart; Milton of Charles I and the Commonwealth; Dryden and Bunyan of the Restoration; Pope of Anne and the House of Hanover; Johnson, Burke, and Cowper of the reign of George III to the close of the last century.

The list could be easily enlarged; the names of Jeremy Taylor, Clarendon, Hobbes, Locke, Swift, Addison, Goldsmith, and others are omitted. But in so wide a field, the difficulty is to keep the series from becoming unwieldy, without diminishing its comprehensiveness. Hereafter, should

the plan prove to be useful, some of the masterpieces of the authors just mentioned may be added to the list.

The task of selection is not yet finished. For purposes of education, it would neither be possible, nor, if possible, desirable, to place in the hands of students the whole of the works of the authors we have chosen. We must set before them only the masterpieces of literature, and their studies must be directed, not only to the greatest minds, but to their choicest productions. These are to be read again and again, separately and in combination. Their purport, form, language, bearing on the times, must be minutely studied, till the student begins to recognise the full value of each work both in itself and in its relations to those that go before and those that follow it.

It is especially hoped that this Series may prove useful to Ladies' Schools and Middle Class Schools; in which English Literature must always be a leading subject of instruction.

A General Introduction to the Series. By the Rev.
PROFESSOR BREWER, M.A.

1. Chaucer. The Prologue to the Canterbury Tales; the Knight's Tale; the Nun's Priest's Tale. Edited by R. MORRIS, Esq., Editor for the Early English Text Society, &c. &c.
2. Spenser. Faerie Queene, Book I., with the Poet's letter to Sir Walter Raleigh. Edited by the Rev. G. W. KITCHIN, M.A., formerly Censor of Christ Church.
3. Hooker. Ecclesiastical Polity, Book I. Edited by the Rev. R. W. CHURCH, M.A., Rector of Whatley; formerly Fellow of Oriel College.
4. Shakspeare. The English Historical Plays; the five Great Tragedies; Julius Caesar; and The Tempest. Edited by the Rev. W. G. CLARK, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Public Orator; and J. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

5. Bacon. *Essays; Advancement of Learning.* Edited by J. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A.
6. Milton. *Allegro and Penseroso; Comus; Lycidas; Paradise Lost; Samson Agonistes.*
7. Dryden. *Stanzas on the Death of Oliver Cromwell; Astraea Redux; Annus Mirabilis; Absalom and Achitophel; Religio Laici; the Hind and Panther.* Edited by the Rev. PROFESSOR BREWER, M.A.
8. Bunyan. *Grace Abounding; The Pilgrim's Progress.*
9. Pope. *Essay on Man, with the Epistles and Satires.* Edited by the Rev. M. PATTISON, M.A., Rector of Lincoln College, Oxford.
10. Johnson. *Rasselas; Lives of Pope and Dryden.* Edited by the Rev. J. FRASER, M.A., Rector of Upton-Nervert; formerly Fellow of Oriel College.
11. Burke. *Thoughts on the Present Discontents; the two Speeches on America; Reflections on the French Revolution,* Edited by GOLDWIN SMITH, M.A., Fellow of University College, Oxford; late Regius Professor of Modern History.
12. Cowper. *The Task, and some of his minor Poems.* Edited by the Rev. T. L. CLAUGHTON, M.A., Vicar of Kidderminster; formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, and Professor of Poetry.

The volumes will be (as nearly as possible) uniform in shape and size; and at the same price. There will be a brief preface, biographical and literary, to each; and each will have such short notes only as are absolutely needed for the elucidation of the text.

Published for the University of Oxford, by MACMILLAN and CO.,
London and Cambridge.



